NOTICE OF INCORPORATION

United States Legal Document

☞ All citizens and residents are hereby advised that this is a legally binding document duly incorporated by reference and that failure to comply with such requirements as hereby detailed within may subject you to criminal or civil penalties under the law. Ignorance of the law shall not excuse noncompliance and it is the responsibility of the citizens to inform themselves as to the laws that are enacted in the United States of America and in the states and cities contained therein. ☜

* *
*

NFPA NEC (2002), the National Electrical Code, as incorporated and mandated by the States and Municipalities of Winfield (Kansas), Indiana, Minnesota, New York City (New York), et. alia., and in the Code of Federal Regulations at 10 CFR 431.326 et. seq.

This Document Posted By
Public.Resource.Org, Inc.,
a California Nonprofit
Organization.

Not Affiliated Or
Authorized by NFPA
or by the United States
Government

NEC Logo Removed

NEC Logo Removed

NEC® 2002

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE®

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE® SERIES

CODE

NEC Logo Removed

NFPA Logo Removed

AN INTERNATIONAL CODES AND STANDARDS ORGANIZATION

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-3

NEC Logo Removed

NEC Logo Removed

NEC® 2002

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE®

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE® SERIES

CODE

NEC Logo Removed

NFPA Logo Removed

AN INTERNATIONAL CODES AND STANDARDS ORGANIZATION

Copyright © 2001, National Fire Protection Association, All Rights Reserved

NFPA 70

National Electrical Code®

2002 Edition

This edition of NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code*, was prepared by the National Electrical Code Committee and acted on by the National Fire Protection Association, Inc., at its May Association Technical Meeting held May 13–17, 2001, in Anaheim, CA. It was issued by the Standards Council on July 13, 2001, with an effective date of August 2, 2001, and supersedes all previous editions.

This edition of NFPA 70 was approved as an American National Standard on August 2, 2001.

History and Development of the *National Electrical Code*

The National Fire Protection Association has acted as sponsor of the *National Electrical Code* since 1911. The original *Code* document was developed in 1897 as a result of the united efforts of various insurance, electrical, architectural, and allied interests.

In accordance with the provisions of the NFPA Regulations Governing Committee Projects, a National Electrical Code Committee Report on Proposals containing proposed amendments to the 1999 *National Electrical Code* was published by the NFPA in July 2000. This report recorded the actions of the various Code-Making Panels and the Correlating Committee of the National Electrical Code Committee on each proposal that had been made to revise the 1999 *Code*. The report was circulated to all members of the National Electrical Code Committee and was made available to other interested NFPA members and to the public for review and comment. Following the close of the public comment period, the Code-Making Panels met, acted on each comment, and reported their action to the Correlating Committee. The NFPA published the National Electrical Code Committee Report on Comments in April 2001, which recorded the actions of the Code-Making Panels and the Correlating Committee on each public comment to the National Electrical Code Committee Report on Proposals. The National Electrical Code Committee Report on Proposals and the National Electrical Code Committee Report on Comments were presented to the 2001 May Association Technical Meeting for adoption.

NFPA has an Electrical Section that provides particular opportunity for NFPA members interested in electrical safety to become better informed and to contribute to the development of the *National Electrical Code* and other NFPA electrical standards. Each of the Code-Making Panels and the Chairman of the Correlating Committee reported their recommendations to meetings of the Electrical Section at the 2001 NFPA World Fire Safety Congress and Exposition. The Electrical Section thus had opportunity to discuss and review the report of the National Electrical Code Committee prior to the adoption of this edition of the *Code* by the Association at its 2001 May Technical Session.

This 2002 edition supersedes all other previous editions, supplements, and printings dated 1897, 1899, 1901, 1903, 1904, 1905, 1907, 1909, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1918, 1920, 1923, 1925, 1926, 1928, 1930, 1931, 1933, 1935, 1937, 1940, 1942, 1943, 1947, 1949, 1951, 1953, 1954, 1955, 1956, 1957, 1958, 1959, 1962, 1965, 1968, 1971, 1975, 1978, 1981, 1984, 1987, 1990, 1993, 1996, and 1999.

New or revised technical content in this edition is indicated by a vertical rule next to the paragraph, table, or figure in which the change occurred.

This *Code* is purely advisory as far as NFPA is concerned. It is made available for a wide variety of both public and private uses in the interest of life and property protection. These include both use in law and for regulatory purposes, and use in private self-regulation and standardization activities as insurance underwriting, building and facilities construction and management, and product testing and certification.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-6

Contents

ARTICLE

80 Administration and Enforcement 70– 23

90 Introduction 70– 29

Chapter 1 General

100 Definitions 70– 33

I. General 70– 33
II. Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70– 39

110 Requirements for Electrical Installations 70– 40

I. General 70– 40
II. 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less 70– 43
III. Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70– 45
IV. Tunnel Installations over 600 Volts, Nominal 70– 47

Chapter 2 Wiring and Protection

200 Use and Identification of Grounded Conductors 70– 49

210 Branch Circuits 70– 51

I. General Provisions 70– 51
II. Branch-Circuit Ratings 70– 54
III. Required Outlets 70– 57

215 Feeders 70– 60

220 Branch-Circuit, Feeder, and Service Calculations 70– 61

I. General 70– 61
II. Feeders and Services 70– 63
III. Optional Calculations for Computing Feeder and Service Loads 70– 66
IV. Method for Computing Farm Loads 70– 69

225 Outside Branch Circuits and Feeders 70– 69

I. General 70– 70
II. More Than One Building or Other Structure 70– 72
III. Over 600 Volts 70– 74

230 Services 70– 75

I. General 70– 75
II. Overhead Service-Drop Conductors 70– 77
III. Underground Service-Lateral Conductors 70– 78
IV. Service-Entrance Conductors 70– 78
V. Service Equipment — General 70– 81
VI. Service Equipment — Disconnecting Means 70– 81
VII. Service Equipment — Overcurrent Protection 70– 82
VIII. Services Exceeding 600 Volts, Nominal 70– 84

240 Overcurrent Protection 70– 85

I. General 70– 85
II. Location 70– 88

ARTICLE

III. Enclosures 70– 91
IV. Disconnecting and Guarding 70– 92
V. Plug Fuses, Fuseholders, and Adapters 70– 92
VI. Cartridge Fuses and Fuseholders 70– 93
VII. Circuit Breakers 70– 93
VIII. Supervised Industrial Installations 70– 94
IX. Overcurrent Protection Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70– 95

250 Grounding 70– 95

I. General 70– 95
II. Circuit and System Grounding 70– 98
III. Grounding Electrode System and Grounding Electrode Conductor 70–104
IV. Enclosure, Raceway, and Service Cable Grounding 70–108
V. Bonding 70–108
VI. Equipment Grounding and Equipment Grounding Conductors 70–111
VII. Methods of Equipment Grounding 70–115
VIII. Direct-Current Systems 70–117
IX. Instruments, Meters, and Relays 70–118
X. Grounding of Systems and Circuits of 1 kV and Over (High Voltage) 70–119

280 Surge Arresters 70–120

I. General 70–120
II. Installation 70–121
III. Connecting Surge Arresters 70–121

285 Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors: TVSSs 70–122

I. General 70–122
II. Installation 70–122
III. Connecting Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors 70–122

Chapter 3 Wiring Methods and Materials

300 Wiring Methods 70–123

I. General Requirements 70–123
II. Requirements for Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–132

310 Conductors for General Wiring 70–133

312 Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures 70–161

I. Installation 70–161
II. Construction Specifications 70–162

314 Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes; Conduit Bodies; Fittings; and Manholes 70–164

I. Scope and General 70–164
II. Installation 70–165
III. Construction Specifications 70–170
IV. Manholes and Other Electric Enclosures Intended for Personnel Entry 70–171

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-7

ARTICLE

V. Pull and Junction Boxes for Use on Systems Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–172

320 Armored Cable: Type AC 70–173

I. General 70–173
II. Installation 70–173
III. Construction Specifications 70–174

322 Flat Cable Assemblies: Type FC 70–174

I. General 70–174
II. Installation 70–174
III. Construction 70–175

324 Flat Conductor Cable: Type FCC 70–175

I. General 70–175
II. Installation 70–176
III. Construction 70–177

326 Integrated Gas Spacer Cable: Type IGS 70–178

I. General 70–178
II. Installation 70–178
III. Construction Specifications 70–178

328 Medium Voltage Cable: Type MV 70–179

I. General 70–179
II. Installation 70–179
III. Construction Specifications 70–179

330 Metal-Clad Cable: Type MC 70–179

I. General 70–179
II. Installation 70–179
III. Construction Specifications 70–181

332 Mineral-Insulated, Metal-Sheathed Cable: Type MI 70–181

I. General 70–181
II. Installation 70–181
III. Construction Specifications 70–182

334 Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable: Types NM, NMC, and NMS 70–182

I. General 70–182
II. Installation 70–182
III. Construction Specifications 70–184

336 Power and Control Tray Cable: Type TC 70–184

I. General 70–184
II. Installation 70–185
III. Construction Specifications 70–185

338 Service-Entrance Cable: Types SE and USE 70–186

I. General 70–186
II. Installation 70–186
III. Construction 70–186

340 Underground Feeder and Branch-Circuit Cable: Type UF 70–187

I. General 70–187
II. Installation 70–187
III. Construction Specifications 70–187

ARTICLE

342 Intermediate Metal Conduit: Type IMC 70–187

I. General 70–187
II. Installation 70–188
III. Construction Specifications 70–189

344 Rigid Metal Conduit: Type RMC 70–189

I. General 70–189
II. Installation 70–189
III. Construction Specifications 70–191

348 Flexible Metal Conduit: Type FMC 70–191

I. General 70–191
II. Installation 70–191

350 Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit: Type LFMC 70–192

I. General 70–192
II. Installation 70–193
III. Construction Specifications 70–193

352 Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit: Type RNC 70–194

I. General 70–194
II. Installation 70–194
III. Construction Specifications 70–195

354 Nonmetallic Underground Conduit with Conductors: Type NUCC 70–197

I. General 70–197
II. Installation 70–197
III. Construction Specifications 70–198

356 Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit: Type LFNC 70–198

I. General 70–198
II. Installation 70–198
III. Construction Specifications 70–199

358 Electrical Metallic Tubing: Type EMT 70–200

I. General 70–200
II. Installation 70–200
III. Construction Specifications 70–201

360 Flexible Metallic Tubing: Type FMT 70–201

I. General 70–201
II. Installation 70–201
III. Construction Specifications 70–202

362 Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing: Type ENT 70–202

I. General 70–202
II. Installation 70–202
III. Construction Specifications 70–204

366 Auxiliary Gutters 70–204

368 Busways 70–206

I. General Requirements 70–206
II. Requirements for Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–207

370 Cablebus 70–208

372 Cellular Concrete Floor Raceways 70–209

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-8

ARTICLE

374 Cellular Metal Floor Raceways 70–210
I. Installation 70–210
II. Construction Specifications 70–211

376 Metal Wireways 70–211
I. General 70–211
II. Installation 70–211
III. Construction Specifications 70–212

378 Nonmetallic Wireways 70–212
I. General 70–212
II. Installation 70–212
III. Construction Specifications 70–213

380 Multioutlet Assembly 70–213

382 Nonmetallic Extensions 70–214
I. General 70–214
II. Installation 70–214

384 Strut-Type Channel Raceway 70–215
I. General 70–215
II. Installation 70–215
III. Construction Specifications 70–216

386 Surface Metal Raceways 70–216
I. General 70–216
II. Installation 70–216
III. Construction Specifications 70–217

388 Surface Nonmetallic Raceways 70–217
I. General 70–217
II. Installation 70–217
III. Construction Specifications 70–218

390 Underfloor Raceways 70–218

392 Cable Trays 70–219

394 Concealed Knob-and-Tube Wiring 70–225
I. General 70–225
II. Installation 70–226
III. Construction Specifications 70–226

396 Messenger Supported Wiring 70–227
I. General 70–227
II. Installation 70–227

398 Open Wiring on Insulators 70–227
I. General 70–227
II. Installation 70–227
III. Construction Specifications 70–229

Chapter 4 Equipment for General Use

400 Flexible Cords and Cables 70–231
I. General 70–231
II. Construction Specifications 70–239
III. Portable Cables Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–240

402 Fixture Wires 70–241

ARTICLE

404 Switches 70–244
I. Installation 70–244
II. Construction Specifications 70–247

406 Receptacles, Cord Connectors, and Attachment Plugs (Caps) 70–247

408 Switchboards and Panelboards 70–250
I. General 70–250
II. Switchboards 70–251
III. Panelboards 70–252
IV. Construction Specifications 70–253

410 Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures), Lampholders, and Lamps 70–254
I. General 70–254
II. Luminaire (Fixture) Locations 70–254
III. Provisions at Luminaire (Fixture) Outlet Boxes, Canopies, and Pans 70–255
IV. Luminaire (Fixture) Supports 70–256
V. Grounding 70–257
VI. Wiring of Luminaires (Fixtures) 70–257
VII. Construction of Luminaires (Fixtures) 70–259
VIII. Installation of Lampholders 70–260
IX. Construction of Lampholders 70–260
X. Lamps and Auxiliary Equipment 70–260
XI. Special Provisions for Flush and Recessed Luminaires (Fixtures) 70–260
XII. Construction of Flush and Recessed Luminaires (Fixtures) 70–261
XIII. Special Provisions for Electric-Discharge Lighting Systems of 1000 Volts or Less 70–261
XIV. Special Provisions for Electric-Discharge Lighting Systems of More Than 1000 Volts 70–262
XV. Lighting Track 70–263

411 Lighting Systems Operating at 30 Volts or Less 70–264

422 Appliances 70–264
I. General 70–264
II. Installation 70–264
III. Disconnecting Means 70–267
IV. Construction 70–267
V. Marking 70–268

424 Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment 70–269
I. General 70–269
II. Installation 70–269
III. Control and Protection of Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment 70–270
IV. Marking of Heating Equipment 70–272
V. Electric Space-Heating Cables 70–272
VI. Duct Heaters 70–274
VII. Resistance-Type Boilers 70–274
VIII. Electrode-Type Boilers 70–275
IX. Electric Radiant Heating Panels and Heating Panel Sets 70–276

426 Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment 70–278
I. General 70–278

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-9

ARTICLE

II. Installation 70–279
III. Resistance Heating Elements 70–279
IV. Impedance Heating 70–280
V. Skin-Effect Heating 70–280
VI. Control and Protection 70–281

427 Fixed Electric Heating Equipment for Pipelines and Vessels 70–281

I. General 70–281
II. Installation 70–282
III. Resistance Heating Elements 70–282
IV. Impedance Heating 70–283
V. Induction Heating 70–283
VI. Skin-Effect Heating 70–283
VII. Control and Protection 70–284

430 Motors, Motor Circuits, and Controllers 70–284

I. General 70–284
II. Motor Circuit Conductors 70–290
III. Motor and Branch-Circuit Overload Protection 70–292
IV. Motor Branch-Circuit Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection 70–295
V. Motor Feeder Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection 70–298
VI. Motor Control Circuits 70–299
VII. Motor Controllers 70–301
VIII. Motor Control Centers 70–302
IX. Disconnecting Means 70–304
X. Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–307
XI. Protection of Live Parts — All Voltages 70–308
XII. Grounding — All Voltages 70–308
XIII. Tables 70–309

440 Air-Conditioning and Refrigerating Equipment 70–312

I. General 70–312
II. Disconnecting Means 70–314
III. Branch-Circuit Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection 70–315
IV. Branch-Circuit Conductors 70–316
V. Controllers for Motor-Compressors 70–316
VI. Motor-Compressor and Branch-Circuit Overload Protection 70–317
VII. Provisions for Room Air Conditioners 70–318

445 Generators 70–319

450 Transformers and Transformer Vaults (Including Secondary Ties) 70–320

I. General Provisions 70–320
II. Specific Provisions Applicable to Different Types of Transformers 70–324
III. Transformer Vaults 70–326

455 Phase Converters 70–327

I. General 70–327
II. Specific Provisions Applicable to Different Types of Phase Converters 70–328

460 Capacitors 70–329

I. 600 Volts, Nominal, and Under 70–329

ARTICLE

II. Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–329

470 Resistors and Reactors (For Rheostats, See 430.82.) 70–330

I. 600 Volts, Nominal, and Under 70–330
II. Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–331

480 Storage Batteries 70–331

490 Equipment, Over 600 Volts, Nominal 70–332

I. General 70–332
II. Equipment — Specific Provisions 70–332
III. Equipment — Metal-Enclosed Power Switchgear and Industrial Control Assemblies 70–335
IV. Mobile and Portable Equipment 70–337
V. Electrode-Type Boilers 70–337

Chapter 5 Special Occupancies

500 Hazardous (Classified) Locations, Classes I, II, and III, Divisions 1 and 2 70–339

501 Class I Locations 70–347

502 Class II Locations 70–356

503 Class III Locations 70–362

504 Intrinsically Safe Systems 70–364

505 Class I, Zone 0, 1, and 2 Locations 70–367

510 Hazardous (Classified) Locations — Specific 70–380

511 Commercial Garages, Repair and Storage 70–380

513 Aircraft Hangars 70–382

514 Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities 70–385

515 Bulk Storage Plants 70–389

516 Spray Application, Dipping, and Coating Processes 70–393

517 Health Care Facilities 70–399

I. General 70–399
II. Wiring and Protection 70–402
III. Essential Electrical System 70–405
IV. Inhalation Anesthetizing Locations 70–411
V. X-Ray Installations 70–414
VI. Communications, Signaling Systems, Data Systems, Fire Alarm Systems, and Systems Less Than 120 Volts, Nominal 70–415
VII. Isolated Power Systems 70–416

518 Places of Assembly 70–417

520 Theaters, Audience Areas of Motion Picture and Television Studios, Performance Areas, and Similar Locations 70–418

I. General 70–418
II. Fixed Stage Switchboards 70–419

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-10

ARTICLE

III. Fixed Stage Equipment Other Than Switchboards 70–421
IV. Portable Switchboards on Stage 70–422
V. Portable Stage Equipment Other Than Switchboards 70–425
VI. Dressing Rooms 70–426
VII. Grounding 70–426

525 Carnivals, Circuses, Fairs, and Similar Events 70–427

I. General Requirements 70–427
II. Power Sources 70–427
III. Wiring Methods 70–427
IV. Grounding and Bonding 70–428

527 Temporary Installations 70–429

530 Motion Picture and Television Studios and Similar Locations 70–430

I. General 70–430
II. Stage or Set 70–431
III. Dressing Rooms 70–433
IV. Viewing, Cutting, and Patching Tables 70–434
V. Cellulose Nitrate Film Storage Vaults 70–434
VI. Substations 70–434

540 Motion Picture Projection Rooms 70–434

I. General 70–434
II. Equipment and Projectors of the Professional Type 70–434
III. Nonprofessional Projectors 70–435
IV. Audio Signal Processing, Amplification, and Reproduction Equipment 70–435

545 Manufactured Buildings 70–436

547 Agricultural Buildings 70–437

550 Mobile Homes, Manufactured Homes, and Mobile Home Parks 70–439

I. General 70–439
II. Mobile and Manufactured Homes 70–440
III. Services and Feeders 70–447

551 Recreational Vehicles and Recreational Vehicle Parks 70–449

I. General 70–449
II. Low-Voltage Systems 70–450
III. Combination Electrical Systems 70–452
IV. Other Power Sources 70–452
V. Nominal 120-Volt or 120/240-Volt Systems 70–453
VI. Factory Tests 70–460
VII. Recreational Vehicle Parks 70–460

552 Park Trailers 70–463

I. General 70–463
II. Low-Voltage Systems 70–463
III. Combination Electrical Systems 70–464
IV. Nominal 120-Volt or 120/240-Volt Systems 70–465
V. Factory Tests 70–472

ARTICLE

553 Floating Buildings 70–472

I. General 70–472
II. Services and Feeders 70–472
III. Grounding 70–472

555 Marinas and Boatyards 70–473

Chapter 6 Special Equipment

600 Electric Signs and Outline Lighting 70–477

I. General 70–477
II. Field-Installed Skeleton Tubing 70–480

604 Manufactured Wiring Systems 70–481

605 Office Furnishings (Consisting of Lighting Accessories and Wired Partitions) 70–482

610 Cranes and Hoists 70–483

I. General 70–483
II. Wiring 70–483
III. Contact Conductors 70–486
IV. Disconnecting Means 70–487
V. Overcurrent Protection 70–487
VI. Control 70–488
VII. Grounding 70–488

620 Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, Moving Walks, Wheelchair Lifts, and Stairway Chair Lifts 70–488

I. General 70–488
II. Conductors 70–490
III. Wiring 70–491
IV. Installation of Conductors 70–494
V. Traveling Cables 70–494
VI. Disconnecting Means and Control 70–495
VII. Overcurrent Protection 70–496
VIII. Machine Rooms, Control Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and Control Spaces 70–497
IX. Grounding 70–497
X. Emergency and Standby Power Systems 70–497

625 Electric Vehicle Charging System 70–498

I. General 70–498
II. Wiring Methods 70–498
III. Equipment Construction 70–499
IV. Control and Protection 70–499
V. Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment Locations 70–500

630 Electric Welders 70–502

I. General 70–502
II. Arc Welders 70–502
III. Resistance Welders 70–503
IV. Welding Cable 70–504

640 Audio Signal Processing, Amplification, and Reproduction Equipment 70–504

I. General 70–504
II. Permanent Audio System Installations 70–507

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-11

ARTICLE

III. Portable and Temporary Audio System Installations 70–508

645 Information Technology Equipment 70–509

647 Sensitive Electronic Equipment 70–511

650 Pipe Organs 70–512

660 X-Ray Equipment 70–513

I. General 70–513
II. Control 70–514
III. Transformers and Capacitors 70–514
IV. Guarding and Grounding 70–514

665 Induction and Dielectric Heating Equipment 70–515

I. General 70–515
II. Guarding, Grounding, and Labeling 70–516

668 Electrolytic Cells 70–516

669 Electroplating 70–519

670 Industrial Machinery 70–520

675 Electrically Driven or Controlled Irrigation Machines 70–521

I. General 70–521
II. Center Pivot Irrigation Machines 70–523

680 Swimming Pools, Fountains, and Similar Installations 70–523

I. General 70–523
II. Permanently Installed Pools 70–526
III. Storable Pools 70–532
IV. Spas and Hot Tubs 70–533
V. Fountains 70–535
VI. Pools and Tubs for Therapeutic Use 70–536
VII. Hydromassage Bathtubs 70–537

685 Integrated Electrical Systems 70–537

I. General 70–537
II. Orderly Shutdown 70–538

690 Solar Photovoltaic Systems 70–538

I. General 70–538
II. Circuit Requirements 70–540
III. Disconnecting Means 70–542
IV. Wiring Methods 70–543
V. Grounding 70–544
VI. Marking 70–545
VII. Connection to Other Sources 70–545
VIII. Storage Batteries 70–546
IX. Systems Over 600 Volts 70–547

692 Fuel Cell Systems 70–547

I. General 70–547
II. Circuit Requirements 70–548
III. Disconnecting Means 70–549
IV. Wiring Methods 70–549
V. Grounding 70–549
VI. Marking 70–549
VII. Connection to Other Circuits 70–549

ARTICLE

VIII. Outputs Over 600 Volts 70–550

695 Fire Pumps 70–550

Chapter 7 Special Conditions

700 Emergency Systems 70–555

I. General 70–555
II. Circuit Wiring 70–556
III. Sources of Power 70–557
IV. Emergency System Circuits for Lighting and Power 70–558
V. Control — Emergency Lighting Circuits 70–559
VI. Overcurrent Protection 70–559

701 Legally Required Standby Systems 70–559

I. General 70–559
II. Circuit Wiring 70–560
III. Sources of Power 70–561
IV. Overcurrent Protection 70–562

702 Optional Standby Systems 70–562

I. General 70–562
II. Circuit Wiring 70–563
III. Grounding 70–563

705 Interconnected Electric Power Production Sources 70–563

720 Circuits and Equipment Operating at Less Than 50 Volts 70–565

725 Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 Remote-Control, Signaling, and Power-Limited Circuits 70–565

I. General 70–565
II. Class 1 Circuits 70–566
III. Class 2 and Class 3 Circuits 70–568

727 Instrumentation Tray Cable: Type ITC 70–574

760 Fire Alarm Systems 70–575

I General 70–575
II. Non–Power-Limited Fire Alarm (NPLFA) Circuits 70–576
III. Power-Limited Fire Alarm (PLFA) Circuits 70–579

770 Optical Fiber Cables and Raceways 70–583

I. General 70–583
II. Protection 70–584
III. Cables Within Buildings 70–584

780 Closed-Loop and Programmed Power Distribution 70–587

Chapter 8 Communications Systems

800 Communications Circuits 70–589

I. General 70–589
II. Conductors Outside and Entering Buildings 70–590

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-12

ARTICLE

III. Protection 70–591
IV. Grounding Methods 70–592
V. Communications Wires and Cables Within Buildings 70–593

810 Radio and Television Equipment 70–597

I. General 70–597
II. Receiving Equipment — Antenna Systems 70–598
III. Amateur Transmitting and Receiving Stations — Antenna Systems 70–600
IV. Interior Installation — Transmitting Stations 70–601

820 Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution Systems 70–601

I. General 70–601
II. Cables Outside and Entering Buildings 70–602
III. Protection 70–603
IV. Grounding Methods 70–603
V. Cables Within Buildings 70–604

830 Network-Powered Broadband Communications Systems 70–607

I. General 70–607
II. Cables Outside and Entering Buildings 70–609
III. Protection 70–612
IV. Grounding Methods 70–613
V. Wiring Methods Within Buildings 70–614

TABLES

Chapter 9 Tables

1 Percent of Cross Section of Conduit and Tubing for Conductors 70–617

TABLES

4 Dimensions and Percent Area of Conduit and Tubing (Areas of Conduit or Tubing for the Combinations of Wires Permitted in Table 1, Chapter 9) 70–617

5 Dimensions of Insulated Conductors and Fixture Wires 70–622

5A Compact Aluminum Building Wire Nominal Dimensions* and Areas 70–624

8 Conductor Properties 70–625

9 Alternating-Current Resistance and Reactance for 600-Volt Cables, 3-Phase, 60 Hz, 75°C (167°F) — Three Single Conductors in Conduit 70–626

11(A) Class 2 and Class 3 Alternating-Current Power Source Limitations 70–628

11(B) Class 2 and Class 3 Direct-Current Power Source Limitations 70–628

12(A) PLFA Alternating-Current Power Source Limitations 70–629

12(B) PLFA Direct-Current Power Source Limitations 70–629

Annex A 70–631

Annex B 70–635

Annex C 70–645

Annex D 70–667

Annex E 70–675

Annex F 70–677

Index 70–681

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-13

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE COMMITTEE

These lists represent the membership at the time each Committee was balloted on the text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of this book.

Technical Correlating Committee

D. Harold Ware, *Chair* [IM]
Libra Electric Co., OK
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Mark W. Earley, *Secretary*
National Fire Protection Association, MA
(nonvoting)

Jean A. O'Connor, *Recording Secretary*
National Fire Protection Association, MA
(nonvoting)

Richard Berman, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
James E. Brunssen, Telcordia Technologies, Inc., NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
Michael I. Callanan, Nat'l. Joint Apprentice & Training Committee, PA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Philip H. Cox, Int'l. Association of Electrical Inspectors, TX [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
William R. Drake, Marinco, CA [M]
Antonio Macias, AMERIC DF, Mexico [U]
James T. Pauley, Square D Co., KY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Joseph E. Pipkin, U.S. Dept. of Labor OSHA, DC [E]
John W. Troglia, Edison Electric Institute, WI [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Craig M. Wellman, DuPont Engineering, DE [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council

Alternates

Jeffrey Boksiner, Telcordia Technologies, Inc., NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
(Alt. to J. E. Brunssen)

James M. Daly, General Cable, NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. T. Pauley)
John R. Kovacik, Underwriters Laboratories, IL [RT]
(Alt. to R. Berman)
Edward C. Lawry, WI [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to P. H. Cox)
William M. Lewis, Eli Lilly & Co., IN [U]Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to C. M. Wellman)
Neil F. LaBrake, Jr., Niagara Mohawk Power Corp., NY [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to J. W. Troglia)
Michael D. Toman, MEGA Power Electrical Services, Inc., MD [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. To D. H. Ware)

Nonvoting

Richard G. Biermann, Biermann Electric Co. Inc., IA
(Member Emeritus)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 1

Articles 90, 100, 110

John D. Minick, *Chair*
Nat'l. Electrical Manufacturers Assn., TX [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Michael A. Anthony, University of Michigan, MI [U]
Rep. The Association of Higher Education Facilities Officers
Philip H. Cox, Int'l. Association of Electrical Inspectors, TX [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
David A. Dini, Underwriters Laboratories Inc. IL [RT]
William T. Fiske, Intertek Testing Services N.A. Inc., NY [RT]
H. Landis Floyd, II, The DuPont Company, DE [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
David L. Hittinger, IEC of Greater Cincinnati, OH [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Don B. Ivory, Idaho Electrical JATC, ID [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Antonio Macias, AMERIC DF, Mexico [U]
Randall R. McCarver, Telcordia Technologies, Inc., NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
Ralph C. Prichard, Hercules, Inc., DE [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council

H. Brooke Stauffer, Nat'l. Electrical Contractors Assn., MD [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
John W. Troglia, Edison Electric Institute, WI [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute

Alternates

Louis A. Barrios, Jr., Equilon Enterprises, LLC, TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. To R. C. Prichard)
David P. Brown, Baltimore Gas & Electric Co., MD [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to J. W. Troglia)
Timothy Lee Emory, Emory Electric, Inc., NC [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to D. L. Hittinger)
Russell J. Helmick, Jr., City of Irvine, CA [E]

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-14

Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to P. H. Cox)
Mahbub Hoque, Telcordia Technologies, NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
(Alt. to R. R. McCarver)
Donald H. McCullough, II, Westinghouse Savannah River Co., SC [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to H. L. Floyd, II)
Larry Miller, Nat'l. Electrical Manufacturers Assn., VA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. D. Minick)
Ricky L. Oakland, IBEW, WY [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to D. B. Ivory)
William L. Schallhammer, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to D. A. Dini)

Nonvoting

Ark Tsisserev, City of Vancouver, BC
Rep. Canadian Standards Association International
William Wusinich, U.S. Dept of Labor, PA [E]

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 2

Articles 210, 215, 220, Chapter 9, Annex D
Examples 1 through 6

James W. Carpenter, *Chair*
North Carolina Dept. of Insurance, NC [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

Richard W. Becker, Engineered Electrical Systems, Inc., WA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Thomas L. Harman, University of Houston/Clear Lake, TX [SE]
Bernard Mericle, IBEW, Local Union 236, NY [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Robert E. Moore, TECO Energy, FL [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Donald A. Nissen, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., IL [RT]
James T. Pauley, Square D Co., KY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Joseph Patterson Roché, Celanese Acetate, SC [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Albert F. Sidhom, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, CA [U]
Michael D. Toman, MEGA Power Electrical Services, Inc., MD [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Robert G. Wilkinson, Independent Electrical Contractors of Houston, Inc., TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.

Alternates

Ernest S. Broome, City of Knoxville, TN [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to J. W. Carpenter)
Charles G. Crawford, TXU Electric, TX [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to R. E. Moore)
Ernie Howell, IEC, Rocky Mountain Chapter, CO [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
(Alt. to R. G. Wilkinson)
James R. Jones, University of Alabama at Birmingham, AL [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to R. W. Becker)
Daniel J. Kissane, Pass & Seymour/Legrand, NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. T. Pauley)
Charles D. Marshall, Jr., IBEW Local 948, MI [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to B. Mericle)
Susan W. Porter, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to D. A. Nissen)
J. Morris Trimmer, University of Florida, FL [SE]
(Alt. to T. L. Harman)
Joseph E. Wiehagen, Nat'l. Assn. of Home Builders, MD [IM]
Rep. National Association of Home Builders
(Voting Alt. to NAHB Rep.)

Nonvoting

Douglas A. Lee, U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, MD
Andrew M. Trotta, U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, MD

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 3

Articles 300, 527, 690, 692

Raymond W. Weber, *Chair*
Dept. of Commerce, WI [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

Joseph J. Andrews, Electrical Safety Resources, Inc., SC [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Charles W. Beile, Allied Tube & Conduit/Tyco, IL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Ward I. Bower, Sandia Nat'l. Laboratories, NM [U]
Rep. Solar Energy Industries Association
(VL 690)
Paul Casparro, Scranton Electricians JATC, PA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Charles W. Forsberg, OH [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
Jack A. Gruber, Wheatland Tube Co., PA [M]
Rep. American Iron and Steel Institute
Dennis B. Horman, PacifiCorp, UT [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Kenneth Krastins, Plug Power, Inc., NY [M]
Rep. US Fuel Cell Council
(VL 691)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-15

George M. Kreiner, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
Ronald E. Maassen, Lemberg Electric Co., Inc., WI [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Steven J. Owen, AL [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
David A. Pace, Olin Corporation, AL [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council

Alternates

Martin J. Brett, Jr., Wheatland Tube Co., NJ [M]
Rep. American Iron and Steel Institute
(Alt. to J. A. Gruber)
Les Easter, Allied Tube and Conduit, IL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to C. W. Beile)
James D. Erwin, Celanese, Ltd., TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to D. A. Pace)
Palmer L. Hickman, IBEW Local 380, PA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to P. Casparro)
David H. Kendall, Carlon, Lamson & Sessions, OH [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
(Alt. to C. W. Forsberg)
Mark C. Ode, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., NC [RT]
(Alt. to G. M. Kreiner)
Richard P. Owen, City of St. Paul, MN [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to R. W. Weber)
Roger S. Passmore, Davis Electrical Constructors, Inc., SC [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to S. J. Owen)
George E. Richey, Consumers Energy, MI [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to D. B. Horman)
Melvin K. Sanders, Things Electrical Co., Inc. dba (TECo., Inc), IA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to J. J. Andrews)
Robert H. Wills, Advanced Energy Systems Inc., NH [U]
Rep. Solar Energy Industries Association
(VL 690)
(Alt. to W. I. Bower)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 4

Articles 225, 230

C. John Beck, *Chair* [UT]
Pacific Gas and Electric Co., CA
Rep. Edison Electric Institute

Malcolm Allison, Ferraz Shawmut, MA [M]
K. W. Carrick, Electrical Engineering Professional Services, Inc., MS [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Floyd C. Ferris, New York Board of Fire Underwriters, NY [E]
Howard D. Hughes, Hughes Electric Co. Inc., AR [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
William M. Lewis, Eli Lilly & Co., IN [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Junior L. Owings, State of Oregon, OR [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Robert J. Pollock, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL, RT
Mark H. Sumrall, IBEW Local 527, TX [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
John W. Young, Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc., GA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Vincent Zinnante, Advantage Electric, Inc., TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.

Alternates

Thomas L. Adams, Exelon Corporation, IL [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to C. J. Beck)
Terry D. Cole, Hamer Electric/Associated Electrical Consultants, Inc., WA [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to V. Zinnante)
Dennis Darling, Ayres, Lewis, Norris, & May, Inc., MI [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to K. W. Carrick)
Timothy Owens, City of San Diego, CA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to J. L. Owings)
Philip M. Piqueira, General Electric Co., CT [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. W. Young)
John A. Sigmund, PPG Industries, Inc., LA [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to W. M. Lewis)
William J. Tipton, IBEW, OH [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to M. H. Sumrall)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 5

Articles 200, 250, 280, 285

Ronald J. Toomer, *Chair* [IM]
Toomer Electrical Co. Inc., LA
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Jeffrey Boksiner, Telcordia Technologies, Inc., NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
David T. Brender, Copper Development Association, Inc., NY [M]
Rep. Copper Development Association Inc.
Martin J. Brett, Jr., Wheatland Tube Co., NJ [M]
Rep. American Iron and Steel Institute
Elio L. Checca, U.S. Dept. of Labor, VA [E]
Paul Dobrowsky, Eastman Kodak Co., NY [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-16

Gerald L. Hadeen, Alflex Corp., CA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
Dan Hammel, Int'l. Brotherhood of Electrical Workers, IA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Michael J. Johnston, Int'l. Association of Electrical Inspectors, Inc., TX [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Charles F. Mello, Electro-Test, Inc., OR [IM]
Rep. International Electrical Testing Association Inc.
Elliot Rappaport, Electro Technology Consultants, Inc., MI [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Ted G. Robertson, Robertson Electric, Inc., TX, [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Walter Skuggevig, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., NY [RT]
Gregory J. Steinman, Thomas & Betts Corp., TN [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Robert G. Stoll, Thomas Associates, Inc., OH [M]
Rep. Power Tool Institute, Inc.
C. Douglas White, Reliant Energy, TX [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute

Alternates

Martin D. Adams, Adams Electric, Inc., CO [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to R. J. Toomer)
David A. Dini, Underwriters Laboratories Inc, IL [RT]
(Alt. to W. Skuggevig)
Timothy Edwards, Alcan Cable Co., GA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
(Alt. to G. L. Hadeen)
Garfield B. Gwyn, Gwyn Electrical & Plumbing Co., NC [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to T. G. Robertson)
Ronald Lai, FCI Electrical, NH [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to G. J. Steinman)
Dennis E. Lammert, Ameren Services, MO [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to C. D. White)
Richard E. Loyd, R&N Associates, AR [M]
Rep. American Iron and Steel Institute
(Alt. to M. J. Brett, Jr.)
Daleep C. Mohla, Union Carbide Corp., TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to E. Rappaport)
Thomas E. Moore, City of Norton, OH [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to M. J. Johnston)
David Peot, Ryobi, SC [M]
Rep. Power Tool Institute, Inc.
(Alt. to R. G. Stroll)
Thomas J. Shea, IBEW Local 405, IA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to D. Hammel)
J. Philip Simmons, Simmons Electrical Services, WA [M]
(Alt. to D. T. Brender)
Michael K. Toney, Equistar Chemicals, LP, TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to P. Dobrowsky)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 6

Articles 310, 400, 402, Chapter 9 Tables 5 through 9

Stephen J. Thorwegen, Jr., *Chair* [IM]
Fisk Electric Co., TX
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Julian R. Burns, Burns Electrical Contractors, Inc., NC [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
William C. Ferrell, IBEW, OH [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Samuel B. Friedman, BICC General, RI [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Steven Galan, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
Ravindra H. Ganatra, Alcan Cable, GA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
David G. Komassa, Wisconsin Electric Power Co., WI [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
L. Bruce McClung, Union Carbide Corp., WV [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Dale W. Pettigrew, Cognis Corp., OH [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Oran P. Post, City of Cuyahoga Falls, OH [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Joseph Zimnoch, The Okonite Company, NJ [M]
Rep. Copper Development Association Inc.

Alternates

Kenneth L. Brotherton, IBEW Local 683, OH [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to W. C. Ferrell)
James M. Daly, General Cable, NY [M]
Rep. Copper Development Association, Inc.
(Alt. to J. Zimnoch)
G. W. "Jerry" Kent, Kent Electric Systems, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
(Alt. to J. R. Burns)
Danny P. Liggett, DuPont Engineering, DE [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to D. W. Pettigrew)
Lowell S. Lisker, American Insulated Wire Corp., RI [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to S. B. Friedman)
Harry J. Sassaman, Forest Electric Corp., NJ [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to S. J. Thorwegen, Jr.)
John Stacey, City of St Louis, MO [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to O. P. Post)
Fred Truban, American Electric Power, OH [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to D. G. Komassa)
Donald A. Voltz, Mustang Engineering, Inc., TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to L.B. McClung)
Austin D. Wetherell, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to S. Galan)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-17

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 7

Articles 320, 322, 324, 326, 328, 330, 332, 334, 336, 338, 340, 382, 394, 396, 398

Thomas E. Trainor, *Chair*
City of San Diego, CA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

James M. Daly, General Cable, NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Brian Ensign, Intertek Testing Services, N.A. Inc., NY [RT]
Chris Fahrenthold, MH Technologies, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Robert L. Gotham, Rose City Electric Co., Inc., OR [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Thomas J. Guida, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
Ronald G. Nickson, Nat'l. Multi Housing Council, DC [U]
Rep. National Multi Housing Council
Bruce W. Nutt, TXU Electric & Gas, TX [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
John E. Propst, Equilon Enterprises LLC, TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Concil
Thomas G. Rodgers, Dickens & Assoc. Inc., FL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
David E. Schumacher, All County Electric Co., IA [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
H. R. Stewart, HRS Consulting, TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
George A. Straniero, AFC Cable Systems, Inc., NJ [M]
Rep. Copper Development Association Inc.
Robert S. Strength, Product Safety Management Inc., FL [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
Richard Temblador, Alflex Corporation, CA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association

Alternates

Harry C. Brown, IBEW Local 606, FL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to T. G. Rodgers)
Arthur Buxbaum, San Diego Building Inspection Dept., CA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to T. E. Trainor)
John J. Cangemi, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to T. J. Guida)
James V. Fitzgerald, The Okonite Co., NJ [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. M. Daly)
Ravindra H. Ganatra, Alcan Cable, GA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
(Alt. to R. Temblador)
Herman J. Hall, TX [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
(Alt. to R. S. Strength)
Greg Hall, Better-Way Electric, Inc., CO [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to C. Fahrenthold)
Dennis A. Nielsen, Southdown, Inc., CA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to H. R. Stewart)
John Thomas Thompson, A.B.C. Marathon Electrical Co., Inc., AL [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
Alt. to D. E. Schumacher)
David B. West, Duke Energy Inc., NC [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to B. W. Nutt)
Thomas H. Wood, Cecil B. Wood Inc., IL [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to R. L. Gotham)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 8

Articles 342, 344, 348, 350, 352, 354, 356, 358, 360, 362, 366, 368, 370, 372, 374, 376, 378, 380, 384, 386, 388, 390, 392
Chapter 9 Tables 1 through 4, and Appendix C

Kenneth E. Jannot, *Chair* [UT]
Detroit Edison, MI
Rep. Edison Electric Institute

Richard Berman, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
John S. Corry, Corry Electric Inc., CA [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
Robert W. Cox, Astra Zeneca, DE [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
George R. Dauberger, Thomas & Betts Corporation, TN [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
James C. Dollins, AFC Cable Systems, MA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
M. Shan Griffith, Brown & Root, Inc., TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
David H. Kendall, Carlon, Lamson & Sessions, OH [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
Wayne A. Lilly, City of Harrisonburg, VA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Richard E. Loyd, R&N Associates, AR [M]
Rep. American Iron and Steel Institute
Stephen P. Poholski, Newkirk Electric Associates, Inc., MI [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
C. Ernest Reynolds, Hatfield-Reynolds Electric Co., AZ [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Dennis L. Rowe, NY Board of Fire Underwriters, NY [E]
Rep. New York Board of Fire Underwriters
Ray R. Simpson, Int'l. Brotherhood of Electrical Workers, IN [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers

Alternates

Jimmy R. Bonds, Oklahoma State Dept of Health, OK [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to W. A. Lilly)
Kenneth E. Christ, Solutie, Inc., MO [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to R. W. Cox)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-18

Joseph G. Dabe, City of St. Paul, MN [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to R. R. Simpson)
Ron Duren, PacifiCorp, WA [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to K. E. Jannot)
Charles W. Forsberg, OH [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
(Alt. to D. H. Kendall)
Jack A. Gruber, Wheatland Tube Co., PA [M]
Rep. American Iron and Steel Institute
(Alt. to R. E. Loyd)
Alan Manche, Schneider Electric/Square D Company, KY [M
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to G. R. Dauberger)
Von Dewayne Stelljes, Jr., Wayne's Electric, Inc., CO [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
(Alt. to C. E. Reynolds)
Richard Temblador, Alflex Corporation, CA, [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
(Alt. to J. C. Dollins)
Ronald J. Toomer, Toomer Electrical Co. Inc., LA [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to S. P. Poholski)
James Van Den Heuvel, West Electric Inc., WI [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to J. S. Corry)
William C. Wagner, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to R. Berman)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 9

Articles 312, 314, 404, 408

Timothy M. Croushore, *Chair* [UT]
Allegheny Power Service Corp., PA
Rep. Edison Electric Institute

Boyd H. Culp, Phillips Petroleum Co., OK [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Dale R. Deming, Am Electric Co. (T&B), MI [M]
Frederic P. Hartwell, Hartwell Electrical Services, MA [SE]
Jeffrey H. Hidaka, Underwriters Laboratories, IL [RT]
Robert J. Kaemmerlen, Kaemmerlen Electric Co., MO [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Thomas J. LeMay, LeMay Electric, Inc., GA [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Anthony Montuori, The New York Board of Fire Underwriters, NY [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Ronald H. Reed, Square D Company, KY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Sukanta Sengupta, FMC Corp., NJ [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Paul Welnak, IBEW Local 494, WI [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers

Alternates

Mark R. Berner, PP&L, Inc., PA [UT]
Rep. Edision Electric Institute
(Alt. to T. M. Croushore)
Jeff Bernson, IBEW, IL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to P. Welnak)
Donald Offerdahl, ND State Electrical Board, ND [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to A. Montuori)
Bradford D. Rupp, Allied Moulded Products, Inc., OH [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Alt. to R. H. Reed
Jerome W. Seigel, CT [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to S. Sengupta)
Michael W. Wedel, Phillips Petroleum Company, TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to B. H. Culp)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 10

Articles 240, 780

James T. Dollard, Jr. *Chair* [L]
IBEW, PA
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers

Charles K. Blizard, American Electrical Testing Co., Inc., MA [IM]
Rep. International Electrical Testing Association Inc.
Madeline Borthick, IEC of Houston, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
John E. Brezan, Lehigh Valley Electrical Inspection Service, PA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Robert J. Deaton, Union Carbide Corp., TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Charles K. Eldridge, Indianapolis Power & Light Co., IN [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Carl J. Fredericks, The Dow Chemical Co., TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Don W. Jhonson, Interior Electric, Inc., FL [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Clive W. Kimblin, Cutler-Hammer, Inc., PA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Arden L. Munson, Hussmann Corp., MO [M]
Rep. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-19

George J. Ockuly, MO [M]
John A. Zaplatosch, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]

Alternates

David E. Chartrand, Middle Department Inspection Agency, Inc., NY [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to J. E. Brezan)
George D. Gregory, Square D Co., IA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to C. W. Kimblin)
Roderic L. Hageman, Prit Service, Inc., IL [IM]
Rep. International Electrical Testing Association Inc.
(Alt. to C. K. Blizard)
Charles D. Hughes, Westinghouse Savannah River Co., SC [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to R. J. Deaton)
Randy Jones, IBEW Local 934, TN [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to J. T. Dollard, Jr.)
Kris Mantravadi, La Roche Industries, LA [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to C. J. Fredericks)
Paul J. Notarian, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to J. A. Zaplatosch)
Vincent J. Saporita, Cooper Bussmann, MO [M]
(Alt. to G. J. Ockuly)
Steve A. Struble, Freeman's Electric Service, Inc., SD [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
(Alt. to M. Borthick)
John Tolbert, Bristol Compressors, VA [M]
Rep. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
(Alt. to A. L. Munson)
Leslie R. Zielke, South Carolina Electric and Gas Co., SC [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to C. K. Eldridge)

Nonvoting

Rick C. Gilmour, Canadian Standards Assn., ON

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 11

Articles 430, 440, 670, Appendix D Example D8

Thomas H. Wood, *Chair*
Cecil B Wood Inc., IL [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Rick L. Bunch, Tecumseh Products Co., MI [M]
Rep. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
Louis D. Closson, Intertek Testing Services, N.A. Inc., NY [RT]
Joe David Cox, Eastman Chemical Co., TN [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Thomas J. Garvey, State of Wisconsin, WI [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Paul S. Hamer, Chevron Research & Technology Co., CA [U]
Rep. American Petroleum Institute
Michael D. Landolfi, Landolfi Electric Co. Inc., NJ [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
James M. Naughton, IBEW Local 103, MA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Richard A. Rasmussen, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., NC [RT]
Vincent J. Saporita, Cooper Bussmann, MO [M]
Lynn F. Saunders, GM Worldwide Facilities Group, MI [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Charles B. Schram, Scottsdale, AZ [SE]
M. Edward Thomas, Alabama Power Co., AL [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Ron Widup, Shermco Industries, Inc., TX [IM]
Rep. International Electrical Testing Association Inc.
James R. Wright, Siemens-Furnas Controls, IL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Alternates

Frederick Bried, Equilon Enterprises LLC, TX [U]
Rep. American Petroleum Institute
(Alt. to P. S. Hamer)
Michael D'Amico, IBEW Local 488, CT [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to J. M. Naughton)
Elwood J. Dodge, Addison Products Co., FL [M]
Rep. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
(Alt. to R. L. Bunch)
Stanley Folz, Folz Electric, Inc., IL [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to T. H. Wood)
William D. Glover, PPG Industries, Inc., WV [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to J. D. Cox)
Paul E. Guidry, Fluor Daniel, Inc., TX [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to M. D. Landolfi)
Leo H. Haas, Jr., Reliant Energy HLP, TX [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to M. E. Thomas)
Robert J. Keough, U.S. Electrical Motors, MO [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. R. Wright)
George J. Ockuly, MO [M]
(Alt. to V. J. Saporita)
Carl Radcliffe, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NC [RT]
(Alt. to R. A. Rasmussen)
John A. Schultz, Minnesota Board of Electricity, MN [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to T. J. Garvey)
Arthur J. Smith, III, Waldemar S. Nelson and Co., Inc., LA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to L. F. Saunders)

Nonvoting

Nino Mancini,
Rep. Canadian Standards Association International, ON

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-20

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 12

Articles 426, 427, 610, 620, 625, 630, 645, 660, 665, 668, 669, 685, and Appendix D Examples D9 and D10

Charles M. Trout, *Chair* [IM]
Maron Electric Co., FL
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Thomas M. Burke, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., CA [RT]
Andre R. Cartal, Borough of Princeton, NJ [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
James F. Cook, Eagle Electric Manufacturing, NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Kent B. Givens, Aluminum Co. of America, TX [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
(VL 427, 610, 625, 630, 645, 646, 660, 665, 668, 669 and 685)
Bill Hanthorn, BICC General Pyrotenax Cables Ltd., ON [M]
Rep. Copper Development Association Inc.
Robert A. Jones, Independent Electrical Contractors, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
William J. Kelly, Eastman Kodak Co., NY [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Richard H. Laney, Siecor Corp., NC [U]
Nick Marchitto, Otis Elevator Co., CT [M]
Rep. National Elevator, Inc.
(VL 610, 620 and 630)
John H. Mortimer, Inductotherm Corp., NJ [M]
(VL 665)
Norbert Poch, IBM Corp., MN [U]
Rep. Information Technology Industry Council
(VL 645)
Ronald L. Purvis, Georgia Power Co., GA [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
David R. Quave, Int'l. Brotherhood of Electrical Workers, MS [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Robert H. Reuss, Morris Material Handling, LLC, WI [M]
(VL 610)
T. Neil Thorla, Inland Steel Co., IN [U]
Rep. Association of Iron & Steel Engineers
(VL 610, 620, and 630)
Craig B. Toepfer, Ford Motor Co., MI [U]
Rep. Society of Automotive Engineers
(VL 625)
Kenneth P. White, Olin Corp., NY [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council

Alternates

Scott Cline, McMurtrey Electric, Inc., CA [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to C. M. Trout)

Kenneth Hartwig, Daimler Chrysler, MI [U]
Rep. Society of Automotive Engineers
(Alt. to C. B. Toepfer)
(VL 625)
Jeffrey H. Hidaka, Underwriters Laboratories, IL [RT]
(Alt. to T. M. Burke)
Robert E. Johnson, Motorola, MA [U]
Rep. Information Technology Industry Council
(Alt. to N. Poch)
(VL 645)
Andy Juhasz, Kone Inc., IL [M]
Rep. National Elevator Industry Inc.
(Alt. to N. Marchitto)
(VL 610, 620 and 630)
Roger D. McDaniel, Georgia Power Co., GA [UT]
Rep. Edision Electric Institute
(Alt. to R. L. Purvis)
Harold C. Ohde, Int'l. Brotherhood of Electrical Workers, IL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to D. R. Quave)
Robert C. Oldham, Jr., Reynolds Metals Co., VA [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
(Alt. to K. B. Givens)
(VL 427, 610, 625, 630, 645, 646, 660, 665, 668, 669, and 685)
Merritt D. Redick, M. Redick & Associates, CA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to W. J. Kelly)
James J. Rogers, Massachusetts St. Board of Electrical Examiners, MA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to A. R. Cartal)
George S. Tidden, IEC, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to R. A. Jones)
Robert C. Turner, Inductotherm Corp., NJ [M]
(Alt. to J. H. Mortimer)
(VL 665)
James E. Winfrey, Square D Co., NC [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufactuers Association
(Alt. to J. F. Cook)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 13

Articles 450, 455, 460, 470, 490

William T. O'Grady, *Chair* [RT]
Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY

Tarry L. Baker, Broward County Board of Rules and Appeals, FL [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
William A. Brunner, IBEW, ND [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
James C. Carroll, Square D Co., TN [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
William B. Crist, Houston Stafford Electric Company, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.

O. L. Davis, Manzano Western, Inc., NM [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Richard P. Fogarty, Jr., Consolidated Edison Co. of N.Y., Inc., NY [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Milton D. Robinson, Milt Robinson Engineering Co., IN [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
LaVerne E. Stetson, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, NE [U]
Rep. American Society of Agricultural Engineers

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-21

Lou G. Willoughby, ALCOA Inc., OH [M]
Rep. The Aluminum Association
Ralph H. Young, Eastman Chemical Co., TN [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council

Alternates

Douglas Elkins, Exxon Chemical Co., TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to R. H. Young)
Timothy D. Holleman, AC Corp., NC [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to W. B. Crist)
Barry N. Hornberger, PECO Energy Co., PA [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to R. P. Fogarty, Jr.)
Richard Lofton, IBEW Local 280, OR [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to W. A. Brunner)
Arthur Mastromarino, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to W. T. O'Grady)
Gene Morehart, Acme Electric Corp., NC [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. C. Carroll)
Robert L. Simpson, Simpson Electrical Engineering Co., GA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to M. D. Robinson)
Monte Szendre, Wilson construction Co., OR [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to O. L. Davis)
Gerald W. Williams, County of Ventura, CA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to T. L. Baker)
Ivan L. Winsett, Ronk Electrical Industries, GA [U]
Rep. American Society of Agricultural Engineers
(Alt. to L. E. Stetson)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 14

Articles 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 510, 511, 513, 514, 515 and 516

Donald R. Cook, *Chair*
Shelby County Bldg. Inspections, AL [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

Robert B. Alexander, Fluor Daniel, Inc., CA [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
Edward M. Briesch, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
Al Engler, EGS Electrical Group, IL [M]
Rep. International Society for Measurement and Control
Mark Goodman, BP (ARCO), CA [U]
Rep. American Petroleum Institute
Doug Jagunich, Intertek Testing Services, N.A., Inc., MN [RT]
Joseph H. Kuczka, Killark Electric Mfg. Co., MO [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
William G. Lawrence, Jr., FM Global, MA [I]
Mike O'Meara, Arizona Public Service Co., AZ [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Mark G. Saban, Saban Electric, IL [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
David Wechsler, Union Carbide Corp., WV [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
James A. Weldon, IBEW Local 728, FL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Donald W. Zipse, Zipse Electrical Engineering Inc., PA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.

Alternates

Alonza W. Ballard, Crouse-Hinds, NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. H. Kuczka)
James D. Cospolich, Waldemar S. Nelson & Co. Inc., LA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to D. W. Zipse)
William T. Fiske, Intertek Testing Services N.A. Inc., NY [RT]
(Alt. to D. Jagunich)
Larry E. Fuhrman, City of Titusville, FL [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to D. R. Cook)
Paul T. Kelly, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to E. M. Briesch)
Harold C. Kronz, IBEW Local 308, FL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to J. A. Weldon)
Michael E. McNeil, FMC Corp/Bio Polymer, ME [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to D. Wechsler)
Thomas F. Mueller, Southern Company Generation, AL [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to M. O'Meara)
Peter T. Schimmoeller, FM Global, MA [I]
(Alt. to W. G. Lawrence, Jr.)
Ted H. Schnaare, Rosemount Inc., MN [M]
Rep. International Society for Measurement and Control
(Alt. to A. Engler)
Francis M. Stone, Jr., Shell Exploration and Production Co., TX, [U]
Rep. American Petroleum Institute
(Alt. to M. Goodman)
Mark C. Wirfs, R & W Engineering Inc., OR [U]
Rep. Grain Elevator & Processing Society
(Voting Alt. to GEAPS Rep.)

Nonvoting

Eduardo N. Solano, Estudio Ingeniero Solano S. A., Argentia [SE]
Fred K. Walker, U.S. Air Force, FL [U]
Rep. TC on Airport Facilities

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-22

CODE-MAKING PANEL 15

Articles 445, 480, 518, 520, 525, 530, 540, 647, 695, 700, 701, 702, 705

Robert C. Duncan, *Chair* [E]
Reedy Creek Improvement District, FL
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

Peter W. Amos, Consolidated Edison Co. of N.Y., Inc., NY [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
James L. Boyer, Firetrol, Inc., NC [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Brian Burrows, IBEW Local 98, PA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Tom Dunn, Butler Amusements, CA [U]
Rep. Outdoor Amusement Business Association, Inc.
(VL 525)
George W. Flach, Flach Consultants, LA [SE]
Michael V. Glenn, Longview Fibre Co., WA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Marcelo M. Hirschler, GBH Int'l., CA [SE]
George Thomas Howard, George Thomas Howard & Associates, NV [SE]
Gordon S. Johnson, Dundee, FL [M]
Rep. Electrical Generating Systems Association
Robert J. Kakalec, Telcordia Technologies, NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
(VL 445, 480, 700, 701, 702, and 705)
Jack W. Kalbfeld, Kalico Technology Inc., NY [SE]
(VL 518, 520, 525, 530, and 540)
Michael B. Klein, Consentini Associates DC, LLP, MD [IM]
Rep. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
John R. Kovacik, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
Edwin S. Kramer, Radio City Music Hall, NY [L]
Rep. Int'l. Association of Theatrical Stage Employees
Michael A. Lanni, Universal Studios, CA [U]
Rep. Motion Picture Association of America, Inc.
Dennis W. Marshall, TAG Electric Co., TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
Steven H. Pasternack, Intertek Testing Services, N. A. Inc., NY [RT]
Richard Sobel, Quantum Electric Corp., NY [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Dale A. Triffo, Equilon Enterprises LLC, TX [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Kenneth E. Vannice, NSI Corp., OR [M]
Rep. US Institute for Theatre Technology

Alternates

Mike Grunwald, IBEW Local 76, WA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to B. Burrows)
Mitchell K. Hefter, Rosco Entertainment Technology, OR [IM]
Rep. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
(Alt. to M. B. Klein)
Natalie J. McCord, AEP, Public Service Co. of Oklahoma, OK [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to P. W. Amos)
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. L. Boyer)
Michael D. Skinner, CBS Studio Center, CA [U]
Rep. Motion Picture Association of America, Inc.
(Alt. to M. A. Lanni)
Steven R. Terry, Production Resource Group LLC, Fourth Phase, NJ [U]
Rep. US Institute for Theatre Technology
(Alt. to K. E. Vannice)
Herbert V. Whittall, Electrical Generating Systems Assn., FL [M]
Rep. Electrical Generating Systems Association
(Alt. to G. S. Johnson)
Harold F. Willman, City of Lakewood, CO [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to R. C. Duncan)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 16

Articles 640, 650, 720, 725, 727, 760, 770, 800, 810, 820, 830, and Chapter 9 Tables 11(a) and (b) and 12(a) and (b)

Stanley D. Kahn, *Chair* [IM]
Tri-City Electric Co., Inc., CA
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

James E. Brunssen, Telcordia Technologies, Inc., NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
Orren E. Cameron, III, United States Dept. of Agriculture, DC [UT]
Loren M. Caudill, The DuPont Company, DE [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
Gerald Lee Dorna, Belden Wire & Cable, IN [M]
Rep. Insulated Cable Engineers Association Inc.
Roland W. Gubisch, Intertek Testing Services, N.A. Inc., MA [RT]
Lee C. Hewitt, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
William K. Hopple, Simplex Time Recorder Co., CA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Robert L. Hughes, DuPont, TN [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
Steven C. Johnson, Time Warner Cable, CO [UT]
Rep. National Cable Television Association
Ronald G. Jones, Ronald G. Jones, TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Stanley Kaufman, Lucent Technologies, GA [M]
Michael A. Lanni, Universal Studios, CA [U]
Rep. Motion Picture Association of America, Inc.
John Mangan, Medford City Hall, MA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
J. Jeffrey Moore, Industrial Risk Insurers, OH [I]
Rep. Industrial Risk Insurers

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-23

James W. Romlein, MIS Labs, WI [M]
Rep. Building Industry Consulting Service International
Arthur E. Schlueter, Jr., A. E. Schlueter Pipe Organ Co., GA [M]
(VL 640, 650, 720, and 725)
Steven M. Speer, IBEW Local 640, AZ [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Kyle E. Todd, Entergy – GSU, TX [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Inder L. Wadehra, IBM Corp., NC [U]
Melvin J. Wierenga, Wierenga & Associates, MI [IM]

Alternates

Ronald P. Cantrell, IBEW Local 72, TX [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to S. M. Speer)
Larry Chan, City of New Orleans, LA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to J. Mangan)
Chrysanthos Chrysanthou, Telcordia Technologies, Inc., NJ [UT]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
(Alt. to J. E. Brunssen)
A. William Coaker, A. W. Coaker and Associates, Inc., OH [M]
Rep. Society of the Plastics Industry Inc.
(Alt. to L. M. Caudill)
Gilbert J. Diaz, Intertek Testing Services, N.A. Inc., TX [RT]
(Alt. to R. W. Gubisch)
Richard S. Houghten, MI [M]
(Alt. to A. E. Schlueter, Jr.)
(VL 640, 650, 720, and 725)
Robert Jensen, dbi - Telecommunication Infrastructure Design, TX [M]
Rep. Building Industry Consulting Service International
(Alt. to J. W. Romlein)
William J. McCoy, Verizon Wireless, TX [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to R. G. Jones)
W. D. Pirkle, Pirkle Electric Co., Inc., GA [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to S. D. Kahn)
Bradley C. Rowe, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to L. C. Hewitt)
Oleh Sniezko, AT&T Broadband, CO [UT]
Rep. National Cable Television Association
(Alt. to S.C. Johnson)
Sondra K. Todd, Western Resources Co., KS [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to K. E. Todd)
Lawrence J. Wenzel, Industrial Risk Insurers, CT [I]
(Alt. to J. J. Moore)
Kevin D. Wilhelm, Eli Lilly and Co., IN [U]
Rep. American Chemistry Council
(Alt. to R. L. Hughes)
Joe Rao, RAO Electric Co., FL [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
(Voting Alt. to IEC Rep.)

Nonvoting

Irving Mande, Edwards Systems Technology, CT

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 17

Article 517

Robert E. Bernd, *Chair* [RT]
Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL

Steve Campolo, Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc., NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Thomas C. Clark, Clark Electrical Construction, Inc., TX [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
James R. Duncan, Sparling, WA [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Douglas S. Erickson, American Society for Healthcare Engineering, VI [U]
Rep. American Society for Healthcare Engineering
James W. Hillebrand, Byron Electric Co., KY [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
James A. Meyer, Pettis Memorial VA Hospital, CA [C]
Rep. American Society of Anesthesiologists
Hugh O. Nash, Jr., Nash Lipsey Burch, LLC, TN [SE]
Donald J. Sheratt, Intertek Testing Services, N.A. Inc., MA [RT]
Richard H. Smith, OG&E Electric Services, OK [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Jeffrey L. Steplowski, U.S. Dept. of Veterans Affairs, DC [U]
Mike Velvikis, High Voltage Maintenance Corp., WI [IM]
Rep. International Electrical Testing Association Inc.
Walter N. Vernon, IV, Mazzetti & Associates Inc., CA [U]
Rep. NFPA Health Care Section
Andrew White, WFJEATC Local Union 3 IBEW, NY [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers

Alternates

Matthew B. Dozier, Smith Seckman Reid, Inc., TN [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to J. R. Duncan)
Banks Hattaway, Hattaway Brothers Inc., AL [IM]
Rep. Associated Builders and Contractors, Inc.
(Alt. to T. C. Clark)
Stephen D. Hewson, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to R. E. Bernd)
Stanley D. Kahn, Tri-City Electric Co., Inc., CA [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to J. W. Hillebrand)
Paul L. LeVasseur, Bay City JEATC, MI [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to A. White)
David K. Norton, U.S. Dept. of Veterans Affairs, DC [U]
(Alt. to J. L. Steplowski)
Gaylen D. Rogers, DFCM, UT [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Voting Alt. to IAEI Rep.)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-24

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 18

Articles 406, 410, 411, 600, 605

Wayne Brinkmeyer, *Chair* [IM]
Biddle Electric Corp., TX
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Michael N. Ber, IEC, Houston, TX [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Robert L. Cochran, City of Costa Mesa, CA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
Rudy T. Elam, Systems Engineering Services, TN [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
Kenneth F. Kempel, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NC [RT]
Thomas J. Lynch, IBEW Local 99, RI [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Bernard J. Mezger, American Lighting Assn., NY [M]
Rep. American Lighting Association
(VL 410 and 411)
James F. Pierce, Intertek Testing Services NA Inc., OR [RT]
Saul Rosenbaum, Leviton Mfg. Co. Inc., NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Carl T. Wall, Alabama Power Co., AL [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Jack Wells, Pass & Seymour/Legrand, NY [M]

Alternates

Mark R. Berner, PP&L, Inc., PA [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to C. T. Wall)
Robert T. Carlock, R. T. Carlock Co., TN [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
(Alt. to M. N. Ber)
Howard D. Hughes, Hughes Electric Co. Inc., AR [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to W. Brinkmeyer)
Stephen G. Kieffer, Kieffer & Co., Inc., WI [M]
Rep. International Sign Association
(Voting Alt. to ISA Rep.)
(VL 600)
Steven A. Larson, BWXT Y-12, TN [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.
(Alt. to R. T. Elam)
John J. Mahal, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to K. F. Kempel)
Don Miletich, Cooper Lighting, IL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to S. Rosenbaum)
Michael S. O'Boyle, Lightolier, Div. of Genlyte Thomas Group, MA [M]
Rep. American Lighting Association
(Alt. to B. J. Mezger)
(VL 410 and 411)
Charles M. Trout, Maron Electric Co., FL [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
(Alt. to W. Brinkmeyer)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 19

Articles 545, 547, 550, 551, 552, 553, 555, 604, 675

Robert A. McCullough, *Chair* [E]
Ocean County Construction Inspection Dept., NJ
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

Barry Bauman, Alliant Energy, WI [U]
Rep. American Society of Agricultural Engineers
James W. Finch, Kampgrounds of America, Inc., MT [U]
(VL 550, 551, 552, and 555)
Bruce A. Hopkins, Recreation Vehicle Industry Assn., VA [M]
Rep. Recreation Vehicle Industry Association
(VL 550, 551, and 552)
Steven Johnson, IBEW, CA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Robert L. LaRocca, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., NY [RT]
Timothy P. McNeive, Thomas & Betts Corp., TN [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Leslie Sabin, San Diego Gas & Electric Co., CA, UT
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Charles F. Shy, AC Corp./Electrical Division, NC [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
Dick Veenstra, Fleetwood Enterprises, Inc., CA [M]
Rep. Manufactured Housing Institute
(VL 550, 551, and 552)
Kenneth Weakley, Mountain Electric, Inc., CA, [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Michael L. Zieman, RADCO, CA [RT]
(VL 545, 550, 551, and 552)

Alternates

Glenn H. Ankenbrand, Conectiv Power, MD [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to L. Sabin)
Steven Blais, EGS - Electrical Group, IL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to T. P. McNieve)
James K. Hinrichs, St. of Washington, WA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to R. A. McCullough)
John Mikel, Skyline Corporation, IN [M]
Rep. Manufactured Housing Institute
(Alt. to D. Veenstra)
(VL 550, 551, and 552)
John Pabian, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to R. L. Larocca)
Kent Perkins, Recreation Vehicle Industry Assn., VA [M]
Rep. Recreation Vehicle Industry Association
(Alt. to B. A. Hopkins)
(VL 550, 551, and 552)
Homer Staves, Kampgrounds of America, Inc., MT [U]
(Alt. to J. W. Finch)
(VL 550, 551, 552, and 555)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-25

LaVerne E. Stetson, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, NE [U]
Rep. American Society of Agricultural Engineers
(Alt. to B. Bauman)
David N. Tilmont, IBEW Local 952, CA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to S. Johnson)
Raymond F. Tucker, RADCO, CA [RT]
(Alt. to M. L. Zieman)
(VL 545, 550, 551 and 552)
David Gorin, Nat'l. Assn. of RV Parks & Campgrounds, VA [U]
Rep. Nat'l. Assn. of RV Parks & Campgrounds
(Voting Alt. to ARVC rep.)
(VL 550, 551, and 552)

CODE-MAKING PANEL NO. 20

Articles 422, 424, 680

Robert M. Milatovich, *Chair* [E]
Clark County, NV
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors

Scott Cline, McMurtrey Electric, Inc., CA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association
Robert J. Egan, Int'l. Brotherhood of Electrical Workers, MO [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Christopher Gill, New York Board of Fire Underwriters, NY [E]
Walter Koessel, Intertek Testing Services, N.A. Inc., MO [RT]
Neil F. LaBrake, Jr., Niagara Mohawk Power Corp., NY [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
James N. Pearse, Leviton Mfrg. Co. Inc., NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Marcos Ramirez, Mr. Electric Service Co., Inc., NY [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors, Inc.
Anthony Sardina, Carrier Corp., NY [M]
Rep. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
(VL 422, 424, and 426)
Donald J. Talka, UL Intrnational Germany GmbH [RT]
John T. Weizeorick, WI [M]
Rep. Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
(VL 422, 424, and 426)
Lee L. West, Balboa Instruments, CA [M]
Rep. National Spa and Pool Institute
(VL 680)
Robert M. Yurkanin, Electran Process Int'l. Inc., NJ [U]
Rep. Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers, Inc.

Alternates

Xen George Anchales, San Bernardino County/Dept. of Bldg. & Safety, CA [E]
Rep. International Association of Electrical Inspectors
(Alt. to R. M. Milatovich)
Dennis L. Baker, Springs & Sons Electrical Cont. Inc., AZ [IM]
Rep. Independent Electrical Contractors
(Alt. to M. Ramirez)
Bruce R. Hirsch, Baltimore Gas & Electric Co., MD [UT]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
(Alt. to N. F. LaBrake, Jr.)
Mark Leimbeck, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., IL [RT]
(Alt. to D. J. Talka)
Tom McDonald, Hubbell, Inc., CT [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
(Alt. to J. N. Pearse)
Stephen P. Schoemehl, Int'l. Brotherhood of Electrical Workers, MO [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
(Alt. to R. J. Egan)
Robert E. Wisenburg, Coates Heater Co., Inc., WA [M]
Rep. National Spa and Pool Institute
(Alt. to L. L. West)
(VL 680)

Nonvoting

Rick C. Gilmour, Canadian Standards Assn., ON
William H. King, Jr., U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, MD
Andrew M. Trotta, U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, MD
(Alt. to W. H. King, Jr.)

NFPA Electrical Engineering Division Technical Staff

Mark W. Earley, Assistant Vice President/Chief Electrical Engineer
John M. Caloggero, Principal Electrical Specialist
Kenneth G. Mastrullo, Senior Electrical Specialist
Jean A. O'Connor, Electrical Project Specialist/Support Supervisor
Lee F. Richardson, Senior Electrical Engineer
Jeffrey S. Sargent, Senior Electrical Specialist
Joseph V. Sheehan, Principal Electrical Engineer

NFPA Staff Editor

Joyce G. Grandy, Senior Project Editor

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on minimizing the risk of electricity as a source of electric shock and as a potential ignition source of fires and explosions. It shall also be responsible for text to minimize the propagation of fire and explosions due to electrical installations.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-26

NFPA 70

National Electrical Code®

2002 Edition

ARTICLE 80
Administration and Enforcement

This article is informative unless specifically adopted by the local jurisdiction adopting the National Electrical Code®. (See 80.5.)

80.1 Scope. The following functions are covered:

(1) The inspection of electrical installations as covered by 90.2
(2) The investigation of fires caused by electrical installations
(3) The review of construction plans, drawings, and specifications for electrical systems
(4) The design, alteration, modification, construction, maintenance, and testing of electrical systems and equipment
(5) The regulation and control of electrical installations at special events including but not limited to exhibits, trade shows, amusement parks, and other similar special occupancies

80.2 Definitions.

Authority Having Jurisdiction. The organization, office, or individual responsible for approving equipment, materials, an installation, or a procedure.

Chief Electrical Inspector. An electrical inspector who either is the authority having jurisdiction or is designated by the authority having jurisdiction and is responsible for administering the requirements of this *Code*.

Electrical Inspector. An individual meeting the requirements of 80.27 and authorized to perform electrical inspections.

80.3 Purpose. The purpose of this article shall be to provide requirements for administration and enforcement of the *National Electrical Code*.

80.5 Adoption. Article 80 shall not apply unless specifically adopted by the local jurisdiction adopting the *National Electrical Code*.

80.7 Title. The title of this *Code* shall be NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code®*, of the National Fire Protection Association. The short title of this *Code* shall be the *NEC®*.

80.9 Application.

(A) New Installations. This *Code* applies to new installations. Buildings with construction permits dated after adoption of this *Code* shall comply with its requirements.

(B) Existing Installations. Existing electrical installations that do not comply with the provisions of this *Code* shall be permitted to be continued in use unless the authority having jurisdiction determines that the lack of conformity with this *Code* presents an imminent danger to occupants. Where changes are required for correction of hazards, a reasonable amount of time shall be given for compliance, depending on the degree of the hazard.

(C) Additions, Alterations, or Repairs. Additions, alterations, or repairs to any building, structure, or premises shall conform to that required of a new building without requiring the existing building to comply with all the requirements of this *Code*. Additions, alterations, installations, or repairs shall not cause an existing building to become unsafe or to adversely affect the performance of the building as determined by the authority having jurisdiction. Electrical wiring added to an existing service, feeder, or branch circuit shall not result in an installation that violates the provisions of the *Code* in force at the time the additions are made.

80.11 Occupancy of Building or Structure.

(A) New Construction. No newly constructed building shall be occupied in whole or in part in violation of the provisions of this *Code*.

(B) Existing Buildings. Existing buildings that are occupied at the time of adoption of this *Code* shall be permitted to remain in use provided the following conditions apply:

(1) The occupancy classification remains unchanged
(2) There exists no condition deemed hazardous to life or property that would constitute an imminent danger

80.13 Authority. Where used in this article, the term *authority having jurisdiction* shall include the chief electrical inspector or other individuals designated by the governing body. This *Code* shall be administered and enforced by the authority having jurisdiction designated by the governing authority as follows.

(1) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to render interpretations of this *Code* in order to provide clarification to its requirements, as permitted by 90.4.
(2) When the use of any electrical equipment or its installations is found to be dangerous to human life or property, the authority having jurisdiction shall be empowered to have the premises disconnected from its source of electric supply, as established by the Board.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-28

When such equipment or installation has been so condemned or disconnected, a notice shall be placed thereon listing the causes for the condemnation, the disconnection, or both and the penalty under 80.23 for the unlawful use thereof. Written notice of such condemnation or disconnection and the causes therefor shall be given within 24 hours to the owners, the occupant, or both, of such building, structure, or premises. It shall be unlawful for any person to remove said notice, to reconnect the electric equipment to its source of electric supply, or to use or permit to be used electric power in any such electric equipment until such causes for the condemnation or disconnection have been remedied to the satisfaction of the inspection authorities.

(3) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to delegate to other qualified individuals such powers as necessary for the proper administration and enforcement of this *Code*.

(4) Police, fire, and other enforcement agencies shall have authority to render necessary assistance in the enforcement of this *Code* when requested to do so by the authority having jurisdiction.

(5) The authority having jurisdiction shall be authorized to inspect, at all reasonable times, any building or premises for dangerous or hazardous conditions or equipment as set forth in this *Code*. The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to order any person(s) to remove or remedy such dangerous or hazardous condition or equipment. Any person(s) failing to comply with such order shall be in violation of this *Code*.

(6) Where the authority having jurisdiction deems that conditions hazardous to life and property exist, he or she shall be permitted to require that such hazardous conditions in violation of this *Code* be corrected.

(7) To the full extent permitted by law, any authority having jurisdiction engaged in inspection work shall be authorized at all reasonable times to enter and examine any building, structure, or premises for the purpose of making electrical inspections. Before entering a premises, the authority having jurisdiction shall obtain the consent of the occupant thereof or obtain a court warrant authorizing entry for the purpose of inspection except in those instances where an emergency exists. As used in this section, *emergency* means circumstances that the authority having jurisdiction knows, or has reason to believe, exist and that reasonably can constitute immediate danger to persons or property.

(8) Persons authorized to enter and inspect buildings, structures, and premises as herein set forth shall be identified by proper credentials issued by this governing authority.

(9) Persons shall not interfere with an authority having jurisdiction carrying out any duties or functions prescribed by this *Code*.

(10) Persons shall not use a badge, uniform, or other credentials to impersonate the authority having jurisdiction.

(11) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to investigate the cause, origin, and circumstances of any fire, explosion, or other hazardous condition.

(12) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require plans and specifications to ensure compliance with this *Code*.

(13) Whenever any installation subject to inspection prior to use is covered or concealed without having first been inspected, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require that such work be exposed for inspection. The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified when the installation is ready for inspection and shall conduct the inspection within ___ days.

(14) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to order the immediate evacuation of any occupied building deemed unsafe when such building has hazardous conditions that present imminent danger to building occupants.

(15) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to waive specific requirements in this *Code* or permit alternative methods where it is assured that equivalent objectives can be achieved by establishing and maintaining effective safety. Technical documentation shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction to demonstrate equivalency and that the system, method, or device is approved for the intended purpose.

(16) Each application for a waiver of a specific electrical requirement shall be filed with the authority having jurisdiction and shall be accompanied by such evidence, letters, statements, results of tests, or other supporting information as required to justify the request. The authority having jurisdiction shall keep a record of actions on such applications, and a signed copy of the authority having jurisdiction's decision shall be provided for the applicant.

80.15 Electrical Board.

(A) Creation of the Electrical Board. There is hereby created the Electrical Board of the _____ of _____, hereinafter designated as the Board.

(B) Appointments. Board members shall be appointed by the Governor with the advice and consent of the Senate (or by the Mayor with the advice and consent of the Council, or the equivalent).

(1) Members of the Board shall be chosen in a manner to reflect a balanced representation of individuals or orga-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-29

nizations. The Chair of the Board shall be elected by the Board membership.

(2) The Chief Electrical Inspector in the jurisdiction adopting this Article authorized in 80.15(B)(3)(a) shall be the nonvoting secretary of the Board. Where the Chief Electrical Inspector of a local municipality serves a Board at a state level, he or she shall be permitted to serve as a voting member of the Board.

(3) The board shall consist of not fewer than five voting members. Board members shall be selected from the following:

a. Chief Electrical Inspector from a local government (for State Board only)
b. An electrical contractor operating in the jurisdiction
c. A licensed professional engineer engaged primarily in the design or maintenance of electrical installations
d. A journeyman electrician

(4) Additional membership shall be selected from the following:

a. A master (supervising) electrician
b. The Fire Marshal (or Fire Chief)
c. A representative of the property/casualty insurance industry
d. A representative of an electric power utility operating in the jurisdiction
e. A representative of electrical manufacturers primarily and actively engaged in producing materials, fittings, devices, appliances, luminaires (fixtures), or apparatus used as part of or in connection with electrical installations
f. A member of the labor organization that represents the primary electrical workforce
g. A member from the public who is not affiliated with any other designated group
h. A representative of a telecommunications utility operating in the jurisdiction

(C) Terms. Of the members first appointed, _____ shall be appointed for a term of 1 year, _____ for a term of 2 years, _____ for a term of 3 years, and _____ for a term of 4 years, and thereafter each appointment shall be for a term of 4 years or until a successor is appointed. The Chair of the Board shall be appointed for a term not to exceed ____ years.

(D) Compensation. Each appointed member shall receive the sum of _____dollars ($_____) for each day during which the member attends a meeting of the Board and, in addition thereto, shall be reimbursed for direct lodging, travel, and meal expenses as covered by policies and procedures established by the jurisdiction.

(E) Quorum. A quorum as established by the Board operating procedures shall be required to conduct Board business. The Board shall hold such meetings as necessary to carry out the purposes of Article 80. The Chair or a majority of the members of the Board shall have the authority to call meetings of the Board.

(F) Duties. It shall be the duty of the Board to:

(1) Adopt the necessary rules and regulations to administer and enforce Article 80.
(2) Establish qualifications of electrical inspectors.
(3) Revoke or suspend the recognition of any inspector's certificate for the jurisdiction.
(4) After advance notice of the public hearings and the execution of such hearings, as established by law, the Board is authorized to establish and update the provisions for the safety of electrical installations to conform with the current edition of the *National Electrical Code* (NFPA 70) and other nationally recognized safety standards for electrical installations.
(5) Establish procedures for recognition of electrical safety standards and acceptance of equipment conforming to these standards.

(G) Appeals.

(1) Review of Decisions. Any person, firm, or corporation may register an appeal with the Board for a review of any decision of the Chief Electrical Inspector or of any Electrical Inspector, provided that such appeal is made in writing within fifteen (15) days after such person, firm, or corporation shall have been notified. Upon receipt of such appeal, said Board shall, if requested by the person making the appeal, hold a public hearing and proceed to determine whether the action of the Board, or of the Chief Electrical Inspector, or of the Electrical Inspector complies with this law and, within fifteen (15) days after receipt of the appeal or after holding the hearing, shall make a decision in accordance with its findings.

(2) Conditions. Any person shall be permitted to appeal a decision of the authority having jurisdiction to the Board when it is claimed that any one or more of the following conditions exist:

a. The true intent of the codes or ordinances described in this *Code* has been incorrectly interpreted.
b. The provisions of the codes or ordinances do not fully apply.
c. A decision is unreasonable or arbitrary as it applies to alternatives or new materials.

(3) Submission of Appeals. A written appeal, outlining the *Code* provision from which relief is sought and the remedy proposed, shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction within 15 calendar days of notification of violation.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-30

(H) Meetings and Records. Meetings and records of the Board shall conform to the following:

(1) Meetings of the Board shall be open to the public as required by law.
(2) Records of meetings of the Board shall be available for review during normal business hours, as required by law.

80.17 Records and Reports. The authority having jurisdiction shall retain records in accordance with 80.17(A) and (B).

(A) Retention. The authority having jurisdiction shall keep a record of all electrical inspections, including the date of such inspections and a summary of any violations found to exist, the date of the services of notices, and a record of the final disposition of all violations. All required records shall be maintained until their usefulness has been served or as otherwise required by law.

(B) Availability. A record of examinations, approvals, and variances granted shall be maintained by the authority having jurisdiction and shall be available for public review as prescribed by law during normal business hours.

80.19 Permits and Approvals. Permits and approvals shall conform to 80.19(A) through (H).

(A) Application.

(1) Activity authorized by a permit issued under this *Code* shall be conducted by the permittee or the permittee's agents or employees in compliance with all requirements of this *Code* applicable thereto and in accordance with the approved plans and specifications. No permit issued under this *Code* shall be interpreted to justify a violation of any provision of this *Code* or any other applicable law or regulation. Any addition or alteration of approved plans or specifications shall be approved in advance by the authority having jurisdiction, as evidenced by the issuance of a new or amended permit.
(2) A copy of the permit shall be posted or otherwise readily accessible at each work site or carried by the permit holder as specified by the authority having jurisdiction.

(B) Content. Permits shall be issued by the authority having jurisdiction and shall bear the name and signature of the authority having jurisdiction or that of the authority having jurisdiction's designated representative. In addition, the permit shall indicate the following:

(1) Operation or activities for which the permit is issued
(2) Address or location where the operation or activity is to be conducted
(3) Name and address of the permittee
(4) Permit number and date of issuance
(5) Period of validity of the permit
(6) Inspection requirements

(C) Issuance of Permits. The authority having jurisdiction shall be authorized to establish and issue permits, certificates, notices, and approvals, or orders pertaining to electrical safety hazards pursuant to 80.23, except that no permit shall be required to execute any of the classes of electrical work specified in the following:

(1) Installation or replacement of equipment such as lamps and of electric utilization equipment approved for connection to suitable permanently installed receptacles. Replacement of flush or snap switches, fuses, lamp sockets, and receptacles, and other minor maintenance and repair work, such as replacing worn cords and tightening connections on a wiring device
(2) The process of manufacturing, testing, servicing, or repairing electric equipment or apparatus

(D) Annual Permits. In lieu of an individual permit for each installation or alteration, an annual permit shall, upon application, be issued to any person, firm, or corporation regularly employing one or more employees for the installation, alteration, and maintenance of electric equipment in or on buildings or premises owned or occupied by the applicant for the permit. Upon application, an electrical contractor as agent for the owner or tenant shall be issued an annual permit. The applicant shall keep records of all work done, and such records shall be transmitted periodically to the Electrical Inspector.

(E) Fees. Any political subdivision that has been provided for electrical inspection in accordance with the provisions of Article 80 may establish fees that shall be paid by the applicant for a permit before the permit is issued.

(F) Inspection and Approvals.

(1) Upon the completion of any installation of electrical equipment that has been made under a permit other than an annual permit, it shall be the duty of the person, firm, or corporation making the installation to notify the Electrical Inspector having jurisdiction, who shall inspect the work within a reasonable time.
(2) Where the Inspector finds the installation to be in conformity with the statutes of all applicable local ordinances and all rules and regulations, the Inspector shall issue to the person, firm, or corporation making the installation a certificate of approval, with duplicate copy for delivery to the owner, authorizing the connection to the supply of electricity and shall send written notice of such authorization to the supplier of electric service. When a certificate of temporary approval is

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-31

issued authorizing the connection of an installation, such certificates shall be issued to expire at a time to be stated therein and shall be revocable by the Electrical Inspector for cause.

(3) When any portion of the electrical installation within the jurisdiction of an Electrical Inspector is to be hidden from view by the permanent placement of parts of the building, the person, firm, or corporation installing the equipment shall notify the Electrical Inspector, and such equipment shall not be concealed until it has been approved by the Electrical Inspector or until _____ days have elapsed from the time of such notification, provided that on large installations, where the concealment of equipment proceeds continuously, the person, firm, or corporation installing the equipment shall give the Electrical Inspector due notice in advance, and inspections shall be made periodically during the progress of the work.

(4) At regular intervals, the Electrical Inspector having jurisdiction shall visit all buildings and premises where work may be done under annual permits and shall inspect all electric equipment installed under such permits since the date of the previous inspection. The Electrical Inspector shall issue a certificate of approval for such work as is found to be in conformity with the provisions of Article 80 and all applicable ordinances, orders, rules, and regulations, after payments of all required fees.

(5) If, upon inspection, any installation is found not to be fully in conformity with the provisions of Article 80, and all applicable ordinances, rules, and regulations, the Inspector making the inspection shall at once forward to the person, firm, or corporation making the installation a written notice stating the defects that have been found to exist.

(G) Revocation of Permits. Revocation of permits shall conform to the following:

(1) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to revoke a permit or approval issued if any violation of this *Code* is found upon inspection or in case there have been any false statements or misrepresentations submitted in the application or plans on which the permit or approval was based.

(2) Any attempt to defraud or otherwise deliberately or knowingly design, install, service, maintain, operate, sell, represent for sale, falsify records, reports, or applications, or other related activity in violation of the requirements prescribed by this *Code* shall be a violation of this *Code*. Such violations shall be cause for immediate suspension or revocation of any related licenses, certificates, or permits issued by this jurisdiction. In addition, any such violation shall be subject to any other criminal or civil penalties as available by the laws of this jurisdiction.

(3) Revocation shall be constituted when the permittee is duly notified by the authority having jurisdiction.

(4) Any person who engages in any business, operation, or occupation, or uses any premises, after the permit issued therefor has been suspended or revoked pursuant to the provisions of this *Code*, and before such suspended permit has been reinstated or a new permit issued, shall be in violation of this *Code*.

(5) A permit shall be predicated upon compliance with the requirements of this *Code* and shall constitute written authority issued by the authority having jurisdiction to install electrical equipment. Any permit issued under this *Code* shall not take the place of any other license or permit required by other regulations or laws of this jurisdiction.

(6) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require an inspection prior to the issuance of a permit.

(7) A permit issued under this *Code* shall continue until revoked or for the period of time designated on the permit. The permit shall be issued to one person or business only and for the location or purpose described in the permit. Any change that affects any of the conditions of the permit shall require a new or amended permit.

(H) Applications and Extensions. Applications and extensions of permits shall conform to the following:

(1) The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to grant an extension of the permit time period upon presentation by the permittee of a satisfactory reason for failure to start or complete the work or activity authorized by the permit.

(2) Applications for permits shall be made to the authority having jurisdiction on forms provided by the jurisdiction and shall include the applicant's answers in full to inquiries set forth on such forms. Applications for permits shall be accompanied by such data as required by the authority having jurisdiction, such as plans and specifications, location, and so forth. Fees shall be determined as required by local laws.

(3) The authority having jurisdiction shall review all applications submitted and issue permits as required. If an application for a permit is rejected by the authority having jurisdiction, the applicant shall be advised of the reasons for such rejection. Permits for activities requiring evidence of financial responsibility by the jurisdiction shall not be issued unless proof of required financial responsibility is furnished.

80.21 Plans Review. Review of plans and specifications shall conform to 80.21(A) through (C).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-32

(A) Authority. For new construction, modification, or rehabilitation, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to review construction documents and drawings.

(B) Responsibility of the Applicant. It shall be the responsibility of the applicant to ensure the following:

(1) The construction documents include all of the electrical requirements.
(2) The construction documents and drawings are correct and in compliance with the applicable codes and standards.

(C) Responsibility of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. It shall be the responsibility of the authority having jurisdiction to promulgate rules that cover the following:

(1) Review of construction documents and drawings within established time frames for the purpose of acceptance or to provide reasons for nonacceptance
(2) Review and approval by the authority having jurisdiction shall not relieve the applicant of the responsibility of compliance with this *Code*.
(3) Where field conditions necessitate any substantial change from the approved plan, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require that the corrected plans be submitted for approval.

80.23 Notice of Violations, Penalties. Notice of violations and penalties shall conform to 80.23(A) and (B).

(A) Violations.

(1) Whenever the authority having jurisdiction determines that there are violations of this *Code*, a written notice shall be issued to confirm such findings.
(2) Any order or notice issued pursuant to this *Code* shall be served upon the owner, operator, occupant, or other person responsible for the condition or violation, either by personal service or mail or by delivering the same to, and leaving it with, some person of responsibility upon the premises. For unattended or abandoned locations, a copy of such order or notice shall be posted on the premises in a conspicuous place at or near the entrance to such premises and the order or notice shall be mailed by registered or certified mail, with return receipt requested, to the last known address of the owner, occupant, or both.

(B) Penalties.

(1) Any person who fails to comply with the provisions of this *Code* or who fails to carry out an order made pursuant to this *Code* or violates any condition attached to a permit, approval, or certificate shall be subject to the penalties established by this jurisdiction.
(2) Failure to comply with the time limits of an abatement notice or other corrective notice issued by the authority having jurisdiction shall result in each day that such violation continues being regarded as a new and separate offense.
(3) Any person, firm, or corporation who shall willfully violate any of the applicable provisions of this article shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and, upon conviction thereof, shall be punished by a fine of not less than _____dollars ($_____) or more than _____dollars ($_____) for each offense, together with the costs of prosecution, imprisonment, or both, for not less than _____(_____) days or more than _____ (_____) days.

80.25 Connection to Electricity Supply. Connections to the electric supply shall conform to 80.25(A) through (E).

(A) Authorization. Except where work is done under an annual permit and except as otherwise provided in 80.25, it shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation to make connection to a supply of electricity or to supply electricity to any electric equipment installation for which a permit is required or that has been disconnected or ordered to be disconnected.

(B) Special Consideration. By special permission of the authority having jurisdiction, temporary power shall be permitted to be supplied to the premises for specific needs of the construction project. The Board shall determine what needs are permitted under this provision.

(C) Notification. If, within _____ business days after the Electrical Inspector is notified of the completion of an installation of electric equipment, other than a temporary approval installation, the Electrical Inspector has neither authorized connection nor disapproved the installation, the supplier of electricity is authorized to make connections and supply electricity to such installation.

(D) Other Territories. If an installation or electric equipment is located in any territory where an Electrical Inspector has not been authorized or is not required to make inspections, the supplier of electricity is authorized to make connections and supply electricity to such installations.

(E) Disconnection. Where a connection is made to an installation that has not been inspected, as outlined in the preceding paragraphs of this section, the supplier of electricity shall immediately report such connection to the Chief Electrical Inspector. If, upon subsequent inspection, it is found that the installation is not in conformity with the provisions of Article 80, the Chief Electrical Inspector shall notify the person, firm, or corporation making the installation to rectify the defects and, if such work is not completed within fifteen (15) business days or a longer period as may be specified by the Board, the Board shall have the

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-33

authority to cause the disconnection of that portion of the installation that is not in conformity.

80.27 Inspector's Qualifications.

(A) Certificate. All electrical inspectors shall be certified by a nationally recognized inspector certification program accepted by the Board. The certification program shall specifically qualify the inspector in electrical inspections. No person shall be employed as an Electrical Inspector unless that person is the holder of an Electrical Inspector's certificate of qualification issued by the Board, except that any person who on the date on which this law went into effect was serving as a legally appointed Electrical Inspector of _____ shall, upon application and payment of the prescribed fee and without examination, be issued a special certificate permitting him or her to continue to serve as an Electrical Inspector in the same territory.

(B) Experience. Electrical inspector applicants shall demonstrate the following:

(1) Have a demonstrated knowledge of the standard materials and methods used in the installation of electric equipment
(2) Be well versed in the approved methods of construction for safety to persons and property
(3) Be well versed in the statutes of _____ relating to electrical work and the *National Electrical Code*, as approved by the American National Standards Institute
(4) Have had at least ____ years' experience as an Electrical Inspector or ____ years in the installation of electrical equipment. In lieu of such experience, the applicant shall be a graduate in electrical engineering or of a similar curriculum of a college or university considered by the Board as having suitable requirements for graduation and shall have had two years' practical electrical experience.

(C) Recertification. Electrical inspectors shall be recertified as established by provisions of the applicable certification program.

(D) Revocation and Suspension of Authority. The Board shall have the authority to revoke an inspector's authority to conduct inspections within a jurisdiction.

80.29 Liability for Damages. Article 80 shall not be construed to affect the responsibility or liability of any party owning, designing, operating, controlling, or installing any electric equipment for damages to persons or property caused by a defect therein, nor shall the _____ or any of its employees be held as assuming any such liability by reason of the inspection, reinspection, or other examination authorized.

80.31 Validity. If any section, subsection, sentence, clause, or phrase of Article 80 is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of Article 80.

80.33 Repeal of Conflicting Acts. All acts or parts of acts in conflict with the provisions of Article 80 are hereby repealed.

80.35 Effective Date. Article 80 shall take effect _____ (_____) days after its passage and publication.

ARTICLE 90
Introduction

90.1 Purpose.

(A) Practical Safeguarding. The purpose of this *Code* is the practical safeguarding of persons and property from hazards arising from the use of electricity.

(B) Adequacy. This *Code* contains provisions that are considered necessary for safety. Compliance therewith and proper maintenance will result in an installation that is essentially free from hazard but not necessarily efficient, convenient, or adequate for good service or future expansion of electrical use.

FPN: Hazards often occur because of overloading of wiring systems by methods or usage not in conformity with this *Code*. This occurs because initial wiring did not provide for increases in the use of electricity. An initial adequate installation and reasonable provisions for system changes will provide for future increases in the use of electricity.

(C) Intention. This *Code* is not intended as a design specification or an instruction manual for untrained persons.

(D) Relation to International Standards. The requirements in this *Code* address the fundamental principles of protection for safety contained in Section 131 of International Electrotechnical Commission Standard 60364–1, *Electrical Installations of Buildings*.

FPN: IEC 60364-1, Section 131, contains fundamental principles of protection for safety that encompass protection against electric shock, protection against thermal effects, protection against overcurrent, protection against fault currents, and protection against overvoltage. All of these potential hazards are addressed by the requirements in this *Code*.

90.2 Scope.

(A) Covered. This *Code* covers the installation of electric conductors, electric equipment, signaling and communica-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-34

tions conductors and equipment, and fiber optic cables and raceways for the following:

(1) Public and private premises, including buildings, structures, mobile homes, recreational vehicles, and floating buildings
(2) Yards, lots, parking lots, carnivals, and industrial substations

FPN: For additional information concerning such installations in an industrial or multibuilding complex, see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code.*

(3) Installations of conductors and equipment that connect to the supply of electricity
(4) Installations used by the electric utility, such as office buildings, warehouses, garages, machine shops, and recreational buildings, that are not an integral part of a generating plant, substation, or control center

(B) Not Covered. This *Code* does not cover the following:

(1) Installations in ships, watercraft other than floating buildings, railway rolling stock, aircraft, or automotive vehicles other than mobile homes and recreational vehicles

FPN: Although the scope of this *Code* indicates that the *Code* does not cover installations in ships, portions of this *Code* are incorporated by reference into Title 46, *Code of Federal Regulations*, Parts 110–113.

(2) Installations under ground in mines and self-propelled mobile surface mining machinery and its attendant electrical trailing cable
(3) Installations of railways for generation, transformation, transmission, or distribution of power used exclusively for operation of rolling stock or installations used exclusively for signaling and communications purposes
(4) Installations of communications equipment under the exclusive control of communications utilities located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations
(5) Installations under the exclusive control of an electric utility where such installations
   a. Consist of service drops or service laterals, and associated metering, or
   b. Are located in legally established easements, rights-of-way, or by other agreements either designated by or recognized by public service commissions, utility commissions, or other regulatory agencies having jurisdiction for such installations, or
   c. Are on property owned or leased by the electric utility for the purpose of communications, metering, generation, control, transformation, transmission, or distribution of electric energy.

(C) Special Permission. The authority having jurisdiction for enforcing this *Code* may grant exception for the installation of conductors and equipment that are not under the exclusive control of the electric utilities and are used to connect the electric utility supply system to the service-entrance conductors of the premises served, provided such installations are outside a building or terminate immediately inside a building wall.

90.3 Code Arrangement. This *Code* is divided into the introduction and nine chapters, as shown in Figure 90.3. Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 4 apply generally; Chapters 5, 6 and 7 apply to special occupancies, special equipment, or other special conditions. These latter chapters supplement or modify the general rules. Chapters 1 through 4 apply except as amended by Chapters 5, 6, and 7 for the particular conditions.

Chapter 8 covers communications systems and is not subject to the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 except where the requirements are specifically referenced in Chapter 8.

Chapter 9 consists of tables.

Annexes are not part of the requirements of this *Code* but are included for informational purposes only.

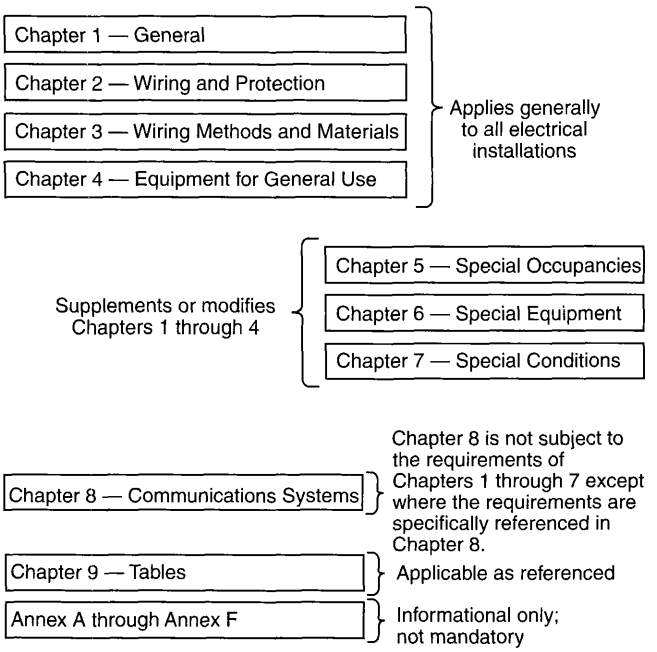


Figure 90.3 Code arrangement.

90.4 Enforcement. This *Code* is intended to be suitable for mandatory application by governmental bodies that exercise legal jurisdiction over electrical installations, including signaling and communications systems, and for use by insurance inspectors. The authority having jurisdiction for enforcement of the *Code* has the responsibility for making interpretations of the rules, for deciding on the approval of

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-35

equipment and materials, and for granting the special permission contemplated in a number of the rules.

By special permission, the authority having jurisdiction may waive specific requirements in this *Code* or permit alternative methods where it is assured that equivalent objectives can be achieved by establishing and maintaining effective safety.

This *Code* may require new products, constructions, or materials that may not yet be available at the time the *Code* is adopted. In such event, the authority having jurisdiction may permit the use of the products, constructions, or materials that comply with the most recent previous edition of this *Code* adopted by the jurisdiction.

90.5 Mandatory Rules, Permissive Rules, and Explanatory Material.

(A) Mandatory Rules. Mandatory rules of this *Code* are those that identify actions that are specifically required or prohibited and are characterized by the use of the terms *shall* or *shall not.*

(B) Permissive Rules. Permissive rules of this *Code* are those that identify actions that are allowed but not required, are normally used to describe options or alternative methods, and are characterized by the use of the terms *shall be permitted* or *shall not be required.*

(C) Explanatory Material. Explanatory material, such as references to other standards, references to related sections of this *Code,* or information related to a *Code* rule, is included in this *Code* in the form of fine print notes (FPNs). Fine print notes are informational only and are not enforceable as requirements of this *Code.*

FPN: The format and language used in this *Code* follows guidelines established by NFPA and published in the *NEC Style Manual.* Copies of this manual can be obtained from NFPA.

90.6 Formal Interpretations. To promote uniformity of interpretation and application of the provisions of this *Code,* formal interpretation procedures have been established and are found in the NFPA Regulations Governing Committee Projects.

90.7 Examination of Equipment for Safety. For specific items of equipment and materials referred to in this *Code,* examinations for safety made under standard conditions provide a basis for approval where the record is made generally available through promulgation by organizations properly equipped and qualified for experimental testing, inspections of the run of goods at factories, and service-value determination through field inspections. This avoids the necessity for repetition of examinations by different examiners, frequently with inadequate facilities for such work, and the confusion that would result from conflicting reports on the suitability of devices and materials examined for a given purpose.

It is the intent of this *Code* that factory-installed internal wiring or the construction of equipment need not be inspected at the time of installation of the equipment, except to detect alterations or damage, if the equipment has been listed by a qualified electrical testing laboratory that is recognized as having the facilities described in the preceding paragraph and that requires suitability for installation in accordance with this *Code.*

FPN No. 1: See requirements in 110.3.

FPN No. 2: *Listed* is defined in Article 100.

FPN No. 3: Annex A contains an informative list of product safety standards for electrical equipment.

90.8 Wiring Planning.

(A) Future Expansion and Convenience. Plans and specifications that provide ample space in raceways, spare raceways, and additional spaces allow for future increases in the use of electricity. Distribution centers located in readily accessible locations provide convenience and safety of operation.

(B) Number of Circuits in Enclosures. It is elsewhere provided in this *Code* that the number of wires and circuits confined in a single enclosure be varyingly restricted. Limiting the number of circuits in a single enclosure minimizes the effects from a short circuit or ground fault in one circuit.

90.9 Units of Measurement.

(A) Measurement System of Preference. For the purpose of this *Code,* metric units of measurement are in accordance with the modernized metric system known as the International System of Units (SI).

(B) Dual System of Units. The SI units shall appear first, and the inch-pound units shall immediately follow in parentheses. The conversion from the inch-pound units to SI units shall be based on hard conversion except as provided in 90.9(C).

(C) Permitted Uses of Soft Conversion. The cases given in 90.9(C)(1) through (4) shall not be required to use hard conversion and shall be permitted to use soft conversion.

(1) Trade Sizes. Where the actual measured size of a product is not the same as the nominal size, trade size designators shall be used rather than dimensions. Trade practices shall be followed in all cases.

(2) Extracted Material. Where material is extracted from another standard, the context of the original material shall

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-36

not be compromised or violated. Any editing of the extracted text shall be confined to making the style consistent with that of the *NEC*.

(3) Industry Practice. Where industry practice is to express units in inch-pound units, the inclusion of SI units shall not be required.

(4) Safety. Where a negative impact on safety would result, hard conversion shall not be required.

(D) Compliance. The conversion from inch-pound units to SI units shall be permitted to be an approximate conversion. Compliance with the numbers shown in either the SI system or the inch-pound system shall constitute compliance with this *Code*.

FPN No. 1: Hard conversion is considered a change in dimensions or properties of an item into new sizes that might or might not be interchangeable with the sizes used in the original measurement. Soft conversion is considered a direct mathematical conversion and involves a change in the description of an existing measurement but not in the actual dimension.

FPN No. 2: SI conversions are based on IEEE/ASTM SI 10-1997, *Standard for the Use of the International System of Units (SI): The Modern Metric System.*

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-37

Chapter 1 General

ARTICLE 100 Definitions

Scope. This article contains only those definitions essential to the proper application of this *Code*. It is not intended to include commonly defined general terms or commonly defined technical terms from related codes and standards. In general, only those terms that are used in two or more articles are defined in Article 100. Other definitions are included in the article in which they are used but may be referenced in Article 100.

Part I of this article contains definitions intended to apply wherever the terms are used throughout this *Code*. Part II contains definitions applicable only to the parts of articles specifically covering installations and equipment operating at over 600 volts, nominal.

I. General

Accessible (as applied to equipment). Admitting close approach; not guarded by locked doors, elevation, or other effective means.

Accessible (as applied to wiring methods). Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish or not permanently closed in by the structure or finish of the building.

Accessible, Readily (Readily Accessible). Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspections without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders, and so forth.

Ampacity. The current, in amperes, that a conductor can carry continuously under the conditions of use without exceeding its temperature rating.

Appliance. Utilization equipment, generally other than industrial, that is normally built in standardized sizes or types and is installed or connected as a unit to perform one or more functions such as clothes washing, air conditioning, food mixing, deep frying, and so forth.

Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

Askarel. A generic term for a group of nonflammable synthetic chlorinated hydrocarbons used as electrical insulating media. Askarels of various compositional types are used. Under arcing conditions, the gases produced, while consisting predominantly of noncombustible hydrogen chloride, can include varying amounts of combustible gases, depending on the askarel type.

Attachment Plug (Plug Cap) (Plug). A device that, by insertion in a receptacle, establishes a connection between the conductors of the attached flexible cord and the conductors connected permanently to the receptacle.

Authority Having Jurisdiction. The organization, office, or individual responsible for approving equipment, materials, an installation, or a procedure.

> FPN: The phrase "authority having jurisdiction" is used in NFPA documents in a broad manner, since jurisdictions and approval agencies vary, as do their responsibilities. Where public safety is primary, the authority having jurisdiction may be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or individual such as a fire chief; fire marshal; chief of a fire prevention bureau, labor department, or health department; building official; electrical inspector; or others having statutory authority. For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company representative may be the authority having jurisdiction. In many circumstances, the property owner or his or her designated agent assumes the role of the authority having jurisdiction; at government installations, the commanding officer or departmental official may be the authority having jurisdiction.

Automatic. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current, pressure, temperature, or mechanical configuration.

Bathroom. An area including a basin with one or more of the following: a toilet, a tub, or a shower.

Bonding (Bonded). The permanent joining of metallic parts to form an electrically conductive path that ensures electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any current likely to be imposed.

Bonding Jumper. A reliable conductor to ensure the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected.

Bonding Jumper, Equipment. The connection between two or more portions of the equipment grounding conductor.

Bonding Jumper, Main. The connection between the grounded circuit conductor and the equipment grounding conductor at the service.

Branch Circuit. The circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s).

Branch Circuit, Appliance. A branch circuit that supplies energy to one or more outlets to which appliances are to be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-38

connected and that has no permanently connected luminaires (lighting fixtures) that are not a part of an appliance.

Branch Circuit, General-Purpose. A branch circuit that supplies two or more receptacles or outlets for lighting and appliances.

Branch Circuit, Individual. A branch circuit that supplies only one utilization equipment.

Branch Circuit, Multiwire. A branch circuit that consists of two or more ungrounded conductors that have a voltage between them, and a grounded conductor that has equal voltage between it and each ungrounded conductor of the circuit and that is connected to the neutral or grounded conductor of the system.

Building. A structure that stands alone or that is cut off from adjoining structures by fire walls with all openings therein protected by approved fire doors.

Cabinet. An enclosure that is designed for either surface mounting or flush mounting and is provided with a frame, mat, or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or can be hung.

Circuit Breaker. A device designed to open and close a circuit by nonautomatic means and to open the circuit automatically on a predetermined overcurrent without damage to itself when properly applied within its rating.

FPN: The automatic opening means can be integral, direct acting with the circuit breaker, or remote from the circuit breaker.

Adjustable (as applied to circuit breakers). A qualifying term indicating that the circuit breaker can be set to trip at various values of current, time, or both, within a predetermined range.

Instantaneous Trip (as applied to circuit breakers). A qualifying term indicating that no delay is purposely introduced in the tripping action of the circuit breaker.

Inverse Time (as applied to circuit breakers). A qualifying term indicating that there is purposely introduced a delay in the tripping action of the circuit breaker, which delay decreases as the magnitude of the current increases.

Nonadjustable (as applied to circuit breakers). A qualifying term indicating that the circuit breaker does not have any adjustment to alter the value of current at which it will trip or the time required for its operation.

Setting (of circuit breakers). The value of current, time, or both, at which an adjustable circuit breaker is set to trip.

Concealed. Rendered inaccessible by the structure or finish of the building. Wires in concealed raceways are considered concealed, even though they may become accessible by withdrawing them.

Conductor, Bare. A conductor having no covering or electrical insulation whatsoever.

Conductor, Covered. A conductor encased within material of composition or thickness that is not recognized by this *Code* as electrical insulation.

Conductor, Insulated. A conductor encased within material of composition and thickness that is recognized by this *Code* as electrical insulation.

Conduit Body. A separate portion of a conduit or tubing system that provides access through a removable cover(s) to the interior of the system at a junction of two or more sections of the system or at a terminal point of the system.

Boxes such as FS and FD or larger cast or sheet metal boxes are not classified as conduit bodies.

Connector, Pressure (Solderless). A device that establishes a connection between two or more conductors or between one or more conductors and a terminal by means of mechanical pressure and without the use of solder.

Continuous Load. A load where the maximum current is expected to continue for 3 hours or more.

Controller. A device or group of devices that serves to govern, in some predetermined manner, the electric power delivered to the apparatus to which it is connected.

Cooking Unit, Counter-Mounted. A cooking appliance designed for mounting in or on a counter and consisting of one or more heating elements, internal wiring, and built-in or mountable controls.

Copper-Clad Aluminum Conductors. Conductors drawn from a copper-clad aluminum rod with the copper metallurgically bonded to an aluminum core. The copper forms a minimum of 10 percent of the cross-sectional area of a solid conductor or each strand of a stranded conductor.

Cutout Box. An enclosure designed for surface mounting that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the box proper.

Dead Front. Without live parts exposed to a person on the operating side of the equipment.

Demand Factor. The ratio of the maximum demand of a system, or part of a system, to the total connected load of a system or the part of the system under consideration.

Device. A unit of an electrical system that is intended to carry but not utilize electric energy.

Disconnecting Means. A device, or group of devices, or other means by which the conductors of a circuit can be disconnected from their source of supply.

Dusttight. Constructed so that dust will not enter the enclosing case under specified test conditions.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-39

Duty, Continuous. Operation at a substantially constant load for an indefinitely long time.

Duty, Intermittent. Operation for alternate intervals of (1) load and no load; or (2) load and rest; or (3) load, no load, and rest.

Duty, Periodic. Intermittent operation in which the load conditions are regularly recurrent.

Duty, Short-Time. Operation at a substantially constant load for a short and definite, specified time.

Duty, Varying. Operation at loads, and for intervals of time, both of which may be subject to wide variation.

Dwelling Unit. One or more rooms for the use of one or more persons as a housekeeping unit with space for eating, living, and sleeping, and permanent provisions for cooking and sanitation.

Dwelling, One-Family. A building that consists solely of one dwelling unit.

Dwelling, Two-Family. A building that consists solely of two dwelling units.

Dwelling, Multifamily. A building that contains three or more dwelling units.

Electric Sign. A fixed, stationary, or portable self-contained, electrically illuminated utilization equipment with words or symbols designed to convey information or attract attention.

Enclosed. Surrounded by a case, housing, fence, or wall(s) that prevents persons from accidentally contacting energized parts.

Enclosure. The case or housing of apparatus, or the fence or walls surrounding an installation to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts or to protect the equipment from physical damage.

FPN: See Table 430.91 for examples of enclosure types.

Energized. Electrically connected to a source of voltage.

Equipment. A general term including material, fittings, devices, appliances, luminaires (fixtures), apparatus, and the like used as a part of, or in connection with, an electrical installation.

Explosionproof Apparatus. Apparatus enclosed in a case that is capable of withstanding an explosion of a specified gas or vapor that may occur within it and of preventing the ignition of a specified gas or vapor surrounding the enclosure by sparks, flashes, or explosion of the gas or vapor within, and that operates at such an external temperature that a surrounding flammable atmosphere will not be ignited thereby.

FPN: For further information, see ANSI/UL 1203-1999, *Explosion-Proof and Dust-Ignition-Proof Electrical Equipment for Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.*

Exposed (as applied to live parts). Capable of being inadvertently touched or approached nearer than a safe distance by a person. It is applied to parts that are not suitably guarded, isolated, or insulated.

Exposed (as applied to wiring methods). On or attached to the surface or behind panels designed to allow access.

Externally Operable. Capable of being operated without exposing the operator to contact with live parts.

Feeder. All circuit conductors between the service equipment, the source of a separately derived system, or other power supply source and the final branch-circuit overcurrent device.

Festoon Lighting. A string of outdoor lights that is suspended between two points.

Fitting. An accessory such as a locknut, bushing, or other part of a wiring system that is intended primarily to perform a mechanical rather than an electrical function.

Garage. A building or portion of a building in which one or more self-propelled vehicles can be kept for use, sale, storage, rental, repair, exhibition, or demonstration purposes.

FPN: For commercial garages, repair and storage, see Article 511.

Ground. A conducting connection, whether intentional or accidental, between an electrical circuit or equipment and the earth or to some conducting body that serves in place of the earth.

Grounded. Connected to earth or to some conducting body that serves in place of the earth.

Grounded, Effectively. Intentionally connected to earth through a ground connection or connections of sufficiently low impedance and having sufficient current-carrying capacity to prevent the buildup of voltages that may result in undue hazards to connected equipment or to persons.

Grounded Conductor. A system or circuit conductor that is intentionally grounded.

Grounding Conductor. A conductor used to connect equipment or the grounded circuit of a wiring system to a grounding electrode or electrodes.

Grounding Conductor, Equipment. The conductor used to connect the non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways, and other enclosures to the system grounded conductor, the grounding electrode conductor, or both, at the service equipment or at the source of a separately derived system.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-40

Grounding Electrode Conductor. The conductor used to connect the grounding electrode(s) to the equipment grounding conductor, to the grounded conductor, or to both, at the service, at each building or structure where supplied from a common service, or at the source of a separately derived system.

Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter. A device intended for the protection of personnel that functions to de-energize a circuit or portion thereof within an established period of time when a current to ground exceeds the values established for a Class A device.

FPN: Class A ground-fault circuit interrupters trip when the current to ground has a value in the range of 4 mA to 6 mA. For further information, see UL 943, *Standard for Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupters.*

Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment. A system intended to provide protection of equipment from damaging line-to-ground fault currents by operating to cause a disconnecting means to open all ungrounded conductors of the faulted circuit. This protection is provided at current levels less than those required to protect conductors from damage through the operation of a supply circuit overcurrent device.

Guarded. Covered, shielded, fenced, enclosed, or otherwise protected by means of suitable covers, casings, barriers, rails, screens, mats, or platforms to remove the likelihood of approach or contact by persons or objects to a point of danger.

Hoistway. Any shaftway, hatchway, well hole, or other vertical opening or space in which an elevator or dumbwaiter is designed to operate.

Identified (as applied to equipment). Recognizable as suitable for the specific purpose, function, use, environment, application, and so forth, where described in a particular *Code* requirement.

FPN: Some examples of ways to determine suitability of equipment for a specific purpose, environment, or application include investigations by a qualified testing laboratory (listing and labeling), an inspection agency, or other organizations concerned with product evaluation.

In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight). Where this *Code* specifies that one equipment shall be "in sight from," "within sight from," or "within sight," and so forth, of another equipment, the specified equipment is to be visible and not more than 15 m (50 ft) distant from the other.

Interrupting Rating. The highest current at rated voltage that a device is intended to interrupt under standard test conditions.

FPN: Equipment intended to interrupt current at other than fault levels may have its interrupting rating implied in other ratings, such as horsepower or locked rotor current.

Isolated (as applied to location). Not readily accessible to persons unless special means for access are used.

Labeled. Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

Lighting Outlet. An outlet intended for the direct connection of a lampholder, a luminaire (lighting fixture), or a pendant cord terminating in a lampholder.

Listed. Equipment, materials, or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states that the equipment, material, or services either meets appropriate designated standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

FPN: The means for identifying listed equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation, some of which do not recognize equipment as listed unless it is also labeled. Use of the system employed by the listing organization allows the authority having jurisdiction to identify a listed product.

Live Parts. Energized conductive components.

Location, Damp. Locations protected from weather and not subject to saturation with water or other liquids but subject to moderate degrees of moisture. Examples of such locations include partially protected locations under canopies, marquees, roofed open porches, and like locations, and interior locations subject to moderate degrees of moisture, such as some basements, some barns, and some cold-storage warehouses.

Location, Dry. A location not normally subject to dampness or wetness. A location classified as dry may be temporarily subject to dampness or wetness, as in the case of a building under construction.

Location, Wet. Installations under ground or in concrete slabs or masonry in direct contact with the earth; in locations subject to saturation with water or other liquids, such as vehicle washing areas; and in unprotected locations exposed to weather.

Luminaire. A complete lighting unit consisting of a lamp or lamps together with the parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect the lamps and ballast (where applicable), and to connect the lamps to the power supply.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-41

Metal-Enclosed Power Switchgear. A switchgear assembly completely enclosed on all sides and top with sheet metal (except for ventilating openings and inspection windows) containing primary power circuit switching, interrupting devices, or both, with buses and connections. The assembly may include control and auxiliary devices. Access to the interior of the enclosure is provided by doors, removable covers, or both.

Motor Control Center. An assembly of one or more enclosed sections having a common power bus and principally containing motor control units.

Multioutlet Assembly. A type of surface, flush, or freestanding raceway designed to hold conductors and receptacles, assembled in the field or at the factory.

Nonautomatic. Action requiring personal intervention for its control. As applied to an electric controller, nonautomatic control does not necessarily imply a manual controller, but only that personal intervention is necessary.

Nonincendive Circuit. A circuit, other than field wiring, in which any arc or thermal effect produced under intended operating conditions of the equipment is not capable, under specified test conditions, of igniting the flammable gas–air, vapor–air, or dust–air mixture.

FPN: For test conditions, see ANSI/ISA-S12.12-1994, *Nonincendive Electrical Equipment for Use in Class I and II, Division 2 and Class III, Divisions 1 and 2 Hazardous (Classified) Locations.*

Nonincendive Field Wiring. Wiring that enters or leaves an equipment enclosure and, under normal operating conditions of the equipment, is not capable, due to arcing or thermal effects, of igniting the flammable gas–air, vapor–air, or dust–air mixture. Normal operation includes opening, shorting, or grounding the field wiring.

Nonlinear Load. A load where the wave shape of the steady-state current does not follow the wave shape of the applied voltage.

FPN: Electronic equipment, electronic/electric-discharge lighting, adjustable-speed drive systems, and similar equipment may be nonlinear loads.

Outlet. A point on the wiring system at which current is taken to supply utilization equipment.

Outline Lighting. An arrangement of incandescent lamps or electric-discharge lighting to outline or call attention to certain features such as the shape of a building or the decoration of a window.

Overcurrent. Any current in excess of the rated current of equipment or the ampacity of a conductor. It may result from overload, short circuit, or ground fault.

FPN: A current in excess of rating may be accommodated by certain equipment and conductors for a given set of conditions. Therefore the rules for overcurrent protection are specific for particular situations.

Overload. Operation of equipment in excess of normal, full-load rating, or of a conductor in excess of rated ampacity that, when it persists for a sufficient length of time, would cause damage or dangerous overheating. A fault, such as a short circuit or ground fault, is not an overload.

Panelboard. A single panel or group of panel units designed for assembly in the form of a single panel, including buses and automatic overcurrent devices, and equipped with or without switches for the control of light, heat, or power circuits; designed to be placed in a cabinet or cutout box placed in or against a wall, partition, or other support; and accessible only from the front.

Plenum. A compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.

Power Outlet. An enclosed assembly that may include receptacles, circuit breakers, fuseholders, fused switches, buses, and watt-hour meter mounting means; intended to supply and control power to mobile homes, recreational vehicles, park trailers, or boats or to serve as a means for distributing power required to operate mobile or temporarily installed equipment.

Premises Wiring (System). That interior and exterior wiring, including power, lighting, control, and signal circuit wiring together with all their associated hardware, fittings, and wiring devices, both permanently and temporarily installed, that extends from the service point or source of power, such as a battery, a solar photovoltaic system, or a generator, transformer, or converter windings, to the outlet(s). Such wiring does not include wiring internal to appliances, luminaires (fixtures), motors, controllers, motor control centers, and similar equipment.

Qualified Person. One who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of the electrical equipment and installations and has received safety training on the hazards involved.

Raceway. An enclosed channel of metal or nonmetallic materials designed expressly for holding wires, cables, or busbars, with additional functions as permitted in this *Code*. Raceways include, but are not limited to, rigid metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, intermediate metal conduit, liquidtight flexible conduit, flexible metallic tubing, flexible metal conduit, electrical nonmetallic tubing, electrical metallic tubing, underfloor raceways, cellular concrete floor raceways, cellular metal floor raceways, surface raceways, wireways, and busways.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-42

Rainproof. Constructed, protected, or treated so as to prevent rain from interfering with the successful operation of the apparatus under specified test conditions.

Raintight. Constructed or protected so that exposure to a beating rain will not result in the entrance of water under specified test conditions.

Receptacle. A receptacle is a contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of an attachment plug. A single receptacle is a single contact device with no other contact device on the same yoke. A multiple receptacle is two or more contact devices on the same yoke.

Receptacle Outlet. An outlet where one or more receptacles are installed.

Remote-Control Circuit. Any electric circuit that controls any other circuit through a relay or an equivalent device.

Sealable Equipment. Equipment enclosed in a case or cabinet that is provided with a means of sealing or locking so that live parts cannot be made accessible without opening the enclosure. The equipment may or may not be operable without opening the enclosure.

Separately Derived System. A premises wiring system whose power is derived from a battery, from a solar photovoltaic system, or from a generator, transformer, or converter windings, and that has no direct electrical connection, including a solidly connected grounded circuit conductor, to supply conductors originating in another system.

Service. The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

Service Cable. Service conductors made up in the form of a cable.

Service Conductors. The conductors from the service point to the service disconnecting means.

Service Drop. The overhead service conductors from the last pole or other aerial support to and including the splices, if any, connecting to the service-entrance conductors at the building or other structure.

Service-Entrance Conductors, Overhead System. The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and a point usually outside the building, clear of building walls, where joined by tap or splice to the service drop.

Service-Entrance Conductors, Underground System. The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and the point of connection to the service lateral.

FPN: Where service equipment is located outside the building walls, there may be no service-entrance conductors, or they may be entirely outside the building.

Service Equipment. The necessary equipment, usually consisting of a circuit breaker(s) or switch(es) and fuse(s) and their accessories, connected to the load end of service conductors to a building or other structure, or an otherwise designated area, and intended to constitute the main control and cutoff of the supply.

Service Lateral. The underground service conductors between the street main, including any risers at a pole or other structure or from transformers, and the first point of connection to the service-entrance conductors in a terminal box or meter or other enclosure, inside or outside the building wall. Where there is no terminal box, meter, or other enclosure, the point of connection is considered to be the point of entrance of the service conductors into the building.

Service Point. The point of connection between the facilities of the serving utility and the premises wiring.

Show Window. Any window used or designed to be used for the display of goods or advertising material, whether it is fully or partly enclosed or entirely open at the rear and whether or not it has a platform raised higher than the street floor level.

Signaling Circuit. Any electric circuit that energizes signaling equipment.

Solar Photovoltaic System. The total components and subsystems that, in combination, convert solar energy into electrical energy suitable for connection to a utilization load.

Special Permission. The written consent of the authority having jurisdiction.

Structure. That which is built or constructed.

Switch, Bypass Isolation. A manually operated device used in conjunction with a transfer switch to provide a means of directly connecting load conductors to a power source and of disconnecting the transfer switch.

Switch, General-Use. A switch intended for use in general distribution and branch circuits. It is rated in amperes, and it is capable of interrupting its rated current at its rated voltage.

Switch, General-Use Snap. A form of general-use switch constructed so that it can be installed in device boxes or on box covers, or otherwise used in conjunction with wiring systems recognized by this *Code*.

Switch, Isolating. A switch intended for isolating an electric circuit from the source of power. It has no interrupting rating, and it is intended to be operated only after the circuit has been opened by some other means.

Switch, Motor-Circuit. A switch rated in horsepower that is capable of interrupting the maximum operating overload

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-43

current of a motor of the same horsepower rating as the switch at the rated voltage.

Switch, Transfer. An automatic or nonautomatic device for transferring one or more load conductor connections from one power source to another.

Switchboard. A large single panel, frame, or assembly of panels on which are mounted on the face, back, or both, switches, overcurrent and other protective devices, buses, and usually instruments. Switchboards are generally accessible from the rear as well as from the front and are not intended to be installed in cabinets.

Thermal Protector (as applied to motors). A protective device for assembly as an integral part of a motor or motor-compressor that, when properly applied, protects the motor against dangerous overheating due to overload and failure to start.

FPN: The thermal protector may consist of one or more sensing elements integral with the motor or motor-compressor and an external control device.

Thermally Protected (as applied to motors). The words *Thermally Protected* appearing on the nameplate of a motor or motor-compressor indicate that the motor is provided with a thermal protector.

Utilization Equipment. Equipment that utilizes electric energy for electronic, electromechanical, chemical, heating, lighting, or similar purposes.

Ventilated. Provided with a means to permit circulation of air sufficient to remove an excess of heat, fumes, or vapors.

Volatile Flammable Liquid. A flammable liquid having a flash point below 38°C (100°F), or a flammable liquid whose temperature is above its flash point, or a Class II combustible liquid that has a vapor pressure not exceeding 276 kPa (40 psia) at 38°C (100°F) and whose temperature is above its flash point.

Voltage (of a circuit). The greatest root-mean-square (rms) (effective) difference of potential between any two conductors of the circuit concerned.

FPN: Some systems, such as 3-phase 4-wire, single-phase 3-wire, and 3-wire direct current, may have various circuits of various voltages.

Voltage, Nominal. A nominal value assigned to a circuit or system for the purpose of conveniently designating its voltage class (e.g., 120/240 volts, 480Y/277 volts, 600 volts).

The actual voltage at which a circuit operates can vary from the nominal within a range that permits satisfactory operation of equipment.

FPN: See ANSI C84.1-1995, *Voltage Ratings for Electric Power Systems and Equipment (60 Hz).*

Voltage to Ground. For grounded circuits, the voltage between the given conductor and that point or conductor of the circuit that is grounded; for ungrounded circuits, the greatest voltage between the given conductor and any other conductor of the circuit.

Watertight. Constructed so that moisture will not enter the enclosure under specified test conditions.

Weatherproof. Constructed or protected so that exposure to the weather will not interfere with successful operation.

FPN: Rainproof, raintight, or watertight equipment can fulfill the requirements for weatherproof where varying weather conditions other than wetness, such as snow, ice, dust, or temperature extremes, are not a factor.

II. Over 600 Volts, Nominal

Whereas the preceding definitions are intended to apply wherever the terms are used throughout this *Code*, the following definitions are applicable only to parts of the article specifically covering installations and equipment operating at over 600 volts, nominal.

Electronically Actuated Fuse. An overcurrent protective device that generally consists of a control module that provides current sensing, electronically derived time–current characteristics, energy to initiate tripping, and an interrupting module that interrupts current when an overcurrent occurs. Electronically actuated fuses may or may not operate in a current-limiting fashion, depending on the type of control selected.

Fuse. An overcurrent protective device with a circuit-opening fusible part that is heated and severed by the passage of overcurrent through it.

FPN: A fuse comprises all the parts that form a unit capable of performing the prescribed functions. It may or may not be the complete device necessary to connect it into an electrical circuit.

Controlled Vented Power Fuse. A fuse with provision for controlling discharge circuit interruption such that no solid material may be exhausted into the surrounding atmosphere.

FPN: The fuse is designed so that discharged gases will not ignite or damage insulation in the path of the discharge or propagate a flashover to or between grounded members or conduction members in the path of the discharge where the distance between the vent and such insulation or conduction members conforms to manufacturer's recommendations.

Expulsion Fuse Unit (Expulsion Fuse). A vented fuse unit in which the expulsion effect of gases produced by the arc and lining of the fuseholder, either alone or aided by a spring, extinguishes the arc.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-44

Nonvented Power Fuse. A fuse without intentional provision for the escape of arc gases, liquids, or solid particles to the atmosphere during circuit interruption.

Power Fuse Unit. A vented, nonvented, or controlled vented fuse unit in which the arc is extinguished by being drawn through solid material, granular material, or liquid, either alone or aided by a spring.

Vented Power Fuse. A fuse with provision for the escape of arc gases, liquids, or solid particles to the surrounding atmosphere during circuit interruption.

Multiple Fuse. An assembly of two or more single-pole fuses.

Switching Device. A device designed to close, open, or both, one or more electric circuits.

Circuit Breaker. A switching device capable of making, carrying, and interrupting currents under normal circuit conditions, and also of making, carrying for a specified time, and interrupting currents under specified abnormal circuit conditions, such as those of short circuit.

Cutout. An assembly of a fuse support with either a fuseholder, fuse carrier, or disconnecting blade. The fuseholder or fuse carrier may include a conducting element (fuse link) or may act as the disconnecting blade by the inclusion of a nonfusible member.

Disconnecting (or Isolating) Switch (Disconnector, Isolator). A mechanical switching device used for isolating a circuit or equipment from a source of power.

Disconnecting Means. A device, group of devices, or other means whereby the conductors of a circuit can be disconnected from their source of supply.

Interrupter Switch. A switch capable of making, carrying, and interrupting specified currents.

Oil Cutout (Oil-Filled Cutout). A cutout in which all or part of the fuse support and its fuse link or disconnecting blade is mounted in oil with complete immersion of the contacts and the fusible portion of the conducting element (fuse link) so that arc interruption by severing of the fuse link or by opening of the contacts will occur under oil.

Oil Switch. A switch having contacts that operate under oil (or askarel or other suitable liquid).

Regulator Bypass Switch. A specific device or combination of devices designed to bypass a regulator.

ARTICLE 110
Requirements for Electrical Installations

I. General

110.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements for the examination and approval, installation and use, access to and spaces about electrical conductors and equipment, and tunnel installations.

110.2 Approval. The conductors and equipment required or permitted by this *Code* shall be acceptable only if approved.

FPN: See 90.7, Examination of Equipment for Safety, and 110.3, Examination, Identification, Installation, and Use of Equipment. See definitions of *Approved, Identified, Labeled,* and *Listed.*

110.3 Examination, Identification, Installation, and Use of Equipment.

(A) Examination. In judging equipment, considerations such as the following shall be evaluated:

(1) Suitability for installation and use in conformity with the provisions of this *Code*

FPN: Suitability of equipment use may be identified by a description marked on or provided with a product to identify the suitability of the product for a specific purpose, environment, or application. Suitability of equipment may be evidenced by listing or labeling.

(2) Mechanical strength and durability, including, for parts designed to enclose and protect other equipment, the adequacy of the protection thus provided
(3) Wire-bending and connection space
(4) Electrical insulation
(5) Heating effects under normal conditions of use and also under abnormal conditions likely to arise in service
(6) Arcing effects
(7) Classification by type, size, voltage, current capacity, and specific use
(8) Other factors that contribute to the practical safeguarding of persons using or likely to come in contact with the equipment

(B) Installation and Use. Listed or labeled equipment shall be installed and used in accordance with any instructions included in the listing or labeling.

110.4 Voltages. Throughout this *Code*, the voltage considered shall be that at which the circuit operates. The voltage rating of electrical equipment shall not be less than the nominal voltage of a circuit to which it is connected.

110.5 Conductors. Conductors normally used to carry current shall be of copper unless otherwise provided in this *Code*. Where the conductor material is not specified, the material and the sizes given in this *Code* shall apply to copper conductors. Where other materials are used, the size shall be changed accordingly.

FPN: For aluminum and copper-clad aluminum conductors, see 310.15.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-45

110.6 Conductor Sizes. Conductor sizes are expressed in American Wire Gage (AWG) or in circular mils.

110.7 Insulation Integrity. Completed wiring installations shall be free from short circuits and from grounds other than as required or permitted in Article 250.

110.8 Wiring Methods. Only wiring methods recognized as suitable are included in this *Code*. The recognized methods of wiring shall be permitted to be installed in any type of building or occupancy, except as otherwise provided in this *Code*.

110.9 Interrupting Rating. Equipment intended to interrupt current at fault levels shall have an interrupting rating sufficient for the nominal circuit voltage and the current that is available at the line terminals of the equipment.

Equipment intended to interrupt current at other than fault levels shall have an interrupting rating at nominal circuit voltage sufficient for the current that must be interrupted.

110.10 Circuit Impedance and Other Characteristics. The overcurrent protective devices, the total impedance, the component short-circuit current ratings, and other characteristics of the circuit to be protected shall be selected and coordinated to permit the circuit-protective devices used to clear a fault to do so without extensive damage to the electrical components of the circuit. This fault shall be assumed to be either between two or more of the circuit conductors or between any circuit conductor and the grounding conductor or enclosing metal raceway. Listed products applied in accordance with their listing shall be considered to meet the requirements of this section.

110.11 Deteriorating Agents. Unless identified for use in the operating environment, no conductors or equipment shall be located in damp or wet locations; where exposed to gases, fumes, vapors, liquids, or other agents that have a deteriorating effect on the conductors or equipment; or where exposed to excessive temperatures.

FPN No. 1: See 300.6 for protection against corrosion.

FPN No. 2: Some cleaning and lubricating compounds can cause severe deterioration of many plastic materials used for insulating and structural applications in equipment.

Equipment identified only as "dry locations," "Type 1," or "indoor use only" shall be protected against permanent damage from the weather during building construction.

110.12 Mechanical Execution of Work. Electrical equipment shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner.

(A) Unused Openings. Unused cable or raceway openings in boxes, raceways, auxiliary gutters, cabinets, cutout boxes, meter socket enclosures, equipment cases, or housings shall be effectively closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to the wall of the equipment. Where metallic plugs or plates are used with nonmetallic enclosures, they shall be recessed at least 6 mm (¼ in.) from the outer surface of the enclosure.

(B) Subsurface Enclosures. Conductors shall be racked to provide ready and safe access in underground and subsurface enclosures into which persons enter for installation and maintenance.

(C) Integrity of Electrical Equipment and Connections. Internal parts of electrical equipment, including busbars, wiring terminals, insulators, and other surfaces, shall not be damaged or contaminated by foreign materials such as paint, plaster, cleaners, abrasives, or corrosive residues. There shall be no damaged parts that may adversely affect safe operation or mechanical strength of the equipment such as parts that are broken; bent; cut; or deteriorated by corrosion, chemical action, or overheating.

110.13 Mounting and Cooling of Equipment.

(A) Mounting. Electrical equipment shall be firmly secured to the surface on which it is mounted. Wooden plugs driven into holes in masonry, concrete, plaster, or similar materials shall not be used.

(B) Cooling. Electrical equipment that depends on the natural circulation of air and convection principles for cooling of exposed surfaces shall be installed so that room airflow over such surfaces is not prevented by walls or by adjacent installed equipment. For equipment designed for floor mounting, clearance between top surfaces and adjacent surfaces shall be provided to dissipate rising warm air.

Electrical equipment provided with ventilating openings shall be installed so that walls or other obstructions do not prevent the free circulation of air through the equipment.

110.14 Electrical Connections. Because of different characteristics of dissimilar metals, devices such as pressure terminal or pressure splicing connectors and soldering lugs shall be identified for the material of the conductor and shall be properly installed and used. Conductors of dissimilar metals shall not be intermixed in a terminal or splicing connector where physical contact occurs between dissimilar conductors (such as copper and aluminum, copper and copper-clad aluminum, or aluminum and copper-clad aluminum), unless the device is identified for the purpose and conditions of use. Materials such as solder, fluxes, inhibitors, and compounds, where employed, shall be suitable for

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-46

the use and shall be of a type that will not adversely affect the conductors, installation, or equipment.

FPN: Many terminations and equipment are marked with a tightening torque.

(A) Terminals. Connection of conductors to terminal parts shall ensure a thoroughly good connection without damaging the conductors and shall be made by means of pressure connectors (including set-screw type), solder lugs, or splices to flexible leads. Connection by means of wire-binding screws or studs and nuts that have upturned lugs or the equivalent shall be permitted for 10 AWG or smaller conductors.

Terminals for more than one conductor and terminals used to connect aluminum shall be so identified.

(B) Splices. Conductors shall be spliced or joined with splicing devices identified for the use or by brazing, welding, or soldering with a fusible metal or alloy. Soldered splices shall first be spliced or joined so as to be mechanically and electrically secure without solder and then be soldered. All splices and joints and the free ends of conductors shall be covered with an insulation equivalent to that of the conductors or with an insulating device identified for the purpose.

Wire connectors or splicing means installed on conductors for direct burial shall be listed for such use.

(C) Temperature Limitations. The temperature rating associated with the ampacity of a conductor shall be selected and coordinated so as not to exceed the lowest temperature rating of any connected termination, conductor, or device. Conductors with temperature ratings higher than specified for terminations shall be permitted to be used for ampacity adjustment, correction, or both.

(1) Equipment Provisions. The determination of termination provisions of equipment shall be based on 110.14(C)(1)(a) or (C)(1)(b). Unless the equipment is listed and marked otherwise, conductor ampacities used in determining equipment termination provisions shall be based on Table 310.16 as appropriately modified by 310.15(B)(1) through (6).

(a) Termination provisions of equipment for circuits rated 100 amperes or less, or marked for 14 AWG through 1 AWG conductors, shall be used only for one of the following:

(1) Conductors rated 60°C (140°F)
(2) Conductors with higher temperature ratings, provided the ampacity of such conductors is determined based on the 60°C (140°F) ampacity of the conductor size used
(3) Conductors with higher temperature ratings if the equipment is listed and identified for use with such conductors
(4) For motors marked with design letters B, C, D, or E, conductors having an insulation rating of 75°C (167°F) or higher shall be permitted to be used provided the ampacity of such conductors does not exceed the 75°C (167°F) ampacity.

(b) Termination provisions of equipment for circuits rated over 100 amperes, or marked for conductors larger than 1 AWG, shall be used only for one of the following:

(1) Conductors rated 75°C (167°F)
(2) Conductors with higher temperature ratings, provided the ampacity of such conductors does not exceed the 75°C (167°F) ampacity of the conductor size used, or up to their ampacity if the equipment is listed and identified for use with such conductors

(2) Separate Connector Provisions. Separately installed pressure connectors shall be used with conductors at the ampacities not exceeding the ampacity at the listed and identified temperature rating of the connector.

FPN: With respect to 110.14(C)(1) and (2), equipment markings or listing information may additionally restrict the sizing and temperature ratings of connected conductors.

110.15 High-Leg Marking. On a 4-wire, delta-connected system where the midpoint of one phase winding is grounded to supply lighting and similar loads, the conductor or busbar having the higher phase voltage to ground shall be durably and permanently marked by an outer finish that is orange in color or by other effective means. Such identification shall be placed at each point on the system where a connection is made if the grounded conductor is also present.

110.16 Flash Protection. Switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and motor control centers that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall be field marked to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc flash hazards. The marking shall be located so as to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

FPN No. 1: NFPA 70E-2000, *Electrical Safety Requirements for Employee Workplaces*, provides assistance in determining severity of potential exposure, planning safe work practices, and selecting personal protective equipment.

FPN No. 2: ANSI Z535.4-1998, *Product Safety Signs and Labels*, provides guidelines for the design of safety signs and labels for application to products.

110.18 Arcing Parts. Parts of electric equipment that in ordinary operation produce arcs, sparks, flames, or molten metal shall be enclosed or separated and isolated from all combustible material.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-47

FPN: For hazardous (classified) locations, see Articles 500 through 517. For motors, see 430.14.

110.19 Light and Power from Railway Conductors. Circuits for lighting and power shall not be connected to any system that contains trolley wires with a ground return.

Exception: Such circuit connections shall be permitted in car houses, power houses, or passenger and freight stations operated in connection with electric railways.

110.21 Marking. The manufacturer's name, trademark, or other descriptive marking by which the organization responsible for the product can be identified shall be placed on all electric equipment. Other markings that indicate voltage, current, wattage, or other ratings shall be provided as specified elsewhere in this *Code*. The marking shall be of sufficient durability to withstand the environment involved.

110.22 Identification of Disconnecting Means. Each disconnecting means shall be legibly marked to indicate its purpose unless located and arranged so the purpose is evident. The marking shall be of sufficient durability to withstand the environment involved.

Where circuit breakers or fuses are applied in compliance with the series combination ratings marked on the equipment by the manufacturer, the equipment enclosure(s) shall be legibly marked in the field to indicate the equipment has been applied with a series combination rating. The marking shall be readily visible and state the following:

CAUTION — SERIES COMBINATION SYSTEM
RATED ____ AMPERES. IDENTIFIED
REPLACEMENT COMPONENTS REQUIRED.

FPN: See Section 240.86(A) for interrupting rating marking for end-use equipment.

110.23 Current Transformers. Unused current transformers associated with potentially energized circuits shall be short-circuited.

II. 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less

110.26 Spaces About Electrical Equipment. Sufficient access and working space shall be provided and maintained about all electric equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment. Enclosures housing electrical apparatus that are controlled by lock and key shall be considered accessible to qualified persons.

(A) Working Space. Working space for equipment operating at 600 volts, nominal, or less to ground and likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall comply with the dimensions of 110.26(A)(1), (2), and (3) or as required or permitted elsewhere in this *Code*.

(1) Depth of Working Space. The depth of the working space in the direction of live parts shall not be less than that specified in Table 110.26(A)(1) unless the requirements of 110.26(A)(1)(a), (b), or (c) are met. Distances shall be measured from the exposed live parts or from the enclosure or opening if the live parts are enclosed.

Table 110.26(A)(1) Working Spaces

Nominal Voltage to Ground	Minimum Clear Distance		
	Condition 1	Condition 2	Condition 3
0–150	900 mm (3 ft)	900 mm (3 ft)	900 mm (3 ft)
151–600	900 mm (3 ft)	1 m (3½ ft)	1.2 m (4 ft)

Note: Where the conditions are as follows:
Condition 1 — Exposed live parts on one side and no live or grounded parts on the other side of the working space, or exposed live parts on both sides effectively guarded by suitable wood or other insulating materials. Insulated wire or insulated busbars operating at not over 300 volts to ground shall not be considered live parts.
Condition 2 — Exposed live parts on one side and grounded parts on the other side. Concrete, brick, or tile walls shall be considered as grounded.
Condition 3 — Exposed live parts on both sides of the work space (not guarded as provided in Condition 1) with the operator between.

(a) Dead-Front Assemblies. Working space shall not be required in the back or sides of assemblies, such as dead-front switchboards or motor control centers, where all connections and all renewable or adjustable parts, such as fuses or switches, are accessible from locations other than the back or sides. Where rear access is required to work on nonelectrical parts on the back of enclosed equipment, a minimum horizontal working space of 762 mm (30 in.) shall be provided.

(b) Low Voltage. By special permission, smaller working spaces shall be permitted where all uninsulated parts operate at not greater than 30 volts rms, 42 volts peak, or 60 volts dc.

(c) Existing Buildings. In existing buildings where electrical equipment is being replaced, Condition 2 working clearance shall be permitted between dead-front switchboards, panelboards, or motor control centers located across the aisle from each other where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that written procedures have been adopted to prohibit equipment on both sides of the aisle from being open at the same time and qualified persons who are authorized will service the installation.

(2) Width of Working Space. The width of the working space in front of the electric equipment shall be the width of the equipment or 750 mm (30 in.), whichever is greater.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-48

In all cases, the work space shall permit at least a 90 degree opening of equipment doors or hinged panels.

(3) Height of Working Space. The work space shall be clear and extend from the grade, floor, or platform to the height required by 110.26(E). Within the height requirements of this section, other equipment that is associated with the electrical installation and is located above or below the electrical equipment shall be permitted to extend not more than 150 mm (6 in.) beyond the front of the electrical equipment.

(B) Clear Spaces. Working space required by this section shall not be used for storage. When normally enclosed live parts are exposed for inspection or servicing, the working space, if in a passageway or general open space, shall be suitably guarded.

(C) Entrance to Working Space.

(1) Minimum Required. At least one entrance of sufficient area shall be provided to give access to working space about electrical equipment.

(2) Large Equipment. For equipment rated 1200 amperes or more and over 1.8 m (6 ft) wide that contains overcurrent devices, switching devices, or control devices, there shall be one entrance to the required working space not less than 610 mm (24 in.) wide and 2.0 m (6½ ft) high at each end of the working space. Where the entrance has a personnel door(s), the door(s) shall open in the direction of egress and be equipped with panic bars, pressure plates, or other devices that are normally latched but open under simple pressure.

A single entrance to the required working space shall be permitted where either of the conditions in 110.26(C)(2)(a) or (b) is met.

(a) Unobstructed Exit. Where the location permits a continuous and unobstructed way of exit travel, a single entrance to the working space shall be permitted.

(b) Extra Working Space. Where the depth of the working space is twice that required by 110.26(A)(1), a single entrance shall be permitted. It shall be located so that the distance from the equipment to the nearest edge of the entrance is not less than the minimum clear distance specified in Table 110.26(A)(1) for equipment operating at that voltage and in that condition.

(D) Illumination. Illumination shall be provided for all working spaces about service equipment, switchboards, panelboards, or motor control centers installed indoors. Additional lighting outlets shall not be required where the work space is illuminated by an adjacent light source or as permitted by 210.70(A)(1), Exception No. 1, for switched receptacles. In electrical equipment rooms, the illumination shall not be controlled by automatic means only.

(E) Headroom. The minimum headroom of working spaces about service equipment, switchboards, panelboards, or motor control centers shall be 2.0 m (6½ ft). Where the electrical equipment exceeds 2.0 m (6½ ft) in height, the minimum headroom shall not be less than the height of the equipment.

Exception: In existing dwelling units, service equipment or panelboards that do not exceed 200 amperes shall be permitted in spaces where the headroom is less than 2.0 m (6½ ft).

(F) Dedicated Equipment Space. All switchboards, panelboards, distribution boards, and motor control centers shall be located in dedicated spaces and protected from damage.

Exception: Control equipment that by its very nature or because of other rules of the Code must be adjacent to or within sight of its operating machinery shall be permitted in those locations.

(1) Indoor. Indoor installations shall comply with 110.26(F)(1)(a) through (d).

(a) Dedicated Electrical Space. The space equal to the width and depth of the equipment and extending from the floor to a height of 1.8 m (6 ft) above the equipment or to the structural ceiling, whichever is lower, shall be dedicated to the electrical installation. No piping, ducts, leak protection apparatus, or other equipment foreign to the electrical installation shall be located in this zone.

Exception: Suspended ceilings with removable panels shall be permitted within the 1.8-m (6-ft) zone.

(b) Foreign Systems. The area above the dedicated space required by 110.26(F)(1)(a) shall be permitted to contain foreign systems, provided protection is installed to avoid damage to the electrical equipment from condensation, leaks, or breaks in such foreign systems.

(c) Sprinkler Protection. Sprinkler protection shall be permitted for the dedicated space where the piping complies with this section.

(d) Suspended Ceilings. A dropped, suspended, or similar ceiling that does not add strength to the building structure shall not be considered a structural ceiling.

(2) Outdoor. Outdoor electrical equipment shall be installed in suitable enclosures and shall be protected from accidental contact by unauthorized personnel, or by vehicular traffic, or by accidental spillage or leakage from piping systems. The working clearance space shall include the zone described in 110.26(A). No architectural appurtenance or other equipment shall be located in this zone.

110.27 Guarding of Live Parts.

(A) Live Parts Guarded Against Accidental Contact. Except as elsewhere required or permitted by this *Code,*

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-49

live parts of electrical equipment operating at 50 volts or more shall be guarded against accidental contact by approved enclosures or by any of the following means:

(1) By location in a room, vault, or similar enclosure that is accessible only to qualified persons.
(2) By suitable permanent, substantial partitions or screens arranged so that only qualified persons have access to the space within reach of the live parts. Any openings in such partitions or screens shall be sized and located so that persons are not likely to come into accidental contact with the live parts or to bring conducting objects into contact with them.
(3) By location on a suitable balcony, gallery, or platform elevated and arranged so as to exclude unqualified persons.
(4) By elevation of 2.5 m (8 ft) or more above the floor or other working surface.

(B) Prevent Physical Damage. In locations where electric equipment is likely to be exposed to physical damage, enclosures or guards shall be so arranged and of such strength as to prevent such damage.

(C) Warning Signs. Entrances to rooms and other guarded locations that contain exposed live parts shall be marked with conspicuous warning signs forbidding unqualified persons to enter.

FPN: For motors, see 430.132 and 430.133. For over 600 volts, see 110.34.

III. Over 600 Volts, Nominal

110.30 General. Conductors and equipment used on circuits over 600 volts, nominal, shall comply with Part I of this article and with the following sections, which supplement or modify Part I. In no case shall the provisions of this part apply to equipment on the supply side of the service point.

110.31 Enclosure for Electrical Installations. Electrical installations in a vault, room, or closet or in an area surrounded by a wall, screen, or fence, access to which is controlled by lock and key or other approved means, shall be considered to be accessible to qualified persons only. The type of enclosure used in a given case shall be designed and constructed according to the nature and degree of the hazard(s) associated with the installation.

For installations other than equipment as described in 110.31(D), a wall, screen, or fence shall be used to enclose an outdoor electrical installation to deter access by persons who are not qualified. A fence shall not be less than 2.1 m (7 ft) in height or a combination of 1.8 m (6 ft) or more of fence fabric and a 300-mm (1-ft) or more extension utilizing three or more strands of barbed wire or equivalent. The distance from the fence to live parts shall be not less than given in Table 110.31.

Table 110.31 Minimum Distance from Fence to Live Parts

	Minimum Distance to Live Parts	
Nominal Voltage	**m**	**ft**
601–13,799	3.05	10
13,800–230,000	4.57	15
Over 230,000	5.49	18

Note: For clearances of conductors for specific system voltages and typical BIL ratings, see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code.*

FPN: See Article 450 for construction requirements for transformer vaults.

(A) Fire Resistivity of Electrical Vaults. The walls, roof, floors, and doorways of vaults containing conductors and equipment over 600 volts, nominal, shall be constructed of materials that have adequate structural strength for the conditions, with a minimum fire rating of 3 hours. The floors of vaults in contact with the earth shall be of concrete that is not less than 4 in. (102 mm) thick, but where the vault is constructed with a vacant space or other stories below it, the floor shall have adequate structural strength for the load imposed on it and a minimum fire resistance of 3 hours. For the purpose of this section, studs and wallboards shall not be considered acceptable.

(B) Indoor Installations.

(1) In Places Accessible to Unqualified Persons. Indoor electrical installations that are accessible to unqualified persons shall be made with metal-enclosed equipment. Metal-enclosed switchgear, unit substations, transformers, pull boxes, connection boxes, and other similar associated equipment shall be marked with appropriate caution signs. Openings in ventilated dry-type transformers or similar openings in other equipment shall be designed so that foreign objects inserted through these openings are deflected from energized parts.

(2) In Places Accessible to Qualified Persons Only. Indoor electrical installations considered accessible only to qualified persons in accordance with this section shall comply with 110.34, 110.36, and 490.24.

(C) *Outdoor Installations.*

(1) In Places Accessible to Unqualified Persons. Outdoor electrical installations that are open to unqualified persons shall comply with Article 225.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-50

FPN: For clearances of conductors for system voltages over 600 volts, nominal, see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code.*

(2) In Places Accessible to Qualified Persons Only. Outdoor electrical installations that have exposed live parts shall be accessible to qualified persons only in accordance with the first paragraph of this section and shall comply with 110.34, 110.36, and 490.24.

(D) Enclosed Equipment Accessible to Unqualified Persons. Ventilating or similar openings in equipment shall be designed so that foreign objects inserted through these openings are deflected from energized parts. Where exposed to physical damage from vehicular traffic, suitable guards shall be provided. Nonmetallic or metal-enclosed equipment located outdoors and accessible to the general public shall be designed so that exposed nuts or bolts cannot be readily removed, permitting access to live parts. Where nonmetallic or metal-enclosed equipment is accessible to the general public and the bottom of the enclosure is less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above the floor or grade level, the enclosure door or hinged cover shall be kept locked. Doors and covers of enclosures used solely as pull boxes, splice boxes, or junction boxes shall be locked, bolted, or screwed on. Underground box covers that weigh over 45.4 kg (100 lb) shall be considered as meeting this requirement.

110.32 Work Space About Equipment. Sufficient space shall be provided and maintained about electric equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment. Where energized parts are exposed, the minimum clear work space shall not be less than 2.0 m (6½ ft) high (measured vertically from the floor or platform) or less than 900 mm (3 ft) wide (measured parallel to the equipment). The depth shall be as required in 110.34(A). In all cases, the work space shall permit at least a 90 degree opening of doors or hinged panels.

110.33 Entrance and Access to Work Space.

(A) Entrance. At least one entrance not less than 610 mm (24 in.) wide and 2.0 m (6½ ft) high shall be provided to give access to the working space about electric equipment. Where the entrance has a personnel door(s), the door(s) shall open in the direction of egress and be equipped with panic bars, pressure plates, or other devices that are normally latched but open under simple pressure.

(1) Large Equipment. On switchboard and control panels exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) in width, there shall be one entrance at each end of the equipment. A single entrance to the required working space shall be permitted where either of the conditions in 110.33(A)(1)(a) or (b) is met.

(a) Unobstructed Exit. Where the location permits a continuous and unobstructed way of exit travel, a single entrance to the working space shall be permitted.

(b) Extra Working Space. Where the depth of the working space is twice that required by 110.34(A), a single entrance shall be permitted. It shall be located so that the distance from the equipment to the nearest edge of the entrance is not less than the minimum clear distance specified in Table 110.34(A) for equipment operating at that voltage and in that condition.

(2) Guarding. Where bare energized parts at any voltage or insulated energized parts above 600 volts, nominal, to ground are located adjacent to such entrance, they shall be suitably guarded.

(B) Access. Permanent ladders or stairways shall be provided to give safe access to the working space around electric equipment installed on platforms, balconies, or mezzanine floors or in attic or roof rooms or spaces.

110.34 Work Space and Guarding.

(A) Working Space. Except as elsewhere required or permitted in this *Code,* the minimum clear working space in the direction of access to live parts of electrical equipment shall not be less than specified in Table 110.34(A). Distances shall be measured from the live parts, if such are exposed, or from the enclosure front or opening if such are enclosed.

Exception: Working space shall not be required in back of equipment such as dead-front switchboards or control assemblies where there are no renewable or adjustable parts (such as fuses or switches) on the back and where all connections are accessible from locations other than the back. Where rear access is required to work on de-energized parts on the back of enclosed equipment, a minimum working space of 750 mm (30 in.) horizontally shall be provided.

(B) Separation from Low-Voltage Equipment. Where switches, cutouts, or other equipment operating at 600 volts, nominal, or less are installed in a room or enclosure where there are exposed live parts or exposed wiring operating at over 600 volts, nominal, the high-voltage equipment shall be effectively separated from the space occupied by the low-voltage equipment by a suitable partition, fence, or screen.

Exception: Switches or other equipment operating at 600 volts, nominal, or less and serving only equipment within the high-voltage vault, room, or enclosure shall be permitted to be installed in the high-voltage enclosure, room, or vault if accessible to qualified persons only.

(C) Locked Rooms or Enclosures. The entrances to all buildings, rooms, or enclosures containing exposed live parts or exposed conductors operating at over 600 volts, nominal, shall be kept locked unless such entrances are under the observation of a qualified person at all times.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-51

Table 110.34(A) Minimum Depth of Clear Working Space at Electrical Equipment

Nominal Voltage to Ground	Minimum Clear Distance		
	Condition 1	Condition 2	Condition 3
601–2500 V	900 mm (3 ft)	1.2 m (4 ft)	1.5 m (5 ft)
2501–9000 V	1.2 m (4 ft)	1.5 m (5 ft)	1.8 m (6 ft)
9001–25,000 V	1.5 m (5 ft)	1.8 m (6 ft)	2.8 m (9 ft)
25,001V–75 kV	1.8 m (6 ft)	2.5 m (8 ft)	3.0 m (10 ft)
Above 75 kV	2.5 m (8 ft)	3.0 m (10 ft)	3.7 m (12 ft)

Note: Where the conditions are as follows:
Condition 1— Exposed live parts on one side and no live or grounded parts on the other side of the working space, or exposed live parts on both sides effectively guarded by suitable wood or other insulating materials. Insulated wire or insulated busbars operating at not over 300 volts shall not be considered live parts.
Condition 2— Exposed live parts on one side and grounded parts on the other side. Concrete, brick, or tile walls shall be considered as grounded surfaces.
Condition 3— Exposed live parts on both sides of the work space (not guarded as provided in Condition 1) with the operator between.

Where the voltage exceeds 600 volts, nominal, permanent and conspicuous warning signs shall be provided, reading as follows:

DANGER — HIGH VOLTAGE — KEEP OUT

(D) Illumination. Illumination shall be provided for all working spaces about electrical equipment. The lighting outlets shall be arranged so that persons changing lamps or making repairs on the lighting system are not endangered by live parts or other equipment.

The points of control shall be located so that persons are not likely to come in contact with any live part or moving part of the equipment while turning on the lights.

(E) Elevation of Unguarded Live Parts. Unguarded live parts above working space shall be maintained at elevations not less than required by Table 110.34(E).

Table 110.34(E) Elevation of Unguarded Live Parts Above Working Space

Nominal Voltage Between Phases	Elevation	
	m	ft
601–7500 V	2.8	9
7501–35,000 V	2.9	9½
Over 35 kV	2.9 m + 9.5 mm/kV above 35	9½ ft + 0.37 in./kV above 35

(F) Protection of Service Equipment, Metal-Enclosed Power Switchgear, and Industrial Control Assemblies. Pipes or ducts foreign to the electrical installation and requiring periodic maintenance or whose malfunction would endanger the operation of the electrical system shall not be located in the vicinity of the service equipment, metal-enclosed power switchgear, or industrial control assemblies. Protection shall be provided where necessary to avoid damage from condensation leaks and breaks in such foreign systems. Piping and other facilities shall not be considered foreign if provided for fire protection of the electrical installation.

110.36 Circuit Conductors. Circuit conductors shall be permitted to be installed in raceways; in cable trays; as metal-clad cable, as bare wire, cable, and busbars; or as Type MV cables or conductors as provided in 300.37, 300.39, 300.40, and 300.50. Bare live conductors shall conform with 490.24.

Insulators, together with their mounting and conductor attachments, where used as supports for wires, single-conductor cables, or busbars, shall be capable of safely withstanding the maximum magnetic forces that would prevail when two or more conductors of a circuit were subjected to short-circuit current.

Open runs of insulated wires and cables that have a bare lead sheath or a braided outer covering shall be supported in a manner designed to prevent physical damage to the braid or sheath. Supports for lead-covered cables shall be designed to prevent electrolysis of the sheath.

110.40 Temperature Limitations at Terminations. Conductors shall be permitted to be terminated based on the 90°C (194°F) temperature rating and ampacity as given in Tables 310.67 through 310.86, unless otherwise identified.

IV. Tunnel Installations Over 600 Volts, Nominal

110.51 General.

(A) Covered. The provisions of this part shall apply to the installation and use of high-voltage power distribution and utilization equipment that is portable, mobile, or both, such as substations, trailers, cars, mobile shovels, draglines, hoists, drills, dredges, compressors, pumps, conveyors, and underground excavators, and the like.

(B) Other Articles. The requirements of this part shall be additional to, or amendatory of, those prescribed in Articles 100 through 490 of this *Code*. Special attention shall be paid to Article 250.

(C) Protection Against Physical Damage. Conductors and cables in tunnels shall be located above the tunnel floor and so placed or guarded to protect them from physical damage.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-52

110.52 Overcurrent Protection. Motor-operated equipment shall be protected from overcurrent in accordance with Article 430. Transformers shall be protected from overcurrent in accordance with Article 450.

110.53 Conductors. High-voltage conductors in tunnels shall be installed in metal conduit or other metal raceway, Type MC cable, or other approved multiconductor cable. Multiconductor portable cable shall be permitted to supply mobile equipment.

110.54 Bonding and Equipment Grounding Conductors.

(A) Grounded and Bonded. All non–current-carrying metal parts of electric equipment and all metal raceways and cable sheaths shall be effectively grounded and bonded to all metal pipes and rails at the portal and at intervals not exceeding 300 m (1000 ft) throughout the tunnel.

(B) Equipment Grounding Conductors. An equipment grounding conductor shall be run with circuit conductors inside the metal raceway or inside the multiconductor cable jacket. The equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted to be insulated or bare.

110.55 Transformers, Switches, and Electrical Equipment. All transformers, switches, motor controllers, motors, rectifiers, and other equipment installed below ground shall be protected from physical damage by location or guarding.

110.56 Energized Parts. Bare terminals of transformers, switches, motor controllers, and other equipment shall be enclosed to prevent accidental contact with energized parts.

110.57 Ventilation System Controls. Electrical controls for the ventilation system shall be arranged so that the airflow can be reversed.

110.58 Disconnecting Means. A switch or circuit breaker that simultaneously opens all ungrounded conductors of the circuit shall be installed within sight of each transformer or motor location for disconnecting the transformer or motor. The switch or circuit breaker for a transformer shall have an ampere rating not less than the ampacity of the transformer supply conductors. The switch or circuit breaker for a motor shall comply with the applicable requirements of Article 430.

110.59 Enclosures. Enclosures for use in tunnels shall be dripproof, weatherproof, or submersible as required by the environmental conditions. Switch or contactor enclosures shall not be used as junction boxes or as raceways for conductors feeding through or tapping off to other switches, unless special designs are used to provide adequate space for this purpose.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-53

Chapter 2 Wiring and Protection

ARTICLE 200
Use and Identification of Grounded Conductors

200.1 Scope. This article provides requirements for the following:

(1) Identification of terminals
(2) Grounded conductors in premises wiring systems
(3) Identification of grounded conductors

FPN: See Article 100 for definitions of *Grounded Conductor* and *Grounding Conductor.*

200.2 General. All premises wiring systems, other than circuits and systems exempted or prohibited by 210.10, 215.7, 250.21, 250.22, 250.162, 503.13, 517.63, 668.11, 668.21, and 690.41, Exception, shall have a grounded conductor that is identified in accordance with 200.6.

The grounded conductor, where insulated, shall have insulation that is (1) suitable, other than color, for any ungrounded conductor of the same circuit on circuits of less than 1000 volts or impedance grounded neutral systems of 1 kV and over, or (2) rated not less than 600 volts for solidly grounded neutral systems of 1 kV and over as described in 250.184(A).

200.3 Connection to Grounded System. Premises wiring shall not be electrically connected to a supply system unless the latter contains, for any grounded conductor of the interior system, a corresponding conductor that is grounded. For the purpose of this section, *electrically connected* shall mean connected so as to be capable of carrying current, as distinguished from connection through electromagnetic induction.

200.6 Means of Identifying Grounded Conductors.

(A) Sizes 6 AWG or Smaller. An insulated grounded conductor of 6 AWG or smaller shall be identified by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation along its entire length. Wires that have their outer covering finished to show a white or gray color but have colored tracer threads in the braid identifying the source of manufacture shall be considered as meeting the provisions of this section. Insulated grounded conductors shall also be permitted to be identified as follows:

(1) The grounded conductor of a mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable shall be identified at the time of installation by distinctive marking at its terminations.
(2) A single-conductor, sunlight-resistant, outdoor-rated cable used as a grounded conductor in photovoltaic power systems as permitted by 690.31 shall be identified at the time of installation by distinctive white marking at all terminations.
(3) Fixture wire shall comply with the requirements for grounded conductor identification as specified in 402.8
(4) For aerial cable, the identification shall be as above, or by means of a ridge located on the exterior of the cable so as to identify it.

(B) Sizes Larger Than 6 AWG. An insulated grounded conductor larger than 6 AWG shall be identified either by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation along its entire length or at the time of installation by a distinctive white marking at its terminations. This marking shall encircle the conductor or insulation.

(C) Flexible Cords. An insulated conductor that is intended for use as a grounded conductor, where contained within a flexible cord, shall be identified by a white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation or by methods permitted by 400.22.

(D) Grounded Conductors of Different Systems. Where conductors of different systems are installed in the same raceway, cable, box, auxiliary gutter, or other type of enclosure, one system grounded conductor, if required, shall have an outer covering conforming to 200.6(A) or 200.6(B). Each other system grounded conductor shall have an outer covering of white with a readily distinguishable, different colored stripe other than green running along the insulation, or shall have other and different means of identification as allowed by 200.6(A) or (B) that will distinguish each system grounded conductor.

(E) Grounded Conductors of Multiconductor Cables. The insulated grounded conductors in a multiconductor cable shall be identified by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation along its entire length. Multiconductor flat 4 AWG or larger shall be permitted to employ an external ridge on the grounded conductor.

Exception No. 1: Where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, grounded conductors in multiconductor cables shall be permitted to be permanently identified at their terminations at the time of installation by a distinctive white marking or other equally effective means.

Exception No. 2: The grounded conductor of a multiconductor varnished-cloth-insulated cable shall be permitted

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-54

to be identified at its terminations at the time of installation by a distinctive white marking or other equally effective means.

FPN: The color gray may have been used in the past as an ungrounded conductor. Care should be taken when working on existing systems.

200.7 Use of Insulation of a White or Gray Color or with Three Continuous White Stripes.

(A) General. The following shall be used only for the grounded circuit conductor, unless otherwise permitted in 200.7(B) and (C):

(1) A conductor with continuous white or gray covering
(2) A conductor with three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation
(3) A marking of white or gray color at the termination

(B) Circuits of Less Than 50 Volts. A conductor with white or gray color insulation or three continuous white stripes or having a marking of white or gray at the termination for circuits of less than 50 volts shall be required to be grounded only as required by 250.20(A).

(C) Circuits of 50 Volts or More. The use of insulation that is white or gray or that has three continuous white stripes for other than a grounded conductor for circuits of 50 volts or more shall be permitted only as in (1) through (3).

(1) If part of a cable assembly and where the insulation is permanently reidentified to indicate its use as an ungrounded conductor, by painting or other effective means at its termination, and at each location where the conductor is visible and accessible.
(2) Where a cable assembly contains an insulated conductor for single-pole, 3-way or 4-way switch loops and the conductor with white or gray insulation or a marking of three continuous white stripes is used for the supply to the switch but not as a return conductor from the switch to the switched outlet. In these applications, the conductor with white or gray insulation or with three continuous white stripes shall be permanently reidentified to indicate its use by painting or other effective means at its terminations and at each location where the conductor is visible and accessible.
(3) Where a flexible cord, having one conductor identified by a white or gray outer finish or three continuous white stripes or by any other means permitted by 400.22, is used for connecting an appliance or equipment permitted by 400.7. This shall apply to flexible cords connected to outlets whether or not the outlet is supplied by a circuit that has a grounded conductor.

FPN: The color gray may have been used in the past as an ungrounded conductor. Care should be taken when working on existing systems.

200.9 Means of Identification of Terminals. The identification of terminals to which a grounded conductor is to be connected shall be substantially white in color. The identification of other terminals shall be of a readily distinguishable different color.

Exception: Where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installations, terminals for grounded conductors shall be permitted to be permanently identified at the time of installation by a distinctive white marking or other equally effective means.

200.10 Identification of Terminals.

(A) Device Terminals. All devices, excluding panelboards, provided with terminals for the attachment of conductors and intended for connection to more than one side of the circuit shall have terminals properly marked for identification, unless the electrical connection of the terminal intended to be connected to the grounded conductor is clearly evident.

Exception: Terminal identification shall not be required for devices that have a normal current rating of over 30 amperes, other than polarized attachment plugs and polarized receptacles for attachment plugs as required in 200.10(B).

(B) Receptacles, Plugs, and Connectors. Receptacles, polarized attachment plugs, and cord connectors for plugs and polarized plugs shall have the terminal intended for connection to the grounded conductor identified as follows:

(1) Identification shall be by a metal or metal coating that is substantially white in color or by the word *white* or the letter *W* located adjacent to the identified terminal.
(2) If the terminal is not visible, the conductor entrance hole for the connection shall be colored white or marked with the word *white* or the letter *W*.

FPN: See 250.126 for identification of wiring device equipment grounding conductor terminals.

(C) Screw Shells. For devices with screw shells, the terminal for the grounded conductor shall be the one connected to the screw shell.

(D) Screw Shell Devices with Leads. For screw shell devices with attached leads, the conductor attached to the screw shell shall have a white or gray finish. The outer finish of the other conductor shall be of a solid color that will not be confused with the white or gray finish used to identify the grounded conductor.

FPN: The color gray may have been used in the past as an ungrounded conductor. Care should be taken when working on existing systems.

(E) Appliances. Appliances that have a single-pole switch or a single-pole overcurrent device in the line or any line-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-55

connected screw shell lampholders, and that are to be connected by (1) a permanent wiring method or (2) field-installed attachment plugs and cords with three or more wires (including the equipment grounding conductor), shall have means to identify the terminal for the grounded circuit conductor (if any).

200.11 Polarity of Connections. No grounded conductor shall be attached to any terminal or lead so as to reverse the designated polarity.

ARTICLE 210
Branch Circuits

I. General Provisions

210.1 Scope. This article covers branch circuits except for branch circuits that supply only motor loads, which are covered in Article 430. Provisions of this article and Article 430 apply to branch circuits with combination loads.

210.2 Other Articles for Specific-Purpose Branch Circuits. Branch circuits shall comply with this article and also with the applicable provisions of other articles of this *Code*. The provisions for branch circuits supplying equipment in Table 210.2 amend or supplement the provisions in this article and shall apply to branch circuits referred to therein.

210.3 Rating. Branch circuits recognized by this article shall be rated in accordance with the maximum permitted ampere rating or setting of the overcurrent device. The rating for other than individual branch circuits shall be 15, 20, 30, 40, and 50 amperes. Where conductors of higher ampacity are used for any reason, the ampere rating or setting of the specified overcurrent device shall determine the circuit rating.

Exception: Multioutlet branch circuits greater than 50 amperes shall be permitted to supply nonlighting outlet loads on industrial premises where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the equipment.

210.4 Multiwire Branch Circuits.

(A) General. Branch circuits recognized by this article shall be permitted as multiwire circuits. A multiwire branch circuit shall be permitted to be considered as multiple circuits. All conductors shall originate from the same panelboard.

Table 210.2 Specific-Purpose Branch Circuits

Equipment	Article	Section
Air-conditioning and refrigerating equipment		440.6, 440.31, 440.32
Audio signal processing, amplification, and reproduction equipment		640.8
Busways		368
Circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 volts	720	
Central heating equipment other than fixed electric space-heating equipment		422.12
Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits	725	
Closed-loop and programmed power distribution	780	
Cranes and hoists		610.42
Electric signs and outline lighting		600.6
Electric welders	630	
Elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, wheelchair lifts, and stairway chair lifts		620.61
Fire alarm systems	760	
Fixed electric heating equipment for pipelines and vessels		427.4
Fixed electric space-heating equipment		424.3
Fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment		426.4
Information technology equipment		645.5
Infrared lamp industrial heating equipment		422.48, 424.3
Induction and dielectric heating equipment	665	
Marinas and boatyards		555.19
Mobile homes, manufactured homes, and mobile home parks	550	
Motion picture and television studios and similar locations	530	
Motors, motor circuits, and controllers	430	
Pipe organs		650.7
Recreational vehicles and recreational vehicle parks	551	
Switchboards and panelboards		408.32
Theaters, audience areas of motion picture and television studios, and similar locations		520.41, 520.52, 520.62
X-ray equipment		660.2, 517.73

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-56

FPN: A 3-phase, 4-wire, wye-connected power system used to supply power to nonlinear loads may necessitate that the power system design allow for the possibility of high harmonic neutral currents.

(B) Dwelling Units. In dwelling units, a multiwire branch circuit supplying more than one device or equipment on the same yoke shall be provided with a means to disconnect simultaneously all ungrounded conductors at the panelboard where the branch circuit originated.

(C) Line-to-Neutral Loads. Multiwire branch circuits shall supply only line-to-neutral loads.

Exception No. 1: A multiwire branch circuit that supplies only one utilization equipment.

Exception No. 2: Where all ungrounded conductors of the multiwire branch circuit are opened simultaneously by the branch-circuit overcurrent device.

FPN: See 300.13(B) for continuity of grounded conductor on multiwire circuits.

(D) Identification of Ungrounded Conductors. Where more than one nominal voltage system exists in a building, each ungrounded conductor of a multiwire branch circuit, where accessible, shall be identified by phase and system. This means of identification shall be permitted to be by separate color coding, marking tape, tagging, or other approved means and shall be permanently posted at each branch-circuit panelboard.

210.5 Identification for Branch Circuits.

(A) Grounded Conductor. The grounded conductor of a branch circuit shall be identified in accordance with 200.6.

(B) Equipment Grounding Conductor. The equipment grounding conductor shall be identified in accordance with 250.119.

210.6 Branch-Circuit Voltage Limitations. The nominal voltage of branch circuits shall not exceed the values permitted by 210.6(A) through (E).

(A) Occupancy Limitation. In dwelling units and guest rooms of hotels, motels, and similar occupancies, the voltage shall not exceed 120 volts, nominal, between conductors that supply the terminals of the following:

(1) Luminaires (lighting fixtures)
(2) Cord-and-plug-connected loads 1440 volt-amperes, nominal, or less or less than ¼ hp

(B) 120 Volts Between Conductors. Circuits not exceeding 120 volts, nominal, between conductors shall be permitted to supply the following:

(1) The terminals of lampholders applied within their voltage ratings
(2) Auxiliary equipment of electric-discharge lamps
(3) Cord-and-plug-connected or permanently connected utilization equipment

(C) 277 Volts to Ground. Circuits exceeding 120 volts, nominal, between conductors and not exceeding 277 volts, nominal, to ground shall be permitted to supply the following:

(1) Listed electric-discharge luminaires (lighting fixtures)
(2) Listed incandescent luminaires (lighting fixtures), where supplied at 120 volts or less from the output of a stepdown autotransformer that is an integral component of the luminaire (fixture) and the outer shell terminal is electrically connected to a grounded conductor of the branch circuit
(3) Luminaires (lighting fixtures) equipped with mogul-base screw shell lampholders
(4) Lampholders, other than the screw shell type, applied within their voltage ratings
(5) Auxiliary equipment of electric-discharge lamps
(6) Cord-and-plug-connected or permanently connected utilization equipment

(D) 600 Volts Between Conductors. Circuits exceeding 277 volts, nominal, to ground and not exceeding 600 volts, nominal, between conductors shall be permitted to supply the following:

(1) The auxiliary equipment of electric-discharge lamps mounted in permanently installed luminaires (fixtures) where the luminaires (fixtures) are mounted in accordance with one of the following:
   a. Not less than a height of 6.7 m (22 ft) on poles or similar structures for the illumination of outdoor areas such as highways, roads, bridges, athletic fields, or parking lots
   b. Not less than a height of 5.5 m (18 ft) on other structures such as tunnels
(2) Cord-and-plug-connected or permanently connected utilization equipment

FPN: See 410.78 for auxiliary equipment limitations.

Exception No. 1 to (B), (C), and (D): For lampholders of infrared industrial heating appliances as provided in 422.14.

Exception No. 2 to (B), (C), and (D): For railway properties as described in 110.19.

(E) Over 600 Volts Between Conductors. Circuits exceeding 600 volts, nominal, between conductors shall be permitted to supply utilization equipment in installations where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-57

210.7 Branch Circuit Receptacle Requirements.

(A) Receptacle Outlet Location. Receptacle outlets shall be located in branch circuits in accordance with Part III of Article 210.

(B) Receptacle Requirements. Specific requirements for receptacles are covered in Article 406.

(C) Multiple Branch Circuits. Where more than one branch circuit supplies more than one receptacle on the same yoke, a means to simultaneously disconnect the ungrounded conductors supplying those receptacles shall be provided at the panelboard where the branch circuits originated.

210.8 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Personnel.

FPN: See 215.9 for ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel on feeders.

(A) Dwelling Units. All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in the locations specified in (1) through (8) shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

(1) Bathrooms
(2) Garages, and also accessory buildings that have a floor located at or below grade level not intended as habitable rooms and limited to storage areas, work areas, and areas of similar use

Exception No. 1: Receptacles that are not readily accessible.

Exception No. 2: A single receptacle or a duplex receptacle for two appliances located within dedicated space for each appliance that, in normal use, is not easily moved from one place to another and that is cord-and-plug connected in accordance with 400.7(A)(6), (A)(7), or (A)(8).

Receptacles installed under the exceptions to 210.8(A)(2) shall not be considered as meeting the requirements of 210.52(G).

(3) Outdoors

Exception: Receptacles that are not readily accessible and are supplied by a dedicated branch circuit for electric snow-melting or deicing equipment shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Article 426.

(4) Crawl spaces — at or below grade level
(5) Unfinished basements — for purposes of this section, unfinished basements are defined as portions or areas of the basement not intended as habitable rooms and limited to storage areas, work areas, and the like

Exception No. 1: Receptacles that are not readily accessible.

Exception No. 2: A single receptacle or a duplex receptacle for two appliances located within dedicated space for each appliance that, in normal use, is not easily moved from one place to another and that is cord-and-plug connected in accordance with 400.7(A)(6), (A)(7), or (A)(8).

Exception No. 3: A receptacle supplying only a permanently installed fire alarm or burglar alarm system shall not be required to have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection.

Receptacles installed under the exceptions to 210.8(A)(5) shall not be considered as meeting the requirements of 210.52(G).

(6) Kitchens — where the receptacles are installed to serve the countertop surfaces
(7) Wet bar sinks — where the receptacles are installed to serve the countertop surfaces and are located within 1.8 m (6 ft) of the outside edge of the wet bar sink.
(8) Boathouses

(B) Other Than Dwelling Units. All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in the locations specified in (1), (2), and (3) shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel:

(1) Bathrooms
(2) Rooftops

Exception to 2: Receptacles that are not readily accessible and are supplied from a dedicated branch circuit for electric snow-melting or deicing equipment shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Article 426.

(3) Kitchens

210.9 Circuits Derived from Autotransformers. Branch circuits shall not be derived from autotransformers unless the circuit supplied has a grounded conductor that is electrically connected to a grounded conductor of the system supplying the autotransformer.

Exception No. 1: An autotransformer shall be permitted without the connection to a grounded conductor where transforming from a nominal 208 volts to a nominal 240-volt supply or similarly from 240 volts to 208 volts.

Exception No. 2: In industrial occupancies, where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, autotransformers shall be permitted to supply nominal 600-volt loads from nominal 480-volt systems, and 480-volt loads from nominal 600-volt systems, without the connection to a similar grounded conductor.

210.10 Ungrounded Conductors Tapped from Grounded Systems. Two-wire dc circuits and ac circuits of two or more ungrounded conductors shall be permitted to be tapped from

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-58

the ungrounded conductors of circuits that have a grounded neutral conductor. Switching devices in each tapped circuit shall have a pole in each ungrounded conductor. All poles of multipole switching devices shall manually switch together where such switching devices also serve as a disconnecting means as required by the following:

(1) 410.48 for double-pole switched lampholders
(2) 410.54(B) for electric-discharge lamp auxiliary equipment switching devices
(3) 422.31(B) for an appliance
(4) 424.20 for a fixed electric space-heating unit
(5) 426.51 for electric deicing and snow-melting equipment
(6) 430.85 for a motor controller
(7) 430.103 for a motor

210.11 Branch Circuits Required. Branch circuits for lighting and for appliances, including motor-operated appliances, shall be provided to supply the loads computed in accordance with 220.3. In addition, branch circuits shall be provided for specific loads not covered by 220.3 where required elsewhere in this *Code* and for dwelling unit loads as specified in 210.11(C).

(A) Number of Branch Circuits. The minimum number of branch circuits shall be determined from the total computed load and the size or rating of the circuits used. In all installations, the number of circuits shall be sufficient to supply the load served. In no case shall the load on any circuit exceed the maximum specified by 220.4.

(B) Load Evenly Proportioned Among Branch Circuits. Where the load is computed on a volt-amperes/square meter or square foot basis, the wiring system up to and including the branch-circuit panelboard(s) shall be provided to serve not less than the calculated load. This load shall be evenly proportioned among multioutlet branch circuits within the panelboard(s). Branch-circuit overcurrent devices and circuits shall only be required to be installed to serve the connected load.

(C) Dwelling Units.

(1) Small-Appliance Branch Circuits. In addition to the number of branch circuits required by other parts of this section, two or more 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuits shall be provided for all receptacle outlets specified by 210.52(B).

(2) Laundry Branch Circuits. In addition to the number of branch circuits required by other parts of this section, at least one additional 20-ampere branch circuit shall be provided to supply the laundry receptacle outlet(s) required by 210.52(F). This circuit shall have no other outlets.

(3) Bathroom Branch Circuits. In addition to the number of branch circuits required by other parts of this section, at least one 20-ampere branch circuit shall be provided to supply the bathroom receptacle outlet(s). Such circuits shall have no other outlets.

Exception: Where the 20-ampere circuit supplies a single bathroom, outlets for other equipment within the same bathroom shall be permitted to be supplied in accordance with 210.23(A).

FPN: See Examples D1(A), D1(B), D2(B), and D4(A) in Annex D.

210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection.

(A) Definition. An *arc-fault circuit interrupter* is a device intended to provide protection from the effects of arc faults by recognizing characteristics unique to arcing and by functioning to de-energize the circuit when an arc fault is detected.

(B) Dwelling Unit Bedrooms. All branch circuits that supply 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere outlets installed in dwelling unit bedrooms shall be protected by an arc-fault circuit interrupter listed to provide protection of the entire branch circuit.

II. Branch-Circuit Ratings

210.19 Conductors — Minimum Ampacity and Size.

(A) Branch Circuits Not More Than 600 Volts.

(1) General. Branch-circuit conductors shall have an ampacity not less than the maximum load to be served. Where a branch circuit supplies continuous loads or any combination of continuous and noncontinuous loads, the minimum branch-circuit conductor size, before the application of any adjustment or correction factors, shall have an allowable ampacity not less than the noncontinuous load plus 125 percent of the continuous load.

Exception: Where the assembly, including the overcurrent devices protecting the branch circuit(s), is listed for operation at 100 percent of its rating, the allowable ampacity of the branch circuit conductors shall be permitted to be not less than the sum of the continuous load plus the noncontinuous load.

FPN No. 1: See 310.15 for ampacity ratings of conductors.

FPN No. 2: See Part II of Article 430 for minimum rating of motor branch-circuit conductors.

FPN No. 3: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

FPN No. 4: Conductors for branch circuits as defined in Article 100, sized to prevent a voltage drop exceeding 3 percent at the farthest outlet of power, heating, and light-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-59

ing loads, or combinations of such loads, and where the maximum total voltage drop on both feeders and branch circuits to the farthest outlet does not exceed 5 percent, provide reasonable efficiency of operation. See 215.2 for voltage drop on feeder conductors.

(2) Multioutlet Branch Circuits. Conductors of branch circuits supplying more than one receptacle for cord-and-plug-connected portable loads shall have an ampacity of not less than the rating of the branch circuit.

(3) Household Ranges and Cooking Appliances. Branch-circuit conductors supplying household ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, and other household cooking appliances shall have an ampacity not less than the rating of the branch circuit and not less than the maximum load to be served. For ranges of 8¾ kW or more rating, the minimum branch-circuit rating shall be 40 amperes.

Exception No. 1: Tap conductors supplying electric ranges, wall-mounted electric ovens, and counter-mounted electric cooking units from a 50-ampere branch circuit shall have an ampacity of not less than 20 and shall be sufficient for the load to be served. The taps shall not be longer than necessary for servicing the appliance.

Exception No. 2: The neutral conductor of a 3-wire branch circuit supplying a household electric range, a wall-mounted oven, or a counter-mounted cooking unit shall be permitted to be smaller than the ungrounded conductors where the maximum demand of a range of 8¾ kW or more rating has been computed according to Column C of Table 220.19, but shall have an ampacity of not less than 70 percent of the branch-circuit rating and shall not be smaller than 10 AWG.

(4) Other Loads. Branch-circuit conductors that supply loads other than those specified in 210.2 and other than cooking appliances as covered in 210.19(A)(3) shall have an ampacity sufficient for the loads served and shall not be smaller than 14 AWG.

Exception No. 1: Tap conductors shall have an ampacity sufficient for the load served. In addition, they shall have an ampacity of not less than 15 for circuits rated less than 40 amperes and not less than 20 for circuits rated at 40 or 50 amperes and only where these tap conductors supply any of the following loads:

(a) Individual lampholders or luminaires (fixtures) with taps extending not longer than 450 mm (18 in.) beyond any portion of the lampholder or luminaire (fixture).
(b) A fixture having tap conductors as provided in 410.67.
(c) Individual outlets, other than receptacle outlets, with taps not over 450 mm (18 in.) long.
(d) Infrared lamp industrial heating appliances.
(e) Nonheating leads of deicing and snow-melting cables and mats.

Exception No. 2: Fixture wires and flexible cords shall be permitted to be smaller than 14 AWG as permitted by 240.5.

(B) Branch Circuits Over 600 Volts. The ampacity of conductors shall be in accordance with 310.15 and 310.60 as applicable. Branch-circuit conductors over 600 volts shall be sized in accordance with 210.19(B)(1) or (B)(2).

(1) General. The ampacity of branch-circuit conductors shall not be less than 125 percent of the designed potential load of utilization equipment that will be operated simultaneously.

(2) Supervised Installations. For supervised installations, branch-circuit conductor sizing shall be permitted to be determined by qualified persons under engineering supervision. Supervised installations are defined as those portions of a facility where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Conditions of design and installation are provided under engineering supervision.
(2) Qualified persons with documented training and experience in over 600-volt systems provide maintenance, monitoring, and servicing of the system.

210.20 Overcurrent Protection. Branch-circuit conductors and equipment shall be protected by overcurrent protective devices that have a rating or setting that complies with 210.20(A) through (D).

(A) Continuous and Noncontinuous Loads. Where a branch circuit supplies continuous loads or any combination of continuous and noncontinuous loads, the rating of the overcurrent device shall not be less than the noncontinuous load plus 125 percent of the continuous load.

Exception: Where the assembly, including the overcurrent devices protecting the branch circuit(s), is listed for operation at 100 percent of its rating, the ampere rating of the overcurrent device shall be permitted to be not less than the sum of the continuous load plus the noncontinuous load.

(B) Conductor Protection. Conductors shall be protected in accordance with 240.4. Flexible cords and fixture wires shall be protected in accordance with 240.5.

(C) Equipment. The rating or setting of the overcurrent protective device shall not exceed that specified in the applicable articles referenced in 240.3 for equipment.

(D) Outlet Devices. The rating or setting shall not exceed that specified in 210.21 for outlet devices.

210.21 Outlet Devices. Outlet devices shall have an ampere rating that is not less than the load to be served and shall comply with 210.21(A) and (B).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-60

(A) Lampholders. Where connected to a branch circuit having a rating in excess of 20 amperes, lampholders shall be of the heavy-duty type. A heavy-duty lampholder shall have a rating of not less than 660 watts if of the admedium type and not less than 750 watts if of any other type.

(B) Receptacles.

(1) Single Receptacle on an Individual Branch Circuit. A single receptacle installed on an individual branch circuit shall have an ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit.

Exception No. 1: A receptacle installed in accordance with 430.81(C).

Exception No. 2: A receptacle installed exclusively for the use of a cord-and-plug-connected arc welder shall be permitted to have an ampere rating not less than the minimum branch-circuit conductor ampacity determined by 630.11(A) for arc welders.

FPN: See definition of *receptacle* in Article 100.

(2) Total Cord-and-Plug-Connected Load. Where connected to a branch circuit supplying two or more receptacles or outlets, a receptacle shall not supply a total cord-and-plug-connected load in excess of the maximum specified in Table 210.21(B)(2).

Table 210.21(B)(2) Maximum Cord-and-Plug-Connected Load to Receptacle

Circuit Rating (Amperes)	Receptacle Rating (Amperes)	Maximum Load (Amperes)
15 or 20	15	12
20	20	16
30	30	24

(3) Receptacle Ratings. Where connected to a branch circuit supplying two or more receptacles or outlets, receptacle ratings shall conform to the values listed in Table 210.21(B)(3), or where larger than 50 amperes, the receptacle rating shall not be less than the branch-circuit rating.

Exception No. 1: Receptacles for one or more cord-and-plug-connected arc welders shall be permitted to have ampere ratings not less than the minimum branch-circuit conductor ampacity permitted by 630.11(A) or (B) as applicable for arc welders.

Exception No. 2: The ampere rating of a receptacle installed for electric discharge lighting shall be permitted to be based on 410.30(C).

(4) Range Receptacle Rating. The ampere rating of a range receptacle shall be permitted to be based on a single range demand load as specified in Table 220.19.

Table 210.21(B)(3) Receptacle Ratings for Various Size Circuits

Circuit Rating (Amperes)	Receptacle Rating (Amperes)
15	Not over 15
20	15 or 20
30	30
40	40 or 50
50	50

210.23 Permissible Loads. In no case shall the load exceed the branch-circuit ampere rating. An individual branch circuit shall be permitted to supply any load for which it is rated. A branch circuit supplying two or more outlets or receptacles shall supply only the loads specified according to its size as specified in 210.23(A) through (D) and as summarized in 210.24 and Table 210.24.

(A) 15- and 20-Ampere Branch Circuits. A 15- or 20-ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply lighting units or other utilization equipment, or a combination of both, and shall comply with 210.23(A)(1) and (A)(2).

Exception: The small appliance branch circuits, laundry branch circuits, and bathroom branch circuits required in a dwelling unit(s) by 210.11(C)(1), (2), and (3) shall supply only the receptacle outlets specified in that section.

(1) Cord-and-Plug-Connected Equipment. The rating of any one cord-and-plug-connected utilization equipment shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch-circuit ampere rating.

(2) Utilization Equipment Fastened in Place. The total rating of utilization equipment fastened in place, other than luminaires (lighting fixtures), shall not exceed 50 percent of the branch-circuit ampere rating where lighting units, cord-and-plug-connected utilization equipment not fastened in place, or both, are also supplied.

(B) 30-Ampere Branch Circuits. A 30-ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply fixed lighting units with heavy-duty lampholders in other than a dwelling unit(s) or utilization equipment in any occupancy. A rating of any one cord-and-plug-connected utilization equipment shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch-circuit ampere rating.

(C) 40- and 50-Ampere Branch Circuits. A 40- or 50-ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply cooking appliances that are fastened in place in any occupancy. In other than dwelling units, such circuits shall be permitted to supply fixed lighting units with heavy-duty lampholders, infrared heating units, or other utilization equipment.

(D) Branch Circuits Larger Than 50 Amperes. Branch circuits larger than 50 amperes shall supply only nonlighting outlet loads.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-61

210.24 Branch-Circuit Requirements — Summary. The requirements for circuits that have two or more outlets or receptacles, other than the receptacle circuits of 210.11(C)(1) and (2), are summarized in Table 210.24. This table provides only a summary of minimum requirements. See 210.19, 210.20, and 210.21 for the specific requirements applying to branch circuits.

210.25 Common Area Branch Circuits. Branch circuits in dwelling units shall supply only loads within that dwelling unit or loads associated only with that dwelling unit. Branch circuits required for the purpose of lighting, central alarm, signal, communications, or other needs for public or common areas of a two-family or multifamily dwelling shall not be supplied from equipment that supplies an individual dwelling unit.

III. Required Outlets

210.50 General. Receptacle outlets shall be installed as specified in 210.52 through 210.63.

(A) Cord Pendants. A cord connector that is supplied by a permanently connected cord pendant shall be considered a receptacle outlet.

(B) Cord Connections. A receptacle outlet shall be installed wherever flexible cords with attachment plugs are used. Where flexible cords are permitted to be permanently connected, receptacles shall be permitted to be omitted for such cords.

(C) Appliance Outlets. Appliance receptacle outlets installed in a dwelling unit for specific appliances, such as laundry equipment, shall be installed within 1.8 m (6 ft) of the intended location of the appliance.

210.52 Dwelling Unit Receptacle Outlets. This section provides requirements for 125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacle outlets. Receptacle outlets required by this section shall be in addition to any receptacle that is part of a luminaire (lighting fixture) or appliance, located within cabinets or cupboards, or located more than 1.7 m (5½ ft) above the floor.

Permanently installed electric baseboard heaters equipped with factory-installed receptacle outlets or outlets provided as a separate assembly by the manufacturer shall be permitted as the required outlet or outlets for the wall space utilized by such permanently installed heaters. Such receptacle outlets shall not be connected to the heater circuits.

FPN: Listed baseboard heaters include instructions that may not permit their installation below receptacle outlets.

(A) General Provisions. In every kitchen, family room, dining room, living room, parlor, library, den, sunroom, bedroom, recreation room, or similar room or area of dwelling units, receptacle outlets shall be installed in accordance with the general provisions specified in 210.52(A)(1) through (A)(3).

(1) Spacing. Receptacles shall be installed so that no point measured horizontally along the floor line in any wall space is more than 1.8 m (6 ft) from a receptacle outlet.

(2) Wall Space. As used in this section, a wall space shall include the following:

(1) Any space 600 mm (2 ft) or more in width (including space measured around corners) and unbroken along the floor line by doorways, fireplaces, and similar openings
(2) The space occupied by fixed panels in exterior walls, excluding sliding panels

Table 210.24 Summary of Branch-Circuit Requirements

Circuit Rating	**15 A**	**20 A**	**30 A**	**40 A**	**50 A**
Conductors (min. size):					
Circuit wires[1]	14	12	10	8	6
Taps	14	14	14	12	12
Fixture wires and cords — See 240.5					
Overcurrent Protection	**15 A**	**20 A**	**30 A**	**40 A**	**50 A**
Outlet devices:					
Lampholders permitted	Any type	Any type	Heavy duty	Heavy duty	Heavy duty
Receptacle rating[2]	15 max. A	15 or 20 A	30 A	40 or 50 A	50 A
Maximum Load	**15 A**	**20 A**	**30 A**	**40 A**	**50 A**
Permissible load	See 210.23(A)	See 210.23(A)	See 210.23(B)	See 210.23(C)	See 210.23(C)

[1]These gauges are for copper conductors.
[2]For receptacle rating of cord-connected electric-discharge luminaires (lighting fixtures), see 410.30(C).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-62

(3) The space afforded by fixed room dividers such as free-standing bar-type counters or railings

(3) Floor Receptacles. Receptacle outlets in floors shall not be counted as part of the required number of receptacle outlets unless located within 450 mm (18 in.) of the wall.

(B) Small Appliances.

(1) Receptacle Outlets Served. In the kitchen, pantry, breakfast room, dining room, or similar area of a dwelling unit, the two or more 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuits required by 210.11(C)(1) shall serve all receptacle outlets covered by 210.52(A) and (C) and receptacle outlets for refrigeration equipment.

Exception No. 1: In addition to the required receptacles specified by 210.52, switched receptacles supplied from a general-purpose branch circuit as defined in 210.70(A)(1), Exception No. 1, shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: The receptacle outlet for refrigeration equipment shall be permitted to be supplied from an individual branch circuit rated 15 amperes or greater.

(2) No Other Outlets. The two or more small-appliance branch circuits specified in 210.52(B)(1) shall have no other outlets.

Exception No. 1: A receptacle installed solely for the electrical supply to and support of an electric clock in any of the rooms specified in 210.52(B)(1).

Exception No. 2: Receptacles installed to provide power for supplemental equipment and lighting on gas-fired ranges, ovens, or counter-mounted cooking units.

(3) Kitchen Receptacle Requirements. Receptacles installed in a kitchen to serve countertop surfaces shall be supplied by not fewer than two small-appliance branch circuits, either or both of which shall also be permitted to supply receptacle outlets in the same kitchen and in other rooms specified in 210.52(B)(1). Additional small-appliance branch circuits shall be permitted to supply receptacle outlets in the kitchen and other rooms specified in 210.52(B)(1). No small-appliance branch circuit shall serve more than one kitchen.

(C) Countertops. In kitchens and dining rooms of dwelling units, receptacle outlets for counter spaces shall be installed in accordance with 210.52(C)(1) through (5).

(1) Wall Counter Spaces. A receptacle outlet shall be installed at each wall counter space that is 300 mm (12 in.) or wider. Receptacle outlets shall be installed so that no point along the wall line is more than 600 mm (24 in.) measured horizontally from a receptacle outlet in that space.

(2) Island Counter Spaces. At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed at each island counter space with a long dimension of 600 mm (24 in.) or greater and a short dimension of 300 mm (12 in.) or greater.

(3) Peninsular Counter Spaces. At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed at each peninsular counter space with a long dimension of 600 mm (24 in.) or greater and a short dimension of 300 mm (12 in.) or greater. A peninsular countertop is measured from the connecting edge.

(4) Separate Spaces. Countertop spaces separated by range tops, refrigerators, or sinks shall be considered as separate countertop spaces in applying the requirements of 210.52(C)(1), (2), and (3).

(5) Receptacle Outlet Location. Receptacle outlets shall be located above, but not more than 500 mm (20 in.) above, the countertop. Receptacle outlets rendered not readily accessible by appliances fastened in place, appliance garages, or appliances occupying dedicated space shall not be considered as these required outlets.

Exception: To comply with the conditions specified in (a) or (b), receptacle outlets shall be permitted to be mounted not more than 300 mm (12 in.) below the countertop. Receptacles mounted below a countertop in accordance with this exception shall not be located where the countertop extends more than 150 mm (6 in.) beyond its support base.

(a) Construction for the physically impaired.
(b) On island and peninsular countertops where the countertop is flat across its entire surface (no backsplashes, dividers, etc.) and there are no means to mount a receptacle within 500 mm (20 in.) above the countertop, such as an overhead cabinet.

(D) Bathrooms. In dwelling units, at least one wall receptacle outlet shall be installed in bathrooms within 900 mm (3 ft) of the outside edge of each basin. The receptacle outlet shall be located on a wall or partition that is adjacent to the basin or basin countertop.

(E) Outdoor Outlets. For a one-family dwelling and each unit of a two-family dwelling that is at grade level, at least one receptacle outlet accessible at grade level and not more than 2.0 m (6½ ft) above grade shall be installed at the front and back of the dwelling. See 210.8(A)(3).

(F) Laundry Areas. In dwelling units, at least one receptacle outlet shall be installed for the laundry.

Exception No. 1: In a dwelling unit that is an apartment or living area in a multifamily building where laundry facilities are provided on the premises and are available to all building occupants, a laundry receptacle shall not be required.

Exception No. 2: In other than one-family dwellings where laundry facilities are not to be installed or permitted, a laundry receptacle shall not be required.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-63

(G) Basements and Garages. For a one-family dwelling, at least one receptacle outlet, in addition to any provided for laundry equipment, shall be installed in each basement and in each attached garage, and in each detached garage with electric power. See 210.8(A)(2) and (A)(5). Where a portion of the basement is finished into one or more habitable rooms, each separate unfinished portion shall have a receptacle outlet installed in accordance with this section.

(H) Hallways. In dwelling units, hallways of 3.0 m (10 ft) or more in length shall have at least one receptacle outlet.

As used in this subsection, the hall length shall be considered the length along the centerline of the hall without passing through a doorway.

210.60 Guest Rooms.

(A) General. Guest rooms in hotels, motels, and similar occupancies shall have receptacle outlets installed in accordance with 210.52(A) and 210.52(D). Guest rooms meeting the definition of a dwelling unit shall have receptacle outlets installed in accordance with all of the applicable rules in 210.52.

(B) Receptacle Placement. In applying the provisions of 210.52(A), the total number of receptacle outlets shall not be less than the minimum number that would comply with the provisions of that section. These receptacle outlets shall be permitted to be located conveniently for permanent furniture layout. At least two receptacle outlets shall be readily accessible. Where receptacles are installed behind the bed, the receptacle shall be located to prevent the bed from contacting any attachment plug that may be installed, or the receptacle shall be provided with a suitable guard.

210.62 Show Windows. At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed directly above a show window for each 3.7 linear m (12 ft) or major fraction thereof of show window area measured horizontally at its maximum width.

210.63 Heating, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration Equipment Outlet. A 125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere-rated receptacle outlet shall be installed at an accessible location for the servicing of heating, air-conditioning, and refrigeration equipment. The receptacle shall be located on the same level and within 7.5 m (25 ft) of the heating, air-conditioning, and refrigeration equipment. The receptacle outlet shall not be connected to the load side of the equipment disconnecting means.

FPN: See 210.8 for ground-fault circuit-interrupter requirements.

210.70 Lighting Outlets Required. Lighting outlets shall be installed where specified in 210.70(A), (B), and (C).

(A) Dwelling Units. In dwelling units, lighting outlets shall be installed in accordance with 210.70(A)(1), (2), and (3).

(1) Habitable Rooms. At least one wall switch-controlled lighting outlet shall be installed in every habitable room and bathroom.

Exception No. 1: In other than kitchens and bathrooms, one or more receptacles controlled by a wall switch shall be permitted in lieu of lighting outlets.

Exception No. 2: Lighting outlets shall be permitted to be controlled by occupancy sensors that are (1) in addition to wall switches or (2) located at a customary wall switch location and equipped with a manual override that will allow the sensor to function as a wall switch.

(2) Additional Locations. Additional lighting outlets shall be installed in accordance with (a), (b), and (c).

(a) At least one wall switch-controlled lighting outlet shall be installed in hallways, stairways, attached garages, and detached garages with electric power.

(b) For dwelling units, attached garages, and detached garages with electric power, at least one wall switch–controlled lighting outlet shall be installed to provide illumination on the exterior side of outdoor entrances or exits with grade level access. A vehicle door in a garage shall not be considered as an outdoor entrance or exit.

(c) Where one or more lighting outlet(s) are installed for interior stairways, there shall be a wall switch at each floor level, and landing level that includes an entry way, to control the lighting outlet(s) where the stairway between floor levels has six risers or more.

Exception to (a), (b), and (c): In hallways, stairways, and at outdoor entrances, remote, central, or automatic control of lighting shall be permitted.

(3) Storage or Equipment Spaces. For attics, underfloor spaces, utility rooms, and basements, at least one lighting outlet containing a switch or controlled by a wall switch shall be installed where these spaces are used for storage or contain equipment requiring servicing. At least one point of control shall be at the usual point of entry to these spaces. The lighting outlet shall be provided at or near the equipment requiring servicing.

(B) Guest Rooms. At least one wall switch–controlled lighting outlet or wall switch–controlled receptacle shall be installed in guest rooms in hotels, motels, or similar occupancies.

(C) Other Than Dwelling Units. For attics and underfloor spaces containing equipment requiring servicing, such as heating, air-conditioning, and refrigeration equipment, at least one lighting outlet containing a switch or controlled

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-64

by a wall switch shall be installed in such spaces. At least one point of control shall be at the usual point of entry to these spaces. The lighting outlet shall be provided at or near the equipment requiring servicing.

ARTICLE 215
Feeders

215.1 Scope. This article covers the installation requirements, overcurrent protection requirements, minimum size, and ampacity of conductors for feeders supplying branch-circuit loads as computed in accordance with Article 220.

Exception: Feeders for electrolytic cells as covered in 668.3(C)(1) and (4).

215.2 Minimum Rating and Size.

(A) Feeders Not More Than 600 Volts.

(1) General. Feeder conductors shall have an ampacity not less than required to supply the load as computed in Parts II, III, and IV of Article 220. The minimum feeder-circuit conductor size, before the application of any adjustment or correction factors, shall have an allowable ampacity not less than the noncontinuous load plus 125 percent of the continuous load.

Exception: Where the assembly, including the overcurrent devices protecting the feeder(s), is listed for operation at 100 percent of its rating, the allowable ampacity of the feeder conductors shall be permitted to be not less than the sum of the continuous load plus the noncontinuous load.

Additional minimum sizes shall be as specified in (2), (3), and (4) under the conditions stipulated.

(2) For Specified Circuits. The ampacity of feeder conductors shall not be less than 30 amperes where the load supplied consists of any of the following number and types of circuits:

(1) Two or more 2-wire branch circuits supplied by a 2-wire feeder
(2) More than two 2-wire branch circuits supplied by a 3-wire feeder
(3) Two or more 3-wire branch circuits supplied by a 3-wire feeder
(4) Two or more 4-wire branch circuits supplied by a 3-phase, 4-wire feeder

(3) Ampacity Relative to Service-Entrance Conductors. The feeder conductor ampacity shall not be less than that of the service-entrance conductors where the feeder conductors carry the total load supplied by service-entrance conductors with an ampacity of 55 amperes or less.

(4) Individual Dwelling Unit or Mobile Home Conductors. Feeder conductors for individual dwelling units or mobile homes need not be larger than service-entrance conductors. Paragraph 310.15(B)(6) shall be permitted to be used for conductor size.

FPN No. 1: See Examples D1 through D10 in Annex D.

FPN No. 2: Conductors for feeders as defined in Article 100, sized to prevent a voltage drop exceeding 3 percent at the farthest outlet of power, heating, and lighting loads, or combinations of such loads, and where the maximum total voltage drop on both feeders and branch circuits to the farthest outlet does not exceed 5 percent, will provide reasonable efficiency of operation.

FPN No. 3: See 210.19(A), FPN No. 4, for voltage drop for branch circuits.

(B) Feeders Over 600 Volts. The ampacity of conductors shall be in accordance with 310.15 and 310.60 as applicable. Feeder conductors over 600 volts shall be sized in accordance with 215.2(B)(1), (2), or (3).

(1) Feeders Supplying Transformers. The ampacity of feeder conductors shall not be less than the sum of the nameplate ratings of the transformers supplied when only transformers are supplied.

(2) Feeders Supplying Transformers and Utilization Equipment. The ampacity of feeders supplying a combination of transformers and utilization equipment shall not be less than the sum of the nameplate ratings of the transformers and 125 percent of the designed potential load of the utilization equipment that will be operated simultaneously.

(3) Supervised Installations. For supervised installations, feeder conductor sizing shall be permitted to be determined by qualified persons under engineering supervision. Supervised installations are defined as those portions of a facility where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Conditions of design and installation are provided under engineering supervision.
(2) Qualified persons with documented training and experience in over 600-volt systems provide maintenance, monitoring, and servicing of the system.

215.3 Overcurrent Protection. Feeders shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with the provisions of Part I of Article 240. Where a feeder supplies continuous loads or any combination of continuous and noncontinuous loads, the rating of the overcurrent device shall not be less than the noncontinuous load plus 125 percent of the continuous load.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-65

Exception No. 1: Where the assembly, including the overcurrent devices protecting the feeder(s), is listed for operation at 100 percent of its rating, the ampere rating of the overcurrent device shall be permitted to be not less than the sum of the continuous load plus the noncontinuous load.

Exception No. 2: Overcurrent protection for feeders over 600 volts, nominal, shall comply with Part IX of Article 240.

215.4 Feeders with Common Neutral.

(A) Feeders with Common Neutral. Two or three sets of 3-wire feeders or two sets of 4-wire or 5-wire feeders shall be permitted to utilize a common neutral.

(B) In Metal Raceway or Enclosure. Where installed in a metal raceway or other metal enclosure, all conductors of all feeders using a common neutral shall be enclosed within the same raceway or other enclosure as required in 300.20.

215.5 Diagrams of Feeders. If required by the authority having jurisdiction, a diagram showing feeder details shall be provided prior to the installation of the feeders. Such a diagram shall show the area in square feet of the building or other structure supplied by each feeder, the total computed load before applying demand factors, the demand factors used, the computed load after applying demand factors, and the size and type of conductors to be used.

215.6 Feeder Conductor Grounding Means. Where a feeder supplies branch circuits in which equipment grounding conductors are required, the feeder shall include or provide a grounding means, in accordance with the provisions of 250.134, to which the equipment grounding conductors of the branch circuits shall be connected.

215.7 Ungrounded Conductors Tapped from Grounded Systems. Two-wire dc circuits and ac circuits of two or more ungrounded conductors shall be permitted to be tapped from the ungrounded conductors of circuits having a grounded neutral conductor. Switching devices in each tapped circuit shall have a pole in each ungrounded conductor.

215.8 Means of Identifying Conductor with the Higher Voltage to Ground. On a 4-wire, delta-connected secondary where the midpoint of one phase winding is grounded to supply lighting and similar loads, the phase conductor having the higher voltage to ground shall be identified by an outer finish that is orange in color or by tagging or other effective means. Such identification shall be placed at each point where a connection is made if the grounded conductor is also present.

215.9 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Personnel. Feeders supplying 15- and 20-ampere receptacle branch circuits shall be permitted to be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter in lieu of the provisions for such interrupters as specified in 210.8 and Article 527.

215.10 Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment. Each feeder disconnect rated 1000 amperes or more and installed on solidly grounded wye electrical systems of more than 150 volts to ground, but not exceeding 600 volts phase-to-phase, shall be provided with ground-fault protection of equipment in accordance with the provisions of 230.95.

Exception No. 1: The provisions of this section shall not apply to a disconnecting means for a continuous industrial process where a nonorderly shutdown will introduce additional or increased hazards.

Exception No. 2: The provisions of this section shall not apply to fire pumps.

Exception No. 3: The provisions of this section shall not apply if ground-fault protection of equipment is provided on the supply side of the feeder.

215.11 Circuits Derived from Autotransformers. Feeders shall not be derived from autotransformers unless the system supplied has a grounded conductor that is electrically connected to a grounded conductor of the system supplying the autotransformer.

Exception No. 1: An autotransformer shall be permitted without the connection to a grounded conductor where transforming from a nominal 208 volts to a nominal 240-volt supply or similarly from 240 volts to 208 volts.

Exception No. 2: In industrial occupancies, where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, autotransformers shall be permitted to supply nominal 600-volt loads from nominal 480-volt systems, and 480-volt loads from nominal 600-volt systems, without the connection to a similar grounded conductor.

ARTICLE 220
Branch-Circuit, Feeder, and Service Calculations

I. General

220.1 Scope. This article provides requirements for computing branch-circuit, feeder, and service loads.

Exception: Branch-circuit and feeder calculations for electrolytic cells as covered in 668.3(C)(1) and (4).

220.2 Computations.

(A) Voltages. Unless other voltages are specified, for purposes of computing branch-circuit and feeder loads, nomi-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-66

nal system voltages of 120, 120/240, 208Y/120, 240, 347, 480Y/277, 480, 600Y/347, and 600 volts shall be used.

(B) Fractions of an Ampere. Where computations result in a fraction of an ampere that is less than 0.5, such fractions shall be permitted to be dropped.

220.3 Computation of Branch Circuit Loads. Branch-circuit loads shall be computed as shown in 220.3(A) through (C).

(A) Lighting Load for Specified Occupancies. A unit load of not less than that specified in Table 220.3(A) for occupancies specified therein shall constitute the minimum lighting load. The floor area for each floor shall be computed from the outside dimensions of the building, dwelling unit, or other area involved. For dwelling units, the computed floor area shall not include open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces not adaptable for future use.

FPN: The unit values herein are based on minimum load conditions and 100 percent power factor and may not provide sufficient capacity for the installation contemplated.

(B) Other Loads — All Occupancies. In all occupancies, the minimum load for each outlet for general-use receptacles and outlets not used for general illumination shall not be less than that computed in 220.3(B)(1) through (11), the loads shown being based on nominal branch-circuit voltages.

Exception: The loads of outlets serving switchboards and switching frames in telephone exchanges shall be waived from the computations.

(1) Specific Appliances or Loads. An outlet for a specific appliance or other load not covered in (2) through (11) shall be computed based on the ampere rating of the appliance or load served.

(2) Electric Dryers and Household Electric Cooking Appliances. Load computations shall be permitted as specified in 220.18 for electric dryers and in 220.19 for electric ranges and other cooking appliances.

(3) Motor Loads. Outlets for motor loads shall be computed in accordance with the requirements in 430.22, 430.24, and 440.6.

(4) Recessed Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures). An outlet supplying recessed luminaire(s) [lighting fixture(s)] shall be computed based on the maximum volt-ampere rating of the equipment and lamps for which the luminaire(s) [fixture(s)] is rated.

(5) Heavy-Duty Lampholders. Outlets for heavy-duty lampholders shall be computed at a minimum of 600 volt-amperes.

Table 220.3(A) General Lighting Loads by Occupancy

	Unit Load	
Type of Occupancy	**Volt-Amperes per Square Meter**	**Volt-Amperes per Square Foot**
Armories and auditoriums	11	1
Banks	39[b]	3½[b]
Barber shops and beauty parlors	33	3
Churches	11	1
Clubs	22	2
Court rooms	22	2
Dwelling units[a]	33	3
Garages — commercial (storage)	6	½
Hospitals	22	2
Hotels and motels, including apartment houses without provision for cooking by tenants[a]	22	2
Industrial commercial (loft) buildings	22	2
Lodge rooms	17	1½
Office buildings	39	3½[b]
Restaurants	22	2
Schools	33	3
Stores	33	3
Warehouses (storage)	3	¼
In any of the preceding occupancies except one-family dwellings and individual dwelling units of two-family and multifamily dwellings:		
Assembly halls and auditoriums	11	1
Halls, corridors, closets, stairways	6	½
Storage spaces	3	¼

[a]See 220.3(B)(10).

[b]In addition, a unit load of 11 volt-amperes/m^2 or 1 volt-ampere/ft^2 shall be included for general-purpose receptacle outlets where the actual number of general-purpose receptacle outlets is unknown.

(6) Sign and Outline Lighting. Sign and outline lighting outlets shall be computed at a minimum of 1200 volt-amperes for each required branch circuit specified in 600.5(A).

(7) Show Windows. Show windows shall be computed in accordance with either of the following:

(1) The unit load per outlet as required in other provisions of this section
(2) At 200 volt-amperes per 300 mm (1 ft) of show window

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-67

(8) Fixed Multioutlet Assemblies. Fixed multioutlet assemblies used in other than dwelling units or the guest rooms of hotels or motels shall be computed in accordance with (1) or (2). For the purposes of this section, the computation shall be permitted to be based on the portion that contains receptacle outlets.

(1) Where appliances are unlikely to be used simultaneously, each 1.5 m (5 ft) or fraction thereof of each separate and continuous length shall be considered as one outlet of not less than 180 volt-amperes.
(2) Where appliances are likely to be used simultaneously, each 300 mm (1 ft) or fraction thereof shall be considered as an outlet of not less than 180 volt-amperes.

(9) Receptacle Outlets. Except as covered in 220.3(B)(10), receptacle outlets shall be computed at not less than 180 volt-amperes for each single or for each multiple receptacle on one yoke. A single piece of equipment consisting of a multiple receptacle comprised of four or more receptacles shall be computed at not less than 90 volt-amperes per receptacle.

This provision shall not be applicable to the receptacle outlets specified in 210.11(C)(1) and (2).

(10) Dwelling Occupancies. In one-family, two-family, and multifamily dwellings and in guest rooms of hotels and motels, the outlets specified in (1), (2), and (3) are included in the general lighting load calculations of 220.3(A). No additional load calculations shall be required for such outlets.

(1) All general-use receptacle outlets of 20-ampere rating or less, including receptacles connected to the circuits in 210.11(C)(3)
(2) The receptacle outlets specified in 210.52(E) and (G)
(3) The lighting outlets specified in 210.70(A) and (B)

(11) Other Outlets. Other outlets not covered in 220.3(B)(1) through (10) shall be computed based on 180 volt-amperes per outlet.

(C) Loads for Additions to Existing Installations.

(1) Dwelling Units. Loads added to an existing dwelling unit(s) shall comply with the following as applicable:

(1) Loads for structural additions to an existing dwelling unit or for a previously unwired portion of an existing dwelling unit, either of which exceeds 46.5 m^2 (500 ft^2), shall be computed in accordance with 220.3(A) and (B).
(2) Loads for new circuits or extended circuits in previously wired dwelling units shall be computed in accordance with either 220.3(A) or (B), as applicable.

(2) Other Than Dwelling Units. Loads for new circuits or extended circuits in other than dwelling units shall be computed in accordance with either 220.3(A) or (B), as applicable.

220.4 Maximum Loads. The total load shall not exceed the rating of the branch circuit, and it shall not exceed the maximum loads specified in 220.4(A) through (C) under the conditions specified therein.

(A) Motor-Operated and Combination Loads. Where a circuit supplies only motor-operated loads, Article 430 shall apply. Where a circuit supplies only air-conditioning equipment, refrigerating equipment, or both, Article 440 shall apply. For circuits supplying loads consisting of motor-operated utilization equipment that is fastened in place and has a motor larger than ⅛ hp in combination with other loads, the total computed load shall be based on 125 percent of the largest motor load plus the sum of the other loads.

(B) Inductive Lighting Loads. For circuits supplying lighting units that have ballasts, transformers, or autotransformers, the computed load shall be based on the total ampere ratings of such units and not on the total watts of the lamps.

(C) Range Loads. It shall be permissible to apply demand factors for range loads in accordance with Table 220.19, including Note 4.

II. Feeders and Services

220.10 General. The computed load of a feeder or service shall not be less than the sum of the loads on the branch circuits supplied, as determined by Part I of this article, after any applicable demand factors permitted by Parts II, III, or IV have been applied.

FPN: See Examples D1(A) through D10 in Annex D. See 220.4(B) for the maximum load in amperes permitted for lighting units operating at less than 100 percent power factor.

220.11 General Lighting. The demand factors specified in Table 220.11 shall apply to that portion of the total branch-circuit load computed for general illumination. They shall not be applied in determining the number of branch circuits for general illumination.

220.12 Show-Window and Track Lighting.

(A) Show Windows. For show-window lighting, a load of not less than 660 volt-amperes/linear meter or 200 volt-amperes/linear foot shall be included for a show window, measured horizontally along its base.

FPN: See 220.3(B)(7) for branch circuits supplying show windows.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-68

Table 220.11 Lighting Load Demand Factors

Type of Occupancy	Portion of Lighting Load to Which Demand Factor Applies (Volt-Amperes)	Demand Factor (Percent)
Dwelling units	First 3000 or less at	100
	From 3001 to 120,000 at	35
	Remainder over 120,000 at	25
Hospitals*	First 50,000 or less at	40
	Remainder over 50,000 at	20
Hotels and motels, including apartment houses without provision for cooking by tenants*	First 20,000 or less at	50
	From 20,001 to 100,000 at	40
	Remainder over 100,000 at	30
Warehouses (storage)	First 12,500 or less at	100
	Remainder over 12,500 at	50
All others	Total volt-amperes	100

*The demand factors of this table shall not apply to the computed load of feeders or services supplying areas in hospitals, hotels, and motels where the entire lighting is likely to be used at one time, as in operating rooms, ballrooms, or dining rooms.

(B) Track Lighting. For track lighting in other than dwelling units or guest rooms of hotels or motels, an additional load of 150 volt-amperes shall be included for every 600 mm (2 ft) of lighting track or fraction thereof. Where multicircuit track is installed, the load shall be considered to be divided equally between the track circuits.

220.13 Receptacle Loads — Nondwelling Units. In other than dwelling units, receptacle loads computed at not more than 180 volt-amperes per outlet in accordance with 220.3(B)(9) and fixed multioutlet assemblies computed in accordance with 220.3(B)(8) shall be permitted to be added to the lighting loads and made subject to the demand factors given in Table 220.11, or they shall be permitted to be made subject to the demand factors given in Table 220.13.

Table 220.13 Demand Factors for Nondwelling Receptacle Loads

Portion of Receptacle Load to Which Demand Factor Applies (Volt-Amperes)	Demand Factor (Percent)
First 10 kVA or less at	100
Remainder over 10 kVA at	50

220.14 Motors. Motor loads shall be computed in accordance with 430.24, 430.25, and 430.26 and with 440.6 for hermetic refrigerant motor compressors.

220.15 Fixed Electric Space Heating. Fixed electric space heating loads shall be computed at 100 percent of the total connected load; however, in no case shall a feeder or service load current rating be less than the rating of the largest branch circuit supplied.

Exception: Where reduced loading of the conductors results from units operating on duty-cycle, intermittently, or from all units not operating at the same time, the authority having jurisdiction may grant permission for feeder and service conductors to have an ampacity less than 100 percent, provided the conductors have an ampacity for the load so determined.

220.16 Small Appliance and Laundry Loads — Dwelling Unit.

(A) Small Appliance Circuit Load. In each dwelling unit, the load shall be computed at 1500 volt-amperes for each 2-wire small-appliance branch circuit required by 210.11(C)(1). Where the load is subdivided through two or more feeders, the computed load for each shall include not less than 1500 volt-amperes for each 2-wire small-appliance branch circuit. These loads shall be permitted to be included with the general lighting load and subjected to the demand factors provided in Table 220.11.

Exception: The individual branch circuit permitted by 210.52(B)(1), Exception No. 2, shall be permitted to be excluded from the calculation required by 220.16.

(B) Laundry Circuit Load. A load of not less than 1500 volt-amperes shall be included for each 2-wire laundry branch circuit installed as required by 210.11(C)(2). This load shall be permitted to be included with the general lighting load and subjected to the demand factors provided in Table 220.11.

220.17 Appliance Load — Dwelling Unit(s). It shall be permissible to apply a demand factor of 75 percent to the nameplate rating load of four or more appliances fastened in place, other than electric ranges, clothes dryers, space-heating equipment, or air-conditioning equipment, that are served by the same feeder or service in a one-family, two-family, or multifamily dwelling.

220.18 Electric Clothes Dryers — Dwelling Unit(s). The load for household electric clothes dryers in a dwelling unit(s) shall be 5000 watts (volt-amperes) or the nameplate rating, whichever is larger, for each dryer served. The use of the demand factors in Table 220.18 shall be permitted. Where two or more single-phase dryers are supplied by a 3-phase, 4-wire feeder or service, the total load shall be computed on the basis of twice the maximum number connected between any two phases.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-69

Table 220.18 Demand Factors for Household Electric Clothes Dryers

Number of Dryers	Demand Factor (Percent)
1–4	100%
5	85%
6	75%
7	65%
8	60%
9	55%
10	50%
11	47%
12–22	% = 47 – (number of dryers – 11)
23	35%
24–42	% = 35 – [0.5 × (number of dryers – 23)]
43 and over	25%

220.19 Electric Ranges and Other Cooking Appliances — Dwelling Unit(s). The demand load for household electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, and other household cooking appliances individually rated in excess of 1¾ kW shall be permitted to be computed in accordance with Table 220.19. Kilovolt-amperes (kVA) shall be considered equivalent to

Table 220.19 Demand Loads for Household Electric Ranges, Wall-Mounted Ovens, Counter-Mounted Cooking Units, and Other Household Cooking Appliances over 1¾ kW Rating (Column C to be used in all cases except as otherwise permitted in Note 3.)

Number of Appliances	Demand Factor (Percent) (See Notes) Column A (Less than 3½ kW Rating)	Demand Factor (Percent) (See Notes) Column B (3½ kW to 8¾ kW Rating)	Column C Maximum Demand (kW) (See Notes) (Not over 12 kW Rating)
1	80	80	8
2	75	65	11
3	70	55	14
4	66	50	17
5	62	45	20
6	59	43	21
7	56	40	22
8	53	36	23
9	51	35	24
10	49	34	25
11	47	32	26
12	45	32	27
13	43	32	28
14	41	32	29
15	40	32	30
16	39	28	31
17	38	28	32
18	37	28	33
19	36	28	34
20	35	28	35
21	34	26	36
22	33	26	37
23	32	26	38
24	31	26	39
25	30	26	40
26–30	30	24	15 kW + 1 kW for each range
31–40	30	22	
41–50	30	20	25 kW + ¾ kW for each range
51–60	30	18	
61 and over	30	16	

1. Over 12 kW through 27 kW ranges all of same rating. For ranges individually rated more than 12 kW but not more than 27 kW, the maximum demand in Column C shall be increased 5 percent for each additional kilowatt of rating or major fraction thereof by which the rating of individual ranges exceeds 12 kW.

2. Over 8¾ kW through 27 kW ranges of unequal ratings. For ranges individually rated more than 8¾ kW and of different ratings, but none exceeding 27 kW, an average value of rating shall be computed by adding together the ratings of all ranges to obtain the total connected load (using 12 kW for any range rated less than 12 kW) and dividing by the total number of ranges. Then the maximum demand in Column C shall be increased 5 percent for each kilowatt or major fraction thereof by which this average value exceeds 12 kW.

3. Over 1¾ kW through 8¾ kW. In lieu of the method provided in Column C, it shall be permissible to add the nameplate ratings of all household cooking appliances rated more than 1¾ kW but not more than 8¾ kW and multiply the sum by the demand factors specified in Column A or B for the given number of appliances. Where the rating of cooking appliances falls under both Column A and Column B, the demand factors for each column shall be applied to the appliances for that column, and the results added together.

4. Branch-Circuit Load. It shall be permissible to compute the branch-circuit load for one range in accordance with Table 220.19. The branch-circuit load for one wall-mounted oven or one counter-mounted cooking unit shall be the nameplate rating of the appliance. The branch-circuit load for a counter-mounted cooking unit and not more than two wall-mounted ovens, all supplied from a single branch circuit and located in the same room, shall be computed by adding the nameplate rating of the individual appliances and treating this total as equivalent to one range.

5. This table also applies to household cooking appliances rated over 1¾ kW and used in instructional programs.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-70

kilowatts (kW) for loads computed under this section.

Where two or more single-phase ranges are supplied by a 3-phase, 4-wire feeder or service, the total load shall be computed on the basis of twice the maximum number connected between any two phases.

FPN No. 1: See Example D5(A) in Annex D.

FPN No. 2: See Table 220.20 for commercial cooking equipment.

FPN No. 3: See the examples in Annex D.

220.20 Kitchen Equipment — Other Than Dwelling Unit(s). It shall be permissible to compute the load for commercial electric cooking equipment, dishwasher booster heaters, water heaters, and other kitchen equipment in accordance with Table 220.20. These demand factors shall be applied to all equipment that has either thermostatic control or intermittent use as kitchen equipment. They shall not apply to space-heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.

However, in no case shall the feeder or service demand be less than the sum of the largest two kitchen equipment loads.

Table 220.20 Demand Factors for Kitchen Equipment — Other Than Dwelling Unit(s)

Number of Units of Equipment	Demand Factor (Percent)
1	100
2	100
3	90
4	80
5	70
6 and over	65

220.21 Noncoincident Loads. Where it is unlikely that two or more noncoincident loads will be in use simultaneously, it shall be permissible to use only the largest load(s) that will be used at one time, in computing the total load of a feeder or service.

220.22 Feeder or Service Neutral Load. The feeder or service neutral load shall be the maximum unbalance of the load determined by this article. The maximum unbalanced load shall be the maximum net computed load between the neutral and any one ungrounded conductor, except that the load thus obtained shall be multiplied by 140 percent for 3-wire, 2-phase or 5-wire, 2-phase systems. For a feeder or service supplying household electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, and electric dryers, the maximum unbalanced load shall be considered as 70 percent of the load on the ungrounded conductors, as determined in accordance with Table 220.19 for ranges and Table 220.18 for dryers. For 3-wire dc or single-phase ac; 4-wire, 3-phase; 3-wire, 2-phase; or 5-wire, 2-phase systems, a further demand factor of 70 percent shall be permitted for that portion of the unbalanced load in excess of 200 amperes. There shall be no reduction of the neutral capacity for that portion of the load that consists of nonlinear loads supplied from a 4-wire, wye-connected, 3-phase system. There shall be no reduction in the capacity of the grounded conductor of a 3-wire circuit consisting of two phase wires and the neutral of a 4-wire, 3-phase, wye-connected system.

FPN No. 1: See Examples D1(A), D1(B), D2(B), D4(A), and D5(A) in Annex D.

FPN No. 2: A 3-phase, 4-wire, wye-connected power system used to supply power to nonlinear loads may necessitate that the power system design allow for the possibility of high harmonic neutral currents.

III. Optional Calculations for Computing Feeder and Service Loads

220.30 Optional Calculation — Dwelling Unit.

(A) Feeder and Service Load. For a dwelling unit having the total connected load served by a single 3-wire, 120/240-volt or 208Y/120-volt set of service or feeder conductors with an ampacity of 100 or greater, it shall be permissible to compute the feeder and service loads in accordance with this section instead of the method specified in Part II of this article. The calculated load shall be the result of adding the loads from 220.30(B) and (C). Feeder and service-entrance conductors whose demand load is determined by this optional calculation shall be permitted to have the neutral load determined by 220.22.

(B) General Loads. The general calculated load shall be not less than 100 percent of the first 10 kVA plus 40 percent of the remainder of the following loads:

(1) 1500 volt-amperes for each 2-wire, 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuit and each laundry branch circuit specified in 220.16.

(2) 33 volt-amperes/m^2 or 3 volt-amperes/ft^2 for general lighting and general-use receptacles. The floor area for each floor shall be computed from the outside dimensions of the dwelling unit. The computed floor area shall not include open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces not adaptable for future use.

(3) The nameplate rating of all appliances that are fastened in place, permanently connected, or located to be on a specific circuit, ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, clothes dryers, and water heaters.

(4) The nameplate ampere or kVA rating of all motors and of all low-power-factor loads.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-71

(C) Heating and Air-Conditioning Load. The largest of the following six selections (load in kVA) shall be included:

(1) 100 percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the air conditioning and cooling.
(2) 100 percent of the nameplate ratings of the heat pump compressors and supplemental heating unless the controller prevents the compressor and supplemental heating from operating at the same time.
(3) 100 percent of the nameplate ratings of electric thermal storage and other heating systems where the usual load is expected to be continuous at the full nameplate value. Systems qualifying under this selection shall not be calculated under any other selection in 220.30(C).
(4) 65 percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the central electric space heating, including integral supplemental heating in heat pumps where the controller prevents the compressor and supplemental heating from operating at the same time.
(5) 65 percent of the nameplate rating(s) of electric space heating if less than four separately controlled units.
(6) 40 percent of the nameplate rating(s) of electric space heating if four or more separately controlled units.

220.31 Optional Calculations for Additional Loads in an Existing Dwelling Unit. This section shall be permitted to be used to determine if the existing service or feeder is of sufficient capacity to serve additional loads. Where the dwelling unit is served by a 120/240-volt or 208Y/120-volt, 3-wire service, it shall be permissible to compute the total load in accordance with 220.31(A) or (B).

(A) Where Additional Air-Conditioning Equipment or Electric Space-Heating Equipment Is Not to Be Installed. The following formula shall be used for existing and additional new loads.

Load (kVa)	Percent of Load
First 8 kVA of load at	100
Remainder of load at	40

Load calculations shall include the following:

(1) General lighting and general-use receptacles at 33 volt-amperes/m^2 or 3 volt-amperes/ft^2 as determined by 220.3(A)
(2) 1500 volt-amperes for each 2-wire, 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuit and each laundry branch circuit specified in 220.16
(3) Household range(s), wall-mounted oven(s), and counter-mounted cooking unit(s)
(4) All other appliances that are permanently connected, fastened in place, or connected to a dedicated circuit, at nameplate rating

(B) Where Additional Air-Conditioning Equipment or Electric Space-Heating Equipment Is to Be Installed. The following formula shall be used for existing and additional new loads. The larger connected load of air-conditioning or space-heating, but not both, shall be used.

Air-conditioning equipment	100
Central electric space heating	100
Less than four separately controlled space-heating units	100
First 8 kVA of all other loads	100
Remainder of all other loads	40

Other loads shall include the following:

(1) General lighting and general-use receptacles at 33 volt-amperes/m^2 or 3 volt-amperes/ft^2 as determined by 220.3(A)
(2) 1500 volt-amperes for each 2-wire, 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuit and each laundry branch circuit specified in 220.16
(3) Household range(s), wall-mounted oven(s), and counter-mounted cooking unit(s)
(4) All other appliances that are permanently connected, fastened in place, or connected to a dedicated circuit, including four or more separately controlled space-heating units, at nameplate rating

220.32 Optional Calculation — Multifamily Dwelling.

(A) Feeder or Service Load. It shall be permissible to compute the load of a feeder or service that supplies more than two dwelling units of a multifamily dwelling in accordance with Table 220.32 instead of Part II of this article where all the following conditions are met:

(1) No dwelling unit is supplied by more than one feeder.
(2) Each dwelling unit is equipped with electric cooking equipment.

Exception: When the computed load for multifamily dwellings without electric cooking in Part II of this article exceeds that computed under Part III for the identical load plus electric cooking (based on 8 kW per unit), the lesser of the two loads shall be permitted to be used.

(3) Each dwelling unit is equipped with either electric space heating, air conditioning, or both. Feeders and service conductors whose demand load is determined by this optional calculation shall be permitted to have the neutral load determined by 220.22.

(B) House Loads. House loads shall be computed in accordance with Part II of this article and shall be in addition to the dwelling unit loads computed in accordance with Table 220.32.

(C) Connected Loads. The computed load to which the demand factors of Table 220.32 apply shall include the following:

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-72

Table 220.32 Optional Calculations — Demand Factors for Three or More Multifamily Dwelling Units

Number of Dwelling Units	Demand Factor (Percent)
3–5	45
6–7	44
8–10	43
11	42
12–13	41
14–15	40
16–17	39
18–20	38
21	37
22–23	36
24–25	35
26–27	34
28–30	33
31	32
32–33	31
34–36	30
37–38	29
39–42	28
43–45	27
46–50	26
51–55	25
56–61	24
62 and over	23

(1) 1500 volt-amperes for each 2-wire, 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuit and each laundry branch circuit specified in 220.16.
(2) 33 volt-amperes/m^2 or 3 volt-amperes/ft^2 for general lighting and general-use receptacles.
(3) The nameplate rating of all appliances that are fastened in place, permanently connected or located to be on a specific circuit, ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, clothes dryers, water heaters, and space heaters. If water heater elements are interlocked so that all elements cannot be used at the same time, the maximum possible load shall be considered the nameplate load.
(4) The nameplate ampere or kilovolt-ampere rating of all motors and of all low-power-factor loads.
(5) The larger of the air-conditioning load or the space-heating load.

220.33 Optional Calculation — Two Dwelling Units. Where two dwelling units are supplied by a single feeder and the computed load under Part II of this article exceeds that for three identical units computed under 220.32, the lesser of the two loads shall be permitted to be used.

220.34 Optional Method — Schools. The calculation of a feeder or service load for schools shall be permitted in accordance with Table 220.34 in lieu of Part II of this article where equipped with electric space heating, air conditioning, or both. The connected load to which the demand factors of Table 220.34 apply shall include all of the interior and exterior lighting, power, water heating, cooking, other loads, and the larger of the air-conditioning load or space-heating load within the building or structure.

Feeders and service-entrance conductors whose demand load is determined by this optional calculation shall be permitted to have the neutral load determined by 220.22. Where the building or structure load is calculated by this optional method, feeders within the building or structure shall have ampacity as permitted in Part II of this article; however, the ampacity of an individual feeder shall not be required to be larger than the ampacity for the entire building.

This section shall not apply to portable classroom buildings.

Table 220.34 Optional Method — Demand Factors for Feeders and Service-Entrance Conductors for Schools

Connected Load	Demand Factor (Percent)
First 33 VA/m^2 (3 VA/ft^2) at	100
Plus	
Over 33 to 220 VA/m^2 (3 to 20 VA/ft^2) at	75
Plus	
Remainder over 220 VA/m^2 (20 VA/ft^2) at	25

220.35 Optional Calculations for Determining Existing Loads. The calculation of a feeder or service load for existing installations shall be permitted to use actual maximum demand to determine the existing load under the following conditions:

(1) The maximum demand data is available for a 1-year period.

Exception: If the maximum demand data for a 1-year period is not available, the calculated load shall be permitted to be based on the maximum demand (measure of average power demand over a 15-minute period) continuously recorded over a minimum 30-day period using a recording ammeter or power meter connected to the highest loaded phase of the feeder or service, based on the initial loading at the start of the recording. The recording shall reflect the maximum demand of the feeder or service by being taken when the building or space is occupied and shall include by measurement or calculation the larger of the heating or cooling equipment load, and other loads that may be periodic in nature due to seasonal or similar conditions.

(2) The maximum demand at 125 percent plus the new load does not exceed the ampacity of the feeder or rating of the service.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-73

Table 220.36 Optional Method — Permitted Load Calculations for Service and Feeder Conductors for New Restaurants

Total Connected Load (kVA)	All Electric Restaurant Calculated Loads (kVA)	Not All Electric Restaurant Calculated Loads (kVA)
0–200	80%	100%
201–325	10% (amount over 200) + 160.0	50% (amount over 200) + 200.0
326–800	50% (amount over 325) + 172.5	45% (amount over 325) + 262.5
Over 800	50% (amount over 800) + 410.0	20% (amount over 800) + 476.3

Note: Add all electrical loads, including both heating and cooling loads, to compute the total connected load. Select the one demand factor that applies from the table, and multiply the total connected load by this single demand factor.

(3) The feeder has overcurrent protection in accordance with 240.4, and the service has overload protection in accordance with 230.90.

220.36 Optional Calculation — New Restaurants. Calculation of a service or feeder load, where the feeder serves the total load, for a new restaurant shall be permitted in accordance with Table 220.36 in lieu of Part II of this article.

The overload protection of the service conductors shall be in accordance with 230.90 and 240.4.

Feeder conductors shall not be required to be of greater ampacity than the service conductors.

Service or feeder conductors whose demand load is determined by this optional calculation shall be permitted to have the neutral load determined by 220.22.

IV. Method for Computing Farm Loads

220.40 Farm Loads — Buildings and Other Loads.

(A) Dwelling Unit. The feeder or service load of a farm dwelling unit shall be computed in accordance with the provisions for dwellings in Part II or III of this article. Where the dwelling has electric heat and the farm has electric grain-drying systems, Part III of this article shall not be used to compute the dwelling load where the dwelling and farm load are supplied by a common service.

(B) Other Than Dwelling Unit. Where a feeder or service supplies a farm building or other load having two or more separate branch circuits, the load for feeders, service conductors, and service equipment shall be computed in accordance with demand factors not less than indicated in Table 220.40.

220.41 Farm Loads — Total. Where supplied by a common service, the total load of the farm for service conductors and service equipment shall be computed in accordance with the farm dwelling unit load and demand factors specified in Table 220.41. Where there is equipment in two or more farm equipment buildings or for loads having the same function, such loads shall be computed in accordance with Table 220.40 and shall be permitted to be combined as a single load in Table 220.41 for computing the total load.

Table 220.40 Method for Computing Farm Loads for Other Than Dwelling Unit

Ampere Load at 240 Volts Maximum	Demand Factor (Percent)
Loads expected to operate without diversity, but not less than 125 percent full-load current of the largest motor and not less than the first 60 amperes of load	100
Next 60 amperes of all other loads	50
Remainder of other load	25

Table 220.41 Method for Computing Total Farm Load

Individual Loads Computed in Accordance with Table 220.40	Demand Factor (Percent)
Largest load	100
Second largest load	75
Third largest load	65
Remaining loads	50

Note: To this total load, add the load of the farm dwelling unit computed in accordance with Part II or III of this article. Where the dwelling has electric heat and the farm has electric grain-drying systems, Part III of this article shall not be used to compute the dwelling load.

ARTICLE 225
Outside Branch Circuits and Feeders

225.1 Scope. This article covers requirements for outside branch circuits and feeders run on or between buildings, structures, or poles on the premises; and electric equipment and wiring for the supply of utilization equipment that is

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-74

located on or attached to the outside of buildings, structures, or poles.

FPN: For additional information on wiring over 600 volts, see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code.*

225.2 Other Articles. Application of other articles, including additional requirements to specific cases of equipment and conductors, is shown in Table 225.2.

Table 225.2 Other Articles

Equipment/Conductors	Article
Branch circuits	210
Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits	725
Communications circuits	800
Community antenna television and radio distribution systems	820
Conductors for general wiring	310
Electrically driven or controlled irrigation machines	675
Electric signs and outline lighting	600
Feeders	215
Fire alarm systems	760
Fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment	426
Floating buildings	553
Grounding	250
Hazardous (classified) locations	500
Hazardous (classified) locations — specific	510
Marinas and boatyards	555
Messenger supported wiring	396
Open wiring on insulators	398
Over 600 volts, general	490
Overcurrent protection	240
Radio and television equipment	810
Services	230
Solar photovoltaic systems	690
Swimming pools, fountains, and similar installations	680
Use and identification of grounded conductors	200

I. General

225.3 Calculation of Loads 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less.

(A) Branch Circuits. The load on outdoor branch circuits shall be as determined by 220.3.

(B) Feeders. The load on outdoor feeders shall be as determined by Part II of Article 220.

225.4 Conductor Covering. Where within 3.0 m (10 ft) of any building or structure other than supporting poles or towers, open individual (aerial) overhead conductors shall be insulated or covered. Conductors in cables or raceways, except Type MI cable, shall be of the rubber-covered type or thermoplastic type and, in wet locations, shall comply with 310.8. Conductors for festoon lighting shall be of the rubber-covered or thermoplastic type.

Exception: Equipment grounding conductors and grounded circuit conductors shall be permitted to be bare or covered as specifically permitted elsewhere in this Code.

225.5 Size of Conductors 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less. The ampacity of outdoor branch-circuit and feeder conductors shall be in accordance with 310.15 based on loads as determined under 220.3 and Part II of Article 220.

225.6 Conductor Size and Support.

(A) Overhead Spans. Open individual conductors shall not be smaller than the following:

(1) For 600 volts, nominal, or less, 10 AWG copper or 8 AWG aluminum for spans up to 15 m (50 ft) in length and 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum for a longer span, unless supported by a messenger wire
(2) For over 600 volts, nominal, 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum where open individual conductors and 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum where in cable

(B) Festoon Lighting. Overhead conductors for festoon lighting shall not be smaller than 12 AWG unless the conductors are supported by messenger wires. In all spans exceeding 12 m (40 ft), the conductors shall be supported by messenger wire. The messenger wire shall be supported by strain insulators. Conductors or messenger wires shall not be attached to any fire escape, downspout, or plumbing equipment.

225.7 Lighting Equipment Installed Outdoors.

(A) General. For the supply of lighting equipment installed outdoors, the branch circuits shall comply with Article 210 and 225.7(B) through (D).

(B) Common Neutral. The ampacity of the neutral conductor shall not be less than the maximum net computed load current between the neutral and all ungrounded conductors connected to any one phase of the circuit.

(C) 277 Volts to Ground. Circuits exceeding 120 volts, nominal, between conductors and not exceeding 277 volts, nominal, to ground shall be permitted to supply luminaires (lighting fixtures) for illumination of outdoor areas of industrial establishments, office buildings, schools, stores, and other commercial or public buildings where the luminaires (fixtures) are not less than 900 mm (3 ft) from windows, platforms, fire escapes, and the like.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-75

(D) 600 Volts Between Conductors. Circuits exceeding 277 volts, nominal, to ground and not exceeding 600 volts, nominal, between conductors shall be permitted to supply the auxiliary equipment of electric-discharge lamps in accordance with 210.6(D)(1).

225.9 Overcurrent Protection. Overcurrent protection shall be in accordance with 210.20 for branch circuits and Article 240 for feeders.

225.10 Wiring on Buildings. The installation of outside wiring on surfaces of buildings shall be permitted for circuits of not over 600 volts, nominal, as open wiring on insulators, as multiconductor cable, as Type MC cable, as Type MI cable, as messenger supported wiring, in rigid metal conduit, in intermediate metal conduit, in rigid nonmetallic conduit, in cable trays, as cablebus, in wireways, in auxiliary gutters, in electrical metallic tubing, in flexible metal conduit, in liquidtight flexible metal conduit, in liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit, and in busways. Circuits of over 600 volts, nominal, shall be installed as provided in 300.37. Circuits for signs and outline lighting shall be installed in accordance with Article 600.

225.11 Circuit Exits and Entrances. Where outside branch and feeder circuits leave or enter a building, the requirements of 230.52 and 230.54 shall apply.

225.12 Open-Conductor Supports. Open conductors shall be supported on glass or porcelain knobs, racks, brackets, or strain insulators.

225.14 Open-Conductor Spacings.

(A) 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less. Conductors of 600 volts, nominal, or less, shall comply with the spacings provided in Table 230.51(C).

(B) Over 600 Volts, Nominal. Conductors of over 600 volts, nominal, shall comply with the spacings provided in 110.36 and 490.24.

(C) Separation from Other Circuits. Open conductors shall be separated from open conductors of other circuits or systems by not less than 100 mm (4 in.).

(D) Conductors on Poles. Conductors on poles shall have a separation of not less than 300 mm (1 ft) where not placed on racks or brackets. Conductors supported on poles shall provide a horizontal climbing space not less than the following:

(1) Power conductors below communications conductors — 750 mm (30 in.)
(2) Power conductors alone or above communications conductors:
   a. 300 volts or less — 600 mm (24 in.)
   b. Over 300 volts — 750 mm (30 in.)
(3) Communications conductors below power conductors — same as power conductors
(4) Communications conductors alone — no requirement

225.15 Supports over Buildings. Supports over a building shall be in accordance with 230.29.

225.16 Point of Attachment to Buildings. The point of attachment to a building shall be in accordance with 230.26.

225.17 Means of Attachment to Buildings. The means of attachment to a building shall be in accordance with 230.27.

225.18 Clearance from Ground. Overhead spans of open conductors and open multiconductor cables of not over 600 volts, nominal, shall conform to the following:

(1) 3.0 m (10 ft) — above finished grade, sidewalks, or from any platform or projection from which they might be reached where the voltage does not exceed 150 volts to ground and accessible to pedestrians only
(2) 3.7 m (12 ft) — over residential property and driveways, and those commercial areas not subject to truck traffic where the voltage does not exceed 300 volts to ground
(3) 4.5 m (15 ft) — for those areas listed in the 3.7-m (12-ft) classification where the voltage exceeds 300 volts to ground
(4) 5.5 m (18 ft) — over public streets, alleys, roads, parking areas subject to truck traffic, driveways on other than residential property, and other land traversed by vehicles, such as cultivated, grazing, forest, and orchard

225.19 Clearances from Buildings for Conductors of Not Over 600 Volts, Nominal.

(A) Above Roofs. Overhead spans of open conductors and open multiconductor cables shall have a vertical clearance of not less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above the roof surface. The vertical clearance above the roof level shall be maintained for a distance not less than 900 mm (3 ft) in all directions from the edge of the roof.

Exception No. 1: The area above a roof surface subject to pedestrian or vehicular traffic shall have a vertical clearance from the roof surface in accordance with the clearance requirements of 225.18.

Exception No. 2: Where the voltage between conductors does not exceed 300, and the roof has a slope of 100 mm

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-76

(4 in.) in 300 mm (12 in.) or greater, a reduction in clearance to 900 mm (3 ft) shall be permitted.

Exception No. 3: Where the voltage between conductors does not exceed 300, a reduction in clearance above only the overhanging portion of the roof to not less than 450 mm (18 in.) shall be permitted if (1) not more than 1.8 m (6 ft) of the conductors, 1.2 m (4 ft) horizontally, pass above the roof overhang and (2) they are terminated at a through-the-roof raceway or approved support.

Exception No. 4: The requirement for maintaining the vertical clearance 900 mm (3 ft) from the edge of the roof shall not apply to the final conductor span where the conductors are attached to the side of a building.

(B) From Nonbuilding or Nonbridge Structures. From signs, chimneys, radio and television antennas, tanks, and other nonbuilding or nonbridge structures, clearances — vertical, diagonal, and horizontal — shall not be less than 900 mm (3 ft).

(C) Horizontal Clearances. Clearances shall not be less than 900 mm (3 ft).

(D) Final Spans. Final spans of feeders or branch circuits shall comply with 225.19(D)(1), (2), and (3).

(1) Clearance from Windows. Final spans to the building they supply, or from which they are fed, shall be permitted to be attached to the building, but they shall be kept not less than 900 mm (3 ft) from windows that are designed to be opened, and from doors, porches, balconies, ladders, stairs, fire escapes, or similar locations.

Exception: Conductors run above the top level of a window shall be permitted to be less than the 900-mm (3-ft) requirement.

(2) Vertical Clearance. The vertical clearance of final spans above, or within 900 mm (3 ft) measured horizontally of, platforms, projections, or surfaces from which they might be reached shall be maintained in accordance with 225.18.

(3) Building Openings. The overhead branch-circuit and feeder conductors shall not be installed beneath openings through which materials may be moved, such as openings in farm and commercial buildings, and shall not be installed where they obstruct entrance to these buildings' openings.

(E) Zone for Fire Ladders. Where buildings exceed three stories or 15 m (50 ft) in height, overhead lines shall be arranged, where practicable, so that a clear space (or zone) at least 1.8 m (6 ft) wide will be left either adjacent to the buildings or beginning not over 2.5 m (8 ft) from them to facilitate the raising of ladders when necessary for fire fighting.

225.20 Mechanical Protection of Conductors. Mechanical protection of conductors on buildings, structures, or poles shall be as provided for services in 230.50.

225.21 Multiconductor Cables on Exterior Surfaces of Buildings. Supports for multiconductor cables on exterior surfaces of buildings shall be as provided in 230.51.

225.22 Raceways on Exterior Surfaces of Buildings or Other Structures. Raceways on exterior surfaces of buildings or other structures shall be raintight and arranged to drain.

Exception: Flexible metal conduit, where permitted in 348.12(1), shall not be required to be raintight.

225.24 Outdoor Lampholders. Where outdoor lampholders are attached as pendants, the connections to the circuit wires shall be staggered. Where such lampholders have terminals of a type that puncture the insulation and make contact with the conductors, they shall be attached only to conductors of the stranded type.

225.25 Location of Outdoor Lamps. Locations of lamps for outdoor lighting shall be below all energized conductors, transformers, or other electric utilization equipment, unless

(1) Clearances or other safeguards are provided for relamping operations, or
(2) Equipment is controlled by a disconnecting means that can be locked in the open position.

225.26 Vegetation as Support. Vegetation such as trees shall not be used for support of overhead conductor spans.

II. More Than One Building or Other Structure

225.30 Number of Supplies. Where more than one building or other structure is on the same property and under single management, each additional building or other structure served that is on the load side of the service disconnecting means shall be supplied by one feeder or branch circuit unless permitted in 225.30(A) through (E). For the purpose of this section, a multiwire branch circuit shall be considered a single circuit.

(A) Special Conditions. Additional feeders or branch circuits shall be permitted to supply the following:

(1) Fire pumps
(2) Emergency systems
(3) Legally required standby systems
(4) Optional standby systems
(5) Parallel power production systems

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-77

(B) Special Occupancies. By special permission, additional feeders or branch circuits shall be permitted for the following:

(1) Multiple-occupancy buildings where there is no space available for supply equipment accessible to all occupants, or
(2) A single building or other structure sufficiently large to make two or more supplies necessary.

(C) Capacity Requirements. Additional feeders or branch circuits shall be permitted where the capacity requirements are in excess of 2000 amperes at a supply voltage of 600 volts or less.

(D) Different Characteristics. Additional feeders or branch circuits shall be permitted for different voltages, frequencies, or phases or for different uses, such as control of outside lighting from multiple locations.

(E) Documented Switching Procedures. Additional feeders or branch circuits shall be permitted to supply installations under single management where documented safe switching procedures are established and maintained for disconnection.

225.31 Disconnecting Means. Means shall be provided for disconnecting all ungrounded conductors that supply or pass through the building or structure.

225.32 Location. The disconnecting means shall be installed either inside or outside of the building or structure served or where the conductors pass through the building or structure. The disconnecting means shall be at a readily accessible location nearest the point of entrance of the conductors. For the purposes of this section, the requirements in 230.6 shall be permitted to be utilized.

Exception No. 1: For installations under single management, where documented safe switching procedures are established and maintained for disconnection, and where the installation is monitored by qualified individuals, the disconnecting means shall be permitted to be located elsewhere on the premises.

Exception No. 2: For buildings or other structures qualifying under the provisions of Article 685, the disconnecting means shall be permitted to be located elsewhere on the premises.

Exception No. 3: For towers or poles used as lighting standards, the disconnecting means shall be permitted to be located elsewhere on the premises.

Exception No. 4: For poles or similar structures used only for support of signs installed in accordance with Article 600, the disconnecting means shall be permitted to be located elsewhere on the premises.

225.33 Maximum Number of Disconnects.

(A) General. The disconnecting means for each supply permitted by 225.30 shall consist of not more than six switches or six circuit breakers mounted in a single enclosure, in a group of separate enclosures, or in or on a switchboard. There shall be no more than six disconnects per supply grouped in any one location.

Exception: For the purposes of this section, disconnecting means used solely for the control circuit of the ground-fault protection system, or the control circuit of the power-operated supply disconnecting means, installed as part of the listed equipment, shall not be considered a supply disconnecting means.

(B) Single-Pole Units. Two or three single-pole switches or breakers capable of individual operation shall be permitted on multiwire circuits, one pole for each ungrounded conductor, as one multipole disconnect, provided they are equipped with handle ties or a master handle to disconnect all ungrounded conductors with no more than six operations of the hand.

225.34 Grouping of Disconnects.

(A) General. The two to six disconnects as permitted in 225.33 shall be grouped. Each disconnect shall be marked to indicate the load served.

Exception: One of the two to six disconnecting means permitted in 225.33, where used only for a water pump also intended to provide fire protection, shall be permitted to be located remote from the other disconnecting means.

(B) Additional Disconnecting Means. The one or more additional disconnecting means for fire pumps or for emergency, legally required standby or optional standby system permitted by 225.30 shall be installed sufficiently remote from the one to six disconnecting means for normal supply to minimize the possibility of simultaneous interruption of supply.

225.35 Access to Occupants. In a multiple-occupancy building, each occupant shall have access to the occupant's supply disconnecting means.

Exception: In a multiple-occupancy building where electric supply and electrical maintenance are provided by the building management and where these are under continuous building management supervision, the supply disconnecting means supplying more than one occupancy shall be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-78

permitted to be accessible to authorized management personnel only.

225.36 Suitable for Service Equipment. The disconnecting means specified in 225.31 shall be suitable for use as service equipment.

Exception: For garages and outbuildings on residential property, a snap switch or a set of 3-way or 4-way snap switches shall be permitted as the disconnecting means.

225.37 Identification. Where a building or structure has any combination of feeders, branch circuits, or services passing through it or supplying it, a permanent plaque or directory shall be installed at each feeder and branch-circuit disconnect location denoting all other services, feeders, or branch circuits supplying that building or structure or passing through that building or structure and the area served by each.

Exception No. 1: A plaque or directory shall not be required for large-capacity multibuilding industrial installations under single management, where it is ensured that disconnection can be accomplished by establishing and maintaining safe switching procedures.

Exception No. 2: This identification shall not be required for branch circuits installed from a dwelling unit to a second building or structure.

225.38 Disconnect Construction. Disconnecting means shall meet the requirements of 225.38(A) through (D).

Exception: For garages and outbuildings on residential property, snap switches or sets of 3-way or 4-way snap switches shall be permitted as the disconnecting means.

(A) Manually or Power Operable. The disconnecting means shall consist of either (1) a manually operable switch or a circuit breaker equipped with a handle or other suitable operating means or (2) a power-operable switch or circuit breaker, provided the switch or circuit breaker can be opened by hand in the event of a power failure.

(B) Simultaneous Opening of Poles. Each building or structure disconnecting means shall simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded supply conductors that it controls from the building or structure wiring system.

(C) Disconnection of Grounded Conductor. Where the building or structure disconnecting means does not disconnect the grounded conductor from the grounded conductors in the building or structure wiring, other means shall be provided for this purpose at the location of disconnecting means. A terminal or bus to which all grounded conductors can be attached by means of pressure connectors shall be permitted for this purpose.

In a multisection switchboard, disconnects for the grounded conductor shall be permitted to be in any of the switchboard, provided any such switchboard is marked.

(D) Indicating. The building or structure disconnecting means shall plainly indicate whether it is in the open or closed position.

225.39 Rating of Disconnect. The feeder or branch-circuit disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than the load to be carried, determined in accordance with Article 220. In no case shall the rating be lower than specified in 225.39(A), (B), (C), or (D).

(A) One-Circuit Installation. For installations to supply only limited loads of a single branch circuit, the branch circuit disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 15 amperes.

(B) Two-Circuit Installations. For installations consisting of not more than two 2-wire branch circuits, the feeder or branch-circuit disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 30 amperes.

(C) One-Family Dwelling. For a one-family dwelling, the feeder disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 100 amperes, 3-wire.

(D) All Others. For all other installations, the feeder or branch-circuit disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 60 amperes.

225.40 Access to Overcurrent Protective Devices. Where a feeder overcurrent device is not readily accessible, branch-circuit overcurrent devices shall be installed on the load side, shall be mounted in a readily accessible location, and shall be of a lower ampere rating than the feeder overcurrent device.

III. Over 600 Volts

225.50 Sizing of Conductors. The sizing of conductors over 600 volts shall be in accordance with 210.19(B) for branch circuits and 215.2(B) for feeders.

225.51 Isolating Switches. Where oil switches or air, oil, vacuum, or sulfur hexafluoride circuit breakers constitute a building disconnecting means, an isolating switch with visible break contacts and meeting the requirements of 230.204(B), (C), and (D) shall be installed on the supply side of the disconnecting means and all associated equipment.

Exception: The isolating switch shall not be required where the disconnecting means is mounted on removable truck panels or metal-enclosed switchgear units that cannot

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-79

be opened unless the circuit is disconnected and that, when removed from the normal operating position, automatically disconnect the circuit breaker or switch from all energized parts.

225.52 Location. A building or structure disconnecting means shall be located in accordance with 225.31, or it shall be electrically operated by a similarly located remote-control device.

225.53 Type. Each building or structure disconnect shall simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded supply conductors it controls and shall have a fault-closing rating not less than the maximum available short-circuit current available at its supply terminals.

Where fused switches or separately mounted fuses are installed, the fuse characteristics shall be permitted to contribute to the fault closing rating of the disconnecting means.

225.60 Clearances over Roadways, Walkways, Rail, Water, and Open Land.

(A) 22 kV Nominal to Ground or Less. The clearances over roadways, walkways, rail, water, and open land for conductors and live parts up to 22 kV nominal to ground or less shall be not less than the values shown in Table 225.60.

(B) Over 22 kV Nominal to Ground. Clearances for the categories shown in Table 225.60 shall be increased by 10 mm (0.4 in.) per kV above 22,000 volts.

(C) Special Cases. For special cases, such as where crossings will be made over lakes, rivers, or areas using large vehicles such as mining operations, specific designs shall be engineered considering the special circumstances and shall be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

FPN: For additional information, see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code.*

Table 225.60 Clearances over Roadways, Walkways, Rail, Water, and Open Land

Location	Clearance	
	m	ft
Open land subject to vehicles, cultivation, or grazing	5.6	18.5
Roadways, driveways, parking lots, and alleys	5.6	18.5
Walkways	4.1	13.5
Rails	8.1	26.5
Spaces and ways for pedestrians and restricted traffic	4.4	14.5
Water areas not suitable for boating	5.2	17

225.61 Clearances over Buildings and Other Structures.

(A) 22 kV Nominal to Ground or Less. The clearances over buildings and other structures for conductors and live parts up to 22 kV, nominal, to ground or less shall be not less than the values shown in Table 225.61.

(B) Over 22 kV Nominal to Ground. Clearances for the categories shown in Table 225.61 shall be increased by 10 mm (0.4 in.) per kV above 22,000 volts.

FPN: For additional information see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code.*

Table 225.61 Clearances over Buildings and Other Structures

Clearance from Conductors or Live Parts from:	Horizontal		Vertical	
	m	ft	m	ft
Building walls, projections, and windows	2.3	7.5	—	—
Balconies, catwalks, and similar areas accessible to people	2.3	7.5	4.1	13.5
Over or under roofs or projections not readily accessible to people	—	—	3.8	12.5
Over roofs accessible to vehicles but not trucks	—	—	4.1	13.5
Over roofs accessible to trucks	—	—	5.6	18.5
Other structures	2.3	7.5	—	—

ARTICLE 230
Services

230.1 Scope. This article covers service conductors and equipment for control and protection of services and their installation requirements.

FPN: See Figure 230.1.

I. General

230.2 Number of Services. A building or other structure served shall be supplied by only one service unless permitted in 230.2(A) through (D). For the purpose of 230.40, Exception No. 2 only, underground sets of conductors,

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-80

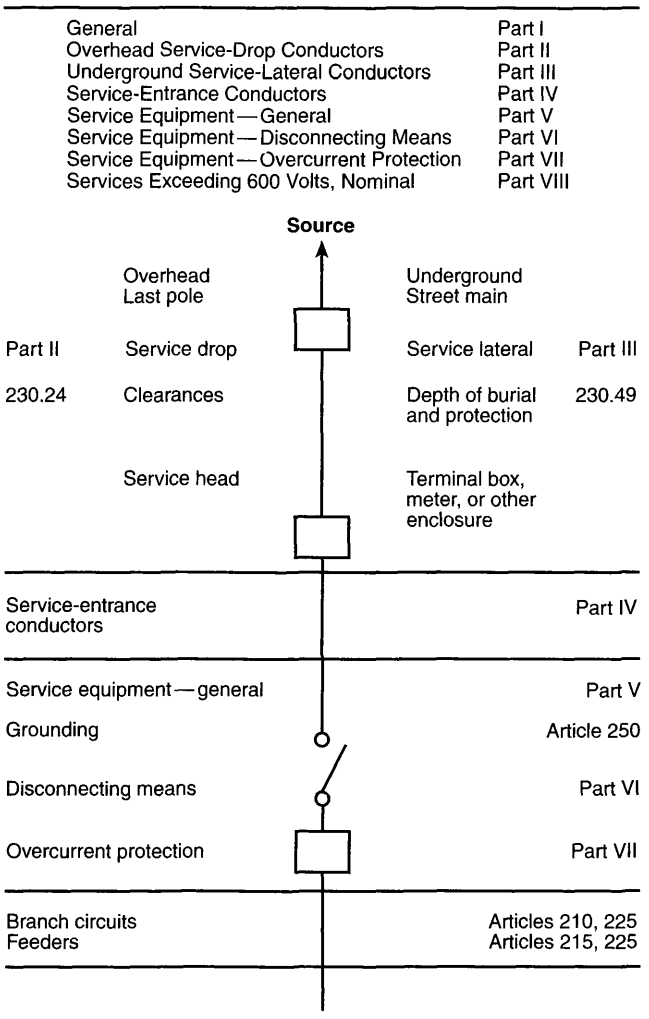


Figure 230.1 Services.

1/0 AWG and larger, running to the same location and connected together at their supply end but not connected together at their load end shall be considered to be supplying one service.

(A) Special Conditions. Additional services shall be permitted to supply the following:

(1) Fire pumps
(2) Emergency systems
(3) Legally required standby systems
(4) Optional standby systems
(5) Parallel power production systems

(B) Special Occupancies. By special permission, additional services shall be permitted for the following:

(1) Multiple-occupancy buildings where there is no available space for service equipment accessible to all occupants, or
(2) A single building or other structure sufficiently large to make two or more services necessary

(C) Capacity Requirements. Additional services shall be permitted under any of the following:

(1) Where the capacity requirements are in excess of 2000 amperes at a supply voltage of 600 volts or less
(2) Where the load requirements of a single-phase installation are greater than the serving agency normally supplies through one service
(3) By special permission

(D) Different Characteristics. Additional services shall be permitted for different voltages, frequencies, or phases, or for different uses, such as for different rate schedules.

(E) Identification. Where a building or structure is supplied by more than one service, or any combination of branch circuits, feeders, and services, a permanent plaque or directory shall be installed at each service disconnect location denoting all other services, feeders, and branch circuits supplying that building or structure and the area served by each. See 225.37.

230.3 One Building or Other Structure Not to Be Supplied Through Another. Service conductors supplying a building or other structure shall not pass through the interior of another building or other structure.

230.6 Conductors Considered Outside the Building. Conductors shall be considered outside of a building or other structure under any of the following conditions:

(1) Where installed under not less than 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete beneath a building or other structure
(2) Where installed within a building or other structure in a raceway that is encased in concrete or brick not less than 50 mm (2 in.) thick
(3) Where installed in any vault that meets the construction requirements of Article 450, Part III
(4) Where installed in conduit and under not less than 450 mm (18 in.) of earth beneath a building or other structure

230.7 Other Conductors in Raceway or Cable. Conductors other than service conductors shall not be installed in the same service raceway or service cable.

Exception No. 1: Grounding conductors and bonding jumpers.

Exception No. 2: Load management control conductors having overcurrent protection.

230.8 Raceway Seal. Where a service raceway enters a building or structure from an underground distribution system, it shall be sealed in accordance with 300.5(G). Spare or unused raceways shall also be sealed. Sealants shall be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-81

identified for use with the cable insulation, shield, or other components.

230.9 Clearance from Building Openings. Service conductors and final spans shall comply with 230.9(A), (B), and (C).

(A) Clearance from Windows. Service conductors installed as open conductors or multiconductor cable without an overall outer jacket shall have a clearance of not less than 900 mm (3 ft) from windows that are designed to be opened, doors, porches, balconies, ladders, stairs, fire escapes, or similar locations.

Exception: Conductors run above the top level of a window shall be permitted to be less than the 900-mm (3-ft) requirement.

(B) Vertical Clearance. The vertical clearance of final spans above, or within 900 mm (3 ft) measured horizontally of, platforms, projections, or surfaces from which they might be reached shall be maintained in accordance with 230.24(B).

(C) Building Openings. Overhead service conductors shall not be installed beneath openings through which materials may be moved, such as openings in farm and commercial buildings, and shall not be installed where they obstruct entrance to these building openings.

230.10 Vegetation as Support. Vegetation such as trees shall not be used for support of overhead service conductors.

II. Overhead Service-Drop Conductors

230.22 Insulation or Covering. Individual conductors shall be insulated or covered.

Exception: The grounded conductor of a multiconductor cable shall be permitted to be bare.

230.23 Size and Rating.

(A) General. Conductors shall have sufficient ampacity to carry the current for the load as computed in accordance with Article 220 and shall have adequate mechanical strength.

(B) Minimum Size. The conductors shall not be smaller than 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum or copper-clad aluminum.

Exception: Conductors supplying only limited loads of a single branch circuit — such as small polyphase power, controlled water heaters, and similar loads — shall not be smaller than 12 AWG hard-drawn copper or equivalent.

(C) Grounded Conductors. The grounded conductor shall not be less than the minimum size as required by 250.24(B).

230.24 Clearances. Service-drop conductors shall not be readily accessible and shall comply with 230.24(A) through (D) for services not over 600 volts, nominal.

(A) Above Roofs. Conductors shall have a vertical clearance of not less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above the roof surface. The vertical clearance above the roof level shall be maintained for a distance of not less than 900 mm (3 ft) in all directions from the edge of the roof.

Exception No. 1: The area above a roof surface subject to pedestrian or vehicular traffic shall have a vertical clearance from the roof surface in accordance with the clearance requirements of 230.24(B).

Exception No. 2: Where the voltage between conductors does not exceed 300 and the roof has a slope of 100 mm (4 in.) in 300 mm (12 in.), or greater, a reduction in clearance to 900 mm (3 ft) shall be permitted.

Exception No. 3: Where the voltage between conductors does not exceed 300, a reduction in clearance above only the overhanging portion of the roof to not less than 450 mm (18 in.) shall be permitted if (1) not more than 1.8 m (6 ft) of service-drop conductors, 1.2 m (4 ft) horizontally, pass above the roof overhang, and (2) they are terminated at a through-the-roof raceway or approved support.

FPN: See 230.28 for mast supports.

Exception No. 4: The requirement for maintaining the vertical clearance 900 mm (3 ft) from the edge of the roof shall not apply to the final conductor span where the service drop is attached to the side of a building.

(B) Vertical Clearance from Ground. Service-drop conductors, where not in excess of 600 volts, nominal, shall have the following minimum clearance from final grade:

(1) 3.0 m (10 ft) — at the electric service entrance to buildings, also at the lowest point of the drip loop of the building electric entrance, and above areas or sidewalks accessible only to pedestrians, measured from final grade or other accessible surface only for service-drop cables supported on and cabled together with a grounded bare messenger where the voltage does not exceed 150 volts to ground

(2) 3.7 m (12 ft) — over residential property and driveways, and those commercial areas not subject to truck traffic where the voltage does not exceed 300 volts to ground

(3) 4.5 m (15 ft) — for those areas listed in the 3.7 m (12 ft) classification where the voltage exceeds 300 volts to ground

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-82

(4) 5.5 m (18 ft) — over public streets, alleys, roads, parking areas subject to truck traffic, driveways on other than residential property, and other land such as cultivated, grazing, forest, and orchard

(C) Clearance from Building Openings. See 230.9.

(D) Clearance from Swimming Pools. See 680.8.

230.26 Point of Attachment. The point of attachment of the service-drop conductors to a building or other structure shall provide the minimum clearances as specified in 230.24. In no case shall this point of attachment be less than 3.0 m (10 ft) above finished grade.

230.27 Means of Attachment. Multiconductor cables used for service drops shall be attached to buildings or other structures by fittings identified for use with service conductors. Open conductors shall be attached to fittings identified for use with service conductors or to noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulators securely attached to the building or other structure.

230.28 Service Masts as Supports. Where a service mast is used for the support of service-drop conductors, it shall be of adequate strength or be supported by braces or guys to withstand safely the strain imposed by the service drop. Where raceway-type service masts are used, all raceway fittings shall be identified for use with service masts. Only power service-drop conductors shall be permitted to be attached to a service mast.

230.29 Supports over Buildings. Service-drop conductors passing over a roof shall be securely supported by substantial structures. Where practicable, such supports shall be independent of the building.

III. Underground Service-Lateral Conductors

230.30 Insulation. Service-lateral conductors shall be insulated for the applied voltage.

Exception: A grounded conductor shall be permitted to be uninsulated as follows:

(a) Bare copper used in a raceway.
(b) Bare copper for direct burial where bare copper is judged to be suitable for the soil conditions.
(c) Bare copper for direct burial without regard to soil conditions where part of a cable assembly identified for underground use.
(d) Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum without individual insulation or covering where part of a cable assembly identified for underground use in a raceway or for direct burial.

230.31 Size and Rating.

(A) General. Service-lateral conductors shall have sufficient ampacity to carry the current for the load as computed in accordance with Article 220 and shall have adequate mechanical strength.

(B) Minimum Size. The conductors shall not be smaller than 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum or copper-clad aluminum.

Exception: Conductors supplying only limited loads of a single branch circuit — such as small polyphase power, controlled water heaters, and similar loads — shall not be smaller than 12 AWG copper or 10 AWG aluminum or copper-clad aluminum.

(C) Grounded Conductors. The grounded conductor shall not be less than the minimum size required by 250.24(B).

230.32 Protection Against Damage. Underground service-lateral conductors shall be protected against damage in accordance with 300.5. Service-lateral conductors entering a building shall be installed in accordance with 230.6 or protected by a raceway wiring method identified in 230.43.

230.33 Spliced Conductors. Service-lateral conductors shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped in accordance with 110.14, 300.5(E), 300.13, and 300.15.

IV. Service-Entrance Conductors

230.40 Number of Service-Entrance Conductor Sets. Each service drop or lateral shall supply only one set of service-entrance conductors.

Exception No. 1: A building with one or more than one occupancy shall be permitted to have one set of service-entrance conductors for each service of different characteristics, as defined in 230.2(D), run to each occupancy or group of occupancies.

Exception No. 2: Where two to six service disconnecting means in separate enclosures are grouped at one location and supply separate loads from one service drop or lateral, one set of service-entrance conductors shall be permitted to supply each or several such service equipment enclosures.

Exception No. 3: A single-family dwelling unit and a separate structure shall be permitted to have one set of service-entrance conductors run to each from a single service drop or lateral.

Exception No. 4: A two-family dwelling or a multifamily dwelling shall be permitted to have one set of service-entrance conductors installed to supply the circuits covered in 210.25.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-83

Exception No. 5: One set of service-entrance conductors connected to the supply side of the normal service disconnecting means shall be permitted to supply each or several systems covered by 230.82(4) or (5).

230.41 Insulation of Service-Entrance Conductors. Service-entrance conductors entering or on the exterior of buildings or other structures shall be insulated.

Exception: A grounded conductor shall be permitted to be uninsulated as follows:

(a) Bare copper used in a raceway or part of a service cable assembly.
(b) Bare copper for direct burial where bare copper is judged to be suitable for the soil conditions.
(c) Bare copper for direct burial without regard to soil conditions where part of a cable assembly identified for underground use.
(d) Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum without individual insulation or covering where part of a cable assembly or identified for underground use in a raceway, or for direct burial.
(e) Bare conductors used in an auxiliary gutter.

230.42 Minimum Size and Rating.

(A) General. The ampacity of the service-entrance conductors before the application of any adjustment or correction factors shall not be less than either (1) or (2). Loads shall be determined in accordance with Article 220. Ampacity shall be determined from 310.15. The maximum allowable current of busways shall be that value for which the busway has been listed or labeled.

(1) The sum of the noncontinuous loads plus 125 percent of continuous loads
(2) The sum of the noncontinuous load plus the continuous load if the service-entrance conductors terminate in an overcurrent device where both the overcurrent device and its assembly are listed for operation at 100 percent of their rating

(B) Specific Installations. In addition to the requirements of 230.42(A), the minimum ampacity for ungrounded conductors for specific installations shall not be less than the rating of the service disconnecting means specified in 230.79(A) through (D).

(C) Grounded Conductors. The grounded conductor shall not be less than the minimum size as required by 250.24(B).

230.43 Wiring Methods for 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less. Service-entrance conductors shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements of this *Code* covering the type of wiring method used and shall be limited to the following methods:

(1) Open wiring on insulators
(2) Type IGS cable
(3) Rigid metal conduit
(4) Intermediate metal conduit
(5) Electrical metallic tubing
(6) Electrical nonmetallic tubing (ENT)
(7) Service-entrance cables
(8) Wireways
(9) Busways
(10) Auxiliary gutters
(11) Rigid nonmetallic conduit
(12) Cablebus
(13) Type MC cable
(14) Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable
(15) Flexible metal conduit not over 1.8 m (6 ft) long or liquidtight flexible metal conduit not over 1.8 m (6 ft) long between raceways, or between raceway and service equipment, with equipment bonding jumper routed with the flexible metal conduit or the liquidtight flexible metal conduit according to the provisions of 250.102(A), (B), (C), and (E)
(16) Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit

230.44 Cable Trays. Cable tray systems shall be permitted to support cable used as service-entrance conductors.

230.46 Spliced Conductors. Service-entrance conductors shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped in accordance with 110.14, 300.5(E), 300.13, and 300.15.

230.49 Protection Against Physical Damage — Underground. Underground service-entrance conductors shall be protected against physical damage in accordance with 300.5.

230.50 Protection of Open Conductors and Cables Against Damage — Above Ground. Service-entrance conductors installed above ground shall be protected against physical damage as specified in 230.50(A) or (B).

(A) Service Cables. Service cables, where subject to physical damage, shall be protected by any of the following:

(1) Rigid metal conduit
(2) Intermediate metal conduit
(3) Schedule 80 rigid nonmetallic conduit
(4) Electrical metallic tubing
(5) Other approved means

(B) Other Than Service Cable. Individual open conductors and cables other than service cables shall not be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-84

installed within 3.0 m (10 ft) of grade level or where exposed to physical damage.

Exception: Type MI and Type MC cable shall be permitted within 3.0 m (10 ft) of grade level where not exposed to physical damage or where protected in accordance with 300.5(D).

230.51 Mounting Supports. Cables or individual open service conductors shall be supported as specified in 230.51(A), (B), or (C).

(A) Service Cables. Service cables shall be supported by straps or other approved means within 300 mm (12 in.) of every service head, gooseneck, or connection to a raceway or enclosure and at intervals not exceeding 750 mm (30 in.).

(B) Other Cables. Cables that are not approved for mounting in contact with a building or other structure shall be mounted on insulating supports installed at intervals not exceeding 4.5 m (15 ft) and in a manner that will maintain a clearance of not less than 50 mm (2 in.) from the surface over which they pass.

(C) Individual Open Conductors. Individual open conductors shall be installed in accordance with Table 230.51(C). Where exposed to the weather, the conductors shall be mounted on insulators or on insulating supports attached to racks, brackets, or other approved means. Where not exposed to the weather, the conductors shall be mounted on glass or porcelain knobs.

230.52 Individual Conductors Entering Buildings or Other Structures. Where individual open conductors enter a building or other structure, they shall enter through roof bushings or through the wall in an upward slant through individual, noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating tubes. Drip loops shall be formed on the conductors before they enter the tubes.

230.53 Raceways to Drain. Where exposed to the weather, raceways enclosing service-entrance conductors shall be raintight and arranged to drain. Where embedded in masonry, raceways shall be arranged to drain.

Exception: As permitted in 348.12(1).

230.54 Overhead Service Locations.

(A) Raintight Service Head. Service raceways shall be equipped with a raintight service head at the point of connection to service-drop conductors.

(B) Service Cable Equipped with Raintight Service Head or Gooseneck. Service cables shall be equipped with a raintight service head.

Exception: Type SE cable shall be permitted to be formed in a gooseneck and taped with a self-sealing weather-resistant thermoplastic.

(C) Service Heads Above Service-Drop Attachment. Service heads and goosenecks in service-entrance cables shall be located above the point of attachment of the service-drop conductors to the building or other structure.

Exception: Where it is impracticable to locate the service head above the point of attachment, the service head location shall be permitted not farther than 600 mm (24 in.) from the point of attachment.

(D) Secured. Service cables shall be held securely in place.

(E) Separately Bushed Openings. Service heads shall have conductors of different potential brought out through separately bushed openings.

Exception: For jacketed multiconductor service cable without splice.

(F) Drip Loops. Drip loops shall be formed on individual conductors. To prevent the entrance of moisture, service-entrance conductors shall be connected to the service-drop conductors either (1) below the level of the service head or (2) below the level of the termination of the service-entrance cable sheath.

Table 230.51(C) Supports

	Maximum Distance Between Supports		Minimum Clearance			
			Between Conductors		From Surface	
MaximumVolts	m	ft	mm	in.	mm	in.
600	2.7	9	150	6	50	2
600	4.5	15	300	12	50	2
300	1.4	4½	75	3	50	2
600*	1.4*	4½*	65*	2½*	25*	1*

*Where not exposed to weather.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-85

(G) Arranged That Water Will Not Enter Service Raceway or Equipment. Service-drop conductors and service-entrance conductors shall be arranged so that water will not enter service raceway or equipment.

230.56 Service Conductor with the Higher Voltage to Ground. On a 4-wire, delta-connected service where the midpoint of one phase winding is grounded, the service conductor having the higher phase voltage to ground shall be durably and permanently marked by an outer finish that is orange in color, or by other effective means, at each termination or junction point.

V. Service Equipment — General

230.62 Service Equipment — Enclosed or Guarded. Energized parts of service equipment shall be enclosed as specified in 230.62(A) or guarded as specified in 230.62(B).

(A) Enclosed. Energized parts shall be enclosed so that they will not be exposed to accidental contact or shall be guarded as in 230.62(B).

(B) Guarded. Energized parts that are not enclosed shall be installed on a switchboard, panelboard, or control board and guarded in accordance with 110.18 and 110.27. Where energized parts are guarded as provided in 110.27(A)(1) and (2), a means for locking or sealing doors providing access to energized parts shall be provided.

230.66 Marking. Service equipment rated at 600 volts or less shall be marked to identify it as being suitable for use as service equipment. Individual meter socket enclosures shall not be considered service equipment.

VI. Service Equipment — Disconnecting Means

230.70 General. Means shall be provided to disconnect all conductors in a building or other structure from the service-entrance conductors.

(A) Location. The service disconnecting means shall be installed in accordance with 230.70(A)(1), (2), and (3).

(1) Readily Accessible Location. The service disconnecting means shall be installed at a readily accessible location either outside of a building or structure or inside nearest the point of entrance of the service conductors.

(2) Bathrooms. Service disconnecting means shall not be installed in bathrooms.

(3) Remote Control. Where a remote control device(s) is used to actuate the service disconnecting means, the service disconnecting means shall be located in accordance with 230.70(A)(1).

(B) Marking. Each service disconnect shall be permanently marked to identify it as a service disconnect.

(C) Suitable for Use. Each service disconnecting means shall be suitable for the prevailing conditions. Service equipment installed in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with the requirements of Articles 500 through 517.

230.71 Maximum Number of Disconnects.

(A) General. The service disconnecting means for each service permitted by 230.2, or for each set of service-entrance conductors permitted by 230.40, Exception Nos. 1, 3, 4, or 5, shall consist of not more than six switches or sets of circuit breakers, or a combination of not more than six switches and sets of circuit breakers, mounted in a single enclosure, in a group of separate enclosures, or in or on a switchboard. There shall be no more than six sets of disconnects per service grouped in any one location. For the purpose of this section, disconnecting means used solely for power monitoring equipment, or the control circuit of the ground-fault protection system or power-operable service disconnecting means, installed as part of the listed equipment, shall not be considered a service disconnecting means.

(B) Single-Pole Units. Two or three single-pole switches or breakers, capable of individual operation, shall be permitted on multiwire circuits, one pole for each ungrounded conductor, as one multipole disconnect, provided they are equipped with handle ties or a master handle to disconnect all conductors of the service with no more than six operations of the hand.

FPN: See 408.16(A) for service equipment in panelboards, and see 430.95 for service equipment in motor control centers.

230.72 Grouping of Disconnects.

(A) General. The two to six disconnects as permitted in 230.71 shall be grouped. Each disconnect shall be marked to indicate the load served.

Exception: One of the two to six service disconnecting means permitted in 230.71, where used only for a water pump also intended to provide fire protection, shall be permitted to be located remote from the other disconnecting means.

(B) Additional Service Disconnecting Means. The one or more additional service disconnecting means for fire pumps, for legally required standby, or for optional standby services permitted by 230.2 shall be installed remote from the one to six service disconnecting means for normal ser-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-86

vice to minimize the possibility of simultaneous interruption of supply.

(C) Access to Occupants. In a multiple-occupancy building, each occupant shall have access to the occupant's service disconnecting means.

Exception: In a multiple-occupancy building where electric service and electrical maintenance are provided by the building management and where these are under continuous building management supervision, the service disconnecting means supplying more than one occupancy shall be permitted to be accessible to authorized management personnel only.

230.74 Simultaneous Opening of Poles. Each service disconnect shall simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded service conductors that it controls from the premises wiring system.

230.75 Disconnection of Grounded Conductor. Where the service disconnecting means does not disconnect the grounded conductor from the premises wiring, other means shall be provided for this purpose in the service equipment. A terminal or bus to which all grounded conductors can be attached by means of pressure connectors shall be permitted for this purpose. In a multisection switchboard, disconnects for the grounded conductor shall be permitted to be in any section of the switchboard, provided any such switchboard section is marked.

230.76 Manually or Power Operable. The service disconnecting means for ungrounded service conductors shall consist of either (1) a manually operable switch or circuit breaker equipped with a handle or other suitable operating means or (2) a power-operated switch or circuit breaker, provided the switch or circuit breaker can be opened by hand in the event of a power supply failure.

230.77 Indicating. The service disconnecting means shall plainly indicate whether it is in the open or closed position.

230.79 Rating of Service Disconnecting Means. The service disconnecting means shall have a rating not less than the load to be carried, determined in accordance with Article 220. In no case shall the rating be lower than specified in 230.79(A), (B), (C), or (D).

(A) One-Circuit Installation. For installations to supply only limited loads of a single branch circuit, the service disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 15 amperes.

(B) Two-Circuit Installations. For installations consisting of not more than two 2-wire branch circuits, the service disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 30 amperes.

(C) One-Family Dwelling. For a one-family dwelling, the service disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 100 amperes, 3-wire.

(D) All Others. For all other installations, the service disconnecting means shall have a rating of not less than 60 amperes.

230.80 Combined Rating of Disconnects. Where the service disconnecting means consists of more than one switch or circuit breaker, as permitted by 230.71, the combined ratings of all the switches or circuit breakers used shall not be less than the rating required by 230.79.

230.81 Connection to Terminals. The service conductors shall be connected to the service disconnecting means by pressure connectors, clamps, or other approved means. Connections that depend on solder shall not be used.

230.82 Equipment Connected to the Supply Side of Service Disconnect. Only the following equipment shall be permitted to be connected to the supply side of the service disconnecting means:

(1) Cable limiters or other current-limiting devices.
(2) Meters, meter sockets, or meter disconnect switches nominally rated not in excess of 600 volts, provided all metal housings and service enclosures are grounded.
(3) Instrument transformers (current and voltage), high-impedance shunts, load management devices, and surge arresters.
(4) Taps used only to supply load management devices, circuits for standby power systems, fire pump equipment, and fire and sprinkler alarms, if provided with service equipment and installed in accordance with requirements for service-entrance conductors.
(5) Solar photovoltaic systems, fuel cell systems, or interconnected electric power production sources.
(6) Control circuits for power-operable service disconnecting means, if suitable overcurrent protection and disconnecting means are provided.
(7) Ground-fault protection systems where installed as part of listed equipment, if suitable overcurrent protection and disconnecting means are provided.

VII. Service Equipment — Overcurrent Protection

230.90 Where Required. Each ungrounded service conductor shall have overload protection.

(A) Ungrounded Conductor. Such protection shall be provided by an overcurrent device in series with each un-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-87

grounded service conductor that has a rating or setting not higher than the allowable ampacity of the conductor. A set of fuses shall be considered all the fuses required to protect all the ungrounded conductors of a circuit. Single-pole circuit breakers, grouped in accordance with 230.71(B), shall be considered as one protective device.

Exception No. 1: For motor-starting currents, ratings that conform with 430.52, 430.62, and 430.63 shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: Fuses and circuit breakers with a rating or setting that conform with 240.4(B) or (C) and 240.6 shall be permitted.

Exception No. 3: Two to six circuit breakers or sets of fuses shall be permitted as the overcurrent device to provide the overload protection. The sum of the ratings of the circuit breakers or fuses shall be permitted to exceed the ampacity of the service conductors, provided the calculated load does not exceed the ampacity of the service conductors.

Exception No. 4: Overload protection for fire pump supply conductors shall conform with 695.4(B)(1).

Exception No. 5: Overload protection for 120/240-volt, 3-wire, single-phase dwelling services shall be permitted in accordance with the requirements of 310.15(B)(6).

(B) Not in Grounded Conductor. No overcurrent device shall be inserted in a grounded service conductor except a circuit breaker that simultaneously opens all conductors of the circuit.

230.91 Location. The service overcurrent device shall be an integral part of the service disconnecting means or shall be located immediately adjacent thereto.

230.92 Locked Service Overcurrent Devices. Where the service overcurrent devices are locked or sealed or are not readily accessible to the occupant, branch-circuit overcurrent devices shall be installed on the load side, shall be mounted in a readily accessible location, and shall be of lower ampere rating than the service overcurrent device.

230.93 Protection of Specific Circuits. Where necessary to prevent tampering, an automatic overcurrent device that protects service conductors supplying only a specific load, such as a water heater, shall be permitted to be locked or sealed where located so as to be accessible.

230.94 Relative Location of Overcurrent Device and Other Service Equipment. The overcurrent device shall protect all circuits and devices.

Exception No. 1: The service switch shall be permitted on the supply side.

Exception No. 2: High-impedance shunt circuits, surge arresters, surge-protective capacitors, and instrument transformers (current and voltage) shall be permitted to be connected and installed on the supply side of the service disconnecting means as permitted in 230.82.

Exception No. 3: Circuits for load management devices shall be permitted to be connected on the supply side of the service overcurrent device where separately provided with overcurrent protection.

Exception No. 4: Circuits used only for the operation of fire alarm, other protective signaling systems, or the supply to fire pump equipment shall be permitted to be connected on the supply side of the service overcurrent device where separately provided with overcurrent protection.

Exception No. 5: Meters nominally rated not in excess of 600 volts, provided all metal housings and service enclosures are grounded in accordance with Article 250.

Exception No. 6: Where service equipment is power operable, the control circuit shall be permitted to be connected ahead of the service equipment if suitable overcurrent protection and disconnecting means are provided.

230.95 Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment. Ground-fault protection of equipment shall be provided for solidly grounded wye electrical services of more than 150 volts to ground but not exceeding 600 volts phase-to-phase for each service disconnect rated 1000 amperes or more.

The rating of the service disconnect shall be considered to be the rating of the largest fuse that can be installed or the highest continuous current trip setting for which the actual overcurrent device installed in a circuit breaker is rated or can be adjusted.

Solidly Grounded — Definition. Connection of the grounded conductor to ground without inserting any resistor or impedance device.

Exception No. 1: The ground-fault protection provisions of this section shall not apply to a service disconnect for a continuous industrial process where a nonorderly shutdown will introduce additional or increased hazards.

Exception No. 2: The ground-fault protection provisions of this section shall not apply to fire pumps.

(A) Setting. The ground-fault protection system shall operate to cause the service disconnect to open all ungrounded conductors of the faulted circuit. The maximum setting of the ground-fault protection shall be 1200 amperes, and the maximum time delay shall be one second for ground-fault currents equal to or greater than 3000 amperes.

(B) Fuses. If a switch and fuse combination is used, the fuses employed shall be capable of interrupting any current

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-88

higher than the interrupting capacity of the switch during a time that the ground-fault protective system will not cause the switch to open.

(C) Performance Testing. The ground-fault protection system shall be performance tested when first installed on site. The test shall be conducted in accordance with instructions that shall be provided with the equipment. A written record of this test shall be made and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

FPN No. 1: Ground-fault protection that functions to open the service disconnect affords no protection from faults on the line side of the protective element. It serves only to limit damage to conductors and equipment on the load side in the event of an arcing ground fault on the load side of the protective element.

FPN No. 2: This added protective equipment at the service equipment may make it necessary to review the overall wiring system for proper selective overcurrent protection coordination. Additional installations of ground-fault protective equipment may be needed on feeders and branch circuits where maximum continuity of electrical service is necessary.

FPN No. 3: Where ground-fault protection is provided for the service disconnect and interconnection is made with another supply system by a transfer device, means or devices may be needed to ensure proper ground-fault sensing by the ground-fault protection equipment.

VIII. Services Exceeding 600 Volts, Nominal

230.200 General. Service conductors and equipment used on circuits exceeding 600 volts, nominal, shall comply with all the applicable provisions of the preceding sections of this article and with the following sections, which supplement or modify the preceding sections. In no case shall the provisions of Part VIII apply to equipment on the supply side of the service point.

FPN: For clearances of conductors of over 600 volts, nominal, see ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code*.

230.202 Service-Entrance Conductors. Service-entrance conductors to buildings or enclosures shall be installed to conform to 230.202(A) and (B).

(A) Conductor Size. Service-entrance conductors shall not be smaller than 6 AWG unless in multiconductor cable. Multiconductor cable shall not be smaller than 8 AWG.

(B) Wiring Methods. Service-entrance conductors shall be installed by one of the wiring methods covered in 300.37 and 300.50.

230.204 Isolating Switches.

(A) Where Required. Where oil switches or air, oil, vacuum, or sulfur hexafluoride circuit breakers constitute the service disconnecting means, an isolating switch with visible break contacts shall be installed on the supply side of the disconnecting means and all associated service equipment.

Exception: An isolating switch shall not be required where the circuit breaker or switch is mounted on removable truck panels or metal-enclosed switchgear units, that

(a) Cannot be opened unless the circuit is disconnected, and
(b) Where all energized parts are automatically disconnected when the circuit breaker or switch is removed from the normal operating position

(B) Fuses as Isolating Switch. Where fuses are of the type that can be operated as a disconnecting switch, a set of such fuses shall be permitted as the isolating switch.

(C) Accessible to Qualified Persons Only. The isolating switch shall be accessible to qualified persons only.

(D) Grounding Connection. Isolating switches shall be provided with a means for readily connecting the load side conductors to ground when disconnected from the source of supply.

A means for grounding the load side conductors shall not be required for any duplicate isolating switch installed and maintained by the electric supply company.

230.205 Disconnecting Means.

(A) Location. The service disconnecting means shall be located in accordance with 230.70.

(B) Type. Each service disconnect shall simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded service conductors that it controls and shall have a fault-closing rating that is not less than the maximum short-circuit current available at its supply terminals.

Where fused switches or separately mounted fuses are installed, the fuse characteristics shall be permitted to contribute to the fault-closing rating of the disconnecting means.

(C) Remote Control. For multibuilding, industrial installations under single management, the service disconnecting means shall be permitted to be located at a separate building or structure. In such cases, the service disconnecting means shall be permitted to be electrically operated by a readily accessible, remote-control device.

230.206 Overcurrent Devices as Disconnecting Means. Where the circuit breaker or alternative for it, as specified in 230.208 for service overcurrent devices, meets the requirements specified in 230.205, they shall constitute the service disconnecting means.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-89

230.208 Protection Requirements. A short-circuit protective device shall be provided on the load side of, or as an integral part of, the service disconnect, and shall protect all ungrounded conductors that it supplies. The protective device shall be capable of detecting and interrupting all values of current, in excess of its trip setting or melting point, that can occur at its location. A fuse rated in continuous amperes not to exceed three times the ampacity of the conductor, or a circuit breaker with a trip setting of not more than six times the ampacity of the conductors, shall be considered as providing the required short-circuit protection.

FPN: See Tables 310.67 through 310.86 for ampacities of conductors rated 2001 volts and above.

Overcurrent devices shall conform to 230.208(A) and (B).

(A) Equipment Type. Equipment used to protect service-entrance conductors shall meet the requirements of Article 490, Part II.

(B) Enclosed Overcurrent Devices. The restriction to 80 percent of the rating for an enclosed overcurrent device for continuous loads shall not apply to overcurrent devices installed in systems operating at over 600 volts.

230.209 Surge Arresters (Lightning Arresters). Surge arresters installed in accordance with the requirements of Article 280 shall be permitted on each ungrounded overhead service conductor.

230.210 Service Equipment — General Provisions. Service equipment, including instrument transformers, shall conform to Article 490, Part I.

230.211 Metal-Enclosed Switchgear. Metal-enclosed switchgear shall consist of a substantial metal structure and a sheet metal enclosure. Where installed over a combustible floor, suitable protection thereto shall be provided.

230.212 Over 35,000 Volts. Where the voltage exceeds 35,000 volts between conductors that enter a building, they shall terminate in a metal-enclosed switchgear compartment or a vault conforming to the requirements of 450.41 through 450.48.

ARTICLE 240
Overcurrent Protection

I. General

240.1 Scope. Parts I through VII of this article provide the general requirements for overcurrent protection and overcurrent protective devices not more than 600 volts, nominal. Part VIII covers overcurrent protection for those portions of supervised industrial installations operating at voltages of not more than 600 volts, nominal. Part IX covers overcurrent protection over 600 volts, nominal.

FPN: Overcurrent protection for conductors and equipment is provided to open the circuit if the current reaches a value that will cause an excessive or dangerous temperature in conductors or conductor insulation. See also 110.9 for requirements for interrupting ratings and 110.10 for requirements for protection against fault currents.

240.2 Definitions.

Coordination. The proper localization of a fault condition to restrict outages to the equipment affected, accomplished by the choice of selective fault-protective devices.

Current-Limiting Overcurrent Protective Device. A device that, when interrupting currents in its current-limiting range, reduces the current flowing in the faulted circuit to a magnitude substantially less than that obtainable in the same circuit if the device were replaced with a solid conductor having comparable impedance.

Supervised Industrial Installation. For the purposes of Part VIII, the industrial portions of a facility where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Conditions of maintenance and engineering supervision ensure that only qualified persons monitor and service the system.
(2) The premises wiring system has 2500 kVA or greater of load used in industrial process(es), manufacturing activities, or both, as calculated in accordance with Article 220.
(3) The premises has at least one service that is more than 150 volts to ground and more than 300 volts phase-to-phase.

This definition excludes installations in buildings used by the industrial facility for offices, warehouses, garages, machine shops, and recreational facilities that are not an integral part of the industrial plant, substation, or control center.

Tap Conductors. As used in this article, a tap conductor is defined as a conductor, other than a service conductor, that has overcurrent protection ahead of its point of supply that

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-90

exceeds the value permitted for similar conductors that are protected as described elsewhere in 240.4.

240.3 Other Articles. Equipment shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with the article in this *Code* that covers the type of equipment specified in Table 240.3.

Table 240.3 Other Articles

Equipment	Article
Air-conditioning and refrigerating equipment	440
Appliances	422
Audio signal processing, amplification, and reproduction equipment	640
Branch circuits	210
Busways	368
Capacitors	460
Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits	725
Closed-loop and programmed power distribution	780
Cranes and hoists	610
Electric signs and outline lighting	600
Electric welders	630
Electrolytic cells	668
Elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, wheelchair lifts, and stairway chair lifts	620
Emergency systems	700
Fire alarm systems	760
Fire pumps	695
Fixed electric heating equipment for pipelines and vessels	427
Fixed electric space-heating equipment	424
Fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment	426
Generators	445
Health care facilities	517
Induction and dielectric heating equipment	665
Industrial machinery	670
Luminaires (lighting fixtures), lampholders, and lamps	410
Motion picture and television studios and similar locations	530
Motors, motor circuits, and controllers	430
Phase converters	455
Pipe organs	650
Places of assembly	518
Receptacles	406
Services	230
Solar photovoltaic systems	690
Switchboards and panelboards	408
Theaters, audience areas of motion picture and television studios, and similar locations	520
Transformers and transformer vaults	450
X-ray equipment	660

240.4 Protection of Conductors. Conductors, other than flexible cords, flexible cables, and fixture wires, shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with their ampacities specified in 310.15, unless otherwise permitted or required in 240.4(A) through (G).

(A) Power Loss Hazard. Conductor overload protection shall not be required where the interruption of the circuit would create a hazard, such as in a material-handling magnet circuit or fire pump circuit. Short-circuit protection shall be provided.

FPN: See NFPA 20-1999, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection.*

(B) Devices Rated 800 Amperes or Less. The next higher standard overcurrent device rating (above the ampacity of the conductors being protected) shall be permitted to be used, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The conductors being protected are not part of a multioutlet branch circuit supplying receptacles for cord-and-plug-connected portable loads.
(2) The ampacity of the conductors does not correspond with the standard ampere rating of a fuse or a circuit breaker without overload trip adjustments above its rating (but that shall be permitted to have other trip or rating adjustments).
(3) The next higher standard rating selected does not exceed 800 amperes.

(C) Devices Rated Over 800 Amperes. Where the overcurrent device is rated over 800 amperes, the ampacity of the conductors it protects shall be equal to or greater than the rating of the overcurrent device defined in 240.6.

(D) Small Conductors. Unless specifically permitted in 240.4(E) through (G), the overcurrent protection shall not exceed 15 amperes for 14 AWG, 20 amperes for 12 AWG, and 30 amperes for 10 AWG copper; or 15 amperes for 12 AWG and 25 amperes for 10 AWG aluminum and copper-clad aluminum after any correction factors for ambient temperature and number of conductors have been applied.

(E) Tap Conductors. Tap conductors shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent in accordance with 210.19(A)(3) and (4), 240.5(B)(2), 240.21, 368.11, 368.12, and 430.53(D).

(F) Transformer Secondary Conductors. Single-phase (other than 2-wire) and multiphase (other than delta-delta, 3-wire) transformer secondary conductors shall not be considered to be protected by the primary overcurrent protective device. Conductors supplied by the secondary side of a single-phase transformer having a 2-wire (single-voltage)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-91

secondary, or a three-phase, delta-delta connected transformer having a 3-wire (single-voltage) secondary, shall be permitted to be protected by overcurrent protection provided on the primary (supply) side of the transformer, provided this protection is in accordance with 450.3 and does not exceed the value determined by multiplying the secondary conductor ampacity by the secondary to primary transformer voltage ratio.

(G) Overcurrent Protection for Specific Conductor Applications. Overcurrent protection for the specific conductors shall be permitted to be provided as referenced in Table 240.4(G).

Table 240.4(G) Specific Conductor Applications

Conductor	Article	Section
Air-conditioning and refrigeration equipment circuit conductors	440, Parts III, VI	
Capacitor circuit conductors	460	460.8(B) and 460.25(A)–(D)
Control and instrumentation circuit conductors (Type ITC)	727	727.9
Electric welder circuit conductors	630	630.12 and 630.32
Fire alarm system circuit conductors	760	760.23, 760.24, 760.41, and Chapter 9, Tables 12(A) and 12(B)
Motor-operated appliance circuit conductors	422, Part II	
Motor and motor-control circuit conductors	430, Parts III, IV, V, VI, VII	
Phase converter supply conductors	455	455.7
Remote-control, signaling, and power- limited circuit conductors	725	725.23, 725.24, 725.41, and Chapter 9, Tables 11(A) and 11(B)
Secondary tie conductors	450	450.6

240.5 Protection of Flexible Cords, Flexible Cables, and Fixture Wires. Flexible cord and flexible cable, including tinsel cord and extension cords, and fixture wires shall be protected against overcurrent by either 240.5(A) or (B).

(A) Ampacities. Flexible cord and flexible cable shall be protected by an overcurrent device in accordance with their ampacity as specified in Tables 400.5(A) and 400.5(B). Fixture wire shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with its ampacity as specified in Table 402.5. Supplementary overcurrent protection, as in 240.10, shall be permitted to be an acceptable means for providing this protection.

(B) Branch Circuit Overcurrent Device. Flexible cord shall be protected where supplied by a branch circuit in accordance with one of the methods described in 240.5(B)(1), (2), or (3).

(1) Supply Cord of Listed Appliance or Portable Lamps. Where flexible cord or tinsel cord is approved for and used with a specific listed appliance or portable lamp, it shall be permitted to be supplied by a branch circuit of Article 210 in accordance with the following:

(1) 20-ampere circuits — tinsel cord or 18 AWG cord and larger
(2) 30-ampere circuits — 16 AWG cord and larger
(3) 40-ampere circuits — cord of 20-ampere capacity and over
(4) 50-ampere circuits — cord of 20-ampere capacity and over

(2) Fixture Wire. Fixture wire shall be permitted to be tapped to the branch circuit conductor of a branch circuit of Article 210 in accordance with the following:

(1) 20-ampere circuits — 18 AWG, up to 15 m (50 ft) of run length
(2) 20-ampere circuits — 16 AWG, up to 30 m (100 ft) of run length
(3) 20-ampere circuits — 14 AWG and larger
(4) 30-ampere circuits — 14 AWG and larger
(5) 40-ampere circuits — 12 AWG and larger
(6) 50-ampere circuits — 12 AWG and larger

(3) Extension Cord Sets. Flexible cord used in listed extension cord sets, or in extension cords made with separately listed and installed components, shall be permitted to be supplied by a branch circuit of Article 210 in accordance with the following:

20-ampere circuits — 16 AWG and larger

240.6 Standard Ampere Ratings.

(A) Fuses and Fixed-Trip Circuit Breakers. The standard ampere ratings for fuses and inverse time circuit breakers shall be considered 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 125, 150, 175, 200, 225, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 600, 700, 800, 1000, 1200, 1600, 2000, 2500, 3000, 4000, 5000, and 6000 amperes. Additional standard ampere ratings for fuses shall be 1, 3, 6, 10, and 601. The use of fuses and inverse time circuit breakers with nonstandard ampere ratings shall be permitted.

(B) Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers. The rating of adjustable-trip circuit breakers having external means for adjusting the current setting (long-time pickup setting), not meeting the requirements of 240.6(C), shall be the maximum setting possible.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-92

(C) Restricted Access Adjustable-Trip Circuit Breakers. A circuit breaker(s) that has restricted access to the adjusting means shall be permitted to have an ampere rating(s) that is equal to the adjusted current setting (long-time pickup setting). Restricted access shall be defined as located behind one of the following:

(1) Removable and sealable covers over the adjusting means
(2) Bolted equipment enclosure doors
(3) Locked doors accessible only to qualified personnel

240.8 Fuses or Circuit Breakers in Parallel. Fuses and circuit breakers shall be permitted to be connected in parallel where they are factory assembled in parallel and listed as a unit. Individual fuses, circuit breakers, or combinations thereof shall not otherwise be connected in parallel.

240.9 Thermal Devices. Thermal relays and other devices not designed to open short circuits or ground faults shall not be used for the protection of conductors against overcurrent due to short circuits or ground faults, but the use of such devices shall be permitted to protect motor branch-circuit conductors from overload if protected in accordance with 430.40.

240.10 Supplementary Overcurrent Protection. Where supplementary overcurrent protection is used for luminaires (lighting fixtures), appliances, and other equipment or for internal circuits and components of equipment, it shall not be used as a substitute for branch-circuit overcurrent devices or in place of the branch-circuit protection specified in Article 210. Supplementary overcurrent devices shall not be required to be readily accessible.

240.12 Electrical System Coordination. Where an orderly shutdown is required to minimize the hazard(s) to personnel and equipment, a system of coordination based on the following two conditions shall be permitted:

(1) Coordinated short-circuit protection
(2) Overload indication based on monitoring systems or devices

FPN: The monitoring system may cause the condition to go to alarm, allowing corrective action or an orderly shutdown, thereby minimizing personnel hazard and equipment damage.

240.13 Ground-Fault Protection of Equipment. Ground-fault protection of equipment shall be provided in accordance with the provisions of 230.95 for solidly grounded wye electrical systems of more than 150 volts to ground but not exceeding 600 volts phase-to-phase for each individual device used as a building or structure main disconnecting means rated 1000 amperes or more.

The provisions of this section shall not apply to the disconnecting means for the following:

(1) Continuous industrial processes where a nonorderly shutdown will introduce additional or increased hazards
(2) Installations where ground-fault protection is provided by other requirements for services or feeders
(3) Fire pumps installed in accordance with Article 695

II. Location

240.20 Ungrounded Conductors.

(A) Overcurrent Device Required. A fuse or an overcurrent trip unit of a circuit breaker shall be connected in series with each ungrounded conductor. A combination of a current transformer and overcurrent relay shall be considered equivalent to an overcurrent trip unit.

FPN: For motor circuits, see Parts III, IV, V, and X of Article 430.

(B) Circuit Breaker as Overcurrent Device. Circuit breakers shall open all ungrounded conductors of the circuit unless otherwise permitted in 240.20(B)(1), (B)(2), and (B)(3).

(1) Multiwire Branch Circuit. Except where limited by 210.4(B), individual single-pole circuit breakers, with or without approved handle ties, shall be permitted as the protection for each ungrounded conductor of multiwire branch circuits that serve only single-phase line-to-neutral loads.

(2) Grounded Single-Phase and 3-wire dc Circuits. In grounded systems, individual single-pole circuit breakers with approved handle ties shall be permitted as the protection for each ungrounded conductor for line-to-line connected loads for single-phase circuits or 3-wire, direct-current circuits.

(3) 3-Phase and 2-Phase Systems. For line-to-line loads in 4-wire, 3-phase systems or 5-wire, 2-phase systems having a grounded neutral and no conductor operating at a voltage greater than permitted in 210.6, individual single-pole circuit breakers with approved handle ties shall be permitted as the protection for each ungrounded conductor.

(C) Closed-Loop Power Distribution Systems. Listed devices that provide equivalent overcurrent protection in closed-loop power distribution systems shall be permitted as a substitute for fuses or circuit breakers.

240.21 Location in Circuit. Overcurrent protection shall be provided in each ungrounded circuit conductor and shall be located at the point where the conductors receive their supply except as specified in 240.21(A) through (G). No

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-93

conductor supplied under the provisions of 240.21(A) through (G) shall supply another conductor under those provisions, except through an overcurrent protective device meeting the requirements of 240.4.

(A) Branch-Circuit Conductors. Branch-circuit tap conductors meeting the requirements specified in 210.19 shall be permitted to have overcurrent protection located as specified in that section.

(B) Feeder Taps. Conductors shall be permitted to be tapped, without overcurrent protection at the tap, to a feeder as specified in 240.21(B)(1) through (5).

(1) Taps Not Over 3 m (10 ft) Long. Where the length of the tap conductors does not exceed 3 m (10 ft) and the tap conductors comply with all of the following:

(1) The ampacity of the tap conductors is
   a. Not less than the combined computed loads on the circuits supplied by the tap conductors, and
   b. Not less than the rating of the device supplied by the tap conductors or not less than the rating of the overcurrent-protective device at the termination of the tap conductors.
(2) The tap conductors do not extend beyond the switchboard, panelboard, disconnecting means, or control devices they supply.
(3) Except at the point of connection to the feeder, the tap conductors are enclosed in a raceway, which shall extend from the tap to the enclosure of an enclosed switchboard, panelboard, or control devices, or to the back of an open switchboard.
(4) For field installations where the tap conductors leave the enclosure or vault in which the tap is made, the rating of the overcurrent device on the line side of the tap conductors shall not exceed 10 times the ampacity of the tap conductor.

FPN: For overcurrent protection requirements for lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards and certain power panelboards, see 408.16(A), (B), and (E).

(2) Taps Not Over 7.5 m (25 ft) Long. Where the length of the tap conductors does not exceed 7.5 m (25 ft) and the tap conductors comply with all the following:

(1) The ampacity of the tap conductors is not less than one-third of the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the feeder conductors.
(2) The tap conductors terminate in a single circuit breaker or a single set of fuses that will limit the load to the ampacity of the tap conductors. This device shall be permitted to supply any number of additional overcurrent devices on its load side.
(3) The tap conductors are suitably protected from physical damage or are enclosed in a raceway.

(3) Taps Supplying a Transformer [Primary Plus Secondary Not Over 7.5 m (25 ft) Long]. Where the tap conductors supply a transformer and comply with all the following conditions:

(1) The conductors supplying the primary of a transformer have an ampacity at least one-third the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the feeder conductors.
(2) The conductors supplied by the secondary of the transformer shall have an ampacity that, when multiplied by the ratio of the secondary-to-primary voltage, is at least one-third of the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the feeder conductors.
(3) The total length of one primary plus one secondary conductor, excluding any portion of the primary conductor that is protected at its ampacity, is not over 7.5 m (25 ft).
(4) The primary and secondary conductors are suitably protected from physical damage.
(5) The secondary conductors terminate in a single circuit breaker or set of fuses that limit the load current to not more than the conductor ampacity that is permitted by 310.15.

(4) Taps Over 7.5 m (25 ft) Long. Where the feeder is in a high bay manufacturing building over 11 m (35 ft) high at walls and the installation complies with all the following conditions:

(1) Conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the systems.
(2) The tap conductors are not over 7.5 m (25 ft) long horizontally and not over 30 m (100 ft) total length.
(3) The ampacity of the tap conductors is not less than one-third the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the feeder conductors.
(4) The tap conductors terminate at a single circuit breaker or a single set of fuses that limit the load to the ampacity of the tap conductors. This single overcurrent device shall be permitted to supply any number of additional overcurrent devices on its load side.
(5) The tap conductors are suitably protected from physical damage or are enclosed in a raceway.
(6) The tap conductors are continuous from end-to-end and contain no splices.
(7) The tap conductors are sized 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum or larger.
(8) The tap conductors do not penetrate walls, floors, or ceilings.
(9) The tap is made no less than 9 m (30 ft) from the floor.

(5) Outside Taps of Unlimited Length. Where the conductors are located outdoors of a building or structure, except at the point of load termination, and comply with all of the following conditions:

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-94

(1) The conductors are suitably protected from physical damage.
(2) The conductors terminate at a single circuit breaker or a single set of fuses that limit the load to the ampacity of the conductors. This single overcurrent device shall be permitted to supply any number of additional overcurrent devices on its load side.
(3) The overcurrent device for the conductors is an integral part of a disconnecting means or shall be located immediately adjacent thereto.
(4) The disconnecting means for the conductors is installed at a readily accessible location complying with one of the following:
   a. Outside of a building or structure
   b. Inside, nearest the point of entrance of the conductors
   c. Where installed in accordance with 230.6, nearest the point of entrance of the conductors

(C) Transformer Secondary Conductors. Conductors shall be permitted to be connected to a transformer secondary, without overcurrent protection at the secondary, as specified in 240.21(C)(1) through (6).

FPN: For overcurrent protection requirements for transformers, see 450.3.

(1) Protection by Primary Overcurrent Device. Conductors supplied by the secondary side of a single-phase transformer having a 2-wire (single-voltage) secondary, or a three-phase, delta-delta connected transformer having a 3-wire (single-voltage) secondary, shall be permitted to be protected by overcurrent protection provided on the primary (supply) side of the transformer, provided this protection is in accordance with 450.3 and does not exceed the value determined by multiplying the secondary conductor ampacity by the secondary to primary transformer voltage ratio.

Single-phase (other than 2-wire) and multiphase (other than delta-delta, 3-wire) transformer secondary conductors are not considered to be protected by the primary overcurrent protective device.

(2) Transformer Secondary Conductors Not Over 3 m (10 ft) Long. Where the length of secondary conductor does not exceed 3 m (10 ft) and complies with all of the following:

(1) The ampacity of the secondary conductors is
   a. Not less than the combined computed loads on the circuits supplied by the secondary conductors, and
   b. Not less than the rating of the device supplied by the secondary conductors or not less than the rating of the overcurrent-protective device at the termination of the secondary conductors
(2) The secondary conductors do not extend beyond the switchboard, panelboard, disconnecting means, or control devices they supply.
(3) The secondary conductors are enclosed in a raceway, which shall extend from the transformer to the enclosure of an enclosed switchboard, panelboard, or control devices or to the back of an open switchboard.

FPN: For overcurrent protection requirements for lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards and certain power panelboards, see 408.16(A), (B), and (E).

(3) Industrial Installation Secondary Conductors Not Over 7.5 m (25 ft) Long. For industrial installations only, where the length of the secondary conductors does not exceed 7.5 m (25 ft) and complies with all of the following:

(1) The ampacity of the secondary conductors is not less than the secondary current rating of the transformer, and the sum of the ratings of the overcurrent devices does not exceed the ampacity of the secondary conductors.
(2) All overcurrent devices are grouped.
(3) The secondary conductors are suitably protected from physical damage.

(4) Outside Secondary of Building or Structure Conductors. Where the conductors are located outdoors of a building or structure, except at the point of load termination, and comply with all of the following conditions:

(1) The conductors are suitably protected from physical damage.
(2) The conductors terminate at a single circuit breaker or a single set of fuses that limit the load to the ampacity of the conductors. This single overcurrent device shall be permitted to supply any number of additional overcurrent devices on its load side.
(3) The overcurrent device for the conductors is an integral part of a disconnecting means or shall be located immediately adjacent thereto.
(4) The disconnecting means for the conductors is installed at a readily accessible location complying with one of the following:
   a. Outside of a building or structure
   b. Inside, nearest the point of entrance of the conductors
   c. Where installed in accordance with 230.6, nearest the point of entrance of the conductors

(5) Secondary Conductors from a Feeder Tapped Transformer. Transformer secondary conductors installed in accordance with 240.21(B)(3) shall be permitted to have overcurrent protection as specified in that section.

(6) Secondary Conductors Not Over 7.5 m (25 ft) Long. Where the length of secondary conductor does not exceed 7.5 m (25 ft) and complies with all of the following:

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-95

(1) The secondary conductors shall have an ampacity that, when multiplied by the ratio of the secondary-to-primary voltage, is at least one-third of the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the primary of the transformer.
(2) The secondary conductors terminate in a single circuit breaker or set of fuses that limit the load current to not more than the conductor ampacity that is permitted by 310.15.
(3) The secondary conductors are suitably protected from physical damage.

(D) Service Conductors. Service-entrance conductors shall be permitted to be protected by overcurrent devices in accordance with 230.91.

(E) Busway Taps. Busways and busway taps shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent in accordance with 368.10 through 368.13.

(F) Motor Circuit Taps. Motor-feeder and branch-circuit conductors shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent in accordance with 430.28 and 430.53, respectively.

(G) Conductors from Generator Terminals. Conductors from generator terminals that meet the size requirement in 445.13 shall be permitted to be protected against overload by the generator overload protective device(s) required by 445.12.

240.22 Grounded Conductor. No overcurrent device shall be connected in series with any conductor that is intentionally grounded, unless one of the following two conditions is met:

(1) The overcurrent device opens all conductors of the circuit, including the grounded conductor, and is designed so that no pole can operate independently.
(2) Where required by 430.36 or 430.37 for motor overload protection.

240.23 Change in Size of Grounded Conductor. Where a change occurs in the size of the ungrounded conductor, a similar change shall be permitted to be made in the size of the grounded conductor.

240.24 Location in or on Premises.

(A) Accessibility. Overcurrent devices shall be readily accessible unless one of the following applies:

(1) For busways, as provided in 368.12.
(2) For supplementary overcurrent protection, as described in 240.10.
(3) For overcurrent devices, as described in 225.40 and 230.92.
(4) For overcurrent devices adjacent to utilization equipment that they supply, access shall be permitted to be by portable means.

(B) Occupancy. Each occupant shall have ready access to all overcurrent devices protecting the conductors supplying that occupancy.

Exception No. 1: Where electric service and electrical maintenance are provided by the building management and where these are under continuous building management supervision, the service overcurrent devices and feeder overcurrent devices supplying more than one occupancy shall be permitted to be accessible to only authorized management personnel in the following:

(a) Multiple-occupancy buildings
(b) Guest rooms of hotels and motels that are intended for transient occupancy

Exception No. 2: Where electric service and electrical maintenance are provided by the building management and where these are under continuous building management supervision, the branch circuit overcurrent devices supplying any guest rooms shall be permitted to be accessible to only authorized management personnel for guest rooms of hotels and motels that are intended for transient occupancy.

(C) Not Exposed to Physical Damage. Overcurrent devices shall be located where they will not be exposed to physical damage.

FPN: See 110.11, Deteriorating Agents.

(D) Not in Vicinity of Easily Ignitible Material. Overcurrent devices shall not be located in the vicinity of easily ignitible material, such as in clothes closets.

(E) Not Located in Bathrooms. In dwelling units and guest rooms of hotels and motels, overcurrent devices, other than supplementary overcurrent protection, shall not be located in bathrooms as defined in Article 100.

III. Enclosures

240.30 General.

(A) Protection from Physical Damage. Overcurrent devices shall be protected from physical damage by one of the following:

(1) Installation in enclosures, cabinets, cutout boxes, or equipment assemblies
(2) Mounting on open-type switchboards, panelboards, or control boards that are in rooms or enclosures free from dampness and easily ignitible material and are accessible only to qualified personnel

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-96

(B) Operating Handle. The operating handle of a circuit breaker shall be permitted to be accessible without opening a door or cover.

240.32 Damp or Wet Locations. Enclosures for overcurrent devices in damp or wet locations shall comply with 312.2(A).

240.33 Vertical Position. Enclosures for overcurrent devices shall be mounted in a vertical position unless that is shown to be impracticable. Circuit breaker enclosures shall be permitted to be installed horizontally where the circuit breaker is installed in accordance with 240.81. Listed busway plug-in units shall be permitted to be mounted in orientations corresponding to the busway mounting position.

IV. Disconnecting and Guarding

240.40 Disconnecting Means for Fuses. A disconnecting means shall be provided on the supply side of all fuses in circuits over 150 volts to ground and cartridge fuses in circuits of any voltage where accessible to other than qualified persons so that each individual circuit containing fuses can be independently disconnected from the source of power. A current-limiting device without a disconnecting means shall be permitted on the supply side of the service disconnecting means as permitted by 230.82. A single disconnecting means shall be permitted on the supply side of more than one set of fuses as permitted by 430.112, Exception, for group operation of motors and 424.22(C) for fixed electric space-heating equipment.

240.41 Arcing or Suddenly Moving Parts. Arcing or suddenly moving parts shall comply with 240.41(A) and (B).

(A) Location. Fuses and circuit breakers shall be located or shielded so that persons will not be burned or otherwise injured by their operation.

(B) Suddenly Moving Parts. Handles or levers of circuit breakers, and similar parts that may move suddenly in such a way that persons in the vicinity are likely to be injured by being struck by them, shall be guarded or isolated.

V. Plug Fuses, Fuseholders, and Adapters

240.50 General.

(A) Maximum Voltage. Plug fuses shall be permitted to be used in the following circuits:

(1) Circuits not exceeding 125 volts between conductors
(2) Circuits supplied by a system having a grounded neutral where the line-to-neutral voltage does not exceed 150 volts

(B) Marking. Each fuse, fuseholder, and adapter shall be marked with its ampere rating.

(C) Hexagonal Configuration. Plug fuses of 15-ampere and lower rating shall be identified by a hexagonal configuration of the window, cap, or other prominent part to distinguish them from fuses of higher ampere ratings.

(D) No Energized Parts. Plug fuses, fuseholders, and adapters shall have no exposed energized parts after fuses or fuses and adapters have been installed.

(E) Screw Shell. The screw shell of a plug-type fuseholder shall be connected to the load side of the circuit.

240.51 Edison-Base Fuses.

(A) Classification. Plug fuses of the Edison-base type shall be classified at not over 125 volts and 30 amperes and below.

(B) Replacement Only. Plug fuses of the Edison-base type shall be used only for replacements in existing installations where there is no evidence of overfusing or tampering.

240.52 Edison-Base Fuseholders. Fuseholders of the Edison-base type shall be installed only where they are made to accept Type S fuses by the use of adapters.

240.53 Type S Fuses. Type S fuses shall be of the plug type and shall comply with 240.53(A) and (B).

(A) Classification. Type S fuses shall be classified at not over 125 volts and 0 to 15 amperes, 16 to 20 amperes, and 21 to 30 amperes.

(B) Noninterchangeable. Type S fuses of an ampere classification as specified in 240.53(A) shall not be interchangeable with a lower ampere classification. They shall be designed so that they cannot be used in any fuseholder other than a Type S fuseholder or a fuseholder with a Type S adapter inserted.

240.54 Type S Fuses, Adapters, and Fuseholders.

(A) To Fit Edison-Base Fuseholders. Type S adapters shall fit Edison-base fuseholders.

(B) To Fit Type S Fuses Only. Type S fuseholders and adapters shall be designed so that either the fuseholder itself or the fuseholder with a Type S adapter inserted cannot be used for any fuse other than a Type S fuse.

(C) Nonremovable. Type S adapters shall be designed so that once inserted in a fuseholder, they cannot be removed.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-97

(D) Nontamperable. Type S fuses, fuseholders, and adapters shall be designed so that tampering or shunting (bridging) would be difficult.

(E) Interchangeability. Dimensions of Type S fuses, fuseholders, and adapters shall be standardized to permit interchangeability regardless of the manufacturer.

VI. Cartridge Fuses and Fuseholders

240.60 General.

(A) Maximum Voltage — 300-Volt Type. Cartridge fuses and fuseholders of the 300-volt type shall be permitted to be used in the following circuits:

(1) Circuits not exceeding 300 volts between conductors
(2) Single-phase line-to-neutral circuits supplied from a 3-phase, 4-wire, solidly grounded neutral source where the line-to-neutral voltage does not exceed 300 volts

(B) Noninterchangeable — 0–6000-Ampere Cartridge Fuseholders. Fuseholders shall be designed so that it will be difficult to put a fuse of any given class into a fuseholder that is designed for a current lower, or voltage higher, than that of the class to which the fuse belongs. Fuseholders for current-limiting fuses shall not permit insertion of fuses that are not current-limiting.

(C) Marking. Fuses shall be plainly marked, either by printing on the fuse barrel or by a label attached to the barrel showing the following:

(1) Ampere rating
(2) Voltage rating
(3) Interrupting rating where other than 10,000 amperes
(4) Current limiting where applicable
(5) The name or trademark of the manufacturer

The interrupting rating shall not be required to be marked on fuses used for supplementary protection.

240.61 Classification. Cartridge fuses and fuseholders shall be classified according to voltage and amperage ranges. Fuses rated 600 volts, nominal, or less shall be permitted to be used for voltages at or below their ratings.

VII. Circuit Breakers

240.80 Method of Operation. Circuit breakers shall be trip free and capable of being closed and opened by manual operation. Their normal method of operation by other than manual means, such as electrical or pneumatic, shall be permitted if means for manual operation are also provided.

240.81 Indicating. Circuit breakers shall clearly indicate whether they are in the open "off" or closed "on" position.

Where circuit breaker handles are operated vertically rather than rotationally or horizontally, the "up" position of the handle shall be the "on" position.

240.82 Nontamperable. A circuit breaker shall be of such design that any alteration of its trip point (calibration) or the time required for its operation requires dismantling of the device or breaking of a seal for other than intended adjustments.

240.83 Marking.

(A) Durable and Visible. Circuit breakers shall be marked with their ampere rating in a manner that will be durable and visible after installation. Such marking shall be permitted to be made visible by removal of a trim or cover.

(B) Location. Circuit breakers rated at 100 amperes or less and 600 volts or less shall have the ampere rating molded, stamped, etched, or similarly marked into their handles or escutcheon areas.

(C) Interrupting Rating. Every circuit breaker having an interrupting rating other than 5000 amperes shall have its interrupting rating shown on the circuit breaker. The interrupting rating shall not be required to be marked on circuit breakers used for supplementary protection.

(D) Used as Switches. Circuit breakers used as switches in 120-volt and 277-volt fluorescent lighting circuits shall be listed and shall be marked SWD or HID. Circuit breakers used as switches in high-intensity discharge lighting circuits shall be listed and shall be marked as HID.

(E) Voltage Marking. Circuit breakers shall be marked with a voltage rating not less than the nominal system voltage that is indicative of their capability to interrupt fault currents between phases or phase to ground.

240.85 Applications. A circuit breaker with a straight voltage rating, such as 240V or 480V, shall be permitted to be applied in a circuit in which the nominal voltage between any two conductors does not exceed the circuit breaker's voltage rating. A two-pole circuit breaker shall not be used for protecting a 3-phase, corner-grounded delta circuit unless the circuit breaker is marked 1ϕ–3ϕ to indicate such suitability.

A circuit breaker with a slash rating, such as 120/240V or 480Y/277V, shall be permitted to be applied in a solidly grounded circuit where the nominal voltage of any conductor to ground does not exceed the lower of the two values of the circuit breaker's voltage rating and the nominal voltage between any two conductors does not exceed the higher value of the circuit breaker's voltage rating.

FPN: Proper application of molded case circuit breakers on 3-phase systems, other than solidly grounded wye, particu-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-98

larly on corner grounded delta systems, considers the circuit breakers' individual pole-interrupting capability.

240.86 Series Ratings. Where a circuit breaker is used on a circuit having an available fault current higher than its marked interrupting rating by being connected on the load side of an acceptable overcurrent protective device having the higher rating, 240.86(A) and (B) shall apply.

(A) Marking. The additional series combination interrupting rating shall be marked on the end use equipment, such as switchboards and panelboards.

(B) Motor Contribution. Series ratings shall not be used where

(1) Motors are connected on the load side of the higher-rated overcurrent device and on the line side of the lower-rated overcurrent device, and
(2) The sum of the motor full-load currents exceeds 1 percent of the interrupting rating of the lower-rated circuit breaker.

VIII. Supervised Industrial Installations

240.90 General. Overcurrent protection in areas of supervised industrial installations shall comply with all of the other applicable provisions of this article, except as provided in Part VIII. The provisions of Part VIII shall only be permitted to apply to those portions of the electrical system in the supervised industrial installation used exclusively for manufacturing or process control activities.

240.92 Location in Circuit. An overcurrent device shall be connected in each ungrounded circuit conductor as required in 240.92(A) through (D).

(A) Feeder and Branch-Circuit Conductors. Feeder and branch-circuit conductors shall be protected at the point the conductors receive their supply as permitted in 240.21 or as otherwise permitted in 240.92(B), (C), or (D).

(B) Transformer Secondary Conductors of Separately Derived Systems. Conductors shall be permitted to be connected to a transformer secondary of a separately derived system, without overcurrent protection at the connection, where the conditions of 240.92(B)(1), (2), and (3) are met.

(1) Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection. The conductors shall be protected from short-circuit and ground-fault conditions by complying with one of the following conditions:

(1) The length of the secondary conductors does not exceed 30 m (100 ft) and the transformer primary overcurrent device has a rating or setting that does not exceed 150 percent of the value determined by multiplying the secondary conductor ampacity by the secondary-to-primary transformer voltage ratio.
(2) The conductors are protected by a differential relay with a trip setting equal to or less than the conductor ampacity.
(3) The conductors shall be considered to be protected if calculations, made under engineering supervision, determine that the system overcurrent devices will protect the conductors within recognized time vs. current limits for all short-circuit and ground-fault conditions.

(2) Overload Protection. The conductors shall be protected against overload conditions by complying with one of the following:

(1) The conductors terminate in a single overcurrent device that will limit the load to the conductor ampacity.
(2) The sum of the overcurrent devices at the conductor termination limits the load to the conductor ampacity. The overcurrent devices shall consist of not more than six circuit breakers or sets of fuses, mounted in a single enclosure, in a group of separate enclosures, or in or on a switchboard. There shall be no more than six overcurrent devices grouped in any one location.
(3) Overcurrent relaying is connected [with a current transformer(s), if needed] to sense all of the secondary conductor current and limit the load to the conductor ampacity by opening upstream or downstream devices.
(4) Conductors shall be considered to be protected if calculations, made under engineering supervision, determine that the system overcurrent devices will protect the conductors from overload conditions.

(3) Physical Protection. The secondary conductors shall be suitably protected from physical damage.

(C) Outside Feeder Taps. Outside conductors shall be permitted to be tapped to a feeder or to be connected at a transformer secondary, without overcurrent protection at the tap or connection, where all the following conditions are met:

(1) The conductors are suitably protected from physical damage.
(2) The sum of the overcurrent devices at the conductor termination limits the load to the conductor ampacity. The overcurrent devices shall consist of not more than six circuit breakers or sets of fuses mounted in a single enclosure, in a group of separate enclosures, or in or on a switchboard. There shall be no more than six overcurrent devices grouped in any one location.
(3) The tap conductors are installed outdoors of a building or structure except at the point of load termination.
(4) The overcurrent device for the conductors is an integral part of a disconnecting means or shall be located immediately adjacent thereto.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-99

(5) The disconnecting means for the conductors is installed at a readily accessible location complying with one of the following:

a. Outside of a building or structure
b. Inside, nearest the point of entrance of the conductors
c. Where installed in accordance with 230.6, nearest the point of entrance of the conductors

(D) Protection by Primary Overcurrent Device. Conductors supplied by the secondary side of a transformer shall be permitted to be protected by overcurrent protection provided on the primary (supply) side of the transformer, provided the primary device time–current protection characteristic, multiplied by the maximum effective primary-to-secondary transformer voltage ratio, effectively protects the secondary conductors.

IX. Overcurrent Protection Over 600 Volts, Nominal

240.100 Feeders and Branch Circuits.

(A) Location and Type of Protection. Feeder and branch-circuit conductors shall have overcurrent protection in each ungrounded conductor located at the point where the conductor receives its supply or at an alternative location in the circuit when designed under engineering supervision that includes but is not limited to considering the appropriate fault studies and time–current coordination analysis of the protective devices and the conductor damage curves. The overcurrent protection shall be permitted to be provided by either 240.100(A)(1) or (A)(2).

(1) Overcurrent Relays and Current Transformers. Circuit breakers used for overcurrent protection of 3-phase circuits shall have a minimum of three overcurrent relay elements operated from three current transformers. The separate overcurrent relay elements (or protective functions) shall be permitted to be part of a single electronic protective relay unit.

On 3-phase, 3-wire circuits, an overcurrent relay element in the residual circuit of the current transformers shall be permitted to replace one of the phase relay elements.

An overcurrent relay element, operated from a current transformer that links all phases of a 3-phase, 3-wire circuit, shall be permitted to replace the residual relay element and one of the phase-conductor current transformers. Where the neutral is not regrounded on the load side of the circuit as permitted in 250.184(B), the current transformer shall be permitted to link all 3-phase conductors and the grounded circuit conductor (neutral).

(2) Fuses. A fuse shall be connected in series with each ungrounded conductor.

(B) Protective Devices. The protective device(s) shall be capable of detecting and interrupting all values of current that can occur at their location in excess of their trip-setting or melting point.

(C) Conductor Protection. The operating time of the protective device, the available short-circuit current, and the conductor used shall be coordinated to prevent damaging or dangerous temperatures in conductors or conductor insulation under short-circuit conditions.

240.101 Additional Requirements for Feeders.

(A) Rating or Setting of Overcurrent Protective Devices. The continuous ampere rating of a fuse shall not exceed three times the ampacity of the conductors. The long-time trip element setting of a breaker or the minimum trip setting of an electronically actuated fuse shall not exceed six times the ampacity of the conductor. For fire pumps, conductors shall be permitted to be protected for overcurrent in accordance with 695.4(B).

(B) Feeder Taps. Conductors tapped to a feeder shall be permitted to be protected by the feeder overcurrent device where that overcurrent device also protects the tap conductor.

ARTICLE 250
Grounding

I. General

250.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements for grounding and bonding of electrical installations, and specific requirements in (1) through (6).

(1) Systems, circuits, and equipment required, permitted, or not permitted to be grounded
(2) Circuit conductor to be grounded on grounded systems
(3) Location of grounding connections
(4) Types and sizes of grounding and bonding conductors and electrodes
(5) Methods of grounding and bonding
(6) Conditions under which guards, isolation, or insulation may be substituted for grounding

250.2 Definitions.

Effective Ground-Fault Current Path. An intentionally constructed, permanent, low-impedance electrically conductive path designed and intended to carry current under ground-fault conditions from the point of a ground fault on a wiring system to the electrical supply source.

Ground Fault. An unintentional, electrically conducting connection between an ungrounded conductor of an electrical

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-100

circuit and the normally non–current-carrying conductors, metallic enclosures, metallic raceways, metallic equipment, or earth.

Ground-Fault Current Path. An electrically conductive path from the point of a ground fault on a wiring system through normally non–current-carrying conductors, equipment, or the earth to the electrical supply source.

FPN: Examples of ground-fault current paths could consist of any combination of equipment grounding conductors, metallic raceways, metallic cable sheaths, electrical equipment, and any other electrically conductive material such as metal water and gas piping, steel framing members, stucco mesh, metal ducting, reinforcing steel, shields of communications cables, and the earth itself.

250.3 Application of Other Articles. In other articles applying to particular cases of installation of conductors and equipment, there are requirements identified in Table 250.3 that are in addition to, or modifications of, those of this article.

Table 250.3 Additional Grounding Requirements

Conductor/Equipment	Article	Section
Agricultural buildings		547.9 and 547.10
Audio signal processing, amplification, and reproduction equipment		640.7
Branch circuits		210.5, 210.6, 406.3
Cablebus		370.9
Capacitors		460.10, 460.27
Circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 volts	720	
Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits		725.9
Closed-loop and programmed power distribution		780.3
Communications circuits	800	
Community antenna television and radio distribution systems		820.33, 820.40, 820.41
Conductors for general wiring	310	
Cranes and hoists	610	
Electrically driven or controlled irrigation machines		675.11(C), 675.12, 675.13, 675.14, 675.15
Electric signs and outline lighting	600	
Electrolytic cells	668	
Elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, wheelchair lifts, and stairway chair lifts	620	
Fire alarm systems		760.9
Fixed electric heating equipment for pipelines and vessels		427.29, 427.48
Fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment		426.27
Flexible cords and cables		400.22, 400.23
Floating buildings		553.8, 553.10, 553.11
Grounding-type receptacles, adapters, cord connectors, and attachment plugs		406.9
Hazardous (classified) locations	500–517	
Health care facilities	517	
Induction and dielectric heating equipment	665	
Industrial machinery	670	
Information technology equipment		645.15
Intrinsically safe systems		504.50
Luminaires (lighting fixtures) and lighting equipment		410.17, 410.18, 410.20, 410.21, 410.105(B)
Luminaires (fixtures), lampholders, lamps, and receptacles	410	
Marinas and boatyards		555.15
Mobile homes and mobile home park	550	
Motion picture and television studios and similar locations		530.20, 530.66
Motors, motor circuits, and controllers	430	
Outlet, device, pull and junction boxes, conduit bodies and fittings		314.4, 314.25
Over 600 volts, nominal, underground wiring methods		300.50(B)
Panelboards		408.20
Pipe organs	650	
Radio and television equipment	810	
Receptacles and cord connectors		406.3
Recreational vehicles and recreational vehicle parks	551	
Services	230	
Solar photovoltaic systems		690.41, 690.42, 690.43, 690.45, 690.47
Swimming pools, fountains, and similar installations	680	

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-101

Table 250.3 *Continued*

Conductor/Equipment	Article	Section
Switchboards and panelboards		408.3(D)
Switches		404.12
Theaters, audience areas of motion picture and television studios, and similar locations		520.81
Transformers and transformer vaults		450.10
Use and identification of grounded conductors	200	
X-ray equipment	660	517.78

250.4 General Requirements for Grounding and Bonding. The following general requirements identify what grounding and bonding of electrical systems are required to accomplish. The prescriptive methods contained in Article 250 shall be followed to comply with the performance requirements of this section.

(A) Grounded Systems.

(1) Electrical System Grounding. Electrical systems that are grounded shall be connected to earth in a manner that will limit the voltage imposed by lightning, line surges, or unintentional contact with higher-voltage lines and that will stabilize the voltage to earth during normal operation.

(2) Grounding of Electrical Equipment. Non–current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors or equipment, or forming part of such equipment, shall be connected to earth so as to limit the voltage to ground on these materials.

(3) Bonding of Electrical Equipment. Non–current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors or equipment, or forming part of such equipment, shall be connected together and to the electrical supply source in a manner that establishes an effective ground-fault current path.

(4) Bonding of Electrically Conductive Materials and Other Equipment. Electrically conductive materials that are likely to become energized shall be connected together and to the electrical supply source in a manner that establishes an effective ground-fault current path.

(5) Effective Ground-Fault Current Path. Electrical equipment and wiring and other electrically conductive material likely to become energized shall be installed in a manner that creates a permanent, low-impedance circuit capable of safely carrying the maximum ground-fault current likely to be imposed on it from any point on the wiring system where a ground fault may occur to the electrical supply source. The earth shall not be used as the sole equipment grounding conductor or effective ground-fault current path.

(B) Ungrounded Systems.

(1) Grounding Electrical Equipment. Non–current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors or equipment, or forming part of such equipment, shall be connected to earth in a manner that will limit the voltage imposed by lightning or unintentional contact with higher-voltage lines and limit the voltage to ground on these materials.

(2) Bonding of Electrical Equipment. Non–current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors or equipment, or forming part of such equipment, shall be connected together and to the supply system grounded equipment in a manner that creates a permanent, low-impedance path for ground-fault current that is capable of carrying the maximum fault current likely to be imposed on it.

(3) Bonding of Electrically Conductive Materials and Other Equipment. Electrically conductive materials that are likely to become energized shall be connected together and to the supply system grounded equipment in a manner that creates a permanent, low-impedance path for ground-fault current that is capable of carrying the maximum fault current likely to be imposed on it.

(4) Path for Fault Current. Electrical equipment, wiring, and other electrically conductive material likely to become energized shall be installed in a manner that creates a permanent, low-impedance circuit from any point on the wiring system to the electrical supply source to facilitate the operation of overcurrent devices should a second fault occur on the wiring system. The earth shall not be used as the sole equipment grounding conductor or effective fault-current path.

FPN No. 1: A second fault that occurs through the equipment enclosures and bonding is considered a ground fault.

FPN No. 2: See Figure 250.4 for information on the organization of Article 250.

250.6 Objectionable Current over Grounding Conductors.

(A) Arrangement to Prevent Objectionable Current. The grounding of electrical systems, circuit conductors, surge arresters, and conductive non–current-carrying materials and equipment shall be installed and arranged in a manner that will prevent objectionable current over the grounding conductors or grounding paths.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-102

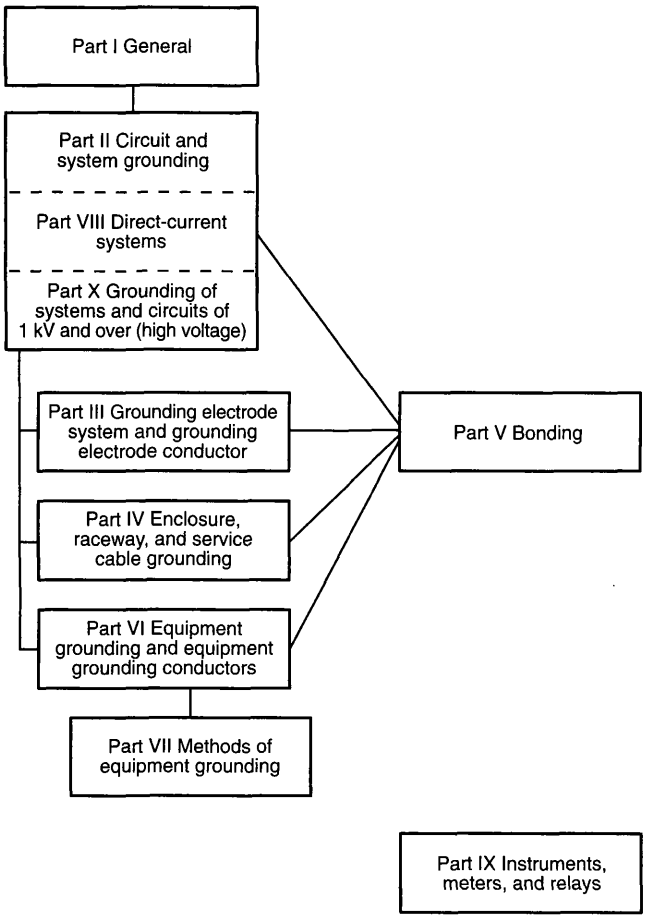


Figure 250.4 Grounding.

(B) Alterations to Stop Objectionable Current. If the use of multiple grounding connections results in objectionable current, one or more of the following alterations shall be permitted to be made, provided that the requirements of 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4) are met:

(1) Discontinue one or more but not all of such grounding connections.
(2) Change the locations of the grounding connections.
(3) Interrupt the continuity of the conductor or conductive path interconnecting the grounding connections.
(4) Take other suitable remedial and approved action.

(C) Temporary Currents Not Classified as Objectionable Currents. Temporary currents resulting from accidental conditions, such as ground-fault currents, that occur only while the grounding conductors are performing their intended protective functions shall not be classified as objectionable current for the purposes specified in 250.6(A) and (B).

(D) Limitations to Permissible Alterations. The provisions of this section shall not be considered as permitting electronic equipment from being operated on ac systems or branch circuits that are not grounded as required by this article. Currents that introduce noise or data errors in electronic equipment shall not be considered the objectionable currents addressed in this section.

(E) Isolation of Objectionable Direct-Current Ground Currents. Where isolation of objectionable dc ground currents from cathodic protection systems is required, a listed ac coupling/dc isolating device shall be permitted in the equipment grounding path to provide an effective return path for ac ground-fault current while blocking dc current.

250.8 Connection of Grounding and Bonding Equipment. Grounding conductors and bonding jumpers shall be connected by exothermic welding, listed pressure connectors, listed clamps, or other listed means. Connection devices or fittings that depend solely on solder shall not be used. Sheet metal screws shall not be used to connect grounding conductors to enclosures.

250.10 Protection of Ground Clamps and Fittings. Ground clamps or other fittings shall be approved for general use without protection or shall be protected from physical damage as indicated in (1) or (2).

(1) In installations where they are not likely to be damaged
(2) Where enclosed in metal, wood, or equivalent protective covering

250.12 Clean Surfaces. Nonconductive coatings (such as paint, lacquer, and enamel) on equipment to be grounded shall be removed from threads and other contact surfaces to ensure good electrical continuity or be connected by means of fittings designed so as to make such removal unnecessary.

II. Circuit and System Grounding

250.20 Alternating-Current Circuits and Systems to Be Grounded. Alternating-current circuits and systems shall be grounded as provided for in 250.20(A), (B), (C), or (D). Other circuits and systems shall be permitted to be grounded. If such systems are grounded, they shall comply with the applicable provisions of this article.

FPN: An example of a system permitted to be grounded is a corner-grounded delta transformer connection. See 250.26(4) for conductor to be grounded.

(A) Alternating-Current Circuits of Less Than 50 Volts. Alternating-current circuits of less than 50 volts shall be grounded under any of the following conditions:

(1) Where supplied by transformers, if the transformer supply system exceeds 150 volts to ground

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-103

(2) Where supplied by transformers, if the transformer supply system is ungrounded
(3) Where installed as overhead conductors outside of buildings

(B) Alternating-Current Systems of 50 Volts to 1000 Volts. Alternating-current systems of 50 volts to 1000 volts that supply premises wiring and premises wiring systems shall be grounded under any of the following conditions:

(1) Where the system can be grounded so that the maximum voltage to ground on the ungrounded conductors does not exceed 150 volts
(2) Where the system is 3-phase, 4-wire, wye connected in which the neutral is used as a circuit conductor
(3) Where the system is 3-phase, 4-wire, delta connected in which the midpoint of one phase winding is used as a circuit conductor

(C) Alternating-Current Systems of 1 kV and Over. Alternating-current systems supplying mobile or portable equipment shall be grounded as specified in 250.188. Where supplying other than mobile or portable equipment, such systems shall be permitted to be grounded.

(D) Separately Derived Systems. Separately derived systems, as covered in 250.20(A) or (B), shall be grounded as specified in 250.30.

FPN No. 1: An alternate ac power source such as an on-site generator is not a separately derived system if the neutral is solidly interconnected to a service-supplied system neutral.

FPN No. 2: For systems that are not separately derived and are not required to be grounded as specified in 250.30, see 445.13 for minimum size of conductors that must carry fault current.

250.21 Alternating-Current Systems of 50 Volts to 1000 Volts Not Required to Be Grounded. The following ac systems of 50 volts to 1000 volts shall be permitted to be grounded but shall not be required to be grounded:

(1) Electric systems used exclusively to supply industrial electric furnaces for melting, refining, tempering, and the like
(2) Separately derived systems used exclusively for rectifiers that supply only adjustable-speed industrial drives
(3) Separately derived systems supplied by transformers that have a primary voltage rating less than 1000 volts, provided that all the following conditions are met:
   a. The system is used exclusively for control circuits.
   b. The conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation.
   c. Continuity of control power is required.
   d. Ground detectors are installed on the control system.
(4) High-impedance grounded neutral systems as specified in 250.36
(5) Other systems that are not required to be grounded in accordance with the requirements of 250.20(B)

250.22 Circuits Not to Be Grounded. The following circuits shall not be grounded:

(1) Cranes (circuits for electric cranes operating over combustible fibers in Class III locations, as provided in 503.13)
(2) Health care facilities (circuits as provided in Article 517)
(3) Electrolytic cells (circuits as provided in Article 668)
(4) Lighting systems [secondary circuits as provided in 411.5(A)]

250.24 Grounding Service-Supplied Alternating-Current Systems.

(A) System Grounding Connections. A premises wiring system supplied by a grounded ac service shall have a grounding electrode conductor connected to the grounded service conductor, at each service, in accordance with 250.24(A)(1) through (A)(5).

(1) General. The connection shall be made at any accessible point from the load end of the service drop or service lateral to and including the terminal or bus to which the grounded service conductor is connected at the service disconnecting means.

FPN: See definitions of *Service Drop* and *Service Lateral* in Article 100.

(2) Outdoor Transformer. Where the transformer supplying the service is located outside the building, at least one additional grounding connection shall be made from the grounded service conductor to a grounding electrode, either at the transformer or elsewhere outside the building.

Exception: The additional grounding connection shall not be made on high-impedance grounded neutral systems. The system shall meet the requirements of 250.36.

(3) Dual Fed Services. For services that are dual fed (double ended) in a common enclosure or grouped together in separate enclosures and employing a secondary tie, a single grounding electrode connection to the tie point of the grounded circuit conductors from each power source shall be permitted.

(4) Main Bonding Jumper as Wire or Busbar. Where the main bonding jumper specified in 250.28 is a wire or busbar and is installed from the neutral bar or bus to the equipment grounding terminal bar or bus in the service equipment, the grounding electrode conductor shall be permitted

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-104

to be connected to the equipment grounding terminal bar or bus to which the main bonding jumper is connected.

(5) Load-Side Grounding Connections. A grounding connection shall not be made to any grounded circuit conductor on the load side of the service disconnecting means except as otherwise permitted in this article.

FPN: See 250.30(A) for separately derived systems, 250.32 for connections at separate buildings or structures, and 250.142 for use of the grounded circuit conductor for grounding equipment.

(B) Grounded Conductor Brought to Service Equipment. Where an ac system operating at less than 1000 volts is grounded at any point, the grounded conductor(s) shall be run to each service disconnecting means and shall be bonded to each disconnecting means enclosure. The grounded conductor(s) shall be installed in accordance with 250.24(B)(1) through (B)(3).

Exception: Where more than one service disconnecting means are located in an assembly listed for use as service equipment, it shall be permitted to run the grounded conductor(s) to the assembly, and the conductor(s) shall be bonded to the assembly enclosure.

(1) Routing and Sizing. This conductor shall be routed with the phase conductors and shall not be smaller than the required grounding electrode conductor specified in Table 250.66 but shall not be required to be larger than the largest ungrounded service-entrance phase conductor. In addition, for service-entrance phase conductors larger than 1100 kcmil copper or 1750 kcmil aluminum, the grounded conductor shall not be smaller than 12½ percent of the area of the largest service-entrance phase conductor. The grounded service entrance conductor of a 3-phase, 3-wire delta service shall have an ampacity not less than the ungrounded conductors.

(2) Parallel Conductors. Where the service-entrance phase conductors are installed in parallel, the size of the grounded conductor shall be based on the total circular mil area of the parallel conductors as indicated in this section. Where installed in two or more raceways, the size of the grounded conductor in each raceway shall be based on the size of the ungrounded service-entrance conductor in the raceway but not smaller than 1/0 AWG.

FPN: See 310.4 for grounded conductors connected in parallel.

(3) High Impedance. The grounded conductor on a high-impedance grounded neutral system shall be grounded in accordance with 250.36.

(C) Grounding Electrode Conductor. A grounding electrode conductor shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductors, the service-equipment enclosures, and, where the system is grounded, the grounded service conductor to the grounding electrode(s) required by Part III of this article.

High-impedance grounded neutral system connections shall be made as covered in 250.36.

FPN: See 250.24(A) for ac system grounding connections.

(D) Ungrounded System Grounding Connections. A premises wiring system that is supplied by an ac service that is ungrounded shall have, at each service, a grounding electrode conductor connected to the grounding electrode(s) required by Part III of this article. The grounding electrode conductor shall be connected to a metal enclosure of the service conductors at any accessible point from the load end of the service drop or service lateral to the service disconnecting means.

250.26 Conductor to Be Grounded — Alternating-Current Systems. For ac premises wiring systems, the conductor to be grounded shall be as specified in the following:

(1) Single-phase, 2-wire — one conductor
(2) Single-phase, 3-wire — the neutral conductor
(3) Multiphase systems having one wire common to all phases — the common conductor
(4) Multiphase systems where one phase is grounded — one phase conductor
(5) Multiphase systems in which one phase is used as in (2) — the neutral conductor

250.28 Main Bonding Jumper. For a grounded system, an unspliced main bonding jumper shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductor(s) and the service-disconnect enclosure to the grounded conductor of the system within the enclosure for each service disconnect.

Exception No. 1: Where more than one service disconnecting means is located in an assembly listed for use as service equipment, an unspliced main bonding jumper shall bond the grounded conductor(s) to the assembly enclosure.

Exception No. 2: Impedance grounded neutral systems shall be permitted to be connected as provided in 250.36 and 250.186.

(A) Material. Main bonding jumpers shall be of copper or other corrosion-resistant material. A main bonding jumper shall be a wire, bus, screw, or similar suitable conductor.

(B) Construction. Where a main bonding jumper is a screw only, the screw shall be identified with a green finish that shall be visible with the screw installed.

(C) Attachment. Main bonding jumpers shall be attached in the manner specified by the applicable provisions of 250.8.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-105

(D) Size. The main bonding jumper shall not be smaller than the sizes shown in Table 250.66 for grounding electrode conductors. Where the service-entrance phase conductors are larger than 1100 kcmil copper or 1750 kcmil aluminum, the bonding jumper shall have an area that is not less than 12½ percent of the area of the largest phase conductor except that, where the phase conductors and the bonding jumper are of different materials (copper or aluminum), the minimum size of the bonding jumper shall be based on the assumed use of phase conductors of the same material as the bonding jumper and with an ampacity equivalent to that of the installed phase conductors.

250.30 Grounding Separately Derived Alternating-Current Systems.

(A) Grounded Systems. A separately derived ac system that is grounded shall comply with 250.30(A)(1) through (6).

Exception: High-impedance grounded neutral system grounding connection requirements shall not be required to comply with 250.30(A)(1) and (2) and shall be made as specified in 250.36 and 250.186.

(1) Bonding Jumper. A bonding jumper in compliance with 250.28(A) through (D) that is sized for the derived phase conductors shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductors of the separately derived system to the grounded conductor. Except as permitted by 250.24(A)(3), this connection shall be made at any point on the separately derived system from the source to the first system disconnecting means or overcurrent device, or it shall be made at the source of a separately derived system that has no disconnecting means or overcurrent devices. The point of connection shall be the same as the grounding electrode conductor as required in 250.30(A)(2).

Exception No. 1: A bonding jumper at both the source and the first disconnecting means shall be permitted where doing so does not establish a parallel path for the grounded circuit conductor. Where a grounded conductor is used in this manner, it shall not be smaller than the size specified for the bonding jumper but shall not be required to be larger than the ungrounded conductor(s). For the purposes of this exception, connection through the earth shall not be considered as providing a parallel path.

Exception No. 2: The size of the bonding jumper for a system that supplies a Class 1, Class 2, or Class 3 circuit, and is derived from a transformer rated not more than 1000 volt-amperes, shall not be smaller than the derived phase conductors and shall not be smaller than 14 AWG copper or 12 AWG aluminum.

(2) Grounding Electrode Conductor. The grounding electrode conductor shall be installed in accordance with (a) or (b). Where taps are connected to a common grounding electrode conductor, the installation shall comply with 250.30(A)(3).

(a) Single Separately Derived System. A grounding electrode conductor for a single separately derived system shall be sized in accordance with 250.66 for the derived phase conductors and shall be used to connect the grounded conductor of the derived system to the grounding electrode as specified in 250.30(A)(4). Except as permitted by 250.24(A)(3) or (A)(4), this connection shall be made at the same point on the separately derived system where the bonding jumper is installed.

Exception: A grounding electrode conductor shall not be required for a system that supplies a Class 1, Class 2, or Class 3 circuit and is derived from a transformer rated not more than 1000 volt-amperes, provided the system grounded conductor is bonded to the transformer frame or enclosure by a jumper sized in accordance with 250.30(A)(1), Exception No. 2, and the transformer frame or enclosure is grounded by one of the means specified in 250.134.

(b) Multiple Separately Derived Systems. Where more than one separately derived system is connected to a common grounding electrode conductor as provided in 250.30(A)(3), the common grounding electrode conductor shall be sized in accordance with 250.66, based on the total area of the largest derived phase conductor from each separately derived system.

(3) Grounding Electrode Conductor Taps. It shall be permissible to connect taps from a separately derived system to a common grounding electrode conductor. Each tap conductor shall connect the grounded conductor of the separately derived system to the common grounding electrode conductor.

(a) Tap Conductor Size. Each tap conductor shall be sized in accordance with 250.66 for the derived phase conductors of the separately derived system it serves.

(b) Connections. All connections shall be made at an accessible location by an irreversible compression connector listed for the purpose, listed connections to copper busbars not less than 6 mm × 50 mm (¼ in. × 2 in.), or by the exothermic welding process. The tap conductors shall be connected to the common grounding electrode conductor as specified in 250.30(A)(2)(b) in such a manner that the common grounding electrode conductor remains without a splice or joint.

(c) Installation. The common grounding electrode conductor and the taps to each separately derived system shall comply with 250.64(A), (B), (C), and (E).

(d) Bonding. Where exposed structural steel that is interconnected to form the building frame or interior metal piping exists in the area served by the separately derived

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-106

system, it shall be bonded to the grounding electrode conductor in accordance with 250.104.

(4) Grounding Electrode. The grounding electrode shall be as near as practicable to and preferably in the same area as the grounding electrode conductor connection to the system. The grounding electrode shall be the nearest one of the following:

(1) An effectively grounded structural metal member of the structure
(2) An effectively grounded metal water pipe within 1.5 m (5 ft) from the point of entrance into the building

Exception: In industrial and commercial buildings where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation and the entire length of the interior metal water pipe that is being used for the grounding electrode is exposed, the connection shall be permitted at any point on the water pipe system.

(3) Other electrodes as specified by 250.52 where the electrodes specified by 250.30(A)(4)(1) or (A)(4)(2) are not available

Exception to (1), (2), and (3):Where a separately derived system originates in listed equipment suitable for use as service equipment, the grounding electrode used for the service or feeder shall be permitted as the grounding electrode for the separately derived system, provided the grounding electrode conductor from the service or feeder to the grounding electrode is of sufficient size for the separately derived system. Where the equipment ground bus internal to the service equipment is not smaller than the required grounding electrode conductor, the grounding electrode connection for the separately derived system shall be permitted to be made to the bus.

FPN: See 250.104(A)(4) for bonding requirements of interior metal water piping in the area served by separately derived systems.

(5) Equipment Bonding Jumper Size. Where a bonding jumper is run with the derived phase conductors from the source of a separately derived system to the first disconnecting means, it shall be sized in accordance with 250.28(A) through (D), based on the size of the derived phase conductors.

(6) Grounded Conductor. Where a grounded conductor is installed and the bonding jumper is not located at the source of the separately derived system, the following shall apply:

(a) Routing and Sizing. This conductor shall be routed with the derived phase conductors and shall not be smaller than the required grounding electrode conductor specified in Table 250.66, but shall not be required to be larger than the largest ungrounded derived phase conductor. In addition, for phase conductors larger than 1100 kcmil copper or 1750 kcmil aluminum, the grounded conductor shall not be smaller than 12½ percent of the area of the largest derived phase conductor. The grounded conductor of a 3-phase, 3-wire delta system shall have an ampacity not less than the ungrounded conductors.

(b) Parallel Conductors. Where the derived phase conductors are installed in parallel, the size of the grounded conductor shall be based on the total circular mil area of the parallel conductors as indicated in this section. Where installed in two or more raceways, the size of the grounded conductor in each raceway shall be based on the size of the ungrounded conductors in the raceway but not smaller than 1/0 AWG.

FPN: See 310.4 for grounded conductors connected in parallel.

(c) High Impedance. The grounded conductor on a high-impedance grounded neutral system shall be grounded in accordance with 250.36.

(B) Ungrounded Systems. The equipment of an ungrounded separately derived system shall be grounded as specified in 250.30(B)(1) and (2).

(1) Grounding Electrode Conductor. A grounding electrode conductor, sized in accordance with 250.66 for the derived phase conductors, shall be used to connect the metal enclosures of the derived system to the grounding electrode as specified in 250.30(B)(2). This connection shall be made at any point on the separately derived system from the source to the first system disconnecting means.

(2) Grounding Electrode. Except as permitted by 250.34 for portable and vehicle-mounted generators, the grounding electrode shall comply with 250.30(A)(4).

250.32 Two or More Buildings or Structures Supplied from a Common Service.

(A) Grounding Electrode. Where two or more buildings or structures are supplied from a common ac service by a feeder(s) or branch circuit(s), the grounding electrode(s) required in Part III of this article at each building or structure shall be connected in the manner specified in 250.32(B) or (C). Where there are no existing grounding electrodes, the grounding electrode(s) required in Part III of this article shall be installed.

Exception: A grounding electrode at separate buildings or structures shall not be required where only one branch circuit supplies the building or structure and the branch circuit includes an equipment grounding conductor for grounding the conductive non–current-carrying parts of all equipment.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-107

(B) Grounded Systems. For a grounded system at the separate building or structure, the connection to the grounding electrode and grounding or bonding of equipment, structures, or frames required to be grounded or bonded shall comply with either 250.32(B)(1) or (2).

(1) Equipment Grounding Conductor. An equipment grounding conductor as described in 250.118 shall be run with the supply conductors and connected to the building or structure disconnecting means and to the grounding electrode(s). The equipment grounding conductor shall be used for grounding or bonding of equipment, structures, or frames required to be grounded or bonded. The equipment grounding conductor shall be sized in accordance with 250.122. Any installed grounded conductor shall not be connected to the equipment grounding conductor or to the grounding electrode(s).

(2) Grounded Conductor. Where (1) an equipment grounding conductor is not run with the supply to the building or structure, (2) there are no continuous metallic paths bonded to the grounding system in both buildings or structures involved, and (3) ground-fault protection of equipment has not been installed on the common ac service, the grounded circuit conductor run with the supply to the building or structure shall be connected to the building or structure disconnecting means and to the grounding electrode(s) and shall be used for grounding or bonding of equipment, structures, or frames required to be grounded or bonded. The size of the grounded conductor shall not be smaller than the larger of

(1) That required by 220.22
(2) That required by 250.122

(C) Ungrounded Systems. The grounding electrode(s) shall be connected to the building or structure disconnecting means.

(D) Disconnecting Means Located in Separate Building or Structure on the Same Premises. Where one or more disconnecting means supply one or more additional buildings or structures under single management, and where these disconnecting means are located remote from those buildings or structures in accordance with the provisions of 225.32, Exception Nos. 1 and 2, all of the following conditions shall be met:

(1) The connection of the grounded circuit conductor to the grounding electrode at a separate building or structure shall not be made.
(2) An equipment grounding conductor for grounding any non–current-carrying equipment, interior metal piping systems, and building or structural metal frames is run with the circuit conductors to a separate building or structure and bonded to existing grounding electrode(s) required in Part III of this article, or, where there are no existing electrodes, the grounding electrode(s) required in Part III of this article shall be installed where a separate building or structure is supplied by more than one branch circuit.
(3) Bonding the equipment grounding conductor to the grounding electrode at a separate building or structure shall be made in a junction box, panelboard, or similar enclosure located immediately inside or outside the separate building or structure.

(E) Grounding Electrode Conductor. The size of the grounding electrode conductor to the grounding electrode(s) shall not be smaller than given in 250.66, based on the largest ungrounded supply conductor. The installation shall comply with Part III of this article.

250.34 Portable and Vehicle-Mounted Generators.

(A) Portable Generators. The frame of a portable generator shall not be required to be grounded and shall be permitted to serve as the grounding electrode for a system supplied by the generator under the following conditions:

(1) The generator supplies only equipment mounted on the generator, cord-and-plug-connected equipment through receptacles mounted on the generator, or both, and
(2) The non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment and the equipment grounding conductor terminals of the receptacles are bonded to the generator frame.

(B) Vehicle-Mounted Generators. The frame of a vehicle shall be permitted to serve as the grounding electrode for a system supplied by a generator located on the vehicle under the following conditions:

(1) The frame of the generator is bonded to the vehicle frame, and
(2) The generator supplies only equipment located on the vehicle or cord-and-plug-connected equipment through receptacles mounted on the vehicle, or both equipment located on the vehicle and cord-and-plug-connected equipment through receptacles mounted on the vehicle or on the generator, and
(3) The non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment and the equipment grounding conductor terminals of the receptacles are bonded to the generator frame, and
(4) The system complies with all other provisions of this article.

(C) Grounded Conductor Bonding. A system conductor that is required to be grounded by 250.26 shall be bonded to the generator frame where the generator is a component of a separately derived system.

FPN: For grounding portable generators supplying fixed wiring systems, see 250.20(D).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-108

250.36 High-Impedance Grounded Neutral Systems. High-impedance grounded neutral systems in which a grounding impedance, usually a resistor, limits the ground-fault current to a low value shall be permitted for 3-phase ac systems of 480 volts to 1000 volts where all the following conditions are met:

(1) The conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation.
(2) Continuity of power is required.
(3) Ground detectors are installed on the system.
(4) Line-to-neutral loads are not served.

High-impedance grounded neutral systems shall comply with the provisions of 250.36(A) through (G).

(A) Grounding Impedance Location. The grounding impedance shall be installed between the grounding electrode conductor and the system neutral. Where a neutral is not available, the grounding impedance shall be installed between the grounding electrode conductor and the neutral derived from a grounding transformer.

(B) Neutral Conductor. The neutral conductor from the neutral point of the transformer or generator to its connection point to the grounding impedance shall be fully insulated.

The neutral conductor shall have an ampacity of not less than the maximum current rating of the grounding impedance. In no case shall the neutral conductor be smaller than 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum or copper-clad aluminum.

(C) System Neutral Connection. The system neutral conductor shall not be connected to ground except through the grounding impedance.

FPN: The impedance is normally selected to limit the ground-fault current to a value slightly greater than or equal to the capacitive charging current of the system. This value of impedance will also limit transient overvoltages to safe values. For guidance, refer to criteria for limiting transient overvoltages in ANSI/IEEE 142-1991, *Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.*

(D) Neutral Conductor Routing. The conductor connecting the neutral point of the transformer or generator to the grounding impedance shall be permitted to be installed in a separate raceway. It shall not be required to run this conductor with the phase conductors to the first system disconnecting means or overcurrent device.

(E) Equipment Bonding Jumper. The equipment bonding jumper (the connection between the equipment grounding conductors and the grounding impedance) shall be an unspliced conductor run from the first system disconnecting means or overcurrent device to the grounded side of the grounding impedance.

(F) Grounding Electrode Conductor Location. The grounding electrode conductor shall be attached at any point from the grounded side of the grounding impedance to the equipment grounding connection at the service equipment or first system disconnecting means.

(G) Equipment Bonding Jumper Size. The equipment bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with (1) or (2).

(1) Where the grounding electrode conductor connection is made at the grounding impedance, the equipment bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with 250.66, based on the size of the service entrance conductors for a service or the derived phase conductors for a separately derived system.
(2) Where the grounding electrode conductor is connected at the first system disconnecting means or overcurrent device, the equipment bonding jumper shall be sized the same as the neutral conductor in 250.36(B).

III. Grounding Electrode System and Grounding Electrode Conductor

250.50 Grounding Electrode System. If available on the premises at each building or structure served, each item in 250.52(A)(1) through (A)(6) shall be bonded together to form the grounding electrode system. Where none of these electrodes are available, one or more of the electrodes specified in 250.52(A)(4) through (A)(7) shall be installed and used.

250.52 Grounding Electrodes.

(A) Electrodes Permitted for Grounding.

(1) Metal Underground Water Pipe. A metal underground water pipe in direct contact with the earth for 3.0 m (10 ft) or more (including any metal well casing effectively bonded to the pipe) and electrically continuous (or made electrically continuous by bonding around insulating joints or insulating pipe) to the points of connection of the grounding electrode conductor and the bonding conductors. Interior metal water piping located more than 1.52 m (5 ft) from the point of entrance to the building shall not be used as a part of the grounding electrode system or as a conductor to interconnect electrodes that are part of the grounding electrode system.

Exception: In industrial and commercial buildings or structures where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, interior metal water piping located more than 1.52 m (5 ft) from the point of entrance to the building shall be permitted as a part of the grounding electrode system or as a conductor to interconnect electrodes that are part of the grounding electrode system, provided that the entire length,

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-109

other than short sections passing perpendicular through walls, floors, or ceilings, of the interior metal water pipe that is being used for the conductor is exposed.

(2) Metal Frame of the Building or Structure. The metal frame of the building or structure, where effectively grounded.

(3) Concrete-Encased Electrode. An electrode encased by at least 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete, located within and near the bottom of a concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with the earth, consisting of at least 6.0 m (20 ft) of one or more bare or zinc galvanized or other electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods of not less than 13 mm (½ in.) in diameter, or consisting of at least 6.0 m (20 ft) of bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG. Reinforcing bars shall be permitted to be bonded together by the usual steel tie wires or other effective means.

(4) Ground Ring. A ground ring encircling the building or structure, in direct contact with the earth, consisting of at least 6.0 m (20 ft) of bare copper conductor not smaller than 2 AWG.

(5) Rod and Pipe Electrodes. Rod and pipe electrodes shall not be less than 2.5 m (8 ft) in length and shall consist of the following materials.

(a) Electrodes of pipe or conduit shall not be smaller than metric designator 21 (trade size ¾) and, where of iron or steel, shall have the outer surface galvanized or otherwise metal-coated for corrosion protection.

(b) Electrodes of rods of iron or steel shall be at least 15.87 mm (⅝ in.) in diameter. Stainless steel rods less than 16 mm (⅝ in.) in diameter, nonferrous rods, or their equivalent shall be listed and shall not be less than 13 mm (½ in.) in diameter.

(6) Plate Electrodes. Each plate electrode shall expose not less than 0.186 m^2 (2 ft^2) of surface to exterior soil. Electrodes of iron or steel plates shall be at least 6.4 mm (¼ in.) in thickness. Electrodes of nonferrous metal shall be at least 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) in thickness.

(7) Other Local Metal Underground Systems or Structures. Other local metal underground systems or structures such as piping systems and underground tanks.

(B) Electrodes Not Permitted for Grounding. The following shall not be used as grounding electrodes:

(1) Metal underground gas piping system
(2) Aluminum electrodes

250.53 Grounding Electrode System Installation.

FPN: See 547.9 and 547.10 for special grounding and bonding requirements for agricultural buildings.

(A) Rod, Pipe, and Plate Electrodes. Where practicable, rod, pipe, and plate electrodes shall be embedded below permanent moisture level. Rod, pipe, and plate electrodes shall be free from nonconductive coatings such as paint or enamel.

(B) Electrode Spacing. Where more than one of the electrodes of the type specified in 250.52(A)(5) or (A)(6) are used, each electrode of one grounding system (including that used for air terminals) shall not be less than 1.83 m (6 ft) from any other electrode of another grounding system. Two or more grounding electrodes that are effectively bonded together shall be considered a single grounding electrode system.

(C) Bonding Jumper. The bonding jumper(s) used to connect the grounding electrodes together to form the grounding electrode system shall be installed in accordance with 250.64(A), (B), and (E), shall be sized in accordance with 250.66, and shall be connected in the manner specified in 250.70.

(D) Metal Underground Water Pipe. Where used as a grounding electrode, metal underground water pipe shall meet the requirements of 250.53(D)(1) and (D)(2).

(1) Continuity. Continuity of the grounding path or the bonding connection to interior piping shall not rely on water meters or filtering devices and similar equipment.

(2) Supplemental Electrode Required. A metal underground water pipe shall be supplemented by an additional electrode of a type specified in 250.52(A)(2) through (A)(7). Where the supplemental electrode is a rod, pipe, or plate type, it shall comply with 250.56. The supplemental electrode shall be permitted to be bonded to the grounding electrode conductor, the grounded service-entrance conductor, the nonflexible grounded service raceway, or any grounded service enclosure.

Exception: The supplemental electrode shall be permitted to be bonded to the interior metal water piping at any convenient point as covered in 250.52(A)(1), Exception.

(E) Supplemental Electrode Bonding Connection Size. Where the supplemental electrode is a rod, pipe, or plate electrode, that portion of the bonding jumper that is the sole connection to the supplemental grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper wire or 4 AWG aluminum wire.

(F) Ground Ring. The ground ring shall be buried at a depth below the earth's surface of not less than 750 mm (30 in.).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-110

(G) Rod and Pipe Electrodes. The electrode shall be installed such that at least 2.44 m (8 ft) of length is in contact with the soil. It shall be driven to a depth of not less than 2.44 m (8 ft) except that, where rock bottom is encountered, the electrode shall be driven at an oblique angle not to exceed 45 degrees from the vertical or, where rock bottom is encountered at an angle up to 45 degrees, the electrode shall be permitted to be buried in a trench that is at least 750 mm (30 in.) deep. The upper end of the electrode shall be flush with or below ground level unless the aboveground end and the grounding electrode conductor attachment are protected against physical damage as specified in 250.10.

(H) Plate Electrode. Plate electrodes shall be installed not less than 750 mm (30 in.) below the surface of the earth.

250.54 Supplementary Grounding Electrodes. Supplementary grounding electrodes shall be permitted to be connected to the equipment grounding conductors specified in 250.118 and shall not be required to comply with the electrode bonding requirements of 250.50 or 250.53(C) or the resistance requirements of 250.56, but the earth shall not be used as the sole equipment grounding conductor.

250.56 Resistance of Rod, Pipe, and Plate Electrodes. A single electrode consisting of a rod, pipe, or plate that does not have a resistance to ground of 25 ohms or less shall be augmented by one additional electrode of any of the types specified by 250.52(A)(2) through (A)(7). Where multiple rod, pipe, or plate electrodes are installed to meet the requirements of this section, they shall not be less than 1.8 m (6 ft) apart.

FPN: The paralleling efficiency of rods longer than 2.5 m (8 ft) is improved by spacing greater than 1.8 m (6 ft).

250.58 Common Grounding Electrode. Where an ac system is connected to a grounding electrode in or at a building as specified in 250.24 and 250.32, the same electrode shall be used to ground conductor enclosures and equipment in or on that building. Where separate services supply a building and are required to be connected to a grounding electrode, the same grounding electrode shall be used.

Two or more grounding electrodes that are effectively bonded together shall be considered as a single grounding electrode system in this sense.

250.60 Use of Air Terminals. Air terminal conductors and driven pipes, rods, or plate electrodes used for grounding air terminals shall not be used in lieu of the grounding electrodes required by 250.50 for grounding wiring systems and equipment. This provision shall not prohibit the required bonding together of grounding electrodes of different systems.

FPN No. 1: See 250.106 for spacing from air terminals. See 800.40(D), 810.21(J), and 820.40(D) for bonding of electrodes.

FPN No. 2: Bonding together of all separate grounding electrodes will limit potential differences between them and between their associated wiring systems.

250.62 Grounding Electrode Conductor Material. The grounding electrode conductor shall be of copper, aluminum, or copper-clad aluminum. The material selected shall be resistant to any corrosive condition existing at the installation or shall be suitably protected against corrosion. The conductor shall be solid or stranded, insulated, covered, or bare.

250.64 Grounding Electrode Conductor Installation. Grounding electrode conductors shall be installed as specified in 250.64(A) through (F).

(A) Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum Conductors. Bare aluminum or copper-clad aluminum grounding conductors shall not be used where in direct contact with masonry or the earth or where subject to corrosive conditions. Where used outside, aluminum or copper-clad aluminum grounding conductors shall not be terminated within 450 mm (18 in.) of the earth.

(B) Securing and Protection from Physical Damage. A grounding electrode conductor or its enclosure shall be securely fastened to the surface on which it is carried. A 4 AWG copper or aluminum or larger conductor shall be protected if exposed to severe physical damage. A 6 AWG grounding conductor that is free from exposure to physical damage shall be permitted to be run along the surface of the building construction without metal covering or protection where it is securely fastened to the construction; otherwise, it shall be in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing, or cable armor. Grounding conductors smaller than 6 AWG shall be in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing, or cable armor.

(C) Continuous. The grounding electrode conductor shall be installed in one continuous length without a splice or joint, unless spliced only by irreversible compression-type connectors listed for the purpose or by the exothermic welding process.

Exception: Sections of busbars shall be permitted to be connected together to form a grounding electrode conductor.

(D) Grounding Electrode Conductor Taps. Where a service consists of more than a single enclosure as permitted in 230.40, Exception No. 2, it shall be permitted to connect

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-111

taps to the grounding electrode conductor. Each such tap conductor shall extend to the inside of each such enclosure. The grounding electrode conductor shall be sized in accordance with 250.66, but the tap conductors shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with the grounding electrode conductors specified in 250.66 for the largest conductor serving the respective enclosures. The tap conductors shall be connected to the grounding electrode conductor in such a manner that the grounding electrode conductor remains without a splice.

(E) Enclosures for Grounding Electrode Conductors. Metal enclosures for grounding electrode conductors shall be electrically continuous from the point of attachment to cabinets or equipment to the grounding electrode and shall be securely fastened to the ground clamp or fitting. Metal enclosures that are not physically continuous from cabinet or equipment to the grounding electrode shall be made electrically continuous by bonding each end to the grounding electrode conductor. Where a raceway is used as protection for a grounding electrode conductor, the installation shall comply with the requirements of the appropriate raceway article.

(F) To Electrode(s). A grounding electrode conductor shall be permitted to be run to any convenient grounding electrode available in the grounding electrode system or to one or more grounding electrode(s) individually. The grounding electrode conductor shall be sized for the largest grounding electrode conductor required among all the electrodes connected to it.

250.66 Size of Alternating-Current Grounding Electrode Conductor. The size of the grounding electrode conductor of a grounded or ungrounded ac system shall not be less than given in Table 250.66, except as permitted in 250.66(A) through (C).

FPN: See 250.24(B) for size of ac system conductor brought to service equipment.

(A) Connections to Rod, Pipe, or Plate Electrodes. Where the grounding electrode conductor is connected to rod, pipe, or plate electrodes as permitted in 250.52(A)(5) or 250.52(A)(6), that portion of the conductor that is the sole connection to the grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper wire or 4 AWG aluminum wire.

(B) Connections to Concrete-Encased Electrodes. Where the grounding electrode conductor is connected to a concrete-encased electrode as permitted in 250.52(A)(3), that portion of the conductor that is the sole connection to the grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 4 AWG copper wire.

Table 250.66 Grounding Electrode Conductor for Alternating-Current Systems

Size of Largest Ungrounded Service-Entrance Conductor or Equivalent Area for Parallel Conductors[a] (AWG/kcmil)		Size of Grounding Electrode Conductor (AWG/kcmil)	
Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum	Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum[b]
2 or smaller	1/0 or smaller	8	6
1 or 1/0	2/0 or 3/0	6	4
2/0 or 3/0	4/0 or 250	4	2
Over 3/0 through 350	Over 250 through 500	2	1/0
Over 350 through 600	Over 500 through 900	1/0	3/0
Over 600 through 1100	Over 900 through 1750	2/0	4/0
Over 1100	Over 1750	3/0	250

Notes:

1. Where multiple sets of service-entrance conductors are used as permitted in 230.40, Exception No. 2, the equivalent size of the largest service-entrance conductor shall be determined by the largest sum of the areas of the corresponding conductors of each set.
2. Where there are no service-entrance conductors, the grounding electrode conductor size shall be determined by the equivalent size of the largest service-entrance conductor required for the load to be served.

[a]This table also applies to the derived conductors of separately derived ac systems.

[b]See installation restrictions in 250.64(A).

(C) Connections to Ground Rings. Where the grounding electrode conductor is connected to a ground ring as permitted in 250.52(A)(4), that portion of the conductor that is the sole connection to the grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than the conductor used for the ground ring.

250.68 Grounding Electrode Conductor and Bonding Jumper Connection to Grounding Electrodes.

(A) Accessibility. The connection of a grounding electrode conductor or bonding jumper to a grounding electrode shall be accessible.

Exception: An encased or buried connection to a concrete-encased, driven, or buried grounding electrode shall not be required to be accessible.

(B) Effective Grounding Path. The connection of a grounding electrode conductor or bonding jumper to a grounding electrode shall be made in a manner that will ensure a permanent and effective grounding path. Where necessary to ensure the grounding path for a metal piping

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-112

system used as a grounding electrode, effective bonding shall be provided around insulated joints and around any equipment likely to be disconnected for repairs or replacement. Bonding conductors shall be of sufficient length to permit removal of such equipment while retaining the integrity of the bond.

250.70 Methods of Grounding and Bonding Conductor Connection to Electrodes. The grounding or bonding conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode by exothermic welding, listed lugs, listed pressure connectors, listed clamps, or other listed means. Connections depending on solder shall not be used. Ground clamps shall be listed for the materials of the grounding electrode and the grounding electrode conductor and, where used on pipe, rod, or other buried electrodes, shall also be listed for direct soil burial or concrete encasement. Not more than one conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode by a single clamp or fitting unless the clamp or fitting is listed for multiple conductors. One of the following methods shall be used:

(1) A pipe fitting, pipe plug, or other approved device screwed into a pipe or pipe fitting
(2) A listed bolted clamp of cast bronze or brass, or plain or malleable iron
(3) For indoor telecommunications purposes only, a listed sheet metal strap-type ground clamp having a rigid metal base that seats on the electrode and having a strap of such material and dimensions that it is not likely to stretch during or after installation
(4) An equally substantial approved means

IV. Enclosure, Raceway, and Service Cable Grounding

250.80 Service Raceways and Enclosures. Metal enclosures and raceways for service conductors and equipment shall be grounded.

Exception: A metal elbow that is installed in an underground installation of rigid nonmetallic conduit and is isolated from possible contact by a minimum cover of 450 mm (18 in.) to any part of the elbow shall not be required to be grounded.

250.84 Underground Service Cable or Conduit.

(A) Underground Service Cable. The sheath or armor of a continuous underground metal-sheathed service cable system that is metallically connected to the underground system shall not be required to be grounded at the building. The sheath or armor shall be permitted to be insulated from the interior conduit or piping.

(B) Underground Service Conduit Containing Cable. An underground service conduit that contains a metal-sheathed cable bonded to the underground system shall not be required to be grounded at the building. The sheath or armor shall be permitted to be insulated from the interior conduit or piping.

250.86 Other Conductor Enclosures and Raceways. Except as permitted by 250.112(I), metal enclosures and raceways for other than service conductors shall be grounded.

Exception No. 1: Metal enclosures and raceways for conductors added to existing installations of open wire, knob and tube wiring, and nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall not be required to be grounded where these enclosures or wiring methods

(a) Do not provide an equipment ground;
(b) Are in runs of less than 7.5 m (25 ft);
(c) Are free from probable contact with ground, grounded metal, metal lath, or other conductive material; and
(d) Are guarded against contact by persons.

Exception No. 2: Short sections of metal enclosures or raceways used to provide support or protection of cable assemblies from physical damage shall not be required to be grounded.

Exception No. 3: A metal elbow shall not be required to be grounded where it is installed in a nonmetallic raceway and is isolated from possible contact by a minimum cover of 450 mm (18 in.) to any part of the elbow or is encased in not less than 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete.

V. Bonding

250.90 General. Bonding shall be provided where necessary to ensure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any fault current likely to be imposed.

250.92 Services.

(A) Bonding of Services. The non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment indicated in 250.92(A)(1), (2), and (3) shall be effectively bonded together.

(1) The service raceways, cable trays, cablebus framework, auxiliary gutters, or service cable armor or sheath except as permitted in 250.84.
(2) All service enclosures containing service conductors, including meter fittings, boxes, or the like, interposed in the service raceway or armor.
(3) Any metallic raceway or armor enclosing a grounding electrode conductor as specified in 250.64(B). Bonding shall apply at each end and to all intervening raceways, boxes, and enclosures between the service equipment and the grounding electrode.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-113

(B) Method of Bonding at the Service. Electrical continuity at service equipment, service raceways, and service conductor enclosures shall be ensured by one of the following methods:

(1) Bonding equipment to the grounded service conductor in a manner provided in 250.8
(2) Connections utilizing threaded couplings or threaded bosses on enclosures where made up wrenchtight
(3) Threadless couplings and connectors where made up tight for metal raceways and metal-clad cables
(4) Other approved devices, such as bonding-type locknuts and bushings

Bonding jumpers meeting the other requirements of this article shall be used around concentric or eccentric knockouts that are punched or otherwise formed so as to impair the electrical connection to ground. Standard locknuts or bushings shall not be the sole means for the bonding required by this section.

250.94 Bonding for Other Systems. An accessible means external to enclosures for connecting intersystem bonding and grounding conductors shall be provided at the service equipment and at the disconnecting means for any additional buildings or structures by at least one of the following means:

(1) Exposed nonflexible metallic raceways
(2) Exposed grounding electrode conductor
(3) Approved means for the external connection of a copper or other corrosion-resistant bonding or grounding conductor to the grounded raceway or equipment

FPN No. 1: A 6 AWG copper conductor with one end bonded to the grounded nonflexible metallic raceway or equipment and with 150 mm (6 in.) or more of the other end made accessible on the outside wall is an example of the approved means covered in 250.94(3).

FPN No. 2: See 800.40, 810.21, and 820.40 for bonding and grounding requirements for communications circuits, radio and television equipment, and CATV circuits.

250.96 Bonding Other Enclosures.

(A) General. Metal raceways, cable trays, cable armor, cable sheath, enclosures, frames, fittings, and other metal non–current-carrying parts that are to serve as grounding conductors, with or without the use of supplementary equipment grounding conductors, shall be effectively bonded where necessary to ensure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any fault current likely to be imposed on them. Any nonconductive paint, enamel, or similar coating shall be removed at threads, contact points, and contact surfaces or be connected by means of fittings designed so as to make such removal unnecessary.

(B) Isolated Grounding Circuits. Where required for the reduction of electrical noise (electromagnetic interference) on the grounding circuit, an equipment enclosure supplied by a branch circuit shall be permitted to be isolated from a raceway containing circuits supplying only that equipment by one or more listed nonmetallic raceway fittings located at the point of attachment of the raceway to the equipment enclosure. The metal raceway shall comply with provisions of this article and shall be supplemented by an internal insulated equipment grounding conductor installed in accordance with 250.146(D) to ground the equipment enclosure.

FPN: Use of an isolated equipment grounding conductor does not relieve the requirement for grounding the raceway system.

250.97 Bonding for Over 250 Volts. For circuits of over 250 volts to ground, the electrical continuity of metal raceways and cables with metal sheaths that contain any conductor other than service conductors shall be ensured by one or more of the methods specified for services in 250.92(B), except for (1).

Exception: Where oversized, concentric, or eccentric knockouts are not encountered, or where a box or enclosure with concentric or eccentric knockouts is listed for the purpose, the following methods shall be permitted:

(a) Threadless couplings and connectors for cables with metal sheaths
(b) Two locknuts, on rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit, one inside and one outside of boxes and cabinets
(c) Fittings with shoulders that seat firmly against the box or cabinet, such as electrical metallic tubing connectors, flexible metal conduit connectors, and cable connectors, with one locknut on the inside of boxes and cabinets
(d) Listed fittings that are identified for the purpose

250.98 Bonding Loosely Jointed Metal Raceways. Expansion fittings and telescoping sections of metal raceways shall be made electrically continuous by equipment bonding jumpers or other means.

250.100 Bonding in Hazardous (Classified) Locations. Regardless of the voltage of the electrical system, the electrical continuity of non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways, and other enclosures in any hazardous (classified) location as defined in Article 500 shall be ensured by any of the methods specified for services in 250.92(B) that are approved for the wiring method used.

250.102 Equipment Bonding Jumpers.

(A) Material. Equipment bonding jumpers shall be of copper or other corrosion-resistant material. A bonding jumper shall be a wire, bus, screw, or similar suitable conductor.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-114

(B) Attachment. Equipment bonding jumpers shall be attached in the manner specified by the applicable provisions of 250.8 for circuits and equipment and by 250.70 for grounding electrodes.

(C) Size — Equipment Bonding Jumper on Supply Side of Service. The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than the sizes shown in Table 250.66 for grounding electrode conductors. Where the service-entrance phase conductors are larger than 1100 kcmil copper or 1750 kcmil aluminum, the bonding jumper shall have an area not less than 12½ percent of the area of the largest phase conductor except that, where the phase conductors and the bonding jumper are of different materials (copper or aluminum), the minimum size of the bonding jumper shall be based on the assumed use of phase conductors of the same material as the bonding jumper and with an ampacity equivalent to that of the installed phase conductors. Where the service-entrance conductors are paralleled in two or more raceways or cables, the equipment bonding jumper, where routed with the raceways or cables, shall be run in parallel. The size of the bonding jumper for each raceway or cable shall be based on the size of the service-entrance conductors in each raceway or cable.

The bonding jumper for a grounding electrode conductor raceway or cable armor as covered in 250.64(E) shall be the same size or larger than the required enclosed grounding electrode conductor.

(D) Size — Equipment Bonding Jumper on Load Side of Service. The equipment bonding jumper on the load side of the service overcurrent devices shall be sized, as a minimum, in accordance with the sizes listed in Table 250.122, but shall not be required to be larger than the largest ungrounded circuit conductors supplying the equipment and shall not be smaller than 14 AWG.

A single common continuous equipment bonding jumper shall be permitted to bond two or more raceways or cables where the bonding jumper is sized in accordance with Table 250.122 for the largest overcurrent device supplying circuits therein.

(E) Installation. The equipment bonding jumper shall be permitted to be installed inside or outside of a raceway or enclosure. Where installed on the outside, the length of the equipment bonding jumper shall not exceed 1.8 m (6 ft) and shall be routed with the raceway or enclosure. Where installed inside of a raceway, the equipment bonding jumper shall comply with the requirements of 250.119 and 250.148.

Exception: An equipment bonding jumper longer than 1.8 m (6 ft) shall be permitted at outside pole locations for the purpose of bonding or grounding isolated sections of metal raceways or elbows installed in exposed risers of metal conduit or other metal raceway.

250.104 Bonding of Piping Systems and Exposed Structural Steel.

(A) Metal Water Piping. The metal water piping system shall be bonded as required in (1), (2), (3), or (4) of this section. The bonding jumper(s) shall be installed in accordance with 250.64(A), (B), and (E). The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible.

(1) General. Metal water piping system(s) installed in or attached to a building or structure shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper(s) shall be sized in accordance with Table 250.66 except as permitted in 250.104(A)(2) and (A)(3).

(2) Buildings of Multiple Occupancy. In buildings of multiple occupancy where the metal water piping system(s) installed in or attached to a building or structure for the individual occupancies is metallically isolated from all other occupancies by use of nonmetallic water piping, the metal water piping system(s) for each occupancy shall be permitted to be bonded to the equipment grounding terminal of the panelboard or switchboard enclosure (other than service equipment) supplying that occupancy. The bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with Table 250.122.

(3) Multiple Buildings or Structures Supplied from a Common Service. The metal water piping system(s) installed in or attached to a building or structure shall be bonded to the building or structure disconnecting means enclosure where located at the building or structure, to the equipment grounding conductor run with the supply conductors, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper(s) shall be sized in accordance with 250.66, based on the size of the feeder or branch circuit conductors that supply the building. The bonding jumper shall not be required to be larger than the largest ungrounded feeder or branch circuit conductor supplying the building.

(4) Separately Derived Systems. The grounded conductor of each separately derived system shall be bonded to the nearest available point of the interior metal water piping system(s) in the area served by each separately derived system. This connection shall be made at the same point on the separately derived system where the grounding electrode conductor is connected. Each bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with Table 250.66.

Exception: A separate water piping bonding jumper shall not be required where the effectively grounded metal frame of a building or structure is used as the grounding electrode for a separately derived system and is bonded to the metal-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-115

lic water piping in the area served by the separately derived system.

(B) Other Metal Piping. Where installed in or attached to a building or structure, metal piping system(s), including gas piping, that may become energized shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper(s) shall be sized in accordance with 250.122 using the rating of the circuit that may energize the piping system(s). The equipment grounding conductor for the circuit that may energize the piping shall be permitted to serve as the bonding means. The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible.

FPN: Bonding all piping and metal air ducts within the premises will provide additional safety.

(C) Structural Steel. Exposed structural steel that is interconnected to form a steel building frame and is not intentionally grounded and may become energized shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper(s) shall be sized in accordance with Table 250.66 and installed in accordance with 250.64(A), (B), and (E). The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible.

250.106 Lightning Protection Systems. The lightning protection system ground terminals shall be bonded to the building or structure grounding electrode system.

FPN No. 1: See 250.60 for use of air terminals. For further information, see NFPA 780-1997, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*, which contains detailed information on grounding, bonding, and spacing from lightning protection systems.

FPN No. 2: Metal raceways, enclosures, frames, and other non–current-carrying metal parts of electric equipment installed on a building equipped with a lightning protection system may require bonding or spacing from the lightning protection conductors in accordance with NFPA 780-1997, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*. Separation from lightning protection conductors is typically 1.8 m (6 ft) through air or 900 mm (3 ft) through dense materials such as concrete, brick, or wood.

VI. Equipment Grounding and Equipment Grounding Conductors

250.110 Equipment Fastened in Place or Connected by Permanent Wiring Methods (Fixed). Exposed *non–*current-carrying metal parts of fixed equipment likely to become energized shall be grounded under any of the following conditions:

(1) Where within 2.5 m (8 ft) vertically or 1.5 m (5 ft) horizontally of ground or grounded metal objects and subject to contact by persons
(2) Where located in a wet or damp location and not isolated
(3) Where in electrical contact with metal
(4) Where in a hazardous (classified) location as covered by Articles 500 through 517
(5) Where supplied by a metal-clad, metal-sheathed, metal-raceway, or other wiring method that provides an equipment ground, except as permitted by 250.86, Exception No. 2, for short sections of metal enclosures
(6) Where equipment operates with any terminal at over 150 volts to ground

Exception No. 1: Metal frames of electrically heated appliances, exempted by special permission, in which case the frames shall be permanently and effectively insulated from ground.

Exception No. 2: Distribution apparatus, such as transformer and capacitor cases, mounted on wooden poles, at a height exceeding 2.5 m (8 ft) above ground or grade level.

Exception No. 3: Listed equipment protected by a system of double insulation, or its equivalent, shall not be required to be grounded. Where such a system is employed, the equipment shall be distinctively marked.

250.112 Fastened in Place or Connected by Permanent Wiring Methods (Fixed) — Specific. Exposed, non–current-carrying metal parts of the kinds of equipment described in 250.112(A) through (K), and non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment and enclosures described in 250.112(L) and (M), shall be grounded regardless of voltage.

(A) Switchboard Frames and Structures. Switchboard frames and structures supporting switching equipment, except frames of 2-wire dc switchboards where effectively insulated from ground.

(B) Pipe Organs. Generator and motor frames in an electrically operated pipe organ, unless effectively insulated from ground and the motor driving it.

(C) Motor Frames. Motor frames, as provided by 430.142.

(D) Enclosures for Motor Controllers. Enclosures for motor controllers unless attached to ungrounded portable equipment.

(E) Elevators and Cranes. Electric equipment for elevators and cranes.

(F) Garages, Theaters, and Motion Picture Studios. Electric equipment in commercial garages, theaters, and

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-116

motion picture studios, except pendant lampholders supplied by circuits not over 150 volts to ground.

(G) Electric Signs. Electric signs, outline lighting, and associated equipment as provided in Article 600.

(H) Motion Picture Projection Equipment. Motion picture projection equipment.

(I) Power-Limited Remote-Control, Signaling, and Fire Alarm Circuits. Equipment supplied by Class 1 power-limited circuits and Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control and signaling circuits, and by fire alarm circuits, shall be grounded where system grounding is required by Part II or Part VIII of this article.

(J) Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures). Luminaires (lighting fixtures) as provided in Part V of Article 410.

(K) Skid Mounted Equipment. Permanently mounted electrical equipment and skids shall be grounded with an equipment bonding jumper sized as required by 250.122.

(L) Motor-Operated Water Pumps. Motor-operated water pumps, including the submersible type.

(M) Metal Well Casings. Where a submersible pump is used in a metal well casing, the well casing shall be bonded to the pump circuit equipment grounding conductor.

250.114 Equipment Connected by Cord and Plug. Under any of the conditions described in (1) through (4), exposed non–current-carrying metal parts of cord-and-plug-connected equipment likely to become energized shall be grounded.

Exception: Listed tools, listed appliances, and listed equipment covered in (2) through (4) shall not be required to be grounded where protected by a system of double insulation or its equivalent. Double insulated equipment shall be distinctively marked.

(1) In hazardous (classified) locations (see Articles 500 through 517)

(2) Where operated at over 150 volts to ground

Exception No. 1: Motors, where guarded, shall not be required to be grounded.

Exception No. 2: Metal frames of electrically heated appliances, exempted by special permission, shall not be required to be grounded, in which case the frames shall be permanently and effectively insulated from ground.

(3) In residential occupancies:

a. Refrigerators, freezers, and air conditioners
b. Clothes-washing, clothes-drying, dish-washing machines; kitchen waste disposers; information technology equipment; sump pumps and electrical aquarium equipment
c. Hand-held motor-operated tools, stationary and fixed motor-operated tools, light industrial motor-operated tools
d. Motor-operated appliances of the following types: hedge clippers, lawn mowers, snow blowers, and wet scrubbers
e. Portable handlamps

(4) In other than residential occupancies:

a. Refrigerators, freezers, and air conditioners
b. Clothes-washing, clothes-drying, dish-washing machines; information technology equipment; sump pumps and electrical aquarium equipment
c. Hand-held motor-operated tools, stationary and fixed motor-operated tools, light industrial motor-operated tools
d. Motor-operated appliances of the following types: hedge clippers, lawn mowers, snow blowers, and wet scrubbers
e. Portable handlamps
f. Cord-and-plug-connected appliances used in damp or wet locations or by persons standing on the ground or on metal floors or working inside of metal tanks or boilers
g. Tools likely to be used in wet or conductive locations

Exception: Tools and portable handlamps likely to be used in wet or conductive locations shall not be required to be grounded where supplied through an isolating transformer with an ungrounded secondary of not over 50 volts.

250.116 Nonelectric Equipment. The metal parts of nonelectric equipment described in this section shall be grounded.

(1) Frames and tracks of electrically operated cranes and hoists
(2) Frames of nonelectrically driven elevator cars to which electric conductors are attached
(3) Hand-operated metal shifting ropes or cables of electric elevators

FPN: Where extensive metal in or on buildings may become energized and is subject to personal contact, adequate bonding and grounding will provide additional safety.

250.118 Types of Equipment Grounding Conductors. The equipment grounding conductor run with or enclosing the circuit conductors shall be one or more or a combination of the following:

(1) A copper, aluminum, or copper-clad aluminum conductor. This conductor shall be solid or stranded; insulated, covered, or bare; and in the form of a wire or a busbar of any shape.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-117

(2) Rigid metal conduit.
(3) Intermediate metal conduit.
(4) Electrical metallic tubing.
(5) Flexible metal conduit where both the conduit and fittings are listed for grounding.
(6) Listed flexible metal conduit that is not listed for grounding, meeting all the following conditions:
   a. The conduit is terminated in fittings listed for grounding.
   b. The circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.
   c. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquidtight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 1.8 m (6 ft).
   d. The conduit is not installed for flexibility.
(7) Listed liquidtight flexible metal conduit meeting all the following conditions:
   a. The conduit is terminated in fittings listed for grounding.
   b. For metric designators 12 through 16 (trade sizes ⅜ through ½), the circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.
   c. For metric designators 21 through 35 (trade sizes ¾ through 1¼), the circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated not more than 60 amperes and there is no flexible metal conduit, flexible metallic tubing, or liquidtight flexible metal conduit in trade sizes metric designators 12 through 16 (trade sizes ⅜ through ½) in the grounding path.
   d. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquidtight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 1.8 m (6 ft).
   e. The conduit is not installed for flexibility.
(8) Flexible metallic tubing where the tubing is terminated in fittings listed for grounding and meeting the following conditions:
   a. The circuit conductors contained in the tubing are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.
   b. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquidtight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 1.8 m (6 ft).
(9) Armor of Type AC cable as provided in 320.108.
(10) The copper sheath of mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable.
(11) Type MC cable where listed and identified for grounding in accordance with the following:
   a. The combined metallic sheath and grounding conductor of interlocked metal tape–type MC cable
   b. The metallic sheath or the combined metallic sheath and grounding conductors of the smooth or corrugated tube type MC cable
(12) Cable trays as permitted in 392.3(C) and 392.7.
(13) Cablebus framework as permitted in 370.3.
(14) Other electrically continuous metal raceways and auxiliary gutters listed for grounding.

250.119 Identification of Equipment Grounding Conductors. Unless required elsewhere in this *Code,* equipment grounding conductors shall be permitted to be bare, covered, or insulated. Individually covered or insulated equipment grounding conductors shall have a continuous outer finish that is either green or green with one or more yellow stripes except as permitted in this section.

(A) Conductors Larger Than 6 AWG. An insulated or covered conductor larger than 6 AWG copper or aluminum shall be permitted, at the time of installation, to be permanently identified as an equipment grounding conductor at each end and at every point where the conductor is accessible. Identification shall encircle the conductor and shall be accomplished by one of the following:

(1) Stripping the insulation or covering from the entire exposed length
(2) Coloring the exposed insulation or covering green
(3) Marking the exposed insulation or covering with green tape or green adhesive labels

(B) Multiconductor Cable. Where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, one or more insulated conductors in a multiconductor cable, at the time of installation, shall be permitted to be permanently identified as equipment grounding conductors at each end and at every point where the conductors are accessible by one of the following means:

(1) Stripping the insulation from the entire exposed length
(2) Coloring the exposed insulation green
(3) Marking the exposed insulation with green tape or green adhesive labels

(C) Flexible Cord. An uninsulated equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted, but, if individually covered, the covering shall have a continuous outer finish that is either green or green with one or more yellow stripes.

250.120 Equipment Grounding Conductor Installation. An equipment grounding conductor shall be installed in accordance with 250.120(A), (B), and (C).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-118

(A) Raceway, Cable Trays, Cable Armor, Cablebus, or Cable Sheaths. Where it consists of a raceway, cable tray, cable armor, cablebus framework, or cable sheath or where it is a wire within a raceway or cable, it shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions in this *Code* using fittings for joints and terminations approved for use with the type raceway or cable used. All connections, joints, and fittings shall be made tight using suitable tools.

(B) Aluminum and Copper-Clad Aluminum Conductors. Equipment grounding conductors of bare or insulated aluminum or copper-clad aluminum shall be permitted. Bare conductors shall not come in direct contact with masonry or the earth or where subject to corrosive conditions. Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum conductors shall not be terminated within 450 mm (18 in.) of the earth.

(C) Equipment Grounding Conductors Smaller Than 6 AWG. Equipment grounding conductors smaller than 6 AWG shall be protected from physical damage by a raceway or cable armor except where run in hollow spaces of walls or partitions, where not subject to physical damage, or where protected from physical damage.

250.122 Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors.

(A) General. Copper, aluminum, or copper-clad aluminum equipment grounding conductors of the wire type shall not be smaller than shown in Table 250.122 but shall not be required to be larger than the circuit conductors supplying the equipment. Where a raceway or a cable armor or sheath is used as the equipment grounding conductor, as provided in 250.118 and 250.134(A), it shall comply with 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4).

(B) Increased in Size. Where ungrounded conductors are increased in size, equipment grounding conductors, where installed, shall be increased in size proportionately according to circular mil area of the ungrounded conductors.

(C) Multiple Circuits. Where a single equipment grounding conductor is run with multiple circuits in the same raceway or cable, it shall be sized for the largest overcurrent device protecting conductors in the raceway or cable.

(D) Motor Circuits. Where the overcurrent device consists of an instantaneous trip circuit breaker or a motor short-circuit protector, as allowed in 430.52, the equipment grounding conductor size shall be permitted to be based on the rating of the motor overload protective device but not less than the size shown in Table 250.122.

(E) Flexible Cord and Fixture Wire. Equipment grounding conductors that are part of flexible cords or used with fixture wires in accordance with 240.5 shall be not smaller than 18 AWG copper and not smaller than the circuit conductors.

(F) Conductors in Parallel. Where conductors are run in parallel in multiple raceways or cables as permitted in 310.4, the equipment grounding conductors, where used, shall be run in parallel in each raceway or cable. One of the methods in 250.122(F)(1) or (2) shall be used to ensure the equipment grounding conductors are protected.

(1) Each parallel equipment grounding conductor shall be sized on the basis of the ampere rating of the overcurrent device protecting the circuit conductors in the raceway or cable in accordance with Table 250.122.

(2) Where ground-fault protection of equipment is installed, each parallel equipment grounding conductor in a multiconductor cable shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table 250.122 on the basis of the trip rating of the ground-fault protection where the following conditions are met:

(1) Conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons will service the installation.

Table 250.122 Minimum Size Equipment Grounding Conductors for Grounding Raceway and Equipment

Rating or Setting of Automatic Overcurrent Device in Circuit Ahead of Equipment, Conduit, etc., Not Exceeding (Amperes)	Size (AWG or kcmil)	
	Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum*
15	14	12
20	12	10
30	10	8
40	10	8
60	10	8
100	8	6
200	6	4
300	4	2
400	3	1
500	2	1/0
600	1	2/0
800	1/0	3/0
1000	2/0	4/0
1200	3/0	250
1600	4/0	350
2000	250	400
2500	350	600
3000	400	600
4000	500	800
5000	700	1200
6000	800	1200

Note: Where necessary to comply with 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4), the equipment grounding conductor shall be sized larger than given in this table.

*See installation restrictions in 250.120.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-119

(2) The ground-fault protection equipment is set to trip at not more than the ampacity of a single ungrounded conductor of one of the cables in parallel.
(3) The ground-fault protection is listed for the purpose.

250.124 Equipment Grounding Conductor Continuity.

(A) Separable Connections. Separable connections such as those provided in drawout equipment or attachment plugs and mating connectors and receptacles shall provide for first-make, last-break of the equipment grounding conductor. First-make, last-break shall not be required where interlocked equipment, plugs, receptacles, and connectors preclude energization without grounding continuity.

(B) Switches. No automatic cutout or switch shall be placed in the equipment grounding conductor of a premises wiring system unless the opening of the cutout or switch disconnects all sources of energy.

250.126 Identification of Wiring Device Terminals. The terminal for the connection of the equipment grounding conductor shall be identified by one of the following:

(1) A green, not readily removable terminal screw with a hexagonal head.
(2) A green, hexagonal, not readily removable terminal nut.
(3) A green pressure wire connector. If the terminal for the grounding conductor is not visible, the conductor entrance hole shall be marked with the word *green* or *ground*, the letters *G* or *GR* or the grounding symbol shown in Figure 250.126, or otherwise identified by a distinctive green color. If the terminal for the equipment grounding conductor is readily removable, the area adjacent to the terminal shall be similarly marked.



Figure 250.126 Grounding symbol.

VII. Methods of Equipment Grounding

250.130 Equipment Grounding Conductor Connections. Equipment grounding conductor connections at the source of separately derived systems shall be made in accordance with 250.30(A)(1). Equipment grounding conductor connections at service equipment shall be made as indicated in 250.130(A) or (B). For replacement of non–grounding-type receptacles with grounding-type receptacles and for branch-circuit extensions only in existing installations that do not have an equipment grounding conductor in the branch circuit, connections shall be permitted as indicated in 250.130(C).

(A) For Grounded Systems. The connection shall be made by bonding the equipment grounding conductor to the grounded service conductor and the grounding electrode conductor.

(B) For Ungrounded Systems. The connection shall be made by bonding the equipment grounding conductor to the grounding electrode conductor.

(C) Nongrounding Receptacle Replacement or Branch Circuit Extensions. The equipment grounding conductor of a grounding-type receptacle or a branch-circuit extension shall be permitted to be connected to any of the following:

(1) Any accessible point on the grounding electrode system as described in 250.50
(2) Any accessible point on the grounding electrode conductor
(3) The equipment grounding terminal bar within the enclosure where the branch circuit for the receptacle or branch circuit originates
(4) For grounded systems, the grounded service conductor within the service equipment enclosure
(5) For ungrounded systems, the grounding terminal bar within the service equipment enclosure

FPN: See 406.3(D) for the use of a ground-fault circuit-interrupting type of receptacle.

250.132 Short Sections of Raceway. Isolated sections of metal raceway or cable armor, where required to be grounded, shall be grounded in accordance with 250.134.

250.134 Equipment Fastened in Place or Connected by Permanent Wiring Methods (Fixed) — Grounding. Unless grounded by connection to the grounded circuit conductor as permitted by 250.32, 250.140, and 250.142, non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways, and other enclosures, if grounded, shall be grounded by one of the following methods.

(A) Equipment Grounding Conductor Types. By any of the equipment grounding conductors permitted by 250.118.

(B) With Circuit Conductors. By an equipment grounding conductor contained within the same raceway, cable, or otherwise run with the circuit conductors.

Exception No. 1: As provided in 250.130(C), the equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted to be run separately from the circuit conductors.

Exception No. 2: For dc circuits, the equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted to be run separately from the circuit conductors.

FPN No. 1: See 250.102 and 250.168 for equipment bonding jumper requirements.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-120

FPN No. 2: See 400.7 for use of cords for fixed equipment.

250.136 Equipment Considered Effectively Grounded. Under the conditions specified in 250.136(A) and (B), the non–current-carrying metal parts of the equipment shall be considered effectively grounded.

(A) Equipment Secured to Grounded Metal Supports. Electrical equipment secured to and in electrical contact with a metal rack or structure provided for its support and grounded by one of the means indicated in 250.134. The structural metal frame of a building shall not be used as the required equipment grounding conductor for ac equipment.

(B) Metal Car Frames. Metal car frames supported by metal hoisting cables attached to or running over metal sheaves or drums of elevator machines that are grounded by one of the methods indicated in 250.134.

250.138 Cord-and-Plug-Connected Equipment. Non–current-carrying metal parts of cord-and-plug-connected equipment, if grounded, shall be grounded by one of the methods in 250.138(A) or (B).

(A) By Means of an Equipment Grounding Conductor. By means of an equipment grounding conductor run with the power supply conductors in a cable assembly or flexible cord properly terminated in a grounding-type attachment plug with one fixed grounding contact.

Exception: The grounding contacting pole of grounding-type plug-in ground-fault circuit interrupters shall be permitted to be of the movable, self-restoring type on circuits operating at not over 150 volts between any two conductors or over 150 volts between any conductor and ground.

(B) By Means of a Separate Flexible Wire or Strap. By means of a separate flexible wire or strap, insulated or bare, protected as well as practicable against physical damage, where part of equipment.

250.140 Frames of Ranges and Clothes Dryers. This section shall apply to existing branch-circuit installations only. New branch-circuit installations shall comply with 250.134 and 250.138. Frames of electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, clothes dryers, and outlet or junction boxes that are part of the circuit for these appliances shall be grounded in the manner specified by 250.134 or 250.138; or, except for mobile homes and recreational vehicles, shall be permitted to be grounded to the grounded circuit conductor if all the following conditions are met.

(1) The supply circuit is 120/240-volt, single-phase, 3-wire; or 208Y/120-volt derived from a 3-phase, 4-wire, wye-connected system.
(2) The grounded conductor is not smaller than 10 AWG copper or 8 AWG aluminum.
(3) The grounded conductor is insulated, or the grounded conductor is uninsulated and part of a Type SE service-entrance cable and the branch circuit originates at the service equipment.
(4) Grounding contacts of receptacles furnished as part of the equipment are bonded to the equipment.

250.142 Use of Grounded Circuit Conductor for Grounding Equipment.

(A) Supply-Side Equipment. A grounded circuit conductor shall be permitted to ground non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways, and other enclosures at any of the following locations:

(1) On the supply side or within the enclosure of the ac service-disconnecting means
(2) On the supply side or within the enclosure of the main disconnecting means for separate buildings as provided in 250.32(B)
(3) On the supply side or within the enclosure of the main disconnecting means or overcurrent devices of a separately derived system where permitted by 250.30(A)(1)

(B) Load-Side Equipment. Except as permitted in 250.30(A)(1) and 250.32(B), a grounded circuit conductor shall not be used for grounding non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment on the load side of the service disconnecting means or on the load side of a separately derived system disconnecting means or the overcurrent devices for a separately derived system not having a main disconnecting means.

Exception No. 1: The frames of ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, and clothes dryers under the conditions permitted for existing installations by 250.140 shall be permitted to be grounded by a grounded circuit conductor.

Exception No. 2: It shall be permissible to ground meter enclosures by connection to the grounded circuit conductor on the load side of the service disconnect if

(a) No service ground-fault protection is installed, and
(b) All meter enclosures are located near the service disconnecting means, and
(c) The size of the grounded circuit conductor is not smaller than the size specified in Table 250.122 for equipment grounding conductors.

Exception No. 3: Direct-current systems shall be permitted to be grounded on the load side of the disconnecting means or overcurrent device in accordance with 250.164.

Exception No. 4: Electrode-type boilers operating at over 600 volts shall be grounded as required in 490.72(E)(1) and 490.74.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-121

250.144 Multiple Circuit Connections. Where equipment is required to be grounded and is supplied by separate connection to more than one circuit or grounded premises wiring system, a means for grounding shall be provided for each such connection as specified in 250.134 and 250.138.

250.146 Connecting Receptacle Grounding Terminal to Box. An equipment bonding jumper shall be used to connect the grounding terminal of a grounding-type receptacle to a grounded box unless grounded as in 250.146(A) through (D).

(A) Surface Mounted Box. Where the box is mounted on the surface, direct metal-to-metal contact between the device yoke and the box shall be permitted to ground the receptacle to the box. This provision shall not apply to cover-mounted receptacles unless the box and cover combination are listed as providing satisfactory ground continuity between the box and the receptacle.

(B) Contact Devices or Yokes. Contact devices or yokes designed and listed for the purpose shall be permitted in conjunction with the supporting screws to establish the grounding circuit between the device yoke and flush-type boxes.

(C) Floor Boxes. Floor boxes designed for and listed as providing satisfactory ground continuity between the box and the device shall be permitted.

(D) Isolated Receptacles. Where required for the reduction of electrical noise (electromagnetic interference) on the grounding circuit, a receptacle in which the grounding terminal is purposely insulated from the receptacle mounting means shall be permitted. The receptacle grounding terminal shall be grounded by an insulated equipment grounding conductor run with the circuit conductors. This grounding conductor shall be permitted to pass through one or more panelboards without connection to the panelboard grounding terminal as permitted in 408.20, Exception, so as to terminate within the same building or structure directly at an equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service.

FPN: Use of an isolated equipment grounding conductor does not relieve the requirement for grounding the raceway system and outlet box.

250.148 Continuity and Attachment of Equipment Grounding Conductors to Boxes. Where circuit conductors are spliced within a box, or terminated on equipment within or supported by a box, any separate equipment grounding conductors associated with those circuit conductors shall be spliced or joined within the box or to the box with devices suitable for the use. Connections depending solely on solder shall not be used. Splices shall be made in accordance with 110.14(B) except that insulation shall not be required. The arrangement of grounding connections shall be such that the disconnection or the removal of a receptacle, luminaire (fixture), or other device fed from the box will not interfere with or interrupt the grounding continuity.

Exception: The equipment grounding conductor permitted in 250.146(D) shall not be required to be connected to the other equipment grounding conductors or to the box.

(A) Metal Boxes. A connection shall be made between the one or more equipment grounding conductors and a metal box by means of a grounding screw that shall be used for no other purpose or a listed grounding device.

(B) Nonmetallic Boxes. One or more equipment grounding conductors brought into a nonmetallic outlet box shall be arranged so that a connection can be made to any fitting or device in that box requiring grounding.

VIII. Direct-Current Systems

250.160 General. Direct-current systems shall comply with Part VIII and other sections of Article 250 not specifically intended for ac systems.

250.162 Direct-Current Circuits and Systems to Be Grounded. Direct-current circuits and systems shall be grounded as provided for in 250.162(A) and (B).

(A) Two-Wire, Direct-Current Systems. A 2-wire, dc system supplying premises wiring and operating at greater than 50 volts but not greater than 300 volts shall be grounded.

Exception No. 1: A system equipped with a ground detector and supplying only industrial equipment in limited areas shall not be required to be grounded.

Exception No. 2: A rectifier-derived dc system supplied from an ac system complying with 250.20 shall not be required to be grounded.

Exception No. 3: Direct-current fire alarm circuits having a maximum current of 0.030 amperes as specified in Article 760, Part III, shall not be required to be grounded.

(B) Three-Wire, Direct-Current Systems. The neutral conductor of all 3-wire, dc systems supplying premises wiring shall be grounded.

250.164 Point of Connection for Direct-Current Systems.

(A) Off-Premises Source. Direct-current systems to be grounded and supplied from an off-premises source shall have the grounding connection made at one or more supply

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-122

stations. A grounding connection shall not be made at individual services or at any point on the premises wiring.

(B) On-Premises Source. Where the dc system source is located on the premises, a grounding connection shall be made at one of the following:

(1) The source
(2) The first system disconnection means or overcurrent device
(3) By other means that accomplish equivalent system protection and that utilize equipment listed and identified for the use

250.166 Size of Direct-Current Grounding Electrode Conductor. The size of the grounding electrode conductor for a dc system shall be as specified in 250.166(A) through (E).

(A) Not Smaller Than the Neutral Conductor. Where the dc system consists of a 3-wire balancer set or a balancer winding with overcurrent protection as provided in 445.12(D), the grounding electrode conductor shall not be smaller than the neutral conductor and not smaller than 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum.

(B) Not Smaller Than the Largest Conductor. Where the dc system is other than as in 250.166(A), the grounding electrode conductor shall not be smaller than the largest conductor supplied by the system, and not smaller than 8 AWG copper or 6 AWG aluminum.

(C) Connected to Rod, Pipe, or Plate Electrodes. Where connected to rod, pipe, or plate electrodes as in 250.52(A)(5) or 250.52(A)(6), that portion of the grounding electrode conductor that is the sole connection to the grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper wire or 4 AWG aluminum wire.

(D) Connected to a Concrete-Encased Electrode. Where connected to a concrete-encased electrode as in 250.52(A)(3), that portion of the grounding electrode conductor that is the sole connection to the grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 4 AWG copper wire.

(E) Connected to a Ground Ring. Where connected to a ground ring as in 250.52(A)(4), that portion of the grounding electrode conductor that is the sole connection to the grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than the conductor used for the ground ring.

250.168 Direct-Current Bonding Jumper. For dc systems, the size of the bonding jumper shall not be smaller than the system grounding conductor specified in 250.166.

250.169 Ungrounded Direct-Current Separately Derived Systems. Except as otherwise permitted in 250.34 for portable and vehicle-mounted generators, an ungrounded dc separately derived system supplied from a stand-alone power source (such as an engine–generator set) shall have a grounding electrode conductor connected to an electrode that complies with Part III to provide for grounding of metal enclosures, raceways, cables, and exposed non–current-carrying metal parts of equipment. The grounding electrode conductor connection shall be to the metal enclosure at any point on the separately derived system from the source to the first system disconnecting means or overcurrent device, or it shall be made at the source of a separately derived system that has no disconnecting means or overcurrent devices.

The size of the grounding electrode conductor shall be in accordance with 250.166.

IX. Instruments, Meters, and Relays

250.170 Instrument Transformer Circuits. Secondary circuits of current and potential instrument transformers shall be grounded where the primary windings are connected to circuits of 300 volts or more to ground and, where on switchboards, shall be grounded irrespective of voltage.

Exception: Circuits where the primary windings are connected to circuits of less than 1000 volts with no live parts or wiring exposed or accessible to other than qualified persons.

250.172 Instrument Transformer Cases. Cases or frames of instrument transformers shall be grounded where accessible to other than qualified persons.

Exception: Cases or frames of current transformers, the primaries of which are not over 150 volts to ground and that are used exclusively to supply current to meters.

250.174 Cases of Instruments, Meters, and Relays Operating at Less Than 1000 Volts. Instruments, meters, and relays operating with windings or working parts at less than 1000 volts shall be grounded as specified in 250.174(A), (B), or (C).

(A) Not on Switchboards. Instruments, meters, and relays not located on switchboards, operating with windings or working parts at 300 volts or more to ground, and accessible to other than qualified persons, shall have the cases and other exposed metal parts grounded.

(B) On Dead-Front Switchboards. Instruments, meters, and relays (whether operated from current and potential transformers or connected directly in the circuit) on switchboards having no live parts on the front of the panels shall have the cases grounded.

(C) On Live-Front Switchboards. Instruments, meters, and relays (whether operated from current and potential

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-123

transformers or connected directly in the circuit) on switchboards having exposed live parts on the front of panels shall not have their cases grounded. Mats of insulating rubber or other suitable floor insulation shall be provided for the operator where the voltage to ground exceeds 150.

250.176 Cases of Instruments, Meters, and Relays — Operating Voltage 1 kV and Over. Where instruments, meters, and relays have current-carrying parts of 1 kV and over to ground, they shall be isolated by elevation or protected by suitable barriers, grounded metal, or insulating covers or guards. Their cases shall not be grounded.

Exception: Cases of electrostatic ground detectors where the internal ground segments of the instrument are connected to the instrument case and grounded and the ground detector is isolated by elevation.

250.178 Instrument Grounding Conductor. The grounding conductor for secondary circuits of instrument transformers and for instrument cases shall not be smaller than 12 AWG copper or 10 AWG aluminum. Cases of instrument transformers, instruments, meters, and relays that are mounted directly on grounded metal surfaces of enclosures or grounded metal switchboard panels shall be considered to be grounded, and no additional grounding conductor shall be required.

X. Grounding of Systems and Circuits of 1 kV and Over (High Voltage)

250.180 General. Where high-voltage systems are grounded, they shall comply with all applicable provisions of the preceding sections of this article and with 250.182 through 250.190, which supplement and modify the preceding sections.

250.182 Derived Neutral Systems. A system neutral derived from a grounding transformer shall be permitted to be used for grounding high-voltage systems.

250.184 Solidly Grounded Neutral Systems.

(A) Neutral Conductor. The minimum insulation level for neutral conductors of solidly grounded systems shall be 600 volts.

Exception No. 1: Bare copper conductors shall be permitted to be used for the neutral of service entrances and the neutral of direct-buried portions of feeders.

Exception No. 2: Bare conductors shall be permitted for the neutral of overhead portions installed outdoors.

FPN: See 225.4 for conductor covering where within 3.0 m (10 ft) of any building or other structure.

(B) Multiple Grounding. The neutral of a solidly grounded neutral system shall be permitted to be grounded at more than one point. Grounding shall be permitted at one or more of the following locations:

(1) Transformers supplying conductors to a building or other structure
(2) Underground circuits where the neutral is exposed
(3) Overhead circuits installed outdoors

(C) Neutral Grounding Conductor. The neutral grounding conductor shall be permitted to be a bare conductor if isolated from phase conductors and protected from physical damage.

(D) Multigrounded Neutral Conductor. Where a multigrounded neutral system is used, the following shall apply:

(1) The multigrounded neutral conductor shall be of sufficient ampacity for the load imposed on the conductor but not less than 33⅓ percent of the ampacity of the phase conductors.

Exception: In industrial and commercial premises under engineering supervision, it shall be permissible to size the ampacity of the neutral conductor to not less than 20 percent of the ampacity of the phase conductor.

(2) The multigrounded neutral conductor shall be grounded at each transformer and at other additional locations by connection to a made or existing electrode.

(3) At least one grounding electrode shall be installed and connected to the multigrounded neutral circuit conductor every 400 m (1300 ft).

(4) The maximum distance between any two adjacent electrodes shall not be more than 400 m (1300 ft).

(5) In a multigrounded shielded cable system, the shielding shall be grounded at each cable joint that is exposed to personnel contact.

250.186 Impedance Grounded Neutral Systems. Impedance grounded neutral systems in which a grounding impedance, usually a resistor, limits the ground-fault current, shall be permitted where all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons will service the installation.
(2) Ground detectors are installed on the system.
(3) Line-to-neutral loads are not served.

Impedance grounded neutral systems shall comply with the provisions of 250.186(A) through (D).

(A) Location. The grounding impedance shall be inserted in the grounding conductor between the grounding elec-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-124

trode of the supply system and the neutral point of the supply transformer or generator.

(B) Identified and Insulated. The neutral conductor of an impedance grounded neutral system shall be identified, as well as fully insulated with the same insulation as the phase conductors.

(C) System Neutral Connection. The system neutral shall not be connected to ground, except through the neutral grounding impedance.

(D) Equipment Grounding Conductors. Equipment grounding conductors shall be permitted to be bare and shall be electrically connected to the ground bus and grounding electrode conductor.

250.188 Grounding of Systems Supplying Portable or Mobile Equipment. Systems supplying portable or mobile high-voltage equipment, other than substations installed on a temporary basis, shall comply with 250.188(A) through (F).

(A) Portable or Mobile Equipment. Portable or mobile high-voltage equipment shall be supplied from a system having its neutral grounded through an impedance. Where a delta-connected high-voltage system is used to supply portable or mobile equipment, a system neutral shall be derived.

(B) Exposed Non–Current-Carrying Metal Parts. Exposed non–current-carrying metal parts of portable or mobile equipment shall be connected by an equipment grounding conductor to the point at which the system neutral impedance is grounded.

(C) Ground-Fault Current. The voltage developed between the portable or mobile equipment frame and ground by the flow of maximum ground-fault current shall not exceed 100 volts.

(D) Ground-Fault Detection and Relaying. Ground-fault detection and relaying shall be provided to automatically de-energize any high-voltage system component that has developed a ground fault. The continuity of the equipment grounding conductor shall be continuously monitored so as to de-energize automatically the high-voltage circuit to the portable or mobile equipment upon loss of continuity of the equipment grounding conductor.

(E) Isolation. The grounding electrode to which the portable or mobile equipment system neutral impedance is connected shall be isolated from and separated in the ground by at least 6.0 m (20 ft) from any other system or equipment grounding electrode, and there shall be no direct connection between the grounding electrodes, such as buried pipe and fence, and so forth.

(F) Trailing Cable and Couplers. High-voltage trailing cable and couplers for interconnection of portable or mobile equipment shall meet the requirements of Part III of Article 400 for cables and 490.55 for couplers.

250.190 Grounding of Equipment. All non–current-carrying metal parts of fixed, portable, and mobile equipment and associated fences, housings, enclosures, and supporting structures shall be grounded.

Exception: Where isolated from ground and located so as to prevent any person who can make contact with ground from contacting such metal parts when the equipment is energized.

Grounding conductors not an integral part of a cable assembly shall not be smaller than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum.

FPN: See 250.110, Exception No. 2, for pole-mounted distribution apparatus.

ARTICLE 280
Surge Arresters

I. General

280.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements, installation requirements, and connection requirements for surge arresters installed on premises wiring systems.

280.2 Definition.

Surge Arrester. A protective device for limiting surge voltages by discharging or bypassing surge current, and it also prevents continued flow of follow current while remaining capable of repeating these functions.

280.3 Number Required. Where used at a point on a circuit, a surge arrester shall be connected to each ungrounded conductor. A single installation of such surge arresters shall be permitted to protect a number of interconnected circuits, provided that no circuit is exposed to surges while disconnected from the surge arresters.

280.4 Surge Arrester Selection.

(A) Circuits of Less Than 1000 Volts. The rating of the surge arrester shall be equal to or greater than the maximum continuous phase-to-ground power frequency voltage available at the point of application.

Surge arresters installed on circuits of less than 1000 volts shall be listed for the purpose.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-125

(B) Circuits of 1 kV and Over — Silicon Carbide Types. The rating of a silicon carbide-type surge arrester shall be not less than 125 percent of the maximum continuous phase-to-ground voltage available at the point of application.

FPN No. 1: For further information on surge arresters, see ANSI/IEEE C62.1-1989, *Standard for Gapped Silicon-Carbide Surge Arresters for AC Power Circuits*; ANSI/IEEE C62.2-1987, *Guide for the Application of Gapped Silicon-Carbide Surge Arresters for Alternating-Current Systems*; ANSI/IEEE C62.11-1993, *Standard for Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for Alternating-Current Power Circuits*; and ANSI/IEEE C62.22-1991, *Guide for the Application of Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for Alternating-Current Systems*.

FPN No. 2: The selection of a properly rated metal oxide arrester is based on considerations of maximum continuous operating voltage and the magnitude and duration of overvoltages at the arrester location as affected by phase-to-ground faults, system grounding techniques, switching surges, and other causes. See the manufacturer's application rules for selection of the specific arrester to be used at a particular location.

II. Installation

280.11 Location. Surge arresters shall be permitted to be located indoors or outdoors. Surge arresters shall be made inaccessible to unqualified persons, unless listed for installation in accessible locations.

280.12 Routing of Surge Arrester Connections. The conductor used to connect the surge arrester to line or bus and to ground shall not be any longer than necessary and shall avoid unnecessary bends.

III. Connecting Surge Arresters

280.21 Installed at Services of Less Than 1000 Volts. Line and ground connecting conductors shall not be smaller than 14 AWG copper or 12 AWG aluminum. The arrester grounding conductor shall be connected to one of the following:

(1) Grounded service conductor
(2) Grounding electrode conductor
(3) Grounding electrode for the service
(4) Equipment grounding terminal in the service equipment

280.22 Installed on the Load Side Services of Less Than 1000 Volts. Line and ground connecting conductors shall not be smaller than 14 AWG copper or 12 AWG aluminum. A surge arrester shall be permitted to be connected between any two conductors — ungrounded conductor(s), grounded conductor, grounding conductor. The grounded conductor and the grounding conductor shall be interconnected only by the normal operation of the surge arrester during a surge.

280.23 Circuits of 1 kV and Over — Surge-Arrester Conductors. The conductor between the surge arrester and the line and the surge arrester and the grounding connection shall not be smaller than 6 AWG copper or aluminum.

280.24 Circuits of 1 kV and Over — Interconnections. The grounding conductor of a surge arrester protecting a transformer that supplies a secondary distribution system shall be interconnected as specified in 280.24(A), (B), or (C).

(A) Metallic Interconnections. A metallic interconnection shall be made to the secondary grounded circuit conductor or the secondary circuit grounding conductor provided that, in addition to the direct grounding connection at the surge arrester, the following occurs:

(1) The grounded conductor of the secondary has elsewhere a grounding connection to a continuous metal underground water piping system. However, in urban water-pipe areas where there are at least four water-pipe connections on the neutral and not fewer than four such connections in each mile of neutral, the metallic interconnection shall be permitted to be made to the secondary neutral with omission of the direct grounding connection at the surge arrester.
(2) The grounded conductor of the secondary system is a part of a multiground neutral system of which the primary neutral has at least four ground connections in each mile of line in addition to a ground at each service.

(B) Through Spark Gap or Device. Where the surge arrester grounding conductor is not connected as in 280.24(A) or where the secondary is not grounded as in 280.24(A) but is otherwise grounded as in 250.52, an interconnection shall be made through a spark gap or listed device as follows:

(1) For ungrounded or unigrounded primary systems, the spark gap or listed device shall have a 60-Hz breakdown voltage of at least twice the primary circuit voltage but not necessarily more than 10 kV, and there shall be at least one other ground on the grounded conductor of the secondary that is not less than 6.0 m (20 ft) distant from the surge arrester grounding electrode.
(2) For multigrounded neutral primary systems, the spark gap or listed device shall have a 60-Hz breakdown of not more than 3 kV, and there shall be at least one other ground on the grounded conductor of the secondary that is not less than 6.0 m (20 ft) distant from the surge arrester grounding electrode.

(C) By Special Permission. An interconnection of the surge arrester ground and the secondary neutral, other than as provided in 280.24(A) or (B), shall be permitted to be made only by special permission.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-126

280.25 Grounding. Except as indicated in this article, surge arrester grounding connections shall be made as specified in Article 250. Grounding conductors shall not be run in metal enclosures unless bonded to both ends of such enclosure.

ARTICLE 285
Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors: TVSSs

I. General

285.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements, installation requirements, and connection requirements for transient voltage surge suppressors (TVSS) permanently installed on premises wiring systems.

285.2 Definition.

Transient Voltage Surge Suppressor (TVSS). A protective device for limiting transient voltages by diverting or limiting surge current; it also prevents continued flow of follow current while remaining capable of repeating these functions.

285.3 Uses Not Permitted. A TVSS shall not be used in the following:

(1) Circuits exceeding 600 volts
(2) Ungrounded electrical systems as permitted in 250.21
(3) Where the rating of the TVSS is less than the maximum continuous phase-to-ground power frequency voltage available at the point of application

FPN: For further information on TVSSs, see NEMA LS 1-1992, *Standard for Low Voltage Surge Suppression Devices*. The selection of a properly rated TVSS is based on criteria such as maximum continuous operating voltage, the magnitude and duration of overvoltages at the suppressor location as affected by phase-to-ground faults, system grounding techniques, and switching surges.

285.4 Number Required. Where used at a point on a circuit, the TVSS shall be connected to each ungrounded conductor.

285.5 Listing. A TVSS shall be a listed device.

285.6 Short Circuit Current Rating. The TVSS shall be marked with a short circuit current rating and shall not be installed at a point on the system where the available fault current is in excess of that rating. This marking requirement shall not apply to receptacles.

II. Installation

285.11 Location. TVSSs shall be permitted to be located indoors or outdoors and shall be made inaccessible to unqualified persons, unless listed for installation in accessible locations.

285.12 Routing of Connections. The conductors used to connect the the TVSS to the line or bus and to ground shall not be any longer than necessary and shall avoid unnecessary bends.

III. Connecting Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors

285.21 Connection. Where a TVSS is installed, it shall be connected as follows.

(A)) Location.

(1)) Service Supplied Building or Structure. The transient voltage surge suppressor shall be connected on the load side of a service disconnect overcurrent device required in 230.91.

(2)) Feeder Supplied Building or Structure. The transient voltage surge suppressor shall be connected on the load side of the first overcurrent device at the building or structure.

Exception to (1) and (2): Where the TVSS is also listed as a surge arrester, the connection shall be as permitted by Article 280.

(3)) Separately Derived System. The TVSS shall be connected on the load side of the first overcurrent device in a separately derived system.

(B)) Conductor Size. Line and ground connecting conductors shall not be smaller than 14 AWG copper or 12 AWG aluminum.

(C)) Connection Between Conductors. A TVSS shall be permitted to be connected between any two conductors — ungrounded conductor(s), grounded conductor, grounding conductor. The grounded conductor and the grounding conductor shall be interconnected only by the normal operation of the TVSS during a surge.

285.25 Grounding. Grounding conductors shall not be run in metal enclosures unless bonded to both ends of such enclosure.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-127

Chapter 3 Wiring Methods and Materials

ARTICLE 300
Wiring Methods

I. General Requirements

300.1 Scope.

(A) All Wiring Installations. This article covers wiring methods for all wiring installations unless modified by other articles.

(B) Integral Parts of Equipment. The provisions of this article are not intended to apply to the conductors that form an integral part of equipment, such as motors, controllers, motor control centers, or factory assembled control equipment or listed utilization equipment.

(C) Metric Designators and Trade Sizes. Metric designators and trade sizes for conduit, tubing, and associated fittings and accessories shall be as designated in Table 300.1(C).

Table 300.1(C) Metric Designator and Trade Sizes

Metric Designator	Trade Size
12	3/8
16	1/2
21	3/4
27	1
35	1 1/4
41	1 1/2
53	2
63	2 1/2
78	3
91	3 1/2
103	4
129	5
155	6

Note: The metric designators and trade sizes are for identification purposes only and are not actual dimensions.

300.2 Limitations.

(A) Voltage. Wiring methods specified in Chapter 3 shall be used for 600 volts, nominal, or less where not specifically limited in some section of Chapter 3. They shall be permitted for over 600 volts, nominal, where specifically permitted elsewhere in this *Code*.

(B) Temperature. Temperature limitation of conductors shall be in accordance with 310.10.

300.3 Conductors.

(A) Single Conductors. Single conductors specified in Table 310.13 shall only be installed where part of a recognized wiring method of Chapter 3.

(B) Conductors of the Same Circuit. All conductors of the same circuit and, where used, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors and bonding conductors shall be contained within the same raceway, auxiliary gutter, cable tray, cablebus assembly, trench, cable, or cord, unless otherwise permitted in accordance with 300.3(B)(1) through (4).

(1) Paralleled Installations. Conductors shall be permitted to be run in parallel in accordance with the provisions of 310.4. The requirement to run all circuit conductors within the same raceway, auxiliary gutter, cable tray, trench, cable, or cord shall apply separately to each portion of the paralleled installation, and the equipment grounding conductors shall comply with the provisions of 250.122. Parallel runs in cable tray shall comply with the provisions of 392.8(D).

Exception: Conductors installed in nonmetallic raceways run underground shall be permitted to be arranged as isolated phase installations. The raceways shall be installed in close proximity, and the conductors shall comply with the provisions of 300.20(B).

(2) Grounding and Bonding Conductors. Equipment grounding conductors shall be permitted to be installed outside a raceway or cable assembly where in accordance with the provisions of 250.130(C) for certain existing installations or in accordance with 250.134(B), Exception No. 2, for dc circuits. Equipment bonding conductors shall be permitted to be installed on the outside of raceways in accordance with 250.102(E).

(3) Nonferrous Wiring Methods. Conductors in wiring methods with a nonmetallic or other nonmagnetic sheath, where run in different raceways, auxiliary gutters, cable trays, trenches, cables, or cords, shall comply with the provisions of 300.20(B). Conductors in single-conductor Type MI cable with a nonmagnetic sheath shall comply with the provisions of 332.31. Conductors of single-conductor–type MC cable with a nonmagnetic sheath shall comply with the provisions of 330.31, 330.116, and 300.20(B).

(4) Enclosures. Where an auxiliary gutter runs between a column-width panelboard and a pull box, and the pull box includes neutral terminations, the neutral conductors of circuits supplied from the panelboard shall be permitted to originate in the pull box.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-128

(C) Conductors of Different Systems.

(1) 600 Volts, Nominal, or Less. Conductors of circuits rated 600 volts, nominal, or less, ac circuits, and dc circuits shall be permitted to occupy the same equipment wiring enclosure, cable, or raceway. All conductors shall have an insulation rating equal to at least the maximum circuit voltage applied to any conductor within the enclosure, cable, or raceway.

Exception: For solar photovoltaic systems in accordance with 690.4(B).

FPN: See 725.55(A) for Class 2 and Class 3 circuit conductors.

(2) Over 600 Volts, Nominal. Conductors of circuits rated over 600 volts, nominal, shall not occupy the same equipment wiring enclosure, cable, or raceway with conductors of circuits rated 600 volts, nominal, or less unless otherwise permitted in (a) through (e).

(a) Secondary wiring to electric-discharge lamps of 1000 volts or less, if insulated for the secondary voltage involved, shall be permitted to occupy the same luminaire (fixture), sign, or outline lighting enclosure as the branch-circuit conductors.

(b) Primary leads of electric-discharge lamp ballasts, insulated for the primary voltage of the ballast, where contained within the individual wiring enclosure, shall be permitted to occupy the same luminaire (fixture), sign, or outline lighting enclosure as the branch-circuit conductors.

(c) Excitation, control, relay, and ammeter conductors used in connection with any individual motor or starter shall be permitted to occupy the same enclosure as the motor-circuit conductors.

(d) In motors, switchgear and control assemblies, and similar equipment, conductors of different voltage ratings shall be permitted.

(e) In manholes, if the conductors of each system are permanently and effectively separated from the conductors of the other systems and securely fastened to racks, insulators, or other approved supports, conductors of different voltage ratings shall be permitted.

Conductors having nonshielded insulation and operating at different voltage levels shall not occupy the same enclosure, cable, or raceway.

300.4 Protection Against Physical Damage. Where subject to physical damage, conductors shall be adequately protected.

(A) Cables and Raceways Through Wood Members.

(1) Bored Holes. In both exposed and concealed locations, where a cable- or raceway-type wiring method is installed through bored holes in joists, rafters, or wood members, holes shall be bored so that the edge of the hole is not less than 32 mm (1¼ in.) from the nearest edge of the wood member. Where this distance cannot be maintained, the cable or raceway shall be protected from penetration by screws or nails by a steel plate or bushing, at least 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) thick, and of appropriate length and width installed to cover the area of the wiring.

Exception: Steel plates shall not be required to protect rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or electrical metallic tubing.

(2) Notches in Wood. Where there is no objection because of weakening the building structure, in both exposed and concealed locations, cables or raceways shall be permitted to be laid in notches in wood studs, joists, rafters, or other wood members where the cable or raceway at those points is protected against nails or screws by a steel plate at least 1.6 mm ($^{1}/_{16}$ in.) thick installed before the building finish is applied.

Exception: Steel plates shall not be required to protect rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or electrical metallic tubing.

(B) Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cables and Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing Through Metal Framing Members.

(1) Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable. In both exposed and concealed locations where nonmetallic-sheathed cables pass through either factory or field punched, cut, or drilled slots or holes in metal members, the cable shall be protected by listed bushings or listed grommets covering all metal edges that are securely fastened in the opening prior to installation of the cable.

(2) Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable and Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing. Where nails or screws are likely to penetrate nonmetallic-sheathed cable or electrical nonmetallic tubing, a steel sleeve, steel plate, or steel clip not less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) in thickness shall be used to protect the cable or tubing.

(C) Cables Through Spaces Behind Panels Designed to Allow Access. Cables or raceway-type wiring methods, installed behind panels designed to allow access, shall be supported according to their applicable articles.

(D) Cables and Raceways Parallel to Framing Members. In both exposed and concealed locations, where a cable- or raceway-type wiring method is installed parallel to framing members, such as joists, rafters, or studs, the cable or raceway shall be installed and supported so that the nearest outside surface of the cable or raceway is not less than 32 mm (1¼ in.) from the nearest edge of the framing member where nails or screws are likely to penetrate.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-129

Where this distance cannot be maintained, the cable or raceway shall be protected from penetration by nails or screws by a steel plate, sleeve, or equivalent at least 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) thick.

Exception No. 1: Steel plates, sleeves, or the equivalent shall not be required to protect rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or electrical metallic tubing.

Exception No. 2: For concealed work in finished buildings, or finished panels for prefabricated buildings where such supporting is impracticable, it shall be permissible to fish the cables between access points.

(E) Cables and Raceways Installed in Shallow Grooves. Cable- or raceway-type wiring methods installed in a groove, to be covered by wallboard, siding, paneling, carpeting, or similar finish, shall be protected by 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) thick steel plate, sleeve, or equivalent or by not less than 32 mm (1¼ in.) free space for the full length of the groove in which the cable or raceway is installed.

Exception: Steel plates, sleeves, or the equivalent shall not be required to protect rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or electrical metallic tubing.

(F) Insulated Fittings. Where raceways containing ungrounded conductors 4 AWG or larger enter a cabinet, box enclosure, or raceway, the conductors shall be protected by a substantial fitting providing a smoothly rounded insulating surface, unless the conductors are separated from the fitting or raceway by substantial insulating material that is securely fastened in place.

Exception: Where threaded hubs or bosses that are an integral part of a cabinet, box enclosure, or raceway provide a smoothly rounded or flared entry for conductors.

Conduit bushings constructed wholly of insulating material shall not be used to secure a fitting or raceway. The insulating fitting or insulating material shall have a temperature rating not less than the insulation temperature rating of the installed conductors.

300.5 Underground Installations.

(A) Minimum Cover Requirements. Direct-buried cable or conduit or other raceways shall be installed to meet the minimum cover requirements of Table 300.5.

(B) Grounding. All underground installations shall be grounded and bonded in accordance with Article 250.

(C) Underground Cables Under Buildings. Underground cable installed under a building shall be in a raceway that is extended beyond the outside walls of the building.

(D) Protection from Damage. Direct-buried conductors and cables shall be protected from damage in accordance with (1) through (5).

(1) Emerging from Grade. Direct-buried conductors and enclosures emerging from grade shall be protected by enclosures or raceways extending from the minimum cover distance required by 300.5(A) below grade to a point at least 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished grade. In no case shall the protection be required to exceed 450 mm (18 in.) below finished grade.

(2) Conductors Entering Buildings. Conductors entering a building shall be protected to the point of entrance.

(3) Service Conductors. Underground service conductors that are not encased in concrete and that are buried 450 mm (18 in.) or more below grade shall have their location identified by a warning ribbon that is placed in the trench at least 300 mm (12 in.) above the underground installation.

(4) Enclosure or Raceway Damage. Where the enclosure or raceway is subject to physical damage, the conductors shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, Schedule 80 rigid nonmetallic conduit, or equivalent.

(5) Listing. Cables and insulated conductors installed in enclosures or raceways in underground installations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

(E) Splices and Taps. Direct-buried conductors or cables shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped without the use of splice boxes. The splices or taps shall be made in accordance with 110.14(B).

(F) Backfill. Backfill that contains large rocks, paving materials, cinders, large or sharply angular substances, or corrosive material shall not be placed in an excavation where materials may damage raceways, cables, or other substructures or prevent adequate compaction of fill or contribute to corrosion of raceways, cables, or other substructures.

Where necessary to prevent physical damage to the raceway or cable, protection shall be provided in the form of granular or selected material, suitable running boards, suitable sleeves, or other approved means.

(G) Raceway Seals. Conduits or raceways through which moisture may contact energized live parts shall be sealed or plugged at either or both ends.

FPN: Presence of hazardous gases or vapors may also necessitate sealing of underground conduits or raceways entering buildings.

(H) Bushing. A bushing, or terminal fitting, with an integral bushed opening shall be used at the end of a conduit or other raceway that terminates underground where the con-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-130

Table 300.5 Minimum Cover Requirements, 0 to 600 Volts, Nominal, Burial in Millimeters (Inches)

Location of Wiring Method or Circuit	Type of Wiring Method or Circuit									
	Column 1 Direct Burial Cables or Conductors		Column 2 Rigid Metal Conduit or Intermediate Metal Conduit		Column 3 Nonmetallic Raceways Listed for Direct Burial Without Concrete Encasement or Other Approved Raceways		Column 4 Residential Branch Circuits Rated 120 Volts or Less with GFCI Protection and Maximum Overcurrent Protection of 20 Amperes		Column 5 Circuits for Control of Irrigation and Landscape Lighting Limited to Not More Than 30 Volts and Installed with Type UF or in Other Identified Cable or Raceway	
	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.
All locations not specified below	600	24	150	6	450	18	300	12	150	6
In trench below 50-mm (2-in.) thick concrete or equivalent	450	18	150	6	300	12	150	6	150	6
Under a building	0 (in raceway only)	0	0	0	0	0	0 (in raceway only)	0	0 (in raceway only)	0
Under minimum of 102-mm (4-in.) thick concrete exterior slab with no vehicular traffic and the slab extending not less than 152 mm (6 in.) beyond the underground installation	450	18	100	4	100	4	150 (direct burial) 100 (in raceway)	6 4	150	6
Under streets, highways, roads, alleys, driveways, and parking lots	600	24	600	24	600	24	600	24	600	24
One- and two-family dwelling driveways and outdoor parking areas, and used only for dwelling-related purposes	450	18	450	18	450	18	300	12	450	18
In or under airport runways, including adjacent areas where trespassing prohibited	450	18	450	18	450	18	450	18	450	18

Notes:

1. Cover is defined as the shortest distance in millimeters (inches) measured between a point on the top surface of any direct-buried conductor, cable, conduit, or other raceway and the top surface of finished grade, concrete, or similar cover.
2. Raceways approved for burial only where concrete encased shall require concrete envelope not less than 50 mm (2 in.) thick.
3. Lesser depths shall be permitted where cables and conductors rise for terminations or splices or where access is otherwise required.
4. Where one of the wiring method types listed in Columns 1–3 is used for one of the circuit types in Columns 4 and 5, the shallower depth of burial shall be permitted.
5. Where solid rock prevents compliance with the cover depths specified in this table, the wiring shall be installed in metal or nonmetallic raceway permitted for direct burial. The raceways shall be covered by a minimum of 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete extending down to rock.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-131

ductors or cables emerge as a direct burial wiring method. A seal incorporating the physical protection characteristics of a bushing shall be permitted to be used in lieu of a bushing.

(I) Conductors of the Same Circuit. All conductors of the same circuit and, where used, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors shall be installed in the same raceway or cable or shall be installed in close proximity in the same trench.

Exception No. 1: Conductors in parallel in raceways or cables shall be permitted, but each raceway or cable shall contain all conductors of the same circuit including grounding conductors.

Exception No. 2: Isolated phase, polarity, grounded conductor, and equipment grounding and bonding conductor installations shall be permitted in nonmetallic raceways or cables with a nonmetallic covering or nonmagnetic sheath in close proximity where conductors are paralleled as permitted in 310.4, and where the conditions of 300.20(B) are met.

(J) Ground Movement. Where direct-buried conductors, raceways, or cables are subject to movement by settlement or frost, direct-buried conductors, raceways, or cables shall be arranged to prevent damage to the enclosed conductors or to equipment connected to the raceways.

FPN: This section recognizes "S" loops in underground direct burial to raceway transitions, expansion fittings in raceway risers to fixed equipment, and, generally, the provision of flexible connections to equipment subject to settlement or frost heaves.

(K) Directional Boring. Cables or raceways installed using directional boring equipment shall be approved for the purpose.

300.6 Protection Against Corrosion. Metal raceways, cable trays, cablebus, auxiliary gutters, cable armor, boxes, cable sheathing, cabinets, elbows, couplings, fittings, supports, and support hardware shall be of materials suitable for the environment in which they are to be installed.

(A) General. Ferrous raceways, cable trays, cablebus, auxiliary gutters, cable armor, boxes, cable sheathing, cabinets, metal elbows, couplings, fittings, supports, and support hardware shall be suitably protected against corrosion inside and outside (except threads at joints) by a coating of approved corrosion-resistant material such as zinc, cadmium, or enamel. Where protected from corrosion solely by enamel, they shall not be used outdoors or in wet locations as described in 300.6(C). Where boxes or cabinets have an approved system of organic coatings and are marked "Raintight," "Rainproof," or "Outdoor Type," they shall be permitted outdoors. Where corrosion protection is necessary and the conduit is threaded in the field, the threads shall be coated with an approved electrically conductive, corrosion-resistant compound.

(B) In Concrete or in Direct Contact with the Earth. Ferrous or nonferrous metal raceways, cable armor, boxes, cable sheathing, cabinets, elbows, couplings, fittings, supports, and support hardware shall be permitted to be installed in concrete or in direct contact with the earth, or in areas subject to severe corrosive influences where made of material judged suitable for the condition, or where provided with corrosion protection approved for the condition.

(C) Indoor Wet Locations. In portions of dairy processing facilities, laundries, canneries, and other indoor wet locations, and in locations where walls are frequently washed or where there are surfaces of absorbent materials, such as damp paper or wood, the entire wiring system, where installed exposed, including all boxes, fittings, conduits, and cable used therewith, shall be mounted so that there is at least a 6-mm (¼-in.) airspace between it and the wall or supporting surface.

Exception: Nonmetallic raceways, boxes, and fittings shall be permitted to be installed without the airspace on a concrete, masonry, tile, or similar surface.

FPN: In general, areas where acids and alkali chemicals are handled and stored may present such corrosive conditions, particularly when wet or damp. Severe corrosive conditions may also be present in portions of meatpacking plants, tanneries, glue houses, and some stables; in installations immediately adjacent to a seashore and swimming pool areas; in areas where chemical deicers are used; and in storage cellars or rooms for hides, casings, fertilizer, salt, and bulk chemicals.

300.7 Raceways Exposed to Different Temperatures.

(A) Sealing. Where portions of a cable, raceway, or sleeve are known to be subjected to different temperatures and where condensation is known to be a problem, as in cold storage areas of buildings or where passing from the interior to the exterior of a building, the raceway or sleeve shall be filled with an approved material to prevent the circulation of warm air to a colder section of the raceway or sleeve. An explosionproof seal shall not be required for this purpose.

(B) Expansion Fittings. Raceways shall be provided with expansion fittings where necessary to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction.

FPN: Table 352.44(A) provides the expansion information for polyvinyl chloride (PVC). A nominal number for steel conduit can be determined by multiplying the expansion length in this table by 0.20. The coefficient of expansion for steel electrical metallic tubing, intermediate metal conduit, and rigid conduit is 11.70×10^{-6}(0.0000117 mm per mm of

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-132

conduit for each °C in temperature change) [6.50 × 10^{-6} (0.0000065 in. per inch of conduit for each °F in temperature change)].

300.8 Installation of Conductors with Other Systems. Raceways or cable trays containing electric conductors shall not contain any pipe, tube, or equal for steam, water, air, gas, drainage, or any service other than electrical.

300.10 Electrical Continuity of Metal Raceways and Enclosures. Metal raceways, cable armor, and other metal enclosures for conductors shall be metallically joined together into a continuous electric conductor and shall be connected to all boxes, fittings, and cabinets so as to provide effective electrical continuity. Unless specifically permitted elsewhere in this *Code*, raceways and cable assemblies shall be mechanically secured to boxes, fittings, cabinets, and other enclosures.

Exception No. 1: Short sections of raceways used to provide support or protection of cable assemblies from physical damage shall not be required to be made electrically continuous.

Exception No. 2: Equipment enclosures to be isolated, as permitted by 250.96(B), shall not be required to be metallically joined to the metal raceway.

300.11 Securing and Supporting.

(A) Secured in Place. Raceways, cable assemblies, boxes, cabinets, and fittings shall be securely fastened in place. Support wires that do not provide secure support shall not be permitted as the sole support. Support wires and associated fittings that provide secure support and that are installed in addition to the ceiling grid support wires shall be permitted as the sole support. Where independent support wires are used, they shall be secured at both ends. Cables and raceways shall not be supported by ceiling grids.

(1) Fire-Rated Assemblies. Wiring located within the cavity of a fire-rated floor–ceiling or roof–ceiling assembly shall not be secured to, or supported by, the ceiling assembly, including the ceiling support wires. An independent means of secure support shall be provided. Where independent support wires are used, they shall be distinguishable by color, tagging, or other effective means from those that are part of the fire-rated design.

Exception: The ceiling support system shall be permitted to support wiring and equipment that have been tested as part of the fire-rated assembly.

FPN: One method of determining fire rating is testing in accordance with NFPA 251-1999, *Standard Methods of Tests of Fire Endurance of Building Construction and Materials.*

(2) Non–Fire-Rated Assemblies. Wiring located within the cavity of a non–fire-rated floor–ceiling or roof–ceiling assembly shall not be secured to, or supported by, the ceiling assembly, including the ceiling support wires. An independent means of secure support shall be provided.

Exception: The ceiling support system shall be permitted to support branch-circuit wiring and associated equipment where installed in accordance with the ceiling system manufacturer's instructions.

(B) Raceways Used as Means of Support. Raceways shall only be used as a means of support for other raceways, cables, or nonelectric equipment under the following conditions:

(1) Where the raceway or means of support is identified for the purpose; or
(2) Where the raceway contains power supply conductors for electrically controlled equipment and is used to support Class 2 circuit conductors or cables that are solely for the purpose of connection to the equipment control circuits; or
(3) Where the raceway is used to support boxes or conduit bodies in accordance with 314.23 or to support luminaires (fixtures) in accordance with 410.16(F)

(C) Cables Not Used as Means of Support. Cable wiring methods shall not be used as a means of support for other cables, raceways, or nonelectrical equipment.

300.12 Mechanical Continuity — Raceways and Cables. Metal or nonmetallic raceways, cable armors, and cable sheaths shall be continuous between cabinets, boxes, fittings, or other enclosures or outlets.

Exception: Short sections of raceways used to provide support or protection of cable assemblies from physical damage shall not be required to be mechanically continuous.

300.13 Mechanical and Electrical Continuity — Conductors.

(A) General. Conductors in raceways shall be continuous between outlets, boxes, devices, and so forth. There shall be no splice or tap within a raceway unless permitted by 300.15; 368.8(A); 376.56; 378.56; 384.56; 386.56; 388.56; or 390.6.

(B) Device Removal. In multiwire branch circuits, the continuity of a grounded conductor shall not depend on device connections such as lampholders, receptacles, and so forth, where the removal of such devices would interrupt the continuity.

300.14 Length of Free Conductors at Outlets, Junctions, and Switch Points. At least 150 mm (6 in.) of free

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-133

conductor, measured from the point in the box where it emerges from its raceway or cable sheath, shall be left at each outlet, junction, and switch point for splices or the connection of luminaires (fixtures) or devices. Where the opening to an outlet, junction, or switch point is less than 200 mm (8 in.) in any dimension, each conductor shall be long enough to extend at least 75 mm (3 in.) outside the opening.

Exception: Conductors that are not spliced or terminated at the outlet, junction, or switch point shall not be required to comply with 300.14.

300.15 Boxes, Conduit Bodies, or Fittings — Where Required. A box shall be installed at each outlet and switch point for concealed knob-and-tube wiring.

Fittings and connectors shall be used only with the specific wiring methods for which they are designed and listed.

Where the wiring method is conduit, tubing, Type AC cable, Type MC cable, Type MI cable, nonmetallic-sheathed cable, or other cables, a box or conduit body complying with Article 314 shall be installed at each conductor splice point, outlet point, switch point, junction point, termination point, or pull point, unless otherwise permitted in 300.15(A) through (M).

(A) Wiring Methods with Interior Access. A box or conduit body shall not be required for each splice, junction, switch, pull, termination, or outlet points in wiring methods with removable covers, such as wireways, multioutlet assemblies, auxiliary gutters, and surface raceways. The covers shall be accessible after installation.

(B) Equipment. An integral junction box or wiring compartment as part of approved equipment shall be permitted in lieu of a box.

(C) Protection. A box or conduit body shall not be required where cables enter or exit from conduit or tubing that is used to provide cable support or protection against physical damage. A fitting shall be provided on the end(s) of the conduit or tubing to protect the cable from abrasion.

(D) Type MI Cable. A box or conduit body shall not be required where accessible fittings are used for straight-through splices in mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cable.

(E) Integral Enclosure. A wiring device with integral enclosure identified for the use, having brackets that securely fasten the device to walls or ceilings of conventional on-site frame construction, for use with nonmetallic-sheathed cable, shall be permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body.

FPN: See 334.30(C); 545.10; 550.15(I); 551.47(E), Exception No. 1; and 552.48(E), Exception No. 1.

(F) Fitting. A fitting identified for the use shall be permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body where conductors are not spliced or terminated within the fitting. The fitting shall be accessible after installation.

(G) Direct-Buried Conductors. As permitted in 300.5(E), a box or conduit body shall not be required for splices and taps in direct-buried conductors and cables.

(H) Insulated Devices. As permitted in 334.40(B), a box or conduit body shall not be required for insulated devices supplied by nonmetallic-sheathed cable.

(I) Enclosures. A box or conduit body shall not be required where a splice, switch, terminal, or pull point is in a cabinet or cutout box, in an enclosure for a switch or overcurrent device as permitted in 312.8, in a motor controller as permitted in 430.10(A), or in a motor control center.

(J) Luminaires (Fixtures). A box or conduit body shall not be required where a luminaire (fixture) is used as a raceway as permitted in 410.31 and 410.32.

(K) Embedded. A box or conduit body shall not be required for splices where conductors are embedded as permitted in 424.40, 424.41(D), 426.22(B), 426.24(A), and 427.19(A).

(L) Manholes. Where accessible only to qualified persons, a box or conduit body shall not be required for conductors in manholes, except where connecting to electrical equipment. The installation shall comply with the provisions of Part IV of Article 314.

(M) Closed Loop. A box shall not be required with a closed-loop power distribution system where a device identified and listed as suitable for installation without a box is used.

300.16 Raceway or Cable to Open or Concealed Wiring.

(A) Box or Fitting. A box or terminal fitting having a separately bushed hole for each conductor shall be used wherever a change is made from conduit, electrical metallic tubing, electrical nonmetallic tubing, nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type AC cable, Type MC cable, or mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable and surface raceway wiring to open wiring or to concealed knob-and-tube wiring. A fitting used for this purpose shall contain no taps or splices and shall not be used at luminaire (fixture) outlets.

(B) Bushing. A bushing shall be permitted in lieu of a box or terminal where the conductors emerge from a raceway and enter or terminate at equipment, such as open switchboards, unenclosed control equipment, or similar equipment. The bushing shall be of the insulating type for other than lead-sheathed conductors.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-134

300.17 Number and Size of Conductors in Raceway. The number and size of conductors in any raceway shall not be more than will permit dissipation of the heat and ready installation or withdrawal of the conductors without damage to the conductors or to their insulation.

FPN: See the following sections of this *Code*: intermediate metal conduit, 342.22; rigid metal conduit, 344.22; flexible metal conduit, 348.22; liquidtight flexible metal conduit, 350.22; rigid nonmetallic conduit, 352.22; liquidtight nonmetallic flexible conduit, 356.22; electrical metallic tubing, 358.22; flexible metallic tubing, 360.22; electrical nonmetallic tubing, 362.22; cellular concrete floor raceways, 372.11; cellular metal floor raceways, 374.5; metal wireways, 376.22; nonmetallic wireways, 378.22; surface metal raceways, 386.22; surface nonmetallic raceways 388.22; underfloor raceways, 390.5; fixture wire, 402.7; theaters, 520.6; signs, 600.31(C); elevators, 620.33; audio signal processing, amplification, and reproduction equipment, 640.23(A) and 640.24; Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 circuits, Article 725; fire alarm circuits, Article 760; and optical fiber cables and raceways, Article 770.

300.18 Raceway Installations.

(A) Complete Runs. Raceways, other than busways or exposed raceways having hinged or removable covers, shall be installed complete between outlet, junction, or splicing points prior to the installation of conductors. Where required to facilitate the installation of utilization equipment, the raceway shall be permitted to be initially installed without a terminating connection at the equipment. Prewired raceway assemblies shall be permitted only where specifically permitted in this *Code* for the applicable wiring method.

(B) Welding. Metal raceways shall not be supported, terminated, or connected by welding to the raceway unless specifically designed to be or otherwise specifically permitted to be in this *Code*.

300.19 Supporting Conductors in Vertical Raceways.

(A) Spacing Intervals — Maximum. Conductors in vertical raceways shall be supported if the vertical rise exceeds the values in Table 300.19(A). One cable support shall be provided at the top of the vertical raceway or as close to the top as practical. Intermediate supports shall be provided as necessary to limit supported conductor lengths to not greater than those values specified in Table 300.19(A).

Exception: Steel wire armor cable shall be supported at the top of the riser with a cable support that clamps the steel wire armor. A safety device shall be permitted at the lower end of the riser to hold the cable in the event there is slippage of the cable in the wire-armored cable support. Additional wedge-type supports shall be permitted to relieve the strain on the equipment terminals caused by expansion of the cable under load.

(B) Support Methods. One of the following methods of support shall be used.

(1) By clamping devices constructed of or employing insulating wedges inserted in the ends of the raceways. Where clamping of insulation does not adequately support the cable, the conductor also shall be clamped.
(2) By inserting boxes at the required intervals in which insulating supports are installed and secured in a satisfactory manner to withstand the weight of the conductors attached thereto, the boxes being provided with covers.
(3) In junction boxes, by deflecting the cables not less than 90 degrees and carrying them horizontally to a distance not less than twice the diameter of the cable, the cables being carried on two or more insulating supports and additionally secured thereto by tie wires if desired. Where this method is used, cables shall be supported at intervals not greater than 20 percent of those mentioned in the preceding tabulation.
(4) By a method of equal effectiveness.

300.20 Induced Currents in Metal Enclosures or Metal Raceways.

(A) Conductors Grouped Together. Where conductors carrying alternating current are installed in metal enclo-

Table 300.19(A) Spacings for Conductor Supports

		Conductors			
		Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum		Copper	
Size of Wire	Support of Conductors in Vertical Raceways	m	ft	m	ft
18 AWG through 8 AWG	Not greater than	30	100	30	100
6 AWG through 1/0 AWG	Not greater than	60	200	30	100
2/0 AWG through 4/0 AWG	Not greater than	55	180	25	80
Over 4/0 AWG through 350 kcmil	Not greater than	41	135	18	60
Over 350 kcmil through 500 kcmil	Not greater than	36	120	15	50
Over 500 kcmil through 750 kcmil	Not greater than	28	95	12	40
Over 750 kcmil	Not greater than	26	85	11	35

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-135

sures or metal raceways, they shall be arranged so as to avoid heating the surrounding metal by induction. To accomplish this, all phase conductors and, where used, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors shall be grouped together.

Exception No. 1: Equipment grounding conductors for certain existing installations shall be permitted to be installed separate from their associated circuit conductors where run in accordance with the provisions of 250.130(C).

Exception No. 2: A single conductor shall be permitted to be installed in a ferromagnetic enclosure and used for skin-effect heating in accordance with the provisions of 426.42 and 427.47.

(B) Individual Conductors. Where a single conductor carrying alternating current passes through metal with magnetic properties, the inductive effect shall be minimized by (1) cutting slots in the metal between the individual holes through which the individual conductors pass or (2) passing all the conductors in the circuit through an insulating wall sufficiently large for all of the conductors of the circuit.

Exception: In the case of circuits supplying vacuum or electric-discharge lighting systems or signs or X-ray apparatus, the currents carried by the conductors are so small that the inductive heating effect can be ignored where these conductors are placed in metal enclosures or pass through metal.

FPN: Because aluminum is not a magnetic metal, there will be no heating due to hysteresis; however, induced currents will be present. They will not be of sufficient magnitude to require grouping of conductors or special treatment in passing conductors through aluminum wall sections.

300.21 Spread of Fire or Products of Combustion. Electrical installations in hollow spaces, vertical shafts, and ventilation or air-handling ducts shall be made so that the possible spread of fire or products of combustion will not be substantially increased. Openings around electrical penetrations through fire-resistant-rated walls, partitions, floors, or ceilings shall be firestopped using approved methods to maintain the fire resistance rating.

FPN: Directories of electrical construction materials published by qualified testing laboratories contain many listing installation restrictions necessary to maintain the fire-resistive rating of assemblies where penetrations or openings are made. Building codes also contain restrictions on membrane penetrations on opposite sides of a fire-resistance–rated wall assembly. An example is the 600-mm (24-in.) minimum horizontal separation that usually applies between boxes installed on opposite sides of the wall. Assistance in complying with 300.21 can be found in building codes, fire resistance directories, and product listings.

300.22 Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces. The provisions of this section apply to the installation and uses of electric wiring and equipment in ducts, plenums, and other air-handling spaces.

FPN: See Article 424, Part VI, for duct heaters.

(A) Ducts for Dust, Loose Stock, or Vapor Removal. No wiring systems of any type shall be installed in ducts used to transport dust, loose stock, or flammable vapors. No wiring system of any type shall be installed in any duct, or shaft containing only such ducts, used for vapor removal or for ventilation of commercial-type cooking equipment.

(B) Ducts or Plenums Used for Environmental Air. Only wiring methods consisting of Type MI cable, Type MC cable employing a smooth or corrugated impervious metal sheath without an overall nonmetallic covering, electrical metallic tubing, flexible metallic tubing, intermediate metal conduit, or rigid metal conduit without an overall nonmetallic covering shall be installed in ducts or plenums specifically fabricated to transport environmental air. Flexible metal conduit and liquidtight flexible metal conduit shall be permitted, in lengths not to exceed 1.2 m (4 ft), to connect physically adjustable equipment and devices permitted to be in these ducts and plenum chambers. The connectors used with flexible metal conduit shall effectively close any openings in the connection. Equipment and devices shall be permitted within such ducts or plenum chambers only if necessary for their direct action upon, or sensing of, the contained air. Where equipment or devices are installed and illumination is necessary to facilitate maintenance and repair, enclosed gasketed-type luminaires (fixtures) shall be permitted.

(C) Other Space Used for Environmental Air. This section applies to space used for environmental air-handling purposes other than ducts and plenums as specified in 300.22(A) and (B). It does not include habitable rooms or areas of buildings, the prime purpose of which is not air handling.

FPN: The space over a hung ceiling used for environmental air-handling purposes is an example of the type of other space to which this section applies.

Exception: This section shall not apply to the joist or stud spaces of dwelling units where the wiring passes through such spaces perpendicular to the long dimension of such spaces.

(1) Wiring Methods. The wiring methods for such other space shall be limited to totally enclosed, nonventilated, insulated busway having no provisions for plug-in connections, Type MI cable, Type MC cable without an overall nonmetallic covering, Type AC cable, or other factory-assembled multiconductor control or power cable that is specifically listed for the use, or listed prefabricated cable assemblies of metallic manufactured wiring systems with-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-136

out nonmetallic sheath. Other types of cables and conductors shall be installed in electrical metallic tubing, flexible metallic tubing, intermediate metal conduit, rigid metal conduit without an overall nonmetallic covering, flexible metal conduit, or, where accessible, surface metal raceway or metal wireway with metal covers or solid bottom metal cable tray with solid metal covers.

(2) Equipment. Electrical equipment with a metal enclosure, or with a nonmetallic enclosure listed for the use and having adequate fire-resistant and low-smoke-producing characteristics, and associated wiring material suitable for the ambient temperature shall be permitted to be installed in such other space unless prohibited elsewhere in this *Code*.

Exception: Integral fan systems shall be permitted where specifically identified for such use.

(D) Information Technology Equipment. Electric wiring in air-handling areas beneath raised floors for information technology equipment shall be permitted in accordance with Article 645.

300.23 Panels Designed to Allow Access. Cables, raceways, and equipment installed behind panels designed to allow access, including suspended ceiling panels, shall be arranged and secured so as to allow the removal of panels and access to the equipment.

II. Requirements for Over 600 Volts, Nominal

300.31 Covers Required. Suitable covers shall be installed on all boxes, fittings, and similar enclosures to prevent accidental contact with energized parts or physical damage to parts or insulation.

300.32 Conductors of Different Systems. See 300.3(C)(2).

300.34 Conductor Bending Radius. The conductor shall not be bent to a radius less than 8 times the overall diameter for nonshielded conductors or 12 times the diameter for shielded or lead-covered conductors during or after installation. For multiconductor or multiplexed single conductor cables having individually shielded conductors, the minimum bending radius is 12 times the diameter of the individually shielded conductors or 7 times the overall diameter, whichever is greater.

300.35 Protection Against Induction Heating. Metallic raceways and associated conductors shall be arranged so as to avoid heating of the raceway in accordance with the applicable provisions of 300.20.

300.37 Aboveground Wiring Methods. Aboveground conductors shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, in intermediate metal conduit, in electrical metallic tubing, in rigid nonmetallic conduit, in cable trays, as busways, as cablebus, in other identified raceways, or as open runs of metal-clad cable suitable for the use and purpose. In locations accessible to qualified persons only, open runs of Type MV cables, bare conductors, and bare busbars shall also be permitted. Busbars shall be permitted to be either copper or aluminum.

300.39 Braid-Covered Insulated Conductors — Open Installation. Open runs of braid-covered insulated conductors shall have a flame-retardant braid. If the conductors used do not have this protection, a flame-retardant saturant shall be applied to the braid covering after installation. This treated braid covering shall be stripped back a safe distance at conductor terminals, according to the operating voltage. This distance shall not be less than 25 mm (1 in.) for each kilovolt of the conductor-to-ground voltage of the circuit, where practicable.

300.40 Insulation Shielding. Metallic and semiconducting insulation shielding components of shielded cables shall be removed for a distance dependent on the circuit voltage and insulation. Stress reduction means shall be provided at all terminations of factory-applied shielding.

Metallic shielding components such as tapes, wires, or braids, or combinations thereof, and their associated conducting or semiconducting components shall be grounded.

300.42 Moisture or Mechanical Protection for Metal-Sheathed Cables. Where cable conductors emerge from a metal sheath and where protection against moisture or physical damage is necessary, the insulation of the conductors shall be protected by a cable sheath terminating device.

300.50 Underground Installations.

(A) General. Underground conductors shall be identified for the voltage and conditions under which they are installed. Direct burial cables shall comply with the provisions of 310.7. Underground cables shall be installed in accordance with 300.50(A)(1) or (2), and the installation shall meet the depth requirements of Table 300.50.

Exception No. 1: Areas subject to vehicular traffic, such as thoroughfares or commercial parking areas, shall have a minimum cover of 600 mm (24 in.).

Exception No. 2: The minimum cover requirements for other than rigid metal conduit and intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to be reduced 150 mm (6 in.) for each 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete or equivalent protection placed in the trench over the underground installation.

Exception No. 3: The minimum cover requirements shall not apply to conduits or other raceways that are located

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-137

Table 300.50 Minimum Cover Requirements

Circuit Voltage	Direct-Buried Cables		Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit Approved for Direct Burial*		Rigid Metal Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit	
	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.
Over 600 V through 22 kV	750	30	450	18	150	6
Over 22 kV through 40 kV	900	36	600	24	150	6
Over 40 kV	1000	42	750	30	150	6

Note: *Cover* is defined as the shortest distance in millimeters measured between a point on the top surface of any direct-buried conductor, cable, conduit, or other raceway and the top surface of finished grade, concrete, or similar cover.

*Listed by a qualified testing agency as suitable for direct burial without encasement. All other nonmetallic systems shall require 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete or equivalent above conduit in addition to above depth.

under a building or exterior concrete slab not less than 100 mm (4 in.) in thickness and extending not less than 150 mm (6 in.) beyond the underground installation. A warning ribbon or other effective means suitable for the conditions shall be placed above the underground installation.

Exception No. 4: Lesser depths shall be permitted where cables and conductors rise for terminations or splices or where access is otherwise required.

Exception No. 5: In airport runways, including adjacent defined areas where trespass is prohibited, cable shall be permitted to be buried not less than 450 mm (18 in.) deep and without raceways, concrete enclosement, or equivalent.

Exception No. 6: Raceways installed in solid rock shall be permitted to be buried at lesser depth where covered by 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete, which shall be permitted to extend to the rock surface.

(1) Shielded Cables and Nonshielded Cables in Metal-Sheathed Cable Assemblies. Underground cables, including nonshielded, Type MC and moisture-impervious metal sheath cables, shall have those sheaths grounded through an effective grounding path meeting the requirements of 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4). They shall be direct buried or installed in raceways identified for the use.

(2) Other Nonshielded Cables. Other nonshielded cables not covered in 300.50(A)(1) shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or rigid nonmetallic conduit encased in not less than 75 mm (3 in.) of concrete.

(B) Protection from Damage. Conductors emerging from the ground shall be enclosed in listed raceways. Raceways installed on poles shall be of rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, PVC Schedule 80, or equivalent, extending from the minimum cover depth specified in Table 300.50 to a point 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished grade. Conductors entering a building shall be protected by an approved enclosure or raceway from the minimum cover depth to the point of entrance. Where direct-buried conductors, raceways, or cables are subject to movement by settlement or frost, they shall be installed to prevent damage to the enclosed conductors or to the equipment connected to the raceways. Metallic enclosures shall be grounded.

(C) Splices. Direct burial cables shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped without the use of splice boxes, provided they are installed using materials suitable for the application. The taps and splices shall be watertight and protected from mechanical damage. Where cables are shielded, the shielding shall be continuous across the splice or tap.

Exception: At splices of an engineered cabling system, metallic shields of direct-buried single-conductor cables with maintained spacing between phases shall be permitted to be interrupted and overlapped. Where shields are interrupted and overlapped, each shield section shall be grounded at one point.

(D) Backfill. Backfill containing large rocks, paving materials, cinders, large or sharply angular substances, or corrosive materials shall not be placed in an excavation where materials can damage raceways, cables, or other substructures, or prevent adequate compaction of fill, or contribute to corrosion of raceways, cables, or other substructures.

Protection in the form of granular or selected material or suitable sleeves shall be provided to prevent physical damage to the raceway or cable.

(E) Raceway Seal. Where a raceway enters from an underground system, the end within the building shall be sealed with an identified compound so as to prevent the entrance of moisture or gases, or it shall be so arranged to prevent moisture from contacting live parts.

ARTICLE 310
Conductors for General Wiring

310.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements for conductors and their type designations, insulations, markings, mechanical strengths, ampacity ratings, and uses. These requirements do not apply to conductors that form an integral part of equipment, such as motors, motor control-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-138

lers, and similar equipment, or to conductors specifically provided for elsewhere in this *Code*.

FPN: For flexible cords and cables, see Article 400. For fixture wires, see Article 402.

310.2 Conductors.

(A) Insulated. Conductors shall be insulated.

Exception: Where covered or bare conductors are specifically permitted elsewhere in this Code.

FPN: See 250.184 for insulation of neutral conductors of a solidly grounded high-voltage system.

(B) Conductor Material. Conductors in this article shall be of aluminum, copper-clad aluminum, or copper unless otherwise specified.

310.3 Stranded Conductors. Where installed in raceways, conductors of size 8 AWG and larger shall be stranded.

Exception: As permitted or required elsewhere in this Code.

310.4 Conductors in Parallel. Aluminum, copper-clad aluminum, or copper conductors of size 1/0 AWG and larger, comprising each phase, neutral, or grounded circuit conductor, shall be permitted to be connected in parallel (electrically joined at both ends to form a single conductor).

Exception No. 1: As permitted in 620.12(A)(1) .

Exception No. 2: Conductors in sizes smaller than 1/0 AWG shall be permitted to be run in parallel to supply control power to indicating instruments, contactors, relays, solenoids, and similar control devices provided

(a) They are contained within the same raceway or cable,
(b) The ampacity of each individual conductor is sufficient to carry the entire load current shared by the parallel conductors, and
(c) The overcurrent protection is such that the ampacity of each individual conductor will not be exceeded if one or more of the parallel conductors become inadvertently disconnected.

Exception No. 3: Conductors in sizes smaller than 1/0 AWG shall be permitted to be run in parallel for frequencies of 360 Hz and higher where conditions (a), (b), and (c) of Exception No. 2 are met.

Exception No. 4: Under engineering supervision, grounded neutral conductors in sizes 2 AWG and larger shall be permitted to be run in parallel for existing installations.

FPN: Exception No. 4 can be used to alleviate overheating of neutral conductors in existing installations due to high content of triplen harmonic currents.

The paralleled conductors in each phase, neutral, or grounded circuit conductor shall

(1) Be the same length
(2) Have the same conductor material
(3) Be the same size in circular mil area
(4) Have the same insulation type
(5) Be terminated in the same manner

Where run in separate raceways or cables, the raceways or cables shall have the same physical characteristics. Conductors of one phase, neutral, or grounded circuit conductor shall not be required to have the same physical characteristics as those of another phase, neutral, or grounded circuit conductor to achieve balance.

FPN: Differences in inductive reactance and unequal division of current can be minimized by choice of materials, methods of construction, and orientation of conductors.

Where equipment grounding conductors are used with conductors in parallel, they shall comply with the requirements of this section except that they shall be sized in accordance with 250.122.

Conductors installed in parallel shall comply with the provisions of 310.15(B)(2)(a).

310.5 Minimum Size of Conductors. The minimum size of conductors shall be as shown in Table 310.5.

Table 310.5 Minimum Size of Conductors

Conductor Voltage Rating (Volts)	Minimum Conductor Size (AWG)	
	Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum
0–2000	14	12
2001–8000	8	8
8001–15,000	2	2
15,001–28,000	1	1
28,001–35,000	1/0	1/0

Exception No. 1: For flexible cords as permitted by 400.12.

Exception No. 2: For fixture wire as permitted by 402.6.

Exception No. 3: For motors rated 1 hp or less as permitted by 430.22(F).

Exception No. 4: For cranes and hoists as permitted by 610.14.

Exception No. 5: For elevator control and signaling circuits as permitted by 620.12.

Exception No. 6: For Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 circuits as permitted by 725.27(A) and 725.51, Exception.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-139

Exception No. 7: For fire alarm circuits as permitted by 760.27(A), 760.51, Exception, and 760.71(B).

Exception No. 8: For motor-control circuits as permitted by 430.72.

Exception No. 9: For control and instrumentation circuits as permitted by 727.6.

Exception No. 10: For electric signs and outline lighting as permitted in 600.31(B) and 600.32(B).

310.6 Shielding. Solid dielectric insulated conductors operated above 2000 volts in permanent installations shall have ozone-resistant insulation and shall be shielded. All metallic insulation shields shall be grounded through an effective grounding path meeting the requirements of 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4). Shielding shall be for the purpose of confining the voltage stresses to the insulation.

Exception: Nonshielded insulated conductors listed by a qualified testing laboratory shall be permitted for use up to 8000 volts under the following conditions:

(a) Conductors shall have insulation resistant to electric discharge and surface tracking, or the insulated conductor(s) shall be covered with a material resistant to ozone, electric discharge, and surface tracking.
(b) Where used in wet locations, the insulated conductor(s) shall have an overall nonmetallic jacket or a continuous metallic sheath.
(c) Where operated at 5001 to 8000 volts, the insulated conductor(s) shall have a nonmetallic jacket over the insulation. The insulation shall have a specific inductive capacity not greater than 3.6, and the jacket shall have a specific inductive capacity not greater than 10 and not less than 6.
(d) Insulation and jacket thicknesses shall be in accordance with Table 310.63.

310.7 Direct Burial Conductors. Conductors used for direct burial applications shall be of a type identified for such use.

Cables rated above 2000 volts shall be shielded.

Exception: Nonshielded multiconductor cables rated 2001–5000 volts shall be permitted if the cable has an overall metallic sheath or armor.

The metallic shield, sheath, or armor shall be grounded through an effective grounding path meeting the requirements of 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4).

FPN No. 1: See 300.5 for installation requirements for conductors rated 600 volts or less.

FPN No. 2: See 300.50 for installation requirements for conductors rated over 600 volts.

310.8 Locations.

(A) Dry Locations. Insulated conductors and cables used in dry locations shall be any of the types identified in this *Code*.

(B) Dry and Damp Locations. Insulated conductors and cables used in dry and damp locations shall be Types FEP, FEPB, MTW, PFA, RHH, RHW, RHW-2, SA, THHN, THW, THW-2, THHW, THHW-2, THWN, THWN-2, TW, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, Z, or ZW.

(C) Wet Locations. Insulated conductors and cables used in wet locations shall be

(1) Moisture-impervious metal-sheathed;
(2) Types MTW, RHW, RHW-2, TW, THW, THW-2, THHW, THHW-2, THWN, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW; or
(3) Of a type listed for use in wet locations.

(D) Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight. Insulated conductors and cables used where exposed to direct rays of the sun shall be of a type listed for sunlight resistance or listed and marked "sunlight resistant."

310.9 Corrosive Conditions. Conductors exposed to oils, greases, vapors, gases, fumes, liquids, or other substances having a deleterious effect on the conductor or insulation shall be of a type suitable for the application.

310.10 Temperature Limitation of Conductors. No conductor shall be used in such a manner that its operating temperature exceeds that designated for the type of insulated conductor involved. In no case shall conductors be associated together in such a way with respect to type of circuit, the wiring method employed, or the number of conductors that the limiting temperature of any conductor is exceeded.

FPN: The temperature rating of a conductor (see Table 310.13 and Table 310.61) is the maximum temperature, at any location along its length, that the conductor can withstand over a prolonged time period without serious degradation. The allowable ampacity tables, the ampacity tables of Article 310 and the ampacity tables of Annex B, the correction factors at the bottom of these tables, and the notes to the tables provide guidance for coordinating conductor sizes, types, allowable ampacities, ampacities, ambient temperatures, and number of associated conductors.

The principal determinants of operating temperature are as follows:

(1) Ambient temperature — ambient temperature may vary along the conductor length as well as from time to time.
(2) Heat generated internally in the conductor as the result of load current flow, including fundamental and harmonic currents.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-140

(3) The rate at which generated heat dissipates into the ambient medium. Thermal insulation that covers or surrounds conductors affects the rate of heat dissipation.
(4) Adjacent load-carrying conductors — adjacent conductors have the dual effect of raising the ambient temperature and impeding heat dissipation.

310.11 Marking.

(A) Required Information. All conductors and cables shall be marked to indicate the following information, using the applicable method described in 310.11(B):

(1) The maximum rated voltage.
(2) The proper type letter or letters for the type of wire or cable as specified elsewhere in this *Code*.
(3) The manufacturer's name, trademark, or other distinctive marking by which the organization responsible for the product can be readily identified.
(4) The AWG size or circular mil area.

FPN: See Conductor Properties, Table 8 of Chapter 9 for conductor area expressed in SI units for conductor sizes specified in AWG or circular mil area.

(5) Cable assemblies where the neutral conductor is smaller than the ungrounded conductors shall be so marked.

(B) Method of Marking.

(1) Surface Marking. The following conductors and cables shall be durably marked on the surface. The AWG size or circular mil area shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 610 mm (24 in.). All other markings shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 1.0 m (40 in.).

(1) Single- and multiconductor rubber- and thermoplastic-insulated wire and cable
(2) Nonmetallic-sheathed cable
(3) Service-entrance cable
(4) Underground feeder and branch-circuit cable
(5) Tray cable
(6) Irrigation cable
(7) Power-limited tray cable
(8) Instrumentation tray cable

(2) Marker Tape. Metal-covered multiconductor cables shall employ a marker tape located within the cable and running for its complete length.

Exception No. 1: Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable.

Exception No. 2: Type AC cable.

Exception No. 3: The information required in 310.11(A) shall be permitted to be durably marked on the outer nonmetallic covering of Type MC, Type ITC, or Type PLTC cables at intervals not exceeding 1.0 m (40 in.).

Exception No. 4: The information required in 310.11(A) shall be permitted to be durably marked on a nonmetallic covering under the metallic sheath of Type ITC or Type PLTC cable at intervals not exceeding 1.0 m (40 in.).

FPN: Included in the group of metal-covered cables are Type AC cable (Article 320), Type MC cable (Article 330), and lead-sheathed cable.

(3) Tag Marking. The following conductors and cables shall be marked by means of a printed tag attached to the coil, reel, or carton:

(1) Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable
(2) Switchboard wires
(3) Metal-covered, single-conductor cables
(4) Type AC cable

(4) Optional Marking of Wire Size. The information required in 310.11(A)(4) shall be permitted to be marked on the surface of the individual insulated conductors for the following multiconductor cables:

(1) Type MC cable
(2) Tray cable
(3) Irrigation cable
(4) Power-limited tray cable
(5) Power-limited fire alarm cable
(6) Instrumentation tray cable

(C) Suffixes to Designate Number of Conductors. A type letter or letters used alone shall indicate a single insulated conductor. The letter suffixes shall be indicated as follows:

(1) D — For two insulated conductors laid parallel within an outer nonmetallic covering
(2) M — For an assembly of two or more insulated conductors twisted spirally within an outer nonmetallic covering

(D) Optional Markings. All conductors and cables contained in Chapter 3 shall be permitted to be surface marked to indicate special characteristics of the cable materials. These markings include, but are not limited to, markings for limited smoke, sunlight resistant, and so forth.

310.12 Conductor Identification.

(A) Grounded Conductors. Insulated or covered grounded conductors shall be identified in accordance with 200.6.

(B) Equipment Grounding Conductors. Equipment grounding conductors shall be in accordance with 250.119.

(C) Ungrounded Conductors. Conductors that are intended for use as ungrounded conductors, whether used as a single conductor or in multiconductor cables, shall be finished to be clearly distinguishable from grounded and grounding conductors. Distinguishing markings shall not

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-141

conflict in any manner with the surface markings required by 310.11(B)(1).

Exception: Conductor identification shall be permitted in accordance with 200.7.

310.13 Conductor Constructions and Applications. Insulated conductors shall comply with the applicable provisions of one or more of the following: Tables 310.13, 310.61, 310.62, 310.63, and 310.64.

These conductors shall be permitted for use in any of the wiring methods recognized in Chapter 3 and as specified in their respective tables.

FPN: Thermoplastic insulation may stiffen at temperatures lower than minus 10°C (plus 14°F). Thermoplastic insulation may also be deformed at normal temperatures where subjected to pressure, such as at points of support. Thermoplastic insulation, where used on dc circuits in wet locations, may result in electroendosmosis between conductor and insulation.

Table 310.13 Conductor Application and Insulations

Trade Name	Type Letter	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering[1]
					AWG or kcmil	mm	Mils	
Fluorinated ethylene propylene	FEP or FEPB	90°C 194°F	Dry and damp locations	Fluorinated ethylene propylene	14–10 8–2	0.51 0.76	20 30	None
					14–8	0.36	14	Glass braid
		200°C 392°F	Dry locations — special applications[2]	Fluorinated ethylene propylene	6–2	0.36	14	Glass or other suitable braid material
Mineral insulation (metal sheathed)	MI	90°C 194°F 250°C 482°F	Dry and wet locations For special applications[2]	Magnesium oxide	18–16[3] 16–10 9–4 3–500	0.58 0.91 1.27 1.40	23 36 50 55	Copper or alloy steel
Moisture-, heat-, and oil-resistant thermoplastic	MTW	60°C 140°F 90°C 194°F	Machine tool wiring in wet locations as permitted in NFPA 79 (See Article 670.) Machine tool wiring in dry locations as permitted in NFPA 79 (See Article 670.)	Flame-retardant moisture-, heat-, and oil-resistant thermoplastic	 22–12 10 8 6 4–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000	(A) (B) 0.76 0.38 0.76 0.51 1.14 0.76 1.52 0.76 1.52 1.02 2.03 1.27 2.41 1.52 2.79 1.78	(A) (B) 30 15 30 20 45 30 60 30 60 40 80 50 95 60 110 70	(A) None (B) Nylon jacket or equivalent
Paper		85°C 185°F	For underground service conductors, or by special permission	Paper				Lead sheath
Perfluoro-alkoxy	PFA	90°C 194°F 200°C 392°F	Dry and damp locations Dry locations — special applications[2]	Perfluoro-alkoxy	14–10 8–2 1–4/0	0.51 0.76 1.14	20 30 45	None

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-142

Table 310.13 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering[1]
					AWG or kcmil	mm	Mils	
Perfluoro-alkoxy	PFAH	250°C 482°F	Dry locations only. Only for leads within apparatus or within raceways connected to apparatus (nickel or nickel-coated copper only)	Perfluoro-alkoxy	14–10 8–2 1–4/0	0.51 0.76 1.14	20 30 45	None
Thermoset	RHH	90°C 194°F	Dry and damp locations		14-10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000 For 601–2000, *see* Table 310.62.	1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	45 60 80 95 110 125	Moisture-resistant, flame-retardant, nonmetallic covering[1]
Moisture-resistant thermoset	RHW [4]	75°C 167°F	Dry and wet locations	Flame-retardant, moisture-resistant thermo-set	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000 For 601–2000, *see* Table 310.62.	1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	45 60 80 95 110 125	Moisture-resistant, flame-retardant, nonmetallic covering[5]
Moisture-resistant thermoset	RHW-2	90°C 194°F	Dry and wet locations	Flame-retardant moisture-resistant thermo-set	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000 For 601–2000, see Table 310.62.	1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	45 60 80 95 110 125	Moisture-resistant, flame-retardant, nonmetallic covering[5]
Silicone	SA	90°C 194°F 200°C 392°F	Dry and damp locations For special application [2]	 Silicone rubber	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000	1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	45 60 80 95 110 125	Glass or other suitable braid material
Thermoset	SIS	90°C 194°F	Switchboard wiring only	Flame-retardant thermoset	14–10 8–2 1–4/0	0.76 1.14 2.41	30 45 95	None

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-143

Table 310.13 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering[1]
					AWG or kcmil	mm	Mils	
Thermoplastic and fibrous outer braid	TBS	90°C 194°F	Switchboard wiring only	Thermoplastic	14–10 8 6–2 1–4/0	0.76 1.14 1.52 2.03	30 45 60 80	Flame-retardant, nonmetallic covering
Extended polytetrafluoroethylene	TFE	250°C 482°F	Dry locations only. Only for leads within apparatus or within raceways connected to apparatus, or as open wiring (nickel or nickel-coated copper only)	Extruded polytetrafluoroethylene	14–10 8–2 1–4/0	0.51 0.76 1.14	20 30 45	None
Heatresistant thermoplastic	THHN	90°C 194°F	Dry and damp locations	Flame-retardant, heat-resistant thermoplastic	14–12 10 8–6 4–2 1–4/0 250–500 501–1000	0.38 0.51 0.76 1.02 1.27 1.52 1.78	15 20 30 40 50 60 70	Nylon jacket or equivalent
Moisture- and heat-resistant thermoplastic	THHW	75°C 167°F 90°C 194°F	Wet location Dry location	Flame-retardant, moisture- and heat-resistant thermoplastic	14–10 8 6–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000	0.76 1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79	30 45 60 80 95 110	None
Moisture- and heat-resistant thermoplastic	THW[4]	75°C 167°F 90°C 194°F	Dry and wet locations Special applications within electric discharge lighting equipment. Limited to 1000 open-circuit volts or less. (size 14-8 only as permitted in 410.33)	Flame-retardant, moisture- and heat-resistant thermoplastic	14–10 8 6–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 *1001–2000*	0.76 1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	30 45 60 80 95 110 125	None
Moisture- and heat-resistant thermoplastic	THWN[4]	75°C 167°F	Dry and wet locations	Flame-retardant, moisture- and heat-resistant thermoplastic	14–12 10 8–6 4–2 1–4/0 250–500 501–1000	0.38 0.51 0.76 1.02 1.27 1.52 1.78	15 20 30 40 50 60 70	Nylon jacket or equivalent

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-144

Table 310.13 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering[1]
					AWG or kcmil	mm	Mils	
Moisture-resistant thermoplastic	TW	60°C 140°F	Dry and wet locations	Flame-retardant, moisture-resistant thermoplastic	14–10 8 6–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000	0.76 1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	30 45 60 80 95 110 125	None
Underground feeder and branch-circuit cable — single conductor (For Type UF cable employing more than one conductor, *see* Articles 339, 340.)	UF	60°C 140°F 75°C 167°F [7]	See Article 340.	Moisture-resistant Moisture- and heat-resistant	14–10 8–2 1–4/0	1.52 2.03 2.41	60[6] 80[6] 95 [6]	Integral with insulation
Underground service-entrance cable — single conductor (For Type USE cable employing more than one conductor, *see* Article 338.)	USE[4]	75°C 167°F	See Article 338.	Heat- and moisture-resistant	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000	1.14 1.52 2.03 2.41 2.79 3.18	45 60 80 95[8] 110 125	Moisture-resistant nonmetallic covering (See 338.2.)
Thermoset	XHH	90°C 194°F	Dry and damp locations	Flame-retardant thermoset	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000	0.76 1.14 1.40 1.65 2.03 2.41	30 45 55 65 80 95	None
Moisture-resistant thermoset	XHHW [4]	90°C 194°F 75°C 167°F	Dry and damp locations Wet locations	Flame-retardant, moisture-resistant thermoset	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000	0.76 1.14 1.40 1.65 2.03 2.41	30 45 55 65 80 95	None

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-145

Table 310.13 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering[1]
					AWG or kcmil	mm	Mils	
Moisture-resistant thermoset	XHHW-2	90°C 194°F	Dry and wet locations	Flame-retardant, moisture-resistant thermoset	14–10 8–2 1–4/0 213–500 501–1000 1001–2000	0.76 1.14 1.40 1.65 2.03 2.41	30 45 55 65 80 95	None
Modified ethylene tetra-fluoro-ethylene	Z	90°C 194°F 150°C 302°F	Dry and damp locations Dry locations — special applications[2]	Modified ethylene tetra-fluoro-ethylene	14–12 10 8–4 3–1 1/0–4/0	0.38 0.51 0.64 0.89 1.14	15 20 25 35 45	None
Modified ethylene tetra-fluoro-ethylene	ZW[4]	75°C 167°F 90°C 194°F 150°C 302°F	Wet locations Dry and damp locations Dry locations — special applications[2]	Modified ethylene tetra-fluoro-ethylene	14–10 8–2	0.76 1.14	30 45	None

[1] Some insulations do not require an outer covering.
[2] Where design conditions require maximum conductor operating temperatures above 90°C (194°F).
[3] For signaling circuits permitting 300-volt insulation.
[4] Listed wire types designated with the suffix "2," such as RHW-2, shall be permitted to be used at a continuous 90°C (194°F) operating temperature, wet or dry.
[5] Some rubber insulations do not require an outer covering.
[6] Includes integral jacket.
[7] For ampacity limitation, see 340.80.
[8] Insulation thickness shall be permitted to be 2.03 mm (80 mils) for listed Type USE conductors that have been subjected to special investigations. The nonmetallic covering over individual rubber-covered conductors of aluminum-sheathed cable and of lead-sheathed or multiconductor cable shall not be required to be flame retardant.
For Type MC cable, see 330.104. For nonmetallic-sheathed cable, *see* Article 334, Part III. For Type UF cable, *see* Article 340, Part III.

310.14 Aluminum Conductor Material. Solid aluminum conductors 8, 10, and 12 AWG shall be made of an AA-8000 series electrical grade aluminum alloy conductor material. Stranded aluminum conductors 8 AWG through 1000 kcmil marked as Type RHH, RHW, XHHW, THW, THHW, THWN, THHN, service-entrance Type SE Style U and SE Style R shall be made of an AA-8000 series electrical grade aluminum alloy conductor material.

310.15 Ampacities for Conductors Rated 0–2000 Volts.

(A) General.

(1) Tables or Engineering Supervision. Ampacities for conductors shall be permitted to be determined by tables or under engineering supervision, as provided in 310.15(B) and (C).

FPN No. 1: Ampacities provided by this section do not take voltage drop into consideration. See 210.19(A), FPN No. 4, for branch circuits and 215.2(D), FPN No. 2, for feeders.

FPN No. 2: For the allowable ampacities of Type MTW wire, see Table 11 in NFPA 79-1997, *Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery.*

(2) Selection of Ampacity. Where more than one calculated or tabulated ampacity could apply for a given circuit length, the lowest value shall be used.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-146

Exception: Where two different ampacities apply to adjacent portions of a circuit, the higher ampacity shall be permitted to be used beyond the point of transition, a distance equal to 3.0 m (10 ft) or 10 percent of the circuit length figured at the higher ampacity, whichever is less.

FPN: See 110.14(C) for conductor temperature limitations due to termination provisions.

(B) Tables. Ampacities for conductors rated 0 to 2000 volts shall be as specified in the Allowable Ampacity Tables 310.16 through 310.19, and Ampacity Tables 310.20 and 310.21, as modified by (1) through (6).

FPN: Tables 310.16 through 310.19 are application tables for use in determining conductor sizes on loads calculated in accordance with Article 220. Allowable ampacities result from consideration of one or more of the following:

(1) Temperature compatibility with connected equipment, especially the connection points.
(2) Coordination with circuit and system overcurrent protection.
(3) Compliance with the requirements of product listings or certifications. See 110.3(B).
(4) Preservation of the safety benefits of established industry practices and standardized procedures.

(1) General. For explanation of type letters used in tables and for recognized sizes of conductors for the various conductor insulations, see 310.13. For installation requirements, see 310.1 through 310.10 and the various articles of this *Code*. For flexible cords, see Tables 400.4, 400.5(A), and 400.5(B).

(2) Adjustment Factors.

(a) More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in a Raceway or Cable. Where the number of current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable exceeds three, or where single conductors or multiconductor cables are stacked or bundled longer than 600 mm (24 in.) without maintaining spacing and are not installed in raceways, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be reduced as shown in Table 310.15(B)(2)(a).

FPN: See Annex B, Table B.310.11, for adjustment factors for more than three current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable with load diversity.

Exception No. 1: Where conductors of different systems, as provided in 300.3, are installed in a common raceway or cable, the derating factors shown in Table 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall apply to the number of power and lighting conductors only (Articles 210, 215, 220, and 230).

Exception No. 2: For conductors installed in cable trays, the provisions of 392.11 shall apply.

Exception No. 3: Derating factors shall not apply to conductors in nipples having a length not exceeding 600 mm (24 in.).

Exception No. 4: Derating factors shall not apply to underground conductors entering or leaving an outdoor trench if those conductors have physical protection in the form of rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or rigid nonmetallic conduit having a length not exceeding 3.05 m (10 ft) and if the number of conductors does not exceed four.

Exception No. 5: Adjustment factors shall not apply to Type AC cable or to Type MC cable without an overall outer jacket under the following conditions:

(a) Each cable has not more than three current-carrying conductors.
(b) The conductors are 12 AWG copper.
(c) Not more than 20 current-carrying conductors are bundled, stacked, or supported on "bridle rings."

A 60 percent adjustment factor shall be applied where the current-carrying conductors in these cables that are stacked or bundled longer than 600 mm (24 in.) without maintaining spacing exceeds 20.

(b) More Than One Conduit, Tube, or Raceway. Spacing between conduits, tubing, or raceways shall be maintained.

Table 310.15(B)(2)(a) Adjustment Factors for More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in a Raceway or Cable

Number of Current-Carrying Conductors	Percent of Values in Tables 310.16 through 310.19 as Adjusted for Ambient Temperature if Necessary
4–6	80
7–9	70
10–20	50
21–30	45
31–40	40
41 and above	35

(3) Bare or Covered Conductors. Where bare or covered conductors are used with insulated conductors, their allowable ampacities shall be limited to those permitted for the adjacent insulated conductors.

(4) Neutral Conductor.

(a) A neutral conductor that carries only the unbalanced current from other conductors of the same circuit shall not be required to be counted when applying the provisions of 310.15(B)(2)(a).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-147

(b) In a 3-wire circuit consisting of two phase wires and the neutral of a 4-wire, 3-phase, wye-connected system, a common conductor carries approximately the same current as the line-to-neutral load currents of the other conductors and shall be counted when applying the provisions of 310.15(B)(2)(a).

(c) On a 4-wire, 3-phase wye circuit where the major portion of the load consists of nonlinear loads, harmonic currents are present in the neutral conductor; the neutral shall therefore be considered a current-carrying conductor.

(5) Grounding or Bonding Conductor. A grounding or bonding conductor shall not be counted when applying the provisions of 310.15(B)(2)(a).

(6) 120/240-Volt, 3-Wire, Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders. For dwelling units, conductors, as listed in Table 310.15(B)(6), shall be permitted as 120/240-volt, 3-wire, single-phase service-entrance conductors, service lateral conductors, and feeder conductors that serve as the main power feeder to a dwelling unit and are installed in raceway or cable with or without an equipment grounding conductor. For application of this section, the main power feeder shall be the feeder(s) between the main disconnect and the lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboard(s). The feeder conductors to a dwelling unit shall not be required to be larger than their service-entrance conductors. The grounded conductor shall be permitted to be smaller than the ungrounded conductors, provided the requirements of 215.2, 220.22, and 230.42 are met.

(C) Engineering Supervision. Under engineering supervision, conductor ampacities shall be permitted to be calculated by means of the following general formula:

Table 310.15(B)(6) Conductor Types and Sizes for 120/240-Volt, 3-Wire, Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders. Conductor Types RHH, RHW, RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW, THW-2, THWN, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, SE, USE, USE-2

Conductor (AWG or kcmil)		
Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum	Service or Feeder Rating (Amperes)
4	2	100
3	1	110
2	1/0	125
1	2/0	150
1/0	3/0	175
2/0	4/0	200
3/0	250	225
4/0	300	250
250	350	300
350	500	350
400	600	400

$$I = \sqrt{\frac{TC - (TA + \Delta TD)}{RDC(1 + YC)RCA}}$$

where:

TC = conductor temperature in degrees Celsius (°C)
TA = ambient temperature in degrees Celsius (°C)
ΔTD = dielectric loss temperature rise
RDC = dc resistance of conductor at temperature TC
YC = component ac resistance resulting from skin effect and proximity effect
RCA = effective thermal resistance between conductor and surrounding ambient

FPN: See Annex B for examples of formula applications.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-148

Table 310.16 Allowable Ampacities of Insulated Conductors Rated 0 Through 2000 Volts, 60°C Through 90°C (140°F Through 194°F), Not More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway, Cable, or Earth (Directly Buried), Based on Ambient Temperature of 30°C (86°F)

Size AWG or kcmil	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.13.)						Size AWG or kcmil
	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	
	Types TW, UF	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW, USE, ZW	Types TBS, SA, SIS, FEP, FEPB, MI, RHH, RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, USE-2, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	Types TW, UF	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW, USE	Types TBS, SA, SIS, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, RHH, RHW-2, USE-2, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	
	COPPER			ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM			
18	—	—	14	—	—	—	—
16	—	—	18	—	—	—	—
14*	20	20	25	—	—	—	—
12*	25	25	30	20	20	25	12*
10*	30	35	40	25	30	35	10*
8	40	50	55	30	40	45	8
6	55	65	75	40	50	60	6
4	70	85	95	55	65	75	4
3	85	100	110	65	75	85	3
2	95	115	130	75	90	100	2
1	110	130	150	85	100	115	1
1/0	125	150	170	100	120	135	1/0
2/0	145	175	195	115	135	150	2/0
3/0	165	200	225	130	155	175	3/0
4/0	195	230	260	150	180	205	4/0
250	215	255	290	170	205	230	250
300	240	285	320	190	230	255	300
350	260	310	350	210	250	280	350
400	280	335	380	225	270	305	400
500	320	380	430	260	310	350	500
600	355	420	475	285	340	385	600
700	385	460	520	310	375	420	700
750	400	475	535	320	385	435	750
800	410	490	555	330	395	450	800
900	435	520	585	355	425	480	900
1000	455	545	615	375	445	500	1000
1250	495	590	665	405	485	545	1250
1500	520	625	705	435	520	585	1500
1750	545	650	735	455	545	615	1750
2000	560	665	750	470	560	630	2000

CORRECTION FACTORS

Ambient Temp. (°C)	For ambient temperatures other than 30°C (86°F), multiply the allowable ampacities shown above by the appropriate factor shown below.						Ambient Temp. (°F)
21–25	1.08	1.05	1.04	1.08	1.05	1.04	70–77
26–30	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	78–86
31–35	0.91	0.94	0.96	0.91	0.94	0.96	87–95
36–40	0.82	0.88	0.91	0.82	0.88	0.91	96–104
41–45	0.71	0.82	0.87	0.71	0.82	0.87	105–113
46–50	0.58	0.75	0.82	0.58	0.75	0.82	114–122
51–55	0.41	0.67	0.76	0.41	0.67	0.76	123–131
56–60	—	0.58	0.71	—	0.58	0.71	132–140
61–70	—	0.33	0.58	—	0.33	0.58	141–158
71–80	—	—	0.41	—	—	0.41	159–176

* See 240.4(D).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-149

Table 310.17 Allowable Ampacities of Single-Insulated Conductors Rated 0 Through 2000 Volts in Free Air, Based on Ambient Air Temperature of 30°C (86°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.13.)						
	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	
	Types TW, UF	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW, ZW	Types TBS, SA, SIS, FEP, FEPB, MI, RHH, RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, USE-2, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	Types TW, UF	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW	Types TBS, SA, SIS, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, RHH, RHW-2, USE-2, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	
Size AWG or kcmil	COPPER			ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM			Size AWG or kcmil
18	—	—	18	—	—	—	—
16	—	—	24	—	—	—	—
14*	25	30	35	—	—	—	—
12*	30	35	40	25	30	35	12*
10*	40	50	55	35	40	40	10*
8	60	70	80	45	55	60	8
6	80	95	105	60	75	80	6
4	105	125	140	80	100	110	4
3	120	145	165	95	115	130	3
2	140	170	190	110	135	150	2
1	165	195	220	130	155	175	1
1/0	195	230	260	150	180	205	1/0
2/0	225	265	300	175	210	235	2/0
3/0	260	310	350	200	240	275	3/0
4/0	300	360	405	235	280	315	4/0
250	340	405	455	265	315	355	250
300	375	445	505	290	350	395	300
350	420	505	570	330	395	445	350
400	455	545	615	355	425	480	400
500	515	620	700	405	485	545	500
600	575	690	780	455	540	615	600
700	630	755	855	500	595	675	700
750	655	785	885	515	620	700	750
800	680	815	920	535	645	725	800
900	730	870	985	580	700	785	900
1000	780	935	1055	625	750	845	1000
1250	890	1065	1200	710	855	960	1250
1500	980	1175	1325	795	950	1075	1500
1750	1070	1280	1445	875	1050	1185	1750
2000	1155	1385	1560	960	1150	1335	2000

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-150

Table 310.17 *Continued*

Size AWG or kcmil	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.13.)						Size AWG or kcmil
	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	60°C (140°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	
	Types TW, UF	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW, ZW	Types TBS, SA, SIS, FEP, FEPB, MI, RHH, RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, USE-2, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	Types TW, UF	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW	Types TBS, SA, SIS, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, RHH, RHW-2, USE-2, XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	
	COPPER			ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM			
CORRECTION FACTORS							
Ambient Temp. (°C)	**For ambient temperatures other than 30°C (86°F), multiply the allowable ampacities shown above by the appropriate factor shown below.**						**Ambient Temp. (°F)**
21–25	1.08	1.05	1.04	1.08	1.05	1.04	70–77
26–30	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	78–86
31–35	0.91	0.94	0.96	0.91	0.94	0.96	87–95
36–40	0.82	0.88	0.91	0.82	0.88	0.91	96–104
41–45	0.71	0.82	0.87	0.71	0.82	0.87	105–113
46–50	0.58	0.75	0.82	0.58	0.75	0.82	114–122
51–55	0.41	0.67	0.76	0.41	0.67	0.76	123–131
56–60	—	0.58	0.71	—	0.58	0.71	132–140
61–70	—	0.33	0.58	—	0.33	0.58	141–158
71–80	—	—	0.41	—	—	0.41	159–176

* See 240.4(D).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-151

Table 310.18 Allowable Ampacities of Insulated Conductors Rated 0 Through 2000 Volts, 150°C Through 250°C (302°F Through 482°F). Not More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in Raceway or Cable, Based on Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.13.)				
	150°C (302°F)	200°C (392°F)	250°C (482°F)	150°C (302°F)	
	Type Z	Types FEP, FEPB, PFA	Types PFAH, TFE	Type Z	
Size AWG or kcmil	COPPER		NICKEL OR NICKEL-COATED COPPER	ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM	Size AWG or kcmil
14	34	36	39	—	14
12	43	45	54	30	12
10	55	60	73	44	10
8	76	83	93	57	8
6	96	110	117	75	6
4	120	125	148	94	4
3	143	152	166	109	3
2	160	171	191	124	2
1	186	197	215	145	1
1/0	215	229	244	169	1/0
2/0	251	260	273	198	2/0
3/0	288	297	308	227	3/0
4/0	332	346	361	260	4/0

CORRECTION FACTORS

Ambient Temp. (°C)	For ambient temperatures other than 40°C (104°F), multiply the allowable ampacities shown above by the appropriate factor shown below.				Ambient Temp. (°F)
41–50	0.95	0.97	0.98	0.95	105–122
51–60	0.90	0.94	0.95	0.90	123–140
61–70	0.85	0.90	0.93	0.85	141–158
71–80	0.80	0.87	0.90	0.80	159–176
81–90	0.74	0.83	0.87	0.74	177–194
91–100	0.67	0.79	0.85	0.67	195–212
101–120	0.52	0.71	0.79	0.52	213–248
121–140	0.30	0.61	0.72	0.30	249–284
141–160	—	0.50	0.65	—	285–320
161–180	—	0.35	0.58	—	321–356
181–200	—	—	0.49	—	357–392
201–225	—	—	0.35	—	393–437

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-152

Table 310.19 Allowable Ampacities of Single-Insulated Conductors, Rated 0 Through 2000 Volts, 150°C Through 250°C (302°F Through 482°F), in Free Air, Based on Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.13.)				
	150°C (302°F)	200°C (392°F)	250°C (482°F)	150°C (302°F)	
	Type Z	Types FEP, FEPB, PFA	Types PFAH, TFE	Type Z	
Size AWG or kcmil	COPPER		NICKEL, OR NICKEL-COATED COPPER	ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM	Size AWG or kcmil
14	46	54	59	—	14
12	60	68	78	47	12
10	80	90	107	63	10
8	106	124	142	83	8
6	155	165	205	112	6
4	190	220	278	148	4
3	214	252	327	170	3
2	255	293	381	198	2
1	293	344	440	228	1
1/0	339	399	532	263	1/0
2/0	390	467	591	305	2/0
3/0	451	546	708	351	3/0
4/0	529	629	830	411	4/0

CORRECTION FACTORS

Ambient Temp. (°C)	For ambient temperatures other than 40°C (104°F), multiply the allowable ampacities shown above by the appropriate factor shown below.				Ambient Temp. (°F)
41–50	0.95	0.97	0.98	0.95	105–122
51–60	0.90	0.94	0.95	0.90	123–140
61–70	0.85	0.90	0.93	0.85	141–158
71–80	0.80	0.87	0.90	0.80	159–176
81–90	0.74	0.83	0.87	0.74	177–194
91–100	0.67	0.79	0.85	0.67	195–212
101–120	0.52	0.71	0.79	0.52	213–248
121–140	0.30	0.61	0.72	0.30	249–284
141–160	—	0.50	0.65	—	285–320
161–180	—	0.35	0.58	—	321–356
181–200	—	—	0.49	—	357–392
201–225	—	—	0.35	—	393–437

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-153

Table 310.20 Ampacities of Not More Than Three Single Insulated Conductors, Rated 0 Through 2000 Volts, Supported on a Messenger, Based on Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.13.)				
	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	75°C (167°F)	90°C (194°F)	
	Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, XHHW, ZW	Types MI, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, RHH, RHW-2, USE-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, ZW-2	Types RHW, THW, THWN, THHW, XHHW	Types THHN, THHW, RHH, XHHW, RHW-2, XHHW-2, THW-2, THWN-2, USE-2, ZW-2	
Size AWG or kcmil	COPPER		ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM		Size AWG or kcmil
8	57	66	44	51	8
6	76	89	59	69	6
4	101	117	78	91	4
3	118	138	92	107	3
2	135	158	106	123	2
1	158	185	123	144	1
1/0	183	214	143	167	1/0
2/0	212	247	165	193	2/0
3/0	245	287	192	224	3/0
4/0	287	335	224	262	4/0
250	320	374	251	292	250
300	359	419	282	328	300
350	397	464	312	364	350
400	430	503	339	395	400
500	496	580	392	458	500
600	553	647	440	514	600
700	610	714	488	570	700
750	638	747	512	598	750
800	660	773	532	622	800
900	704	826	572	669	900
1000	748	879	612	716	1000

CORRECTION FACTORS

Ambient Temp. (°C)	For ambient temperatures other than 40°C (104°F), multiply the allowable ampacities shown above by the appropriate factor shown below.				Ambient Temp. (°F)
21–25	1.20	1.14	1.20	1.14	70–77
26–30	1.13	1.10	1.13	1.10	79–86
31–35	1.07	1.05	1.07	1.05	88–95
36–40	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	97–104
41–45	0.93	0.95	0.93	0.95	106–113
46–50	0.85	0.89	0.85	0.89	115–122
51–55	0.76	0.84	0.76	0.84	124–131
56–60	0.65	0.77	0.65	0.77	133–140
61–70	0.38	0.63	0.38	0.63	142–158
71–80	—	0.45	—	0.45	160–176

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-154

Table 310.21 Ampacities of Bare or Covered Conductors in Free Air, Based on 40°C (104°F) Ambient, 80°C (176°F) Total Conductor Temperature, 610 mm/sec (2 ft/sec) Wind Velocity

Copper Conductors				AAC Aluminum Conductors			
Bare		Covered		Bare		Covered	
AWG or kcmil	Amperes	AWG or kcmil	Amperes	AWG or kcmil	Amperes	AWG or kcmil	Amperes
8	98	8	103	8	76	8	80
6	124	6	130	6	96	6	101
4	155	4	163	4	121	4	127
2	209	2	219	2	163	2	171
1/0	282	1/0	297	1/0	220	1/0	231
2/0	329	2/0	344	2/0	255	2/0	268
3/0	382	3/0	401	3/0	297	3/0	312
4/0	444	4/0	466	4/0	346	4/0	364
250	494	250	519	266.8	403	266.8	423
300	556	300	584	336.4	468	336.4	492
500	773	500	812	397.5	522	397.5	548
750	1000	750	1050	477.0	588	477.0	617
1000	1193	1000	1253	556.5	650	556.5	682
—	—	—	—	636.0	709	636.0	744
—	—	—	—	795.0	819	795.0	860
—	—	—	—	954.0	920	—	—
—	—	—	—	1033.5	968	1033.5	1017
—	—	—	—	1272	1103	1272	1201
—	—	—	—	1590	1267	1590	1381
—	—	—	—	2000	1454	2000	1527

310.60 Conductors Rated 2001 to 35,000 Volts.

(A) Definitions.

Electrical Ducts. As used in Article 310, electrical ducts shall include any of the electrical conduits recognized in Chapter 3 as suitable for use underground; other raceways round in cross section, listed for underground use, and embedded in earth or concrete.

Thermal Resistivity. As used in this *Code*, the heat transfer capability through a substance by conduction. It is the reciprocal of thermal conductivity and is designated Rho and expressed in the units °C-cm/watt.

(B) Ampacities of Conductors Rated 2001 to 35,000 Volts. Ampacities for solid dielectric-insulated conductors shall be permitted to be determined by tables or under engineering supervision, as provided in 310.60(C) and (D).

(1) Selection of Ampacity. Where more than one calculated or tabulated ampacity could apply for a given circuit length, the lowest value shall be used.

Exception: Where two different ampacities apply to adjacent portions of a circuit, the higher ampacity shall be permitted to be used beyond the point of transition, a distance equal to 3.0 m (10 ft) or 10 percent of the circuit length figured at the higher ampacity, whichever is less.

FPN: See 110.40 for conductor temperature limitations due to termination provisions.

(C) Tables. Ampacities for conductors rated 2001 to 35,000 volts shall be as specified in the Ampacity Tables 310.67 through 310.86. Ampacities at ambient temperatures other than those shown in the tables shall be determined by the formula in 310.60(C)(4).

FPN No. 1: For ampacities calculated in accordance with 310.60(B), reference IEEE 835-1994 (IPCEA Pub. No. P-46-426), *Standard Power Cable Ampacity Tables,* and the references therein for availability of all factors and constants.

FPN No. 2: Ampacities provided by this section do not take voltage drop into consideration. See 210.19(A), FPN No. 4, for branch circuits and 215.2(D), FPN No. 2, for feeders.

(1) Grounded Shields. Ampacities shown in Tables 310.69, 310.70, 310.81, and 310.82 are for cable with shields grounded at one point only. Where shields are grounded at more than one point, ampacities shall be adjusted to take into consideration the heating due to shield currents.

(2) Burial Depth of Underground Circuits. Where the burial depth of direct burial or electrical duct bank circuits is modified from the values shown in a figure or table, ampacities shall be permitted to be modified as indicated in (a) and (b).

(a) Where burial depths are increased in part(s) of an electrical duct run, no decrease in ampacity of the conduc-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-155

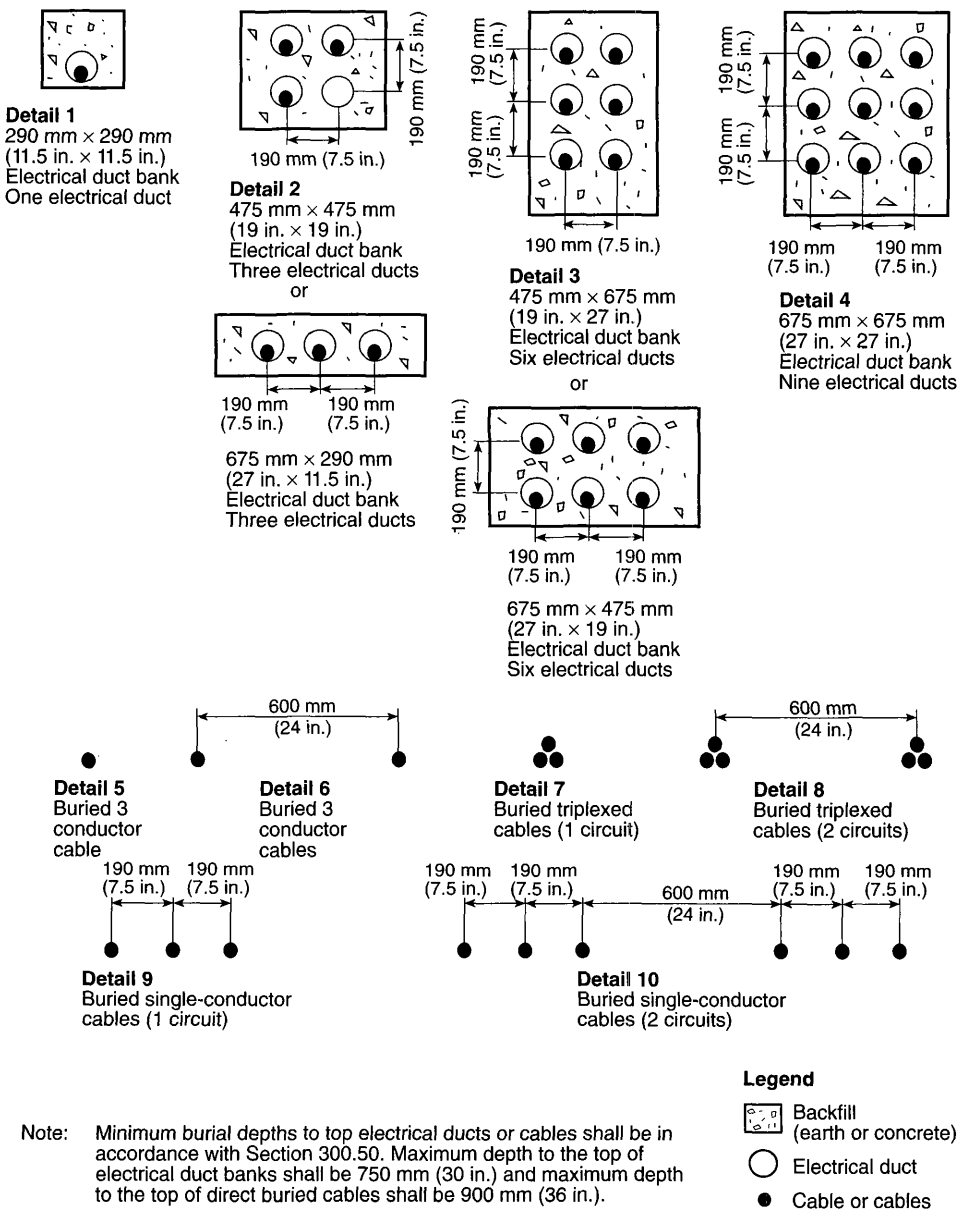
tors is needed, provided the total length of parts of the duct run increased in depth is less than 25 percent of the total run length.

(b) Where burial depths are deeper than shown in a specific underground ampacity table or figure, an ampacity derating factor of 6 percent per 300-mm (1-ft) increase in depth for all values of rho shall be permitted.

No rating change is needed where the burial depth is decreased.

(3) Electrical Ducts in Figure 310.60. At locations where electrical ducts enter equipment enclosures from underground, spacing between such ducts, as shown in Figure 310.60, shall be permitted to be reduced without requiring the ampacity of conductors therein to be reduced.

(4) Ambients Not in Tables. Ampacities at ambient temperatures other than those shown in the tables shall be determined by means of the following formula:



Note: Minimum burial depths to top electrical ducts or cables shall be in accordance with Section 300.50. Maximum depth to the top of electrical duct banks shall be 750 mm (30 in.) and maximum depth to the top of direct buried cables shall be 900 mm (36 in.).

Figure 310.60 Cable installation dimensions for use with Tables 310.77 through 310.86.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-156

Table 310.61 Conductor Application and Insulation

Trade Name	Type Letter	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provision	Insulation	Outer Covering
Medium voltage solid dielectric	MV-90 MV-105*	90°C 105°C	Dry or wet locations rated 2001 volts and higher	Thermoplastic or thermosetting	Jacket, sheath, or armor

*Where design conditions require maximum conductor temperatures above 90°C.

Table 310.62 Thickness of Insulation for 601- to 2000-Volt Nonshielded Types RHH and RHW

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	Column A[1]		Column B[2]	
	mm	mils	mm	mils
14–10	2.03	80	1.52	60
8	2.03	80	1.78	70
6–2	2.41	95	1.78	70
1–2/0	2.79	110	2.29	90
3/0–4/0	2.79	110	2.29	90
213–500	3.18	125	2.67	105
501–1000	3.56	140	3.05	120

[1]Column A insulations are limited to natural, SBR, and butyl rubbers.
[2]Column B insulations are materials such as cross-linked polyethylene, ethylene propylene rubber, and composites thereof.

$$I_2 = I_1 \sqrt{\frac{TC - TA_2 - \Delta TD}{TC - TA_1 - \Delta TD}}$$

where:
I_1 = ampacity from tables at ambient TA_1
I_2 = ampacity at desired ambient TA_2
TC = conductor temperature in degrees Celsius (°C)
TA_1 = surrounding ambient from tables in degrees Celsius (°C)
TA_2 = desired ambient in degrees Celsius (°C)
ΔTD = dielectric loss temperature rise

(D) Engineering Supervision. Under engineering supervision, conductor ampacities shall be permitted to be calculated by means of the following general formula:

$$I = \sqrt{\frac{TC - (TA + \Delta TD)}{RDC(1 + YC)RCA}}$$

where:
TC = conductor temperature in °C
TA = ambient temperature in °C
ΔTD = dielectric loss temperature rise
RDC = dc resistance of conductor at temperature TC
YC = component ac resistance resulting from skin effect and proximity effect
RCA = effective thermal resistance between conductor and surrounding ambient

FPN: See Annex B for examples of formula applications.

Table 310.63 Thickness of Insulation and Jacket for Nonshielded Solid Dielectric Insulated Conductors Rated 2001 to 8000 Volts

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	2001–5000 Volts												5001–8000 Volts 100 Percent Insulation Level Wet or Dry Locations					
	Dry Locations, Single Conductor						Wet or Dry Locations											
	Without Jacket Insulation		With Jacket				Single Conductor				Multiconductor Insulation*		Single Conductor				Multiconductor Insulation*	
			Insulation		Jacket		Insulation		Jacket				Insulation		Jacket			
	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils
8	2.79	110	2.29	90	0.76	30	3.18	125	2.03	80	2.29	90	4.57	180	2.03	80	4.57	180
6	2.79	110	2.29	90	0.76	30	3.18	125	2.03	80	2.29	90	4.57	180	2.03	80	4.57	180
4–2	2.79	110	2.29	90	1.14	45	3.18	125	2.03	80	2.29	90	4.57	180	2.41	95	4.57	180
1–2/0	2.79	110	2.29	90	1.14	45	3.18	125	2.03	80	2.29	90	4.57	180	2.41	95	4.57	180
3/0–4/0	2.79	110	2.29	90	1.65	65	3.18	125	2.41	95	2.29	90	4.57	180	2.79	110	4.57	180
213–500	3.05	120	2.29	90	1.65	65	3.56	140	2.79	110	2.29	90	5.33	210	2.79	110	5.33	210
501–750	3.30	130	2.29	90	1.65	65	3.94	155	3.18	125	2.29	90	5.97	235	3.18	125	5.97	235
751–1000	3.30	130	2.29	90	1.65	65	3.94	155	3.18	125	2.29	90	6.35	250	3.56	140	6.35	250

*Under a common overall covering such as a jacket, sheath, or armor.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-157

Table 310.64 Thickness of Insulation for Shielded Solid Dielectric Insulated Conductors Rated 2001 to 35,000 Volts

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	2001–5000 Volts		5001–8000 Volts				8001–15,000 Volts				15,001–25,000 Volts				25,001–28,000 Volts				28,001–35,000 Volts			
			100 Percent Insulation Level 1		133 Percent Insulation Level 2		100 Percent Insulation Level 1		133 Percent Insulation Level 2		100 Percent Insulation Level 1		133 Percent Insulation Level 2		100 Percent Insulation Level 1		133 Percent Insulation Level 2		100 Percent Insulation Level 1		133 Percent Insulation Level 2	
	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils	mm	mils
8	2.29	90	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
6–4	2.29	90	2.92	115	3.56	140	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2	2.29	90	2.92	115	3.56	140	4.45	175	5.46	215	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1	2.29	90	2.92	115	3.56	140	4.45	175	5.46	215	6.60	260	8.76	345	7.11	280	8.76	345	—	—	—	—
1/0–2000	2.29	90	2.92	115	3.56	140	4.45	175	5.46	215	6.60	260	8.76	345	7.11	280	8.76	345	8.76	345	10.67	420

[1]**100 Percent Insulation Level.** Cables in this category shall be permitted to be applied where the system is provided with relay protection such that ground faults will be cleared as rapidly as possible but, in any case, within 1 minute. While these cables are applicable to the great majority of cable installations that are on grounded systems, they shall be permitted to be used also on other systems for which the application of cables is acceptable, provided the above clearing requirements are met in completely de-energizing the faulted section.

[2]**133 Percent Insulation Level.** This insulation level corresponds to that formerly designated for ungrounded systems. Cables in this category shall be permitted to be applied in situations where the clearing time requirements of the 100 percent level category cannot be met and yet there is adequate assurance that the faulted section will be de-energized in a time not exceeding 1 hour. Also, they shall be permitted to be used where additional insulation strength over the 100 percent level category is desirable.

Table 310.67 Ampacities of Insulated Single Copper Conductor Cables Triplexed in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	65	74	—	—
6	90	99	100	110
4	120	130	130	140
2	160	175	170	195
1	185	205	195	225
1/0	215	240	225	255
2/0	250	275	260	295
3/0	290	320	300	340
4/0	335	375	345	390
250	375	415	380	430
350	465	515	470	525
500	580	645	580	650
750	750	835	730	820
1000	880	980	850	950

Table 310.68 Ampacities of Insulated Single Aluminum Conductor Cables Triplexed in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	50	57	—	—
6	70	77	75	84
4	90	100	100	110
2	125	135	130	150
1	145	160	150	175
1/0	170	185	175	200
2/0	195	215	200	230
3/0	225	250	230	265
4/0	265	290	270	305
250	295	325	300	335
350	365	405	370	415
500	460	510	460	515
750	600	665	590	660
1000	715	800	700	780

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-158

Table 310.69 Ampacities of Insulated Single Copper Conductor Isolated in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.) 2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	5001–15,000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	5001–15,000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	15,001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	15,001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	83	93	—	—	—	—
6	110	120	110	125	—	—
4	145	160	150	165	—	—
2	190	215	195	215	—	—
1	225	250	225	250	225	250
1/0	260	290	260	290	260	290
2/0	300	330	300	335	300	330
3/0	345	385	345	385	345	380
4/0	400	445	400	445	395	445
250	445	495	445	495	440	490
350	550	615	550	610	545	605
500	695	775	685	765	680	755
750	900	1000	885	990	870	970
1000	1075	1200	1060	1185	1040	1160
1250	1230	1370	1210	1350	1185	1320
1500	1365	1525	1345	1500	1315	1465
1750	1495	1665	1470	1640	1430	1595
2000	1605	1790	1575	1755	1535	1710

Table 310.70 Ampacities of Insulated Single Aluminum Conductor Isolated in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.) 2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	5001–15,000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	5001–15,000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	15,001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	15,001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	64	71	—	—	—	—
6	85	95	87	97	—	—
4	115	125	115	130	—	—
2	150	165	150	170	—	—
1	175	195	175	195	175	195
1/0	200	225	200	225	200	225
2/0	230	260	235	260	230	260
3/0	270	300	270	300	270	300
4/0	310	350	310	350	310	345
250	345	385	345	385	345	380
350	430	480	430	480	430	475
500	545	605	535	600	530	590
750	710	790	700	780	685	765
1000	855	950	840	940	825	920
1250	980	1095	970	1080	950	1055
1500	1105	1230	1085	1215	1060	1180
1750	1215	1355	1195	1335	1165	1300
2000	1320	1475	1295	1445	1265	1410

Table 310.71 Ampacities of an Insulated Three-Conductor Copper Cable Isolated in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.) 2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	59	66	—	—
6	79	88	93	105
4	105	115	120	135
2	140	154	165	185
1	160	180	185	210
1/0	185	205	215	240
2/0	215	240	245	275
3/0	250	280	285	315
4/0	285	320	325	360
250	320	355	360	400
350	395	440	435	490
500	485	545	535	600
750	615	685	670	745
1000	705	790	770	860

Table 310.72 Ampacities of an Insulated Three-Conductor Aluminum Cable Isolated in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.) 2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity 105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	46	51	—	—
6	61	68	72	80
4	81	90	95	105
2	110	120	125	145
1	125	140	145	165
1/0	145	160	170	185
2/0	170	185	190	215
3/0	195	215	220	245
4/0	225	250	255	285
250	250	280	280	315
350	310	345	345	385
500	385	430	425	475
750	495	550	540	600
1000	585	650	635	705

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-159

Table 310.73 Ampacities of an Insulated Triplexed or Three Single-Conductor Copper Cables in Isolated Conduit in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	55	61	—	—
6	75	84	83	93
4	97	110	110	120
2	130	145	150	165
1	155	175	170	190
1/0	180	200	195	215
2/0	205	225	225	255
3/0	240	270	260	290
4/0	280	305	295	330
250	315	355	330	365
350	385	430	395	440
500	475	530	480	535
750	600	665	585	655
1000	690	770	675	755

Table 310.74 Ampacities of an Insulated Triplexed or Three Single-Conductor Aluminum Cables in Isolated Conduit in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	43	48	—	—
6	58	65	65	72
4	76	85	84	94
2	100	115	115	130
1	120	135	130	150
1/0	140	155	150	170
2/0	160	175	175	200
3/0	190	210	200	225
4/0	215	240	230	260
250	250	280	255	290
350	305	340	310	350
500	380	425	385	430
750	490	545	485	540
1000	580	645	565	640

Table 310.75 Ampacities of an Insulated Three-Conductor Copper Cable in Isolated Conduit in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	52	58	—	—
6	69	77	83	92
4	91	100	105	120
2	125	135	145	165
1	140	155	165	185
1/0	165	185	195	215
2/0	190	210	220	245
3/0	220	245	250	280
4/0	255	285	290	320
250	280	315	315	350
350	350	390	385	430
500	425	475	470	525
750	525	585	570	635
1000	590	660	650	725

Table 310.76 Ampacities of an Insulated Three-Conductor Aluminum Cable in Isolated Conduit in Air Based on Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F) and Ambient Air Temperature of 40°C (104°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
8	41	46	—	—
6	53	59	64	71
4	71	79	84	94
2	96	105	115	125
1	110	125	130	145
1/0	130	145	150	170
2/0	150	165	170	190
3/0	170	190	195	220
4/0	200	225	225	255
250	220	245	250	280
350	275	305	305	340
500	340	380	380	425
750	430	480	470	520
1000	505	560	550	615

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-160

Table 310.77 Ampacities of Three Single-Insulated Copper Conductors in Underground Electrical Ducts (Three Conductors per Electrical Duct) Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Electrical Duct Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit (See Figure 310.60, Detail 1.)				
8	64	69	—	—
6	85	92	90	97
4	110	120	115	125
2	145	155	155	165
1	170	180	175	185
1/0	195	210	200	215
2/0	220	235	230	245
3/0	250	270	260	275
4/0	290	310	295	315
250	320	345	325	345
350	385	415	390	415
500	470	505	465	500
750	585	630	565	610
1000	670	720	640	690
Three Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 2.)				
8	56	60	—	—
6	73	79	77	83
4	95	100	99	105
2	125	130	130	135
1	140	150	145	155
1/0	160	175	165	175
2/0	185	195	185	200
3/0	210	225	210	225
4/0	235	255	240	255
250	260	280	260	280
350	315	335	310	330
500	375	405	370	395
750	460	495	440	475
1000	525	565	495	535
Six Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 3.)				
8	48	52	—	—
6	62	67	64	68
4	80	86	82	88
2	105	110	105	115
1	115	125	120	125
1/0	135	145	135	145
2/0	150	160	150	165
3/0	170	185	170	185
4/0	195	210	190	205
250	210	225	210	225
350	250	270	245	265
500	300	325	290	310
750	365	395	350	375
1000	410	445	390	415

Table 310.78 Ampacities of Three Single-Insulated Aluminum Conductors in Underground Electrical Ducts (Three Conductors per Electrical Duct) Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Electrical Duct Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit (See Figure 310.60, Detail 1.)				
8	50	54	—	—
6	66	71	70	75
4	86	93	91	98
2	115	125	120	130
1	130	140	135	145
1/0	150	160	155	165
2/0	170	185	175	190
3/0	195	210	200	215
4/0	225	245	230	245
250	250	270	250	270
350	305	325	305	330
500	370	400	370	400
750	470	505	455	490
1000	545	590	525	565
Three Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 2.)				
8	44	47	—	—
6	57	61	60	65
4	74	80	77	83
2	96	105	100	105
1	110	120	110	120
1/0	125	135	125	140
2/0	145	155	145	155
3/0	160	175	165	175
4/0	185	200	185	200
250	205	220	200	220
350	245	265	245	260
500	295	320	290	315
750	370	395	355	385
1000	425	460	405	440
Six Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 3.)				
8	38	41	—	—
6	48	52	50	54
4	62	67	64	69
2	80	86	80	88
1	91	98	90	99
1/0	105	110	105	110
2/0	115	125	115	125
3/0	135	145	130	145
4/0	150	165	150	160
250	165	180	165	175
350	195	210	195	210
500	240	255	230	250
750	290	315	280	305
1000	335	360	320	345

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-161

Table 310.79 Ampacities of Three Insulated Copper Conductors Cabled Within an Overall Covering (Three-Conductor Cable) in Underground Electrical Ducts (One Cable per Electrical Duct) Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Electrical Duct Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°C)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit (See Figure 310.60, Detail 1.)				
8	59	64	—	—
6	78	84	88	95
4	100	110	115	125
2	135	145	150	160
1	155	165	170	185
1/0	175	190	195	210
2/0	200	220	220	235
3/0	230	250	250	270
4/0	265	285	285	305
250	290	315	310	335
350	355	380	375	400
500	430	460	450	485
750	530	570	545	585
1000	600	645	615	660
Three Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 2.)				
8	53	57	—	—
6	69	74	75	81
4	89	96	97	105
2	115	125	125	135
1	135	145	140	155
1/0	150	165	160	175
2/0	170	185	185	195
3/0	195	210	205	220
4/0	225	240	230	250
250	245	265	255	270
350	295	315	305	325
500	355	380	360	385
750	430	465	430	465
1000	485	520	485	515
Six Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 3.)				
8	46	50	—	—
6	60	65	63	68
4	77	83	81	87
2	98	105	105	110
1	110	120	115	125
1/0	125	135	130	145
2/0	145	155	150	160
3/0	165	175	170	180
4/0	185	200	190	200
250	200	220	205	220
350	240	270	245	275
500	290	310	290	305
750	350	375	340	365
1000	390	420	380	405

Table 310.80 Ampacities of Three Insulated Aluminum Conductors Cabled Within an Overall Covering (Three-Conductor Cable) in Underground Electrical Ducts (One Cable per Electrical Duct) Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Electrical Duct Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°C)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit (See Figure 310.60, Detail 1.)				
8	46	50	—	—
6	61	66	69	74
4	80	86	89	96
2	105	110	115	125
1	120	130	135	145
1/0	140	150	150	165
2/0	160	170	170	185
3/0	180	195	195	210
4/0	205	220	220	240
250	230	245	245	265
350	280	310	295	315
500	340	365	355	385
750	425	460	440	475
1000	495	535	510	545
Three Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 2.)				
8	41	44	—	—
6	54	58	59	64
4	70	75	75	81
2	90	97	100	105
1	105	110	110	120
1/0	120	125	125	135
2/0	135	145	140	155
3/0	155	165	160	175
4/0	175	185	180	195
250	190	205	200	215
350	230	250	240	255
500	280	300	285	305
750	345	375	350	375
1000	400	430	400	430
Six Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 3.)				
8	36	39	—	—
6	46	50	49	53
4	60	65	63	68
2	77	83	80	86
1	87	94	90	98
1/0	99	105	105	110
2/0	110	120	115	125
3/0	130	140	130	140
4/0	145	155	150	160
250	160	170	160	170
350	190	205	190	205
500	230	245	230	245
750	280	305	275	295
1000	320	345	315	335

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-162

Table 310.81 Ampacities of Single Insulated Copper Conductors Directly Buried in Earth Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°C)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit, Three Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 9.)				
8	110	115	—	—
6	140	150	130	140
4	180	195	170	180
2	230	250	210	225
1	260	280	240	260
1/0	295	320	275	295
2/0	335	365	310	335
3/0	385	415	355	380
4/0	435	465	405	435
250	470	510	440	475
350	570	615	535	575
500	690	745	650	700
750	845	910	805	865
1000	980	1055	930	1005
Two Circuits, Six Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 10.)				
8	100	110	—	—
6	130	140	120	130
4	165	180	160	170
2	215	230	195	210
1	240	260	225	240
1/0	275	295	255	275
2/0	310	335	290	315
3/0	355	380	330	355
4/0	400	430	375	405
250	435	470	410	440
350	520	560	495	530
500	630	680	600	645
750	775	835	740	795
1000	890	960	855	920

Table 310.82 Ampacities of Single Insulated Aluminum Conductors Directly Buried in Earth Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit, Three Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 9.)				
8	85	90	—	—
6	110	115	100	110
4	140	150	130	140
2	180	195	165	175
1	205	220	185	200
1/0	230	250	215	230
2/0	265	285	245	260
3/0	300	320	275	295
4/0	340	365	315	340
250	370	395	345	370
350	445	480	415	450
500	540	580	510	545
750	665	720	635	680
1000	780	840	740	795
Two Circuits, Six Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 10.)				
8	80	85	—	—
6	100	110	95	100
4	130	140	125	130
2	165	180	155	165
1	190	200	175	190
1/0	215	230	200	215
2/0	245	260	225	245
3/0	275	295	255	275
4/0	310	335	290	315
250	340	365	320	345
350	410	440	385	415
500	495	530	470	505
750	610	655	580	625
1000	710	765	680	730

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-163

Table 310.83 Ampacities of Three Insulated Copper Conductors Cabled Within an Overall Covering (Three-Conductor Cable), Directly Buried in Earth Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit (See Figure 310.60, Detail 5.)				
8	85	89	—	—
6	105	115	115	120
4	135	150	145	155
2	180	190	185	200
1	200	215	210	225
1/0	230	245	240	255
2/0	260	280	270	290
3/0	295	320	305	330
4/0	335	360	350	375
250	365	395	380	410
350	440	475	460	495
500	530	570	550	590
750	650	700	665	720
1000	730	785	750	810
Two Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 6.)				
8	80	84	—	—
6	100	105	105	115
4	130	140	135	145
2	165	180	170	185
1	185	200	195	210
1/0	215	230	220	235
2/0	240	260	250	270
3/0	275	295	280	305
4/0	310	335	320	345
250	340	365	350	375
350	410	440	420	450
500	490	525	500	535
750	595	640	605	650
1000	665	715	675	730

Table 310.84 Ampacities of Three Insulated Aluminum Conductors Cabled Within an Overall Covering (Three-Conductor Cable), Directly Buried in Earth Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures of 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit (See Figure 310.60, Detail 5.)				
8	65	70	—	—
6	80	88	90	95
4	105	115	115	125
2	140	150	145	155
1	155	170	165	175
1/0	180	190	185	200
2/0	205	220	210	225
3/0	230	250	240	260
4/0	260	280	270	295
250	285	310	300	320
350	345	375	360	390
500	420	450	435	470
750	520	560	540	580
1000	600	650	620	665
Two Circuits (See Figure 310.60, Detail 6.)				
8	60	66	—	—
6	75	83	80	95
4	100	110	105	115
2	130	140	135	145
1	145	155	150	165
1/0	165	180	170	185
2/0	190	205	195	210
3/0	215	230	220	240
4/0	245	260	250	270
250	265	285	275	295
350	320	345	330	355
500	385	415	395	425
750	480	515	485	525
1000	550	590	560	600

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-164

Table 310.85 Ampacities of Three Triplexed Single Insulated Copper Conductors Directly Buried in Earth Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit, Three Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 7.)				
8	90	95	—	—
6	120	130	115	120
4	150	165	150	160
2	195	205	190	205
1	225	240	215	230
1/0	255	270	245	260
2/0	290	310	275	295
3/0	330	360	315	340
4/0	375	405	360	385
250	410	445	390	410
350	490	580	470	505
500	590	635	565	605
750	725	780	685	740
1000	825	885	770	830
Two Circuits, Six Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 8.)				
8	85	90	—	—
6	110	115	105	115
4	140	150	140	150
2	180	195	175	190
1	205	220	200	215
1/0	235	250	225	240
2/0	265	285	255	275
3/0	300	320	290	315
4/0	340	365	325	350
250	370	395	355	380
350	445	480	425	455
500	535	575	510	545
750	650	700	615	660
1000	740	795	690	745

Table 310.86 Ampacities of Three Triplexed Single Insulated Aluminum Conductors Directly Buried in Earth Based on Ambient Earth Temperature of 20°C (68°F), Arrangement per Figure 310.60, 100 Percent Load Factor, Thermal Resistance (RHO) of 90, Conductor Temperatures 90°C (194°F) and 105°C (221°F)

	Temperature Rating of Conductor (See Table 310.61.)			
	2001–5000 Volts Ampacity		5001–35,000 Volts Ampacity	
Conductor Size (AWG or kcmil)	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105	90°C (194°F) Type MV-90	105°C (221°F) Type MV-105
One Circuit, Three Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 7.)				
8	70	75	—	—
6	90	100	90	95
4	120	130	115	125
2	155	165	145	155
1	175	190	165	175
1/0	200	210	190	205
2/0	225	240	215	230
3/0	255	275	245	265
4/0	290	310	280	305
250	320	350	305	325
350	385	420	370	400
500	465	500	445	480
750	580	625	550	590
1000	670	725	635	680
Two Circuits, Six Conductors (See Figure 310.60, Detail 8.)				
8	65	70	—	—
6	85	95	85	90
4	110	120	105	115
2	140	150	135	145
1	160	170	155	170
1/0	180	195	175	190
2/0	205	220	200	215
3/0	235	250	225	245
4/0	265	285	255	275
250	290	310	280	300
350	350	375	335	360
500	420	455	405	435
750	520	560	485	525
1000	600	645	565	605

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-165

ARTICLE 312
Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures

312.1 Scope. This article covers the installation and construction specifications of cabinets, cutout boxes, and meter socket enclosures.

I. Installation

312.2 Damp, Wet, or Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

(A) Damp and Wet Locations. In damp or wet locations, surface-type enclosures within the scope of this article shall be placed or equipped so as to prevent moisture or water from entering and accumulating within the cabinet or cutout box, and shall be mounted so there is at least 6 mm (¼ in.) airspace between the enclosure and the wall or other supporting surface. Enclosures installed in wet locations shall be weatherproof.

Exception: Nonmetallic enclosures shall be permitted to be installed without the airspace on a concrete, masonry, tile, or similar surface.

FPN: For protection against corrosion, see 300.6.

(B) Hazardous (Classified) Locations. Installations in hazardous (classified) locations shall conform to Articles 500 through 517.

312.3 Position in Wall. In walls of concrete, tile, or other noncombustible material, cabinets shall be installed so that the front edge of the cabinet is not set back of the finished surface more than 6 mm (¼ in.). In walls constructed of wood or other combustible material, cabinets shall be flush with the finished surface or project therefrom.

312.5 Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures. Conductors entering enclosures within the scope of this article shall be protected from abrasion and shall comply with 312.5(A) through (C).

(A) Openings to Be Closed. Openings through which conductors enter shall be adequately closed.

(B) Metal Cabinets, Cutout Boxes, and Meter Socket Enclosures. Where metal enclosures within the scope of this article are installed with open wiring or concealed knob-and-tube wiring, conductors shall enter through insulating bushings or, in dry locations, through flexible tubing extending from the last insulating support and firmly secured to the enclosure.

(C) Cables. Where cable is used, each cable shall be secured to the cabinet, cutout box, or meter socket enclosure.

Exception: Cables with entirely nonmetallic sheaths shall be permitted to enter the top of a surface-mounted enclosure through one or more nonflexible raceways not less than 450 mm (18 in.) or more than 3.0 m (10 ft) in length, provided all the following conditions are met:

(a) Each cable is fastened within 300 mm (12 in.), measured along the sheath, of the outer end of the raceway.
(b) The raceway extends directly above the enclosure and does not penetrate a structural ceiling.
(c) A fitting is provided on each end of the raceway to protect the cable(s) from abrasion and the fittings remain accessible after installation.
(d) The raceway is sealed or plugged at the outer end using approved means so as to prevent access to the enclosure through the raceway.
(e) The cable sheath is continuous through the raceway and extends into the enclosure beyond the fitting not less than 6 mm (¼ in.).
(f) The raceway is fastened at its outer end and at other points in accordance with the applicable article.
(g) Where installed as conduit or tubing, the allowable cable fill does not exceed that permitted for complete conduit or tubing systems by Table 1 of Chapter 9 of this Code and all applicable notes thereto.

FPN: See Table 1 in Chapter 9, including Note 9, for allowable cable fill in circular raceways. See 310.15(B)(2)(a) for required ampacity reductions for multiple cables installed in a common raceway.

312.6 Deflection of Conductors. Conductors at terminals or conductors entering or leaving cabinets or cutout boxes and the like shall comply with 312.6(A) through (C).

Exception: Wire-bending space in enclosures for motor controllers with provisions for one or two wires per terminal shall comply with 430.10(B).

(A) Width of Wiring Gutters. Conductors shall not be deflected within a cabinet or cutout box unless a gutter having a width in accordance with Table 312.6(A) is provided. Conductors in parallel in accordance with 310.4 shall be judged on the basis of the number of conductors in parallel.

(B) Wire-Bending Space at Terminals. Wire-bending space at each terminal shall be provided in accordance with 312.6(B)(1) or (2).

(1) Conductors Not Entering or Leaving Opposite Wall. Table 312.6(A) shall apply where the conductor does not enter or leave the enclosure through the wall opposite its terminal.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-166

Table 312.6(A) Minimum Wire-Bending Space at Terminals and Minimum Width of Wiring Gutters

Wire Size (AWG or kcmil)	Wires per Terminal									
	1		2		3		4		5	
	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.
14–10	Not specified		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
8–6	38.1	1½	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
4–3	50.8	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2	63.5	2½	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1	76.2	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1/0–2/0	88.9	3½	127	5	178	7	—	—	—	—
3/0–4/0	102	4	152	6	203	8	—	—	—	—
250	114	4½	152	6	203	8	254	10	—	—
300–350	127	5	203	8	254	10	305	12	—	—
400–500	152	6	203	8	254	10	305	12	356	14
600–700	203	8	254	10	305	12	356	14	406	16
750–900	203	8	305	12	356	14	406	16	457	18
1000–1250	254	10	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1500–2000	305	12	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Note: Bending space at terminals shall be measured in a straight line from the end of the lug or wire connector (in the direction that the wire leaves the terminal) to the wall, barrier, or obstruction.

(2) Conductors Entering or Leaving Opposite Wall. Table 312.6(B) shall apply where the conductor does enter or leave the enclosure through the wall opposite its terminal.

Exception No. 1: Where the distance between the wall and its terminal is in accordance with Table 312.6(A), a conductor shall be permitted to enter or leave an enclosure through the wall opposite its terminal, provided the conductor enters or leaves the enclosure where the gutter joins an adjacent gutter that has a width that conforms to Table 312.6(B) for the conductor.

Exception No. 2: A conductor not larger than 350 kcmil shall be permitted to enter or leave an enclosure containing only a meter socket(s) through the wall opposite its terminal, provided the distance between the terminal and the opposite wall is not less than that specified in Table 312.6(A) and the terminal is a lay-in type where the terminal is either of the following:

(a) Directed toward the opening in the enclosure and within a 45 degree angle of directly facing the enclosure wall

(b) Directly facing the enclosure wall and offset not greater than 50 percent of the bending space specified in Table 312.6(A)

FPN: *Offset* is the distance measured along the enclosure wall from the axis of the centerline of the terminal to a line passing through the center of the opening in the enclosure.

(C) Conductors 4 AWG or Larger. Installation shall comply with 300.4(F).

312.7 Space in Enclosures. Cabinets and cutout boxes shall have sufficient space to accommodate all conductors installed in them without crowding.

312.8 Enclosures for Switches or Overcurrent Devices. Enclosures for switches or overcurrent devices shall not be used as junction boxes, auxiliary gutters, or raceways for conductors feeding through or tapping off to other switches or overcurrent devices, unless adequate space for this purpose is provided. The conductors shall not fill the wiring space at any cross section to more than 40 percent of the cross-sectional area of the space, and the conductors, splices, and taps shall not fill the wiring space at any cross section to more than 75 percent of the cross-sectional area of that space.

312.9 Side or Back Wiring Spaces or Gutters. Cabinets and cutout boxes shall be provided with back-wiring spaces, gutters, or wiring compartments as required by 312.11(C) and (D).

II. Construction Specifications

312.10 Material. Cabinets, cutout boxes, and meter socket enclosures shall comply with 312.10(A) through (C).

(A) Metal Cabinets and Cutout Boxes. Metal enclosures within the scope of this article shall be protected both inside and outside against corrosion.

FPN: For information on protection against corrosion, see 300.6.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-167

Table 312.6(B) Minimum Wire-Bending Space at Terminals

Wire Size (AWG or kcmil)		Wires per Terminal							
		1		2		3		4 or More	
All Other Conductors	Compact Stranded AA-8000 Aluminum Alloy Conductors (See Note 3.)	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.
14–10	12–8	Not specified		—	—	—		—	—
8	6	38.1	1½	—	—	—		—	—
6	4	50.8	2	—	—	—		—	—
4	2	76.2	3	—	—	—		—	—
3	1	76.2	3	—	—	—		—	—
2	1/0	88.9	3½	—	—	—		—	—
1	2/0	114	4½	—	—	—		—	—
1/0	3/0	140	5½	140	5½	178	7	—	—
2/0	4/0	152	6	152	6	190	7½	—	—
3/0	250	165[a]	6½[a]	165[a]	6½[a]	203	8	—	—
4/0	300	178[b]	7[b]	190[c]	7½[c]	216[a]	8½[a]	—	—
250	350	216[d]	8½[d]	229[d]	8½[d]	254	9[b]	254	10
300	400	254[e]	10[e]	254[d]	10[d]	279[b]	11[b]	305	12
350	500	305[e]	12[e]	305[e]	12[e]	330[e]	13[e]	356[d]	14[d]
400	600	330[e]	13[e]	330[e]	13[e]	356[e]	14[e]	381[e]	15[e]
500	700–750	356[e]	14[e]	356[e]	14[e]	381[e]	15[e]	406[e]	16[e]
600	800–900	381[e]	15[e]	406[e]	16[e]	457[e]	18[e]	483[e]	19[e]
700	1000	406[e]	16[e]	457[e]	18[e]	508[e]	20[e]	559[e]	22[e]
750	—	432[e]	17[e]	483[e]	19[e]	559[e]	22[e]	610[e]	24[e]
800	—	457	18	508	20	559	22	610	24
900	—	483	19	559	22	610	24	610	24
1000	—	508	20	—	—	—		—	
1250	—	559	22	—	—	—		—	
1500	—	610	24	—	—	—		—	
1750	—	610	24	—	—	—		—	
2000	—	610	24	—	—	—		—	

1. Bending space at terminals shall be measured in a straight line from the end of the lug or wire connector in a direction perpendicular to the enclosure wall.
2. For removable and lay-in wire terminals intended for only one wire, bending space shall be permitted to be reduced by the following number of millimeters (inches):
[a] 12.7 mm (½ in.) [d] 50.8 mm (2 in.)
[b] 25.4 mm (1 in.) [e] 76.2 mm (3 in.)
[c] 38.1 mm (1½ in.)
3. This column shall be permitted to determine the required wire-bending space for compact stranded aluminum conductors in sizes up to 1000 kcmil and manufactured using AA-8000 series electrical grade aluminum alloy conductor material in accordance with 310.14.

(B) Strength. The design and construction of enclosures within the scope of this article shall be such as to secure ample strength and rigidity. If constructed of sheet steel, the metal thickness shall not be less than 1.35 mm (0.053 in.) uncoated.

(C) Nonmetallic Cabinets. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed or they shall be submitted for approval prior to installation.

312.11 Spacing. The spacing within cabinets and cutout boxes shall comply with 312.11(A) through (D).

(A) General. Spacing within cabinets and cutout boxes shall be sufficient to provide ample room for the distribution of wires and cables placed in them and for a separation between metal parts of devices and apparatus mounted within them as follows.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-168

(1) Base. Other than at points of support, there shall be an airspace of at least 1.59 mm (0.0625 in.) between the base of the device and the wall of any metal cabinet or cutout box in which the device is mounted.

(2) Doors. There shall be an airspace of at least 25.4 mm (1.00 in.) between any live metal part, including live metal parts of enclosed fuses, and the door.

Exception: Where the door is lined with an approved insulating material or is of a thickness of metal not less than 2.36 mm (0.093 in.) uncoated, the airspace shall not be less than 12.7 mm (0.500 in.).

(3) Live Parts. There shall be an airspace of at least 12.7 mm (0.500 in.) between the walls, back, gutter partition, if of metal, or door of any cabinet or cutout box and the nearest exposed current-carrying part of devices mounted within the cabinet where the voltage does not exceed 250. This spacing shall be increased to at least 25.4 mm (1.00 in.) for voltages of 251 to 600, nominal.

Exception: Where the conditions in 312.11(A)(2), Exception, are met, the airspace for nominal voltages from 251 to 600 shall be permitted to be not less than 12.7 mm (0.500 in.).

(B) Switch Clearance. Cabinets and cutout boxes shall be deep enough to allow the closing of the doors when 30-ampere branch-circuit panelboard switches are in any position, when combination cutout switches are in any position, or when other single-throw switches are opened as far as their construction permits.

(C) Wiring Space. Cabinets and cutout boxes that contain devices or apparatus connected within the cabinet or box to more than eight conductors, including those of branch circuits, meter loops, feeder circuits, power circuits, and similar circuits, but not including the supply circuit or a continuation thereof, shall have back-wiring spaces or one or more side-wiring spaces, side gutters, or wiring compartments.

(D) Wiring Space — Enclosure. Side-wiring spaces, side gutters, or side-wiring compartments of cabinets and cutout boxes shall be made tight enclosures by means of covers, barriers, or partitions extending from the bases of the devices contained in the cabinet, to the door, frame, or sides of the cabinet.

Exception: Side-wiring spaces, side gutters, and side-wiring compartments of cabinets shall not be required to be made tight enclosures where those side spaces contain only conductors that enter the cabinet directly opposite to the devices where they terminate.

Partially enclosed back-wiring spaces shall be provided with covers to complete the enclosure. Wiring spaces that are required by 312.11(C) and are exposed when doors are open shall be provided with covers to complete the enclosure. Where adequate space is provided for feed-through conductors and for splices as required in 312.8, additional barriers shall not be required.

ARTICLE 314
Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes; Conduit Bodies; Fittings; and Manholes

I. Scope and General

314.1 Scope. This article covers the installation and use of all boxes and conduit bodies used as outlet, device, junction, or pull boxes, depending on their use, and manholes and other electric enclosures intended for personnel entry. Cast, sheet metal, nonmetallic, and other boxes such as FS, FD, and larger boxes are not classified as conduit bodies. This article also includes installation requirements for fittings used to join raceways and to connect raceways and cables to boxes and conduit bodies.

314.2 Round Boxes. Round boxes shall not be used where conduits or connectors requiring the use of locknuts or bushings are to be connected to the side of the box.

314.3 Nonmetallic Boxes. Nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted only with open wiring on insulators, concealed knob-and-tube wiring, cabled wiring methods with entirely nonmetallic sheaths, flexible cords, and nonmetallic raceways.

Exception No. 1: Where internal bonding means are provided between all entries, nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted to be used with metal raceways or metal-armored cables.

Exception No. 2: Where integral bonding means with a provision for attaching an equipment bonding jumper inside the box are provided between all threaded entries in nonmetallic boxes listed for the purpose, nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted to be used with metal raceways or metal-armored cables.

314.4 Metal Boxes. All metal boxes shall be grounded in accordance with the provisions of Article 250.

314.5 Short-Radius Conduit Bodies. Conduit bodies such as capped elbows and service-entrance elbows that enclose conductors 6 AWG or smaller, and are only intended to enable the installation of the raceway and the contained conductors, shall not contain splices, taps, or devices and

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-169

shall be of sufficient size to provide free space for all conductors enclosed in the conduit body.

II. Installation

314.15 Damp, Wet, or Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

(A) Damp or Wet Locations. In damp or wet locations, boxes, conduit bodies, and fittings shall be placed or equipped so as to prevent moisture from entering or accumulating within the box, conduit body, or fitting. Boxes, conduit bodies, and fittings installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

FPN No. 1: For boxes in floors, see 314.27(C).

FPN No. 2: For protection against corrosion, see 300.6.

(B) Hazardous (Classified) Locations. Installations in hazardous (classified) locations shall conform to Articles 500 through 517.

314.16 Number of Conductors in Outlet, Device, and Junction Boxes, and Conduit Bodies. Boxes and conduit bodies shall be of sufficient size to provide free space for all enclosed conductors. In no case shall the volume of the box, as calculated in 314.16(A), be less than the fill calculation as calculated in 314.16(B). The minimum volume for conduit bodies shall be as calculated in 314.16(C).

The provisions of this section shall not apply to terminal housings supplied with motors.

FPN: For volume requirements of motor terminal housings, see 430.12.

Boxes and conduit bodies enclosing conductors 4 AWG or larger shall also comply with the provisions of 314.28.

(A) Box Volume Calculations. The volume of a wiring enclosure (box) shall be the total volume of the assembled sections, and, where used, the space provided by plaster rings, domed covers, extension rings, and so forth, that are marked with their volume or are made from boxes the dimensions of which are listed in Table 314.16(A).

(1) Standard Boxes. The volumes of standard boxes that are not marked with their volume shall be as given in Table 314.16(A).

(2) Other Boxes. Boxes 1650 cm^3 (100 $in.^3$) or less, other than those described in Table 314.16(A), and nonmetallic boxes shall be durably and legibly marked by the manufacturer with their volume. Boxes described in Table 314.16(A) that have a volume larger than is designated in the table shall be permitted to have their volume marked as required by this section.

(B) Box Fill Calculations. The volumes in paragraphs 314.16(B)(1) through (5), as applicable, shall be added together. No allowance shall be required for small fittings such as locknuts and bushings.

(1) Conductor Fill. Each conductor that originates outside the box and terminates or is spliced within the box shall be counted once, and each conductor that passes through the box without splice or termination shall be counted once. The conductor fill shall be computed using Table 314.16(B). A conductor, no part of which leaves the box, shall not be counted.

Exception: An equipment grounding conductor or conductors or not over four fixture wires smaller than 14 AWG, or both, shall be permitted to be omitted from the calculations where they enter a box from a domed luminaire (fixture) or similar canopy and terminate within that box.

(2) Clamp Fill. Where one or more internal cable clamps, whether factory or field supplied, are present in the box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table 314.16(B) shall be made based on the largest conductor present in the box. No allowance shall be required for a cable connector with its clamping mechanism outside the box.

(3) Support Fittings Fill. Where one or more luminaire (fixture) studs or hickeys are present in the box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table 314.16(B) shall be made for each type of fitting based on the largest conductor present in the box.

(4) Device or Equipment Fill. For each yoke or strap containing one or more devices or equipment, a double volume allowance in accordance with Table 314.16(B) shall be made for each yoke or strap based on the largest conductor connected to a device(s) or equipment supported by that yoke or strap.

(5) Equipment Grounding Conductor Fill. Where one or more equipment grounding conductors or equipment bonding jumpers enter a box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table 314.16(B) shall be made based on the largest equipment grounding conductor or equipment bonding jumper present in the box. Where an additional set of equipment grounding conductors, as permitted by 250.146(D), is present in the box, an additional volume allowance shall be made based on the largest equipment grounding conductor in the additional set.

(C) Conduit Bodies.

(1) General. Conduit bodies enclosing 6 AWG conductors or smaller, other than short-radius conduit bodies as described in 314.5, shall have a cross-sectional area not less than twice the cross-sectional area of the largest conduit or

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-170

Table 314.16(A) Metal Boxes

Box Trade Size			Minimum Volume		Maximum Number of Conductors*						
mm	in.		cm^3	$in.^3$	18	16	14	12	10	8	6
100 × 32	(4 × 1¼)	round/octagonal	205	12.5	8	7	6	5	5	5	2
100 × 38	(4 × 1½)	round/octagonal	254	15.5	10	8	7	6	6	5	3
100 × 54	(4 × 2⅛)	round/octagonal	353	21.5	14	12	10	9	8	7	4
100 × 32	(4 × 1¼)	square	295	18.0	12	10	9	8	7	6	3
100 × 38	(4 × 1½)	square	344	21.0	14	12	10	9	8	7	4
100 × 54	(4 × 2⅛)	square	497	30.3	20	17	15	13	12	10	6
120 × 32	(4 11/16 × 1¼)	square	418	25.5	17	14	12	11	10	8	5
120 × 38	(4 11/16 × 1½)	square	484	29.5	19	16	14	13	11	9	5
120 × 54	(4 11/16 × 2⅛)	square	689	42.0	28	24	21	18	16	14	8
75 × 50 × 38	(3 × 2 × 1½)	device	123	7.5	5	4	3	3	3	2	1
75 × 50 × 50	(3 × 2 × 2)	device	164	10.0	6	5	5	4	4	3	2
75 × 50 × 57	(3 × 2 × 2¼)	device	172	10.5	7	6	5	4	4	3	2
75 × 50 × 65	(3 × 2 × 2½)	device	205	12.5	8	7	6	5	5	4	2
75 × 50 × 70	(3 × 2 × 2¾)	device	230	14.0	9	8	7	6	5	4	2
75 × 50 × 90	(3 × 2 × 3½)	device	295	18.0	12	10	9	8	7	6	3
100 × 54 × 38	(4 × 2⅛ × 1½)	device	169	10.3	6	5	5	4	4	3	2
100 × 54 × 48	(4 × 2⅛ × 1⅞)	device	213	13.0	8	7	6	5	5	4	2
100 × 54 × 54	(4 × 2⅛ × 2⅛)	device	238	14.5	9	8	7	6	5	4	2
95 × 50 × 65	(3¾ × 2 × 2½)	masonry box/gang	230	14.0	9	8	7	6	5	4	2
95 × 50 × 90	(3¾ × 2 × 3½)	masonry box/gang	344	21.0	14	12	10	9	8	7	4
min. 44.5 depth	FS — single cover/gang (1¾)		221	13.5	9	7	6	6	5	4	2
min. 60.3 depth	FD — single cover/gang (2⅜)		295	18.0	12	10	9	8	7	6	3
min. 44.5 depth	FS — multiple cover/gang (1¾)		295	18.0	12	10	9	8	7	6	3
min. 60.3 depth	FD — multiple cover/gang (2⅜)		395	24.0	16	13	12	10	9	8	4

*Where no volume allowances are required by 314.16(B)(2) through 314.16(B)(5).

Table 314.16(B) Volume Allowance Required per Conductor

Size of Conductor (AWG)	Free Space Within Box for Each Conductor	
	cm^3	$in.^3$
18	24.6	1.50
16	28.7	1.75
14	32.8	2.00
12	36.9	2.25
10	41.0	2.50
8	49.2	3.00
6	81.9	5.00

tubing to which it is attached. The maximum number of conductors permitted shall be the maximum number permitted by Table 1 of Chapter 9 for the conduit or tubing to which it is attached.

(2) With Splices, Taps, or Devices. Only those conduit bodies that are durably and legibly marked by the manufacturer with their volume shall be permitted to contain splices, taps, or devices. The maximum number of conductors shall be computed in accordance with 314.16(B). Conduit bodies shall be supported in a rigid and secure manner.

314.17 Conductors Entering Boxes, Conduit Bodies, or Fittings. Conductors entering boxes, conduit bodies, or fittings shall be protected from abrasion and shall comply with 314.17(A) through (D).

(A) Openings to Be Closed. Openings through which conductors enter shall be adequately closed.

(B) Metal Boxes and Conduit Bodies. Where metal boxes or conduit bodies are installed with open wiring or concealed knob-and-tube wiring, conductors shall enter through insulating bushings or, in dry locations, through flexible tubing extending from the last insulating support to

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-171

not less than 6 mm (¼ in.) inside the box and beyond any cable clamps. Except as provided in 300.15(C), the wiring shall be firmly secured to the box or conduit body. Where raceway or cable is installed with metal boxes or conduit bodies, the raceway or cable shall be secured to such boxes and conduit bodies.

(C) Nonmetallic Boxes and Conduit Bodies. Nonmetallic boxes and conduit bodies shall be suitable for the lowest temperature-rated conductor entering the box. Where nonmetallic boxes and conduit bodies are used with open wiring or concealed knob-and-tube wiring, the conductors shall enter the box through individual holes. Where flexible tubing is used to enclose the conductors, the tubing shall extend from the last insulating support to not less than 6 mm (¼ in.) inside the box and beyond any cable clamp. Where nonmetallic-sheathed cable or multiconductor Type UF cable is used, the sheath shall extend not less than 6 mm (¼ in.) inside the box and beyond any cable clamp. In all instances, all permitted wiring methods shall be secured to the boxes.

Exception: Where nonmetallic-sheathed cable or multiconductor Type UF cable is used with single gang boxes not larger than a nominal size 57 mm × 100 mm (2¼ in. × 4 in.) mounted in walls or ceilings, and where the cable is fastened within 200 mm (8 in.) of the box measured along the sheath and where the sheath extends through a cable knockout not less than 6 mm (¼ in.), securing the cable to the box shall not be required. Multiple cable entries shall be permitted in a single cable knockout opening.

(D) Conductors 4 AWG or Larger. Installation shall comply with 300.4(F).

FPN: See 110.12(A) for requirements on closing unused cable and raceway knockout openings.

314.19 Boxes Enclosing Flush Devices. Boxes used to enclose flush devices shall be of such design that the devices will be completely enclosed on back and sides and substantial support for the devices will be provided. Screws for supporting the box shall not be used in attachment of the device contained therein.

314.20 In Wall or Ceiling. In walls or ceilings with a surface of concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, or other noncombustible material, boxes shall be installed so that the front edge of the box will not be set back of the finished surface more than 6 mm (¼ in.).

In walls and ceilings constructed of wood or other combustible surface material, boxes shall be flush with the finished surface or project therefrom.

314.21 Repairing Plaster and Drywall or Plasterboard. Plaster, drywall, or plasterboard surfaces that are broken or incomplete shall be repaired so there will be no gaps or open spaces greater than 3 mm (⅛ in.) at the edge of the box or fitting.

314.22 Exposed Surface Extensions. Surface extensions from a flush-mounted box shall be made by mounting and mechanically securing an extension ring over the flush box. Equipment grounding and bonding shall be in accordance with Article 250.

Exception: A surface extension shall be permitted to be made from the cover of a flush-mounted box where the cover is designed so it is unlikely to fall off or be removed if its securing means becomes loose. The wiring method shall be flexible for a length sufficient to permit removal of the cover and provide access to the box interior, and arranged so that any bonding or grounding continuity is independent of the connection between the box and cover.

314.23 Supports. Enclosures within the scope of this article shall be supported in accordance with one or more of the provisions in 314.23(A) through (H).

(A) Surface Mounting. An enclosure mounted on a building or other surface shall be rigidly and securely fastened in place. If the surface does not provide rigid and secure support, additional support in accordance with other provisions of this section shall be provided.

(B) Structural Mounting. An enclosure supported from a structural member of a building or from grade shall be rigidly supported either directly or by using a metal, polymeric, or wood brace.

(1) Nails and Screws. Nails and screws, where used as a fastening means, shall be attached by using brackets on the outside of the enclosure, or they shall pass through the interior within 6 mm (¼ in.) of the back or ends of the enclosure.

(2) Braces. Metal braces shall be protected against corrosion and formed from metal that is not less than 0.51 mm (0.020 in.) thick uncoated. Wood braces shall have a cross section not less than nominal 25 mm × 50 mm (1 in. × 2 in.). Wood braces in wet locations shall be treated for the conditions. Polymeric braces shall be identified as being suitable for the use.

(C) Mounting in Finished Surfaces. An enclosure mounted in a finished surface shall be rigidly secured thereto by clamps, anchors, or fittings identified for the application.

(D) Suspended Ceilings. An enclosure mounted to structural or supporting elements of a suspended ceiling shall be not more than 1650 cm^3 (100 $in.^3$) in size and shall be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-172

securely fastened in place in accordance with either (D)(1) or (D)(2).

(1) Framing Members. An enclosure shall be fastened to the framing members by mechanical means such as bolts, screws, or rivets, or by the use of clips or other securing means identified for use with the type of ceiling framing member(s) and enclosure(s) employed. The framing members shall be adequately supported and securely fastened to each other and to the building structure.

(2) Support Wires. The installation shall comply with the provisions of 300.11(A). The enclosure shall be secured, using methods identified for the purpose, to ceiling support wire(s), including any additional support wire(s) installed for that purpose. Support wire(s) used for enclosure support shall be fastened at each end so as to be taut within the ceiling cavity.

(E) Raceway Supported Enclosure, Without Devices, Luminaires (Fixtures), or Lampholders. An enclosure that does not contain a device(s) other than splicing devices or support a luminaire(s) [fixture(s)], lampholder, or other equipment and is supported by entering raceways shall not exceed 1650 cm^3 (100 $in.^3$) in size. It shall have threaded entries or have hubs identified for the purpose. It shall be supported by two or more conduits threaded wrenchtight into the enclosure or hubs. Each conduit shall be secured within 900 mm (3 ft) of the enclosure, or within 450 mm (18 in.) of the enclosure if all conduit entries are on the same side.

Exception: Rigid metal, intermediate metal, or rigid nonmetallic conduit or electrical metallic tubing shall be permitted to support a conduit body of any size, including a conduit body constructed with only one conduit entry, provided the trade size of the conduit body is not larger than the largest trade size of the conduit or electrical metallic tubing.

(F) Raceway Supported Enclosures, with Devices, Luminaires (Fixtures), or Lampholders. An enclosure that contains a device(s) or supports a luminaire(s) [fixture(s)], lampholder, or other equipment and is supported by entering raceways shall not exceed 1650 cm^3(100 $in.^3$) in size. It shall have threaded entries or have hubs identified for the purpose. It shall be supported by two or more conduits threaded wrenchtight into the enclosure or hubs. Each conduit shall be secured within 450 mm (18 in.) of the enclosure.

Exception No. 1: Rigid metal or intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to support a conduit body of any size, including a conduit body constructed with only one conduit entry, provided the trade size of the conduit body is not larger than the largest trade size of the conduit.

Exception No. 2: An unbroken length(s) of rigid or intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to support a box used for luminaire (fixture) or lampholder support, or to support a wiring enclosure that is an integral part of a luminaire (fixture) and used in lieu of a box in accordance with 300.15(B), where all of the following conditions are met.

(a) The conduit is securely fastened at a point so that the length of conduit beyond the last point of conduit support does not exceed 900 mm (3 ft).

(b) The unbroken conduit length before the last point of conduit support is 300 mm (12 in.) or greater, and that portion of the conduit is securely fastened at some point not less than 300 mm (12 in.) from its last point of support.

(c) Where accessible to unqualified persons, the luminaire (fixture) or lampholder, measured to its lowest point, is at least 2.5 m (8 ft) above grade or standing area and at least 900 mm (3 ft) measured horizontally to the 2.5 m (8 ft) elevation from windows, doors, porches, fire escapes, or similar locations.

(d) A luminaire (fixture) supported by a single conduit does not exceed 300 mm (12 in.) in any direction from the point of conduit entry.

(e) The weight supported by any single conduit does not exceed 9 kg (20 lb).

(f) At the luminaire (fixture) or lampholder end, the conduit(s) is threaded wrenchtight into the box, conduit body, or integral wiring enclosure, or into hubs identified for the purpose. Where a box or conduit body is used for support, the luminaire (fixture) shall be secured directly to the box or conduit body, or through a threaded conduit nipple not over 75 mm (3 in.) long.

(G) Enclosures in Concrete or Masonry. An enclosure supported by embedment shall be identified as suitably protected from corrosion and securely embedded in concrete or masonry.

(H) Pendant Boxes. An enclosure supported by a pendant shall comply with 314.23(H)(1) or (2).

(1) Flexible Cord. A box shall be supported from a multiconductor cord or cable in an approved manner that protects the conductors against strain, such as a strain-relief connector threaded into a box with a hub.

(2) Conduit. A box supporting lampholders or luminaires (lighting fixtures), or wiring enclosures within luminaires (fixtures) used in lieu of boxes in accordance with 300.15(B), shall be supported by rigid or intermediate metal conduit stems. For stems longer than 450 mm (18 in.), the stems shall be connected to the wiring system with flexible fittings suitable for the location. At the luminaire (fixture) end, the conduit(s) shall be threaded wrenchtight into the box or wiring enclosure, or into hubs identified for the purpose.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-173

Where supported by only a single conduit, the threaded joints shall be prevented from loosening by the use of setscrews or other effective means, or the luminaire (fixture), at any point, shall be at least 2.5 m (8 ft) above grade or standing area and at least 900 mm (3 ft) measured horizontally to the 2.5 m (8 ft) elevation from windows, doors, porches, fire escapes, or similar locations. A luminaire (fixture) supported by a single conduit shall not exceed 300 mm (12 in.) in any horizontal direction from the point of conduit entry.

314.24 Depth of Outlet Boxes. No box shall have an internal depth of less than 12.7 mm (½ in.). Boxes intended to enclose flush devices shall have an internal depth of not less than 23.8 mm (15/16 in.).

314.25 Covers and Canopies. In completed installations, each box shall have a cover, faceplate, lampholder, or luminaire (fixture) canopy, except where the installation complies with 410.14(B).

(A) Nonmetallic or Metal Covers and Plates. Nonmetallic or metal covers and plates shall be permitted. Where metal covers or plates are used, they shall comply with the grounding requirements of 250.110.

FPN: For additional grounding requirements, see 410.18(A) for metal luminaire (fixture) canopies, and 404.12 and 406.5(B) for metal faceplates.

(B) Exposed Combustible Wall or Ceiling Finish. Where a luminaire (fixture) canopy or pan is used, any combustible wall or ceiling finish exposed between the edge of the canopy or pan and the outlet box shall be covered with noncombustible material.

(C) Flexible Cord Pendants. Covers of outlet boxes and conduit bodies having holes through which flexible cord pendants pass shall be provided with bushings designed for the purpose or shall have smooth, well-rounded surfaces on which the cords may bear. So-called hard rubber or composition bushings shall not be used.

314.27 Outlet Boxes.

(A) Boxes at Luminaire (Lighting Fixture) Outlets. Boxes used at luminaire (lighting fixture) or lampholder outlets shall be designed for the purpose. At every outlet used exclusively for lighting, the box shall be designed or installed so that a luminaire (lighting fixture) may be attached.

Exception: A wall-mounted luminaire (fixture) weighing not more than 3 kg (6 lb) shall be permitted to be supported on other boxes or plaster rings that are secured to other boxes, provided the luminaire (fixture) or its supporting yoke is secured to the box with no fewer than two No. 6 or larger screws.

(B) Maximum Luminaire (Fixture) Weight. Outlet boxes or fittings installed as required by 314.23 shall be permitted to support luminaires (lighting fixtures) weighing 23 kg (50 lb) or less. A luminaire (lighting fixture) that weighs more than 23 kg (50 lb) shall be supported independently of the outlet box unless the outlet box is listed for the weight to be supported.

(C) Floor Boxes. Boxes listed specifically for this application shall be used for receptacles located in the floor.

Exception: Where the authority having jurisdiction judges them free from likely exposure to physical damage, moisture, and dirt, boxes located in elevated floors of show windows and similar locations shall be permitted to be other than those listed for floor applications. Receptacles and covers shall be listed as an assembly for this type of location.

(D) Boxes at Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fan Outlets. Where a box is used as the sole support of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan, the box shall be listed for the application and for the weight of the fan to be supported. The installation shall comply with 422.18.

314.28 Pull and Junction Boxes and Conduit Bodies. Boxes and conduit bodies used as pull or junction boxes shall comply with 314.28(A) through (D).

Exception: Terminal housings supplied with motors shall comply with the provisions of 430.12.

(A) Minimum Size. For raceways containing conductors of 4 AWG or larger, and for cables containing conductors of 4 AWG or larger, the minimum dimensions of pull or junction boxes installed in a raceway or cable run shall comply with the following. Where an enclosure dimension is to be calculated based on the diameter of entering raceways, the diameter shall be the metric designator (trade size) expressed in the units of measurement employed.

(1) Straight Pulls. In straight pulls, the length of the box shall not be less than eight times the metric designator (trade size) of the largest raceway.

(2) Angle or U Pulls. Where splices or where angle or U pulls are made, the distance between each raceway entry inside the box and the opposite wall of the box shall not be less than six times the metric designator (trade size) of the largest raceway in a row. This distance shall be increased for additional entries by the amount of the sum of the diameters of all other raceway entries in the same row on the same wall of the box. Each row shall be calculated indi-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-174

vidually, and the single row that provides the maximum distance shall be used.

Exception: Where a raceway or cable entry is in the wall of a box or conduit body opposite a removable cover, the distance from that wall to the cover shall be permitted to comply with the distance required for one wire per terminal in Table 312.6(A).

The distance between raceway entries enclosing the same conductor shall not be less than six times the metric designator (trade size) of the larger raceway.

When transposing cable size into raceway size in 314.28(A)(1) and (A)(2), the minimum metric designator (trade size) raceway required for the number and size of conductors in the cable shall be used.

(3) Smaller Dimensions. Boxes or conduit bodies of dimensions less than those required in 314.28(A)(1) and (A)(2) shall be permitted for installations of combinations of conductors that are less than the maximum conduit or tubing fill (of conduits or tubing being used) permitted by Table 1 of Chapter 9, provided the box or conduit body has been listed for and is permanently marked with the maximum number and maximum size of conductors permitted.

(B) Conductors in Pull or Junction Boxes. In pull boxes or junction boxes having any dimension over 1.8 m (6 ft), all conductors shall be cabled or racked up in an approved manner.

(C) Covers. All pull boxes, junction boxes, and conduit bodies shall be provided with covers compatible with the box or conduit body construction and suitable for the conditions of use. Where metal covers are used, they shall comply with the grounding requirements of 250.110. An extension from the cover of an exposed box shall comply with 314.22, Exception.

(D) Permanent Barriers. Where permanent barriers are installed in a box, each section shall be considered as a separate box.

314.29 Boxes and Conduit Bodies to Be Accessible. Boxes and conduit bodies shall be installed so that the wiring contained in them can be rendered accessible without removing any part of the building or, in underground circuits, without excavating sidewalks, paving, earth, or other substance that is to be used to establish the finished grade.

Exception: Listed boxes shall be permitted where covered by gravel, light aggregate, or noncohesive granulated soil if their location is effectively identified and accessible for excavation.

III. Construction Specifications

314.40 Metal Boxes, Conduit Bodies, and Fittings.

(A) Corrosion Resistant. Metal boxes, conduit bodies, and fittings shall be corrosion resistant or shall be well-galvanized, enameled, or otherwise properly coated inside and out to prevent corrosion.

FPN: See 300.6 for limitation in the use of boxes and fittings protected from corrosion solely by enamel.

(B) Thickness of Metal. Sheet steel boxes not over 1650 cm^3 (100 $in.^3$) in size shall be made from steel not less than 1.59 mm (0.0625 in.) thick. The wall of a malleable iron box or conduit body and a die-cast or permanent-mold cast aluminum, brass, bronze, or zinc box or conduit body shall not be less than 2.38 mm (3⁄32 in.) thick. Other cast metal boxes or conduit bodies shall have a wall thickness not less than 3.17 mm (1⁄8 in.).

Exception No. 1: Listed boxes and conduit bodies shown to have equivalent strength and characteristics shall be permitted to be made of thinner or other metals.

Exception No. 2: The walls of listed short radius conduit bodies, as covered in 314.5, shall be permitted to be made of thinner metal.

(C) Metal Boxes Over 1650 cm^3 (100 $in.^3$). Metal boxes over 1650 cm^3 (100 $in.^3$) in size shall be constructed so as to be of ample strength and rigidity. If of sheet steel, the metal thickness shall not be less than 1.35 mm (0.053 in.) uncoated.

(D) Grounding Provisions. A means shall be provided in each metal box for the connection of an equipment grounding conductor. The means shall be permitted to be a tapped hole or equivalent.

314.41 Covers. Metal covers shall be of the same material as the box or conduit body with which they are used, or they shall be lined with firmly attached insulating material that is not less than 0.79 mm (1⁄32 in.) thick, or they shall be listed for the purpose. Metal covers shall be the same thickness as the boxes or conduit body for which they are used, or they shall be listed for the purpose. Covers of porcelain or other approved insulating materials shall be permitted if of such form and thickness as to afford the required protection and strength.

314.42 Bushings. Covers of outlet boxes and conduit bodies having holes through which flexible cord pendants may pass shall be provided with approved bushings or shall have smooth, well-rounded surfaces on which the cord may bear. Where individual conductors pass through a metal cover, a separate hole equipped with a bushing of suitable insulating material shall be provided for each conductor.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-175

Such separate holes shall be connected by a slot as required by 300.20.

314.43 Nonmetallic Boxes. Provisions for supports or other mounting means for nonmetallic boxes shall be outside of the box, or the box shall be constructed so as to prevent contact between the conductors in the box and the supporting screws.

314.44 Marking. All boxes and conduit bodies, covers, extension rings, plaster rings, and the like shall be durably and legibly marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark.

IV. Manholes and Other Electric Enclosures Intended for Personnel Entry

314.50 General. Electric enclosures intended for personnel entry and specifically fabricated for this purpose shall be of sufficient size to provide safe work space about electric equipment with live parts that is likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized. They shall have sufficient size to permit ready installation or withdrawal of the conductors employed without damage to the conductors or to their insulation. They shall comply with the provisions of this part.

Exception: Where electric enclosures covered by Part IV of this article are part of an industrial wiring system operating under conditions of maintenance and supervision that ensure only qualified persons monitor and supervise the system, they shall be permitted to be designed and installed in accordance with appropriate engineering practice. If required by the authority having jurisdiction, design documentation shall be provided.

314.51 Strength. Manholes, vaults, and their means of access shall be designed under qualified engineering supervision and shall withstand all loads likely to be imposed on the structures.

FPN: See ANSI C2-1997, *National Electrical Safety Code*, for additional information on the loading that can be expected to bear on underground enclosures.

314.52 Cabling Work Space. A clear work space not less than 900 mm (3 ft) wide shall be provided where cables are located on both sides, and not less than 750 mm (2½ ft) where cables are only on one side. The vertical headroom shall not be less than 1.8 m (6 ft) unless the opening is within 300 mm (1 ft), measured horizontally, of the adjacent interior side wall of the enclosure.

Exception: A manhole containing only one or more of the following shall be permitted to have one of the horizontal work space dimensions reduced to 600 mm (2 ft) where the other horizontal clear work space is increased so the sum of the two dimensions is not less than 1.8 m (6 ft):

(a) Optical fiber cables as covered in Article 770.
(b) Power-limited fire alarm circuits supplied in accordance with 760.41.
(c) Class 2 or Class 3 remote-control and signaling circuits, or both, supplied in accordance with 725.41.

314.53 Equipment Work Space. Where electric equipment with live parts that is likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized is installed in a manhole, vault, or other enclosure designed for personnel access, the work space and associated requirements in 110.26 shall be met for installations operating at 600 volts or less. Where the installation is over 600 volts, the work space and associated requirements in 110.34 shall be met. A manhole access cover that weighs over 45 kg (100 lb) shall be considered as meeting the requirements of 110.34(C).

314.54 Bending Space for Conductors. Bending space for conductors operating at 600 volts or below shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of 314.28(A). Conductors operating over 600 volts shall be provided with bending space in accordance with 314.71(A) and 314.71(B), as applicable. All conductors shall be cabled, racked up, or arranged in an approved manner that provides ready and safe access for persons to enter for installation and maintenance.

Exception: Where 314.71(B) applies, each row or column of ducts on one wall of the enclosure shall be calculated individually, and the single row or column that provides the maximum distance shall be used.

314.55 Access to Manholes.

(A) Dimensions. Rectangular access openings shall not be less than 650 mm × 550 mm (26 in. × 22 in.). Round access openings in a manhole shall not be less than 650 mm (26 in.) in diameter.

Exception: A manhole that has a fixed ladder that does not obstruct the opening or that contains only one or more of the following shall be permitted to reduce the minimum cover diameter to 600 mm (2 ft):

(a) Optical fiber cables as covered in Article 770.
(b) Power-limited fire alarm circuits supplied in accordance with 760.41.
(c) Class 2 or Class 3 remote-control and signaling circuits, or both, supplied in accordance with 725.41.

(B) Obstructions. Manhole openings shall be free of protrusions that could injure personnel or prevent ready egress.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-176

(C) Location. Manhole openings for personnel shall be located where they are not directly above electric equipment or conductors in the enclosure. Where this is not practicable, either a protective barrier or a fixed ladder shall be provided.

(D) Covers. Covers shall be over 45 kg (100 lb) or otherwise designed to require the use of tools to open. They shall be designed or restrained so they cannot fall into the manhole or protrude sufficiently to contact electrical conductors or equipment within the manhole.

(E) Marking. Manhole covers shall have an identifying mark or logo that prominently indicates their function, such as "electric."

314.56 Access to Vaults and Tunnels.

(A) Location. Access openings for personnel shall be located where they are not directly above electric equipment or conductors in the enclosure. Other openings shall be permitted over equipment to facilitate installation, maintenance, or replacement of equipment.

(B) Locks. In addition to compliance with the requirements of 110.34(C), if applicable, access openings for personnel shall be arranged so that a person on the inside can exit when the access door is locked from the outside, or in the case of normally locking by padlock, the locking arrangement shall be such that the padlock can be closed on the locking system to prevent locking from the outside.

314.57 Ventilation. Where manholes, tunnels, and vaults have communicating openings into enclosed areas used by the public, ventilation to open air shall be provided wherever practicable.

314.58 Guarding. Where conductors or equipment, or both, could be contacted by objects falling or being pushed through a ventilating grating, both conductors and live parts shall be protected in accordance with the requirements of 110.27(A)(2) or 110.31(B)(1), depending on the voltage.

314.59 Fixed Ladders. Fixed ladders shall be corrosion resistant.

V. Pull and Junction Boxes for Use on Systems Over 600 Volts, Nominal

314.70 General. Where pull and junction boxes are used on systems over 600 volts, the installation shall comply with the provisions of Part V and also with the following general provisions of this article:

(1) In Part I, 314.2, 314.3, and 314.4

(2) In Part II, 314.15; 314.17; 314.20; 314.23(A), (B), or (G); 314.28(B); and 314.29

(3) In Part III, 314.40(A) and (C) and 314.41

314.71 Size of Pull and Junction Boxes. Pull and junction boxes shall provide adequate space and dimensions for the installation of conductors, and they shall comply with the specific requirements of this section.

Exception: Terminal housings supplied with motors shall comply with the provisions of 430.12.

(A) For Straight Pulls. The length of the box shall not be less than 48 times the outside diameter, over sheath, of the largest shielded or lead-covered conductor or cable entering the box. The length shall not be less than 32 times the outside diameter of the largest nonshielded conductor or cable.

(B) For Angle or U Pulls.

(1) Distance to Opposite Wall. The distance between each cable or conductor entry inside the box and the opposite wall of the box shall not be less than 36 times the outside diameter, over sheath, of the largest cable or conductor. This distance shall be increased for additional entries by the amount of the sum of the outside diameters, over sheath, of all other cables or conductor entries through the same wall of the box.

Exception No. 1: Where a conductor or cable entry is in the wall of a box opposite a removable cover, the distance from that wall to the cover shall be permitted to be not less than the bending radius for the conductors as provided in 300.34.

Exception No. 2: Where cables are nonshielded and not lead covered, the distance of 36 times the outside diameter shall be permitted to be reduced to 24 times the outside diameter.

(2) Distance Between Entry and Exit. The distance between a cable or conductor entry and its exit from the box shall not be less than 36 times the outside diameter, over sheath, of that cable or conductor.

Exception: Where cables are nonshielded and not lead covered, the distance of 36 times the outside diameter shall be permitted to be reduced to 24 times the outside diameter.

(C) Removable Sides. One or more sides of any pull box shall be removable.

314.72 Construction and Installation Requirements.

(A) Corrosion Protection. Boxes shall be made of material inherently resistant to corrosion or shall be suitably

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-177

protected, both internally and externally, by enameling, galvanizing, plating, or other means.

(B) Passing Through Partitions. Suitable bushings, shields, or fittings having smooth, rounded edges shall be provided where conductors or cables pass through partitions and at other locations where necessary.

(C) Complete Enclosure. Boxes shall provide a complete enclosure for the contained conductors or cables.

(D) Wiring Is Accessible. Boxes shall be installed so that the wiring is accessible without removing any part of the building. Working space shall be provided in accordance with 110.34.

(E) Suitable Covers. Boxes shall be closed by suitable covers securely fastened in place. Underground box covers that weigh over 45 kg (100 lb) shall be considered meeting this requirement. Covers for boxes shall be permanently marked "DANGER — HIGH VOLTAGE — KEEP OUT." The marking shall be on the outside of the box cover and shall be readily visible. Letters shall be block type and at least 13 mm (½ in.) in height.

(F) Suitable for Expected Handling. Boxes and their covers shall be capable of withstanding the handling to which they may likely be subjected.

ARTICLE 320
Armored Cable: Type AC

I. General

320.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for armored cable, Type AC.

320.2 Definition.

Armored Cable, Type AC. A fabricated assembly of insulated conductors in a flexible metallic enclosure. See 320.100.

II. Installation

320.10 Uses Permitted. Where not subject to physical damage, Type AC cable shall be permitted as follows:

(1) In both exposed and concealed work
(2) In cable trays where identified for such use
(3) In dry locations
(4) Embedded in plaster finish on brick or other masonry, except in damp or wet locations
(5) To be run or fished in the air voids of masonry block or tile walls where such walls are not exposed or subject to excessive moisture or dampness

320.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type AC cable shall not be used as follows:

(1) In theaters and similar locations, except where permitted in 518.4
(2) In motion picture studios
(3) In hazardous (classified) locations except where permitted in
   a. 501.4(B), Exception
   b. 502.4(B), Exception No. 1
   c. 504.20
(4) Where exposed to corrosive fumes or vapors
(5) In storage battery rooms
(6) In hoistways, or on elevators or escalators, except where permitted in 620.21
(7) In commercial garages where prohibited in 511.4 and 511.7

320.15 Exposed Work. Exposed runs of cable, except as provided in 300.11(A), shall closely follow the surface of the building finish or of running boards. Exposed runs shall also be permitted to be installed on the underside of joists where supported at each joist and located so as not to be subject to physical damage.

320.17 Through or Parallel to Framing Members. Type AC cable shall be protected in accordance with 300.4 where installed through or parallel to framing members.

320.23 In Accessible Attics. Type AC cables in accessible attics or roof spaces shall be installed as specified in 320.23(A) and (B).

(A) Where Run Across the Top of Floor Joists. Where run across the top of floor joists, or within 2.1 m (7 ft) of floor or floor joists across the face of rafters or studding, in attics and roof spaces that are accessible, the cable shall be protected by substantial guard strips that are at least as high as the cable. Where this space is not accessible by permanent stairs or ladders, protection shall only be required within 1.8 m (6 ft) of the nearest edge of the scuttle hole or attic entrance.

(B) Cable Installed Parallel to Framing Members. Where the cable is installed parallel to the sides of rafters, studs, or floor joists, neither guard strips nor running boards shall be required, and the installation shall also comply with 300.4(D).

320.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Type AC cable shall be made so that the cable will not be damaged. The radius of

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-178

the curve of the inner edge of any bend shall not be less than five times the diameter of the Type AC cable.

320.30 Securing and Supporting. Type AC cable shall be secured by staples, cable ties, straps, hangers, or similar fittings designed and installed so as not to damage the cable at intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft) and within 300 mm (12 in.) of every outlet box, junction box, cabinet, or fitting.

(A) Horizontal Runs Through Holes and Notches. In other than vertical runs, cables installed in accordance with 300.4 shall be considered supported and secured where such support does not exceed 1.4-m (4½-ft) intervals and the armored cable is securely fastened in place by an approved means within 300 mm (12 in.) of each box, cabinet, conduit body, or other armored cable termination.

(B) Unsupported Cables. Type AC cable shall be permitted to be unsupported where the cable:

(1) Is fished between access points, where concealed in finished buildings or structures and supporting is impracticable; or
(2) Is not more than 600 mm (2 ft) in length at terminals where flexibility is necessary; or
(3) Is not more than 1.8 m (6 ft) from the last point of support for connections within an accessible ceiling to luminaire(s) [(lighting fixture(s)] or equipment.

(C) Cable Trays. Type AC cable installed in cable trays shall comply with 392.8(B).

320.40 Boxes and Fittings. At all points where the armor of AC cable terminates, a fitting shall be provided to protect wires from abrasion, unless the design of the outlet boxes or fittings is such as to afford equivalent protection, and, in addition, an insulating bushing or its equivalent protection shall be provided between the conductors and the armor. The connector or clamp by which the Type AC cable is fastened to boxes or cabinets shall be of such design that the insulating bushing or its equivalent will be visible for inspection. Where change is made from Type AC cable to other cable or raceway wiring methods, a box, fitting, or conduit body shall be installed at junction points as required in 300.15.

320.80 Ampacity. The ampacity shall be determined by 310.15.

(A) Thermal Insulation. Armored cable installed in thermal insulation shall have conductors rated at 90°C (194°F). The ampacity of cable installed in these applications shall be that of 60°C (140°F) conductors.

(B) Cable Tray. The ampacity of Type AC cable installed in cable tray shall be determined in accordance with 392.11.

III. Construction Specifications

320.100 Construction. Type AC cable shall have an armor of flexible metal tape and shall have an internal bonding strip of copper or aluminum in intimate contact with the armor for its entire length.

320.104 Conductors. Insulated conductors shall be of a type listed in Table 310.13 or those identified for use in this cable. In addition, the conductors shall have an overall moisture-resistant and fire-retardant fibrous covering. For Type ACT, a moisture-resistant fibrous covering shall be required only on the individual conductors.

320.108 Equipment Grounding. Type AC cable shall provide an adequate path for equipment grounding as required by 250.4(A)(5) or 250.4(B)(4).

320.120 Marking. The cable shall be marked in accordance with 310.11, except that Type AC shall have ready identification of the manufacturer by distinctive external markings on the cable sheath throughout its entire length.

ARTICLE 322
Flat Cable Assemblies: Type FC

I. General

322.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for flat cable assemblies, Type FC.

322.2 Definition.

Flat Cable Assembly, Type FC. An assembly of parallel conductors formed integrally with an insulating material web specifically designed for field installation in surface metal raceway.

II. Installation

322.10 Uses Permitted. Flat cable assemblies shall be permitted only as follows:

(1) As branch circuits to supply suitable tap devices for lighting, small appliances, or small power loads. The rating of the branch circuit shall not exceed 30 amperes.
(2) Where installed for exposed work.
(3) In locations where they will not be subjected to physical damage. Where a flat cable assembly is installed less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above the floor or fixed working

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-179

platform, it shall be protected by a cover identified for the use.

(4) In surface metal raceways identified for the use. The channel portion of the surface metal raceway systems shall be installed as complete systems before the flat cable assemblies are pulled into the raceways.

322.12 Uses Not Permitted. Flat cable assemblies shall not be used as follows:

(1) Where subject to corrosive vapors unless suitable for the application
(2) In hoistways or on elevators or escalators
(3) In any hazardous (classified) location
(4) Outdoors or in wet or damp locations unless identified for the use

322.30 Securing and Supporting. The flat cable assemblies shall be supported by means of their special design features, within the surface metal raceways.

The surface metal raceways shall be supported as required for the specific raceway to be installed.

322.40 Boxes and Fittings.

(A) Dead Ends. Each flat cable assembly dead end shall be terminated in an end-cap device identified for the use.

The dead-end fitting for the enclosing surface metal raceway shall be identified for the use.

(B) Luminaire (Fixture) Hangers. Luminaire (fixture) hangers installed with the flat cable assemblies shall be identified for the use.

(C) Fittings. Fittings to be installed with flat cable assemblies shall be designed and installed to prevent physical damage to the cable assemblies.

(D) Extensions. All extensions from flat cable assemblies shall be made by approved wiring methods, within the junction boxes, installed at either end of the flat cable assembly runs.

322.56 Splices and Taps.

(A) Splices. Splices shall be made in listed junction boxes.

(B) Taps. Taps shall be made between any phase conductor and the grounded conductor or any other phase conductor by means of devices and fittings identified for the use. Tap devices shall be rated at not less than 15 amperes, or more than 300 volts to ground, and they shall be color-coded in accordance with the requirements of 322.120(C).

III. Construction

322.100 Construction. Flat cable assemblies shall consist of two, three, four, or five conductors.

322.104 Conductors. Flat cable assemblies shall have conductors of 10 AWG special stranded copper wires.

322.112 Insulation. The entire flat cable assembly shall be formed to provide a suitable insulation covering all the conductors and using one of the materials recognized in Table 310.13 for general branch-circuit wiring.

322.120 Marking.

(A) Temperature Rating. In addition to the provisions of 310.11, Type FC cable shall have the temperature rating durably marked on the surface at intervals not exceeding 600 mm (24 in.).

(B) Identification of Grounded Conductor. The grounded conductor shall be identified throughout its length by means of a distinctive and durable white or gray marking.

FPN: The color gray may have been used in the past as an ungrounded conductor. Care should be taken when working on existing systems.

(C) Terminal Block Identification. Terminal blocks identified for the use shall have distinctive and durable markings for color or word coding. The grounded conductor section shall have a white marking or other suitable designation. The next adjacent section of the terminal block shall have a black marking or other suitable designation. The next section shall have a red marking or other suitable designation. The final or outer section, opposite the grounded conductor section of the terminal block, shall have a blue marking or other suitable designation.

ARTICLE 324
Flat Conductor Cable: Type FCC

I. General

324.1 Scope. This article covers a field-installed wiring system for branch circuits incorporating Type FCC cable and associated accessories as defined by the article. The wiring system is designed for installation under carpet squares.

324.2 Definitions.

Bottom Shield. A protective layer that is installed between the floor and Type FCC flat conductor cable to protect the cable from physical damage and may or may not be incorporated as an integral part of the cable.

Cable Connector. A connector designed to join Type FCC cables without using a junction box.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-180

FCC System. A complete wiring system for branch circuits that is designed for installation under carpet squares. The FCC system includes Type FCC cable and associated shielding, connectors, terminators, adapters, boxes, and receptacles.

Insulating End. An insulator designed to electrically insulate the end of a Type FCC cable.

Metal Shield Connections. Means of connection designed to electrically and mechanically connect a metal shield to another metal shield, to a receptacle housing or self-contained device, or to a transition assembly.

Top Shield. A grounded metal shield covering under-carpet components of the FCC system for the purposes of providing protection against physical damage.

Transition Assembly. An assembly to facilitate connection of the FCC system to other wiring systems, incorporating (1) a means of electrical interconnection and (2) a suitable box or covering for providing electrical safety and protection against physical damage.

Type FCC Cable. Three or more flat copper conductors placed edge-to-edge and separated and enclosed within an insulating assembly.

II. Installation

324.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) Branch Circuits. Use of FCC systems shall be permitted both for general-purpose and appliance branch circuits and for individual branch circuits.

(B) Branch-Circuit Ratings.

(1) Voltage. Voltage between ungrounded conductors shall not exceed 300 volts. Voltage between ungrounded conductors and the grounded conductor shall not exceed 150 volts.

(2) Current. General-purpose and appliance branch circuits shall have ratings not exceeding 20 amperes. Individual branch circuits shall have ratings not exceeding 30 amperes.

(C) Floors. Use of FCC systems shall be permitted on hard, sound, smooth, continuous floor surfaces made of concrete, ceramic, or composition flooring, wood, and similar materials.

(D) Walls. Use of FCC systems shall be permitted on wall surfaces in surface metal raceways.

(E) Damp Locations. Use of FCC systems in damp locations shall be permitted.

(F) Heated Floors. Materials used for floors heated in excess of 30°C (86°F) shall be identified as suitable for use at these temperatures.

(G) System Height. Any portion of an FCC system with a height above floor level exceeding 2.3 mm (0.090 in.) shall be tapered or feathered at the edges to floor level.

(H) Coverings. Floor-mounted Type FCC cable, cable connectors, and insulating ends shall be covered with carpet squares not larger than 914 mm (36 in.) square. Those carpet squares that are adhered to the floor shall be attached with release-type adhesives.

(I) Corrosion Resistance. Metal components of the system shall be either corrosion resistant, coated with corrosion-resistant materials, or insulated from contact with corrosive substances.

(J) Metal-Shield Connectors. Metal shields shall be connected to each other and to boxes, receptacle housings, self-contained devices, and transition assemblies using metal-shield connectors.

324.12 Uses Not Permitted. FCC systems shall not be used:

(1) Outdoors or in wet locations
(2) Where subject to corrosive vapors
(3) In any hazardous (classified) location
(4) In residential, school, and hospital buildings

324.18 Crossings. Crossings of more than two Type FCC cable runs shall not be permitted at any one point. Crossings of a Type FCC cable over or under a flat communications or signal cable shall be permitted. In each case, a grounded layer of metal shielding shall separate the two cables, and crossings of more than two flat cables shall not be permitted at any one point.

324.30 Securing and Supporting. All FCC system components shall be firmly anchored to the floor or wall using an adhesive or mechanical anchoring system identified for this use. Floors shall be prepared to ensure adherence of the FCC system to the floor until the carpet squares are placed.

324.40 Boxes and Fittings.

(A) Cable Connections and Insulating Ends. All Type FCC cable connections shall use connectors identified for their use, installed such that electrical continuity, insulation, and sealing against dampness and liquid spillage are provided. All bare cable ends shall be insulated and sealed against dampness and liquid spillage using listed insulating ends.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-181

(B) Polarization of Connections. All receptacles and connections shall be constructed and installed so as to maintain proper polarization of the system.

(C) Shields.

(1) Top Shield. A metal top shield shall be installed over all floor-mounted Type FCC cable, connectors, and insulating ends. The top shield shall completely cover all cable runs, corners, connectors, and ends.

(2) Bottom Shield. A bottom shield shall be installed beneath all Type FCC cable, connectors, and insulating ends.

(D) Connection to Other Systems. Power feed, grounding connection, and shield system connection between the FCC system and other wiring systems shall be accomplished in a transition assembly identified for this use.

324.42 Devices.

(A) Receptacles. All receptacles, receptacle housings, and self-contained devices used with the FCC system shall be identified for this use and shall be connected to the Type FCC cable and metal shields. Connection from any grounding conductor of the Type FCC cable shall be made to the shield system at each receptacle.

(B) Receptacles and Housings. Receptacle housings and self-contained devices designed either for floor mounting or for in-wall or on-wall mounting shall be permitted for use with the FCC system. Receptacle housings and self-contained devices shall incorporate means for facilitating entry and termination of Type FCC cable and for electrically connecting the housing or device with the metal shield. Receptacles and self-contained devices shall comply with 406.3. Power and communications outlets installed together in common housing shall be permitted in accordance with 800.52(A)(1)(c), Exception No. 2.

324.56 Splices and Taps.

(A) FCC Systems Alterations. Alterations to FCC systems shall be permitted. New cable connectors shall be used at new connection points to make alterations. It shall be permitted to leave unused cable runs and associated cable connectors in place and energized. All cable ends shall be covered with insulating ends.

(B) Transition Assemblies. All transition assemblies shall be identified for their use. Each assembly shall incorporate means for facilitating entry of the Type FCC cable into the assembly, for connecting the Type FCC cable to grounded conductors, and for electrically connecting the assembly to the metal cable shields and to equipment grounding conductors.

324.60 Grounding. All metal shields, boxes, receptacle housings, and self-contained devices shall be electrically continuous to the equipment grounding conductor of the supplying branch circuit. All such electrical connections shall be made with connectors identified for this use. The electrical resistivity of such shield system shall not be more than that of one conductor of the Type FCC cable used in the installation.

III. Construction

324.100 Construction.

(A) Type FCC Cable. Type FCC cable shall be listed for use with the FCC system and shall consist of three, four, or five flat copper conductors, one of which shall be an equipment grounding conductor.

(B) Shields.

(1) Materials and Dimensions. All top and bottom shields shall be of designs and materials identified for their use. Top shields shall be metal. Both metallic and nonmetallic materials shall be permitted for bottom shields.

(2) Resistivity. Metal shields shall have cross-sectional areas that provide for electrical resistivity of not more than that of one conductor of the Type FCC cable used in the installation.

324.112 Insulation. The insulating material of the cable shall be moisture resistant and flame retardant. All insulating materials in the FCC systems shall be identified for their use.

324.120 Markings.

(A) Cable Marking. Type FCC cable shall be clearly and durably marked on both sides at intervals of not more than 610 mm (24 in.) with the information required by 310.11(A) and with the following additional information:

(1) Material of conductors
(2) Maximum temperature rating
(3) Ampacity

(B) Conductor Identification. Conductors shall be clearly and durably identified on both sides throughout their length as specified in 310.12.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-182

ARTICLE 326
Integrated Gas Spacer Cable: Type IGS

I. General

326.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for integrated gas spacer cable, Type IGS.

326.2 Definition.

Integrated Gas Spacer Cable, Type IGS. A factory assembly of one or more conductors, each individually insulated and enclosed in a loose fit, nonmetallic flexible conduit as an integrated gas spacer cable rated 0 through 600 volts.

II. Installation

326.10 Uses Permitted. Type IGS cable shall be permitted for use under ground, including direct burial in the earth, as the following:

(1) Service-entrance conductors
(2) Feeder or branch-circuit conductors

326.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type IGS cable shall not be used as interior wiring or be exposed in contact with buildings.

326.24 Bending Radius. Where the coilable nonmetallic conduit and cable is bent for installation purposes or is flexed or bent during shipment or installation, the radii of bends measured to the inside of the bend shall not be less than specified in Table 326.24.

Table 326.24 Minimum Radii of Bends

Conduit Size		Minimum Radii	
Metric Designator	Trade Size	mm	in.
53	2	600	24
78	3	900	35
103	4	1150	45

326.26 Bends. A run of Type IGS cable between pull boxes or terminations shall not contain more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total), including those bends located immediately at the pull box or terminations.

326.40 Fittings. Terminations and splices for Type IGS cable shall be identified as a type that is suitable for maintaining the gas pressure within the conduit. A valve and cap shall be provided for each length of the cable and conduit to check the gas pressure or to inject gas into the conduit.

326.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Type IGS cable shall not exceed the values shown in Table 326.80.

Table 326.80 Ampacity of Type IGS Cable

Size (kcmil)	Amperes	Size (kcmil)	Amperes
250	119	2500	376
500	168	3000	412
750	206	3250	429
1000	238	3500	445
1250	266	3750	461
1500	292	4000	476
1750	344	4250	491
2000	336	4500	505
2250	357	4750	519

III. Construction Specifications

326.104 Conductors. The conductors shall be solid aluminum rods, laid parallel, consisting of one to nineteen 12.7 mm (½ in.) diameter rods. The minimum conductor size shall be 250 kcmil, and the maximum size shall be 4750 kcmil.

326.112 Insulation. The insulation shall be dry kraft paper tapes and a pressurized sulfur hexafluoride gas (SF6), both approved for electrical use. The nominal gas pressure shall be 138 kPa gauge (20 pounds per square inch gauge). The thickness of the paper spacer shall be as specified in Table 326.112.

Table 326.112 Paper Spacer Thickness

	Thickness	
Size (kcmil)	mm	in.
250–1000	1.02	0.040
1250–4750	1.52	0.060

326.116 Conduit. The conduit shall be a medium density polyethylene identified as suitable for use with natural gas rated pipe in metric designator 53, 78, or 103 (trade size 2, 3, or 4). The percent fill dimensions for the conduit are shown in Table 326.116.

The size of the conduit permitted for each conductor size shall be calculated for a percent fill not to exceed those found in Table 1, Chapter 9.

326.120 Marking. The cable shall be marked in accordance with 310.11(A), 310.11(B)(1), and 310.11(D).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-183

Table 326.116 Conduit Dimensions

Conduit Size		Actual Outside Diameter		Actual Inside Diameter	
Metric Designator	Trade Size	mm	in.	mm	in.
53	2	60	2.375	49.46	1.947
78	3	89	3.500	73.30	2.886
103	4	114	4.500	94.23	3.710

ARTICLE 328
Medium Voltage Cable: Type MV

I. General

328.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for medium voltage cable, Type MV.

328.2 Definition.

Medium Voltage Cable, Type MV. A single or multiconductor solid dielectric insulated cable rated 2001 volts or higher.

II. Installation

328.10 Uses Permitted. Type MV cables shall be permitted for use on power systems rated up to 35,000 volts, nominal, as follows:

(1) In wet or dry locations
(2) In raceways
(3) In cable trays as specified in 392.3(B)(1)
(4) Direct buried in accordance with 300.50
(5) In messenger-supported wiring

328.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type MV cable shall not be used unless identified for the use as follows:

(1) Where exposed to direct sunlight
(2) In cable trays

328.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Type MV cable shall be determined in accordance with 310.60. The ampacity of Type MV cable installed in cable tray shall be determined in accordance with 392.13.

III. Construction Specifications

328.100 Construction. Type MV cables shall have copper, aluminum, or copper-clad aluminum conductors and shall be constructed in accordance with Article 310.

328.120 Marking. Medium voltage cable shall be marked as required in 310.11.

ARTICLE 330
Metal-Clad Cable: Type MC

I. General

330.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications of metal-clad cable, Type MC.

330.2 Definition.

Metal Clad Cable, Type MC. A factory assembly of one or more insulated circuit conductors with or without optical fiber members enclosed in an armor of interlocking metal tape, or a smooth or corrugated metallic sheath.

II. Installation

330.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) General Uses. Where not subject to physical damage, Type MC cables shall be permitted as follows:

(1) For services, feeders, and branch circuits
(2) For power, lighting, control, and signal circuits
(3) Indoors or outdoors
(4) Where exposed or concealed
(5) Direct buried where identified for such use
(6) In cable tray
(7) In any raceway
(8) As open runs of cable
(9) As aerial cable on a messenger
(10) In hazardous (classified) locations as permitted in Articles 501, 502, 503, 504, and 505
(11) In dry locations and embedded in plaster finish on brick or other masonry except in damp or wet locations
(12) In wet locations where any of the following conditions are met:
   a. The metallic covering is impervious to moisture.
   b. A lead sheath or moisture-impervious jacket is provided under the metal covering.
   c. The insulated conductors under the metallic covering are listed for use in wet locations.
(13) Where single-conductor cables are used, all phase conductors and, where used, the neutral conductor shall be grouped together to minimize induced voltage on the sheath.

(B) Specific Uses. Type MC cable shall be installed in compliance with Articles 300, 490, 725, and 770.52 as ap-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-184

plicable and in accordance with 330.10(B)(1) through (B)(4).

(1) Cable Tray. Type MC cable installed in cable tray shall comply with Article 392.

(2) Direct Buried. Direct-buried cable shall comply with 300.5 or 300.50, as appropriate.

(3) Installed as Service-Entrance Cable. Type MC cable installed as service-entrance cable shall comply with Article 230.

(4) Installed Outside of Buildings or as Aerial Cable. Type MC cable installed outside of buildings or as aerial cable shall comply with Article 225 and Article 396.

330.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type MC cable shall not be used where exposed to the following destructive corrosive conditions, unless the metallic sheath is suitable for the conditions or is protected by material suitable for the conditions:

(1) Direct burial in the earth
(2) In concrete
(3) Where exposed to cinder fills, strong chlorides, caustic alkalis, or vapors of chlorine or of hydrochloric acids

330.17 Through or Parallel to Framing Members. Type MC cable shall be protected in accordance with 300.4 where installed through or parallel to framing members.

330.23 In Accessible Attics. The installation of Type MC cable in accessible attics or roof spaces shall also comply with 320.23.

330.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Type MC cable shall be made so that the cable will not be damaged. The radius of the curve of the inner edge of any bend shall not be less than shown in 330.24(A) through (C).

(A) Smooth Sheath.

(1) Ten times the external diameter of the metallic sheath for cable not more than 19 mm (¾ in.) in external diameter
(2) Twelve times the external diameter of the metallic sheath for cable more than 19 mm (¾ in.) but not more than 38 mm (1½ in.) in external diameter
(3) Fifteen times the external diameter of the metallic sheath for cable more than 38 mm (1½ in.) in external diameter

(B) Interlocked-Type Armor or Corrugated Sheath. Seven times the external diameter of the metallic sheath.

(C) Shielded Conductors. Twelve times the overall diameter of one of the individual conductors or seven times the overall diameter of the multiconductor cable, whichever is greater.

330.30 Securing and Supporting. Type MC cable shall be supported and secured at intervals not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft).

(A) Horizontal Runs Through Holes and Notches. In other than vertical runs, cables installed in accordance with 300.4 shall be considered supported and secured where such support does not exceed 1.8-m (6-ft) intervals.

(B) Unsupported Cables. Type MC cable shall be permitted to be unsupported where the cable:

(1) Is fished between access points, where concealed in finished buildings or structures and supporting is impracticable
(2) Is not more than 1.8 m (6 ft) from the last point of support for connections within an accessible ceiling to luminaire(s) [lighting fixture(s)] or equipment

(C) At Terminations. Cables containing four or fewer conductors, sized no larger than 10 AWG, shall be secured within 300 mm (12 in.) of every box, cabinet, fitting, or other cable termination.

330.31 Single Conductors. Where single-conductor cables with a nonferrous armor or sheath are used, the installation shall comply with 300.20.

330.40 Boxes and Fitting. Fittings used for connecting Type MC cable to boxes, cabinets, or other equipment shall be listed and identified for such use.

330.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Type MC cable shall be determined in accordance with 310.15 or 310.60 for 14 AWG and larger conductors and in accordance with Table 402.5 for 18 AWG and 16 AWG conductors. The installation shall not exceed the temperature ratings of terminations and equipment.

(A) Type MC Cable Installed in Cable Tray. The ampacities for Type MC cable installed in cable tray shall be determined in accordance with 392.11 and 392.13.

(B) Single Type MC Conductors Grouped Together. Where single Type MC conductors are grouped together in a triangular or square configuration and installed on a messenger or as open runs with a maintained free airspace of not less than 2.15 times one conductor diameter (2.15 × O.D.) of the largest conductor contained within the configuration and adjacent conductor configurations or cables,

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-185

the ampacity of the conductors shall not exceed the allowable ampacities of:

(1) Table 310.20 for conductors rated 0 through 2000 volts
(2) Tables 310.67 and 310.68 for conductors rated over 2000 volts

III. Construction Specifications

330.104 Conductors. The conductors shall be of copper, aluminum, or copper-clad aluminum, solid or stranded. The minimum conductor size shall be 18 AWG copper and 12 AWG aluminum or copper-clad aluminum.

330.108 Equipment Grounding. Type MC cable shall provide an adequate path for equipment grounding as required by Article 250.

330.112 Insulation. The insulated conductors shall comply with 330.112(A) or (B).

(A) 600 Volts. Insulated conductors in sizes 18 AWG and 16 AWG shall be of a type listed in Table 402.3, with a maximum operating temperature not less than 90°C (194°F) and as permitted by 725.27. Conductors larger than 16 AWG shall be of a type listed in Table 310.13 or of a type identified for use in Type MC cable.

(B) Over 600 Volts. Insulated conductors shall be of a type listed in Tables 310.61 through 310.64.

330.116 Sheath. The metallic covering shall be one of the following types: smooth metallic sheath, corrugated metallic sheath, interlocking metal tape armor. The metallic sheath shall be continuous and close fitting. A nonmagnetic sheath or armor shall be used on single conductor Type MC. Supplemental protection of an outer covering of corrosion-resistant material shall be permitted and shall be required where such protection is needed. The sheath shall not be used as a current-carrying conductor.

FPN: See 300.6 for protection against corrosion.

ARTICLE 332
Mineral-Insulated, Metal-Sheathed Cable: Type MI

I. General

332.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI.

332.2 Definition.

Mineral-Insulated, Metal-Sheathed Cable, Type MI. A factory assembly of one or more conductors insulated with a highly compressed refractory mineral insulation and enclosed in a liquidtight and gastight continuous copper or alloy steel sheath.

II. Installation

332.10 Uses Permitted. Type MI cable shall be permitted as follows:

(1) For services, feeders, and branch circuits
(2) For power, lighting, control, and signal circuits
(3) In dry, wet, or continuously moist locations
(4) Indoors or outdoors
(5) Where exposed or concealed
(6) Embedded in plaster, concrete, fill, or other masonry, whether above or below grade
(7) In any hazardous (classified) location
(8) Where exposed to oil and gasoline
(9) Where exposed to corrosive conditions not deteriorating to its sheath
(10) In underground runs where suitably protected against physical damage and corrosive conditions

332.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type MI cable shall not be used where exposed to conditions that are destructive and corrosive to the metallic sheath unless additionally protected by materials suitable for the conditions.

332.17 Through or Parallel to Framing Members. Type MI cable shall be protected in accordance with 300.4 where installed through or parallel to framing members.

332.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Type MI cable shall be made so that the cable will not be damaged. The radius of the inner edge of any bend shall not be less than shown as follows:

(1) Five times the external diameter of the metallic sheath for cable not more than 19 mm (¾ in.) in external diameter
(2) Ten times the external diameter of the metallic sheath for cable greater than 19 mm (¾ in.) but not more than 25 mm (1 in.) in external diameter

332.30 Securing and Supporting. Type MI cable shall be supported securely at intervals not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) by straps, staples, hangers, or similar fittings designed and installed so as not to damage the cable.

(A) Horizontal Runs Through Holes and Notches. In other than vertical runs, cables installed in accordance with

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-186

300.4 shall be considered supported and secured where such support does not exceed 1.8-m (6-ft) intervals.

(B) Unsupported Cable. Type MI cable shall be permitted to be unsupported where the cable is fished.

(C) Cable Trays. Type MI cable installed in cable trays shall comply with 392.8(B).

332.31 Single Conductors. Where single-conductor cables are used, all phase conductors and, where used, the neutral conductor shall be grouped together to minimize induced voltage on the sheath.

332.40 Boxes and Fittings.

(A) Fittings. Fittings used for connecting Type MI cable to boxes, cabinets, or other equipment shall be identified for such use.

(B) Terminal Seals. Where Type MI cable terminates, an end seal fitting shall be installed immediately after stripping to prevent the entrance of moisture into the insulation. The conductors extending beyond the sheath shall be individually provided with an insulating material.

332.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Type MI cable shall be determined in accordance with 310.15. The conductor temperature at the end seal fitting shall not exceed the temperature rating of the listed end seal fitting, and the installation shall not exceed the temperature ratings of terminations or equipment.

(A) Type MI Cable Installed in Cable Tray. The ampacities for Type MI cable installed in cable tray shall be determined in accordance with 392.11.

(B) Single Type MI Conductors Grouped Together. Where single Type MI conductors are grouped together in a triangular or square configuration, as required by 332.31, and installed on a messenger or as open runs with a maintained free air space of not less than 2.15 times one conductor diameter (2.15 × O.D.) of the largest conductor contained within the configuration and adjacent conductor configurations or cables, the ampacity of the conductors shall not exceed the allowable ampacities of Table 310.17.

III. Construction Specifications

332.104 Conductors. Type MI cable conductors shall be of solid copper, nickel, or nickel-coated copper with a resistance corresponding to standard AWG and kcmil sizes.

332.108 Equipment Grounding. Where the outer sheath is made of copper, it shall provide an adequate path for equipment grounding purposes. Where made of steel, an equipment grounding conductor shall be provided.

332.112 Insulation. The conductor insulation in Type MI cable shall be a highly compressed refractory mineral that provides proper spacing for all conductors.

332.116 Sheath. The outer sheath shall be of a continuous construction to provide mechanical protection and moisture seal.

ARTICLE 334
Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable: Types NM, NMC, and NMS

I. General

334.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications of nonmetallic-sheathed cable.

334.2 Definition.

Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable. A factory assembly of two or more insulated conductors having an outer sheath of nonmetallic material.

334.6 Listed. Type NM, Type NMC, and Type NMS cables shall be listed.

II. Installation

334.10 Uses Permitted. Type NM, Type NMC, and Type NMS cables shall be permitted to be used in the following:

(1) One- and two-family dwellings.
(2) Multifamily dwellings permitted to be of Types III, IV, and V construction except as prohibited in 334.12.
(3) Other structures permitted to be of Types III, IV, and V construction except as prohibited in 334.12. Cables shall be concealed within walls, floors, or ceilings that provide a thermal barrier of material that has at least a 15-minute finish rating as identified in listings of fire-rated assemblies.

FPN No. 1: Building constructions are defined in NFPA 220-1999, *Standard on Types of Building Construction*, or the applicable building code, or both.

FPN No. 2: See Annex E for determination of building types [NFPA 220, Table 3-1].

(4) Cable trays, where the cables are identified for the use.

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-187

(A) Type NM. Type NM cable shall be permitted as follows:

(1) For both exposed and concealed work in normally dry locations except as prohibited in 334.10(3).
(2) To be installed or fished in air voids in masonry block or tile walls

(B) Type NMC. Type NMC cable shall be permitted as follows:

(1) For both exposed and concealed work in dry, moist, damp, or corrosive locations, except as prohibited in 334.10(3)
(2) In outside and inside walls of masonry block or tile
(3) In a shallow chase in masonry, concrete, or adobe protected against nails or screws by a steel plate at least 1.59 mm (1/16 in.) thick and covered with plaster, adobe, or similar finish

(C) Type NMS. Type NMS cable shall be permitted as follows:

(1) For both exposed and concealed work in normally dry locations except as prohibited in 334.10(3)
(2) To be installed or fished in air voids in masonry block or tile walls
(3) To be used as permitted in Article 780

334.12 Uses Not Permitted.

(A) Types NM, NMC, and NMS. Types NM, NMC, and NMS cables shall not be used as follows:

(1) As open runs in dropped or suspended ceilings in other than one- and two-family and multifamily dwellings.
(2) As service-entrance cable.
(3) In commercial garages having hazardous (classified) locations as defined in 511.3.
(4) In theaters and similar locations, except where permitted in 518.4.
(5) In motion picture studios.
(6) In storage battery rooms.
(7) In hoistways or on elevators or escalators.
(8) Embedded in poured cement, concrete, or aggregate.
(9) In hazardous (classified) locations, except where permitted in the following:
   a. 501.4(B), Exception
   b. 502.4(B), Exception No. 1
   c. 504.20
(10) Types NM and NMS. Types NM and NMS cable shall not be used as follows:
   a. Where exposed to corrosive fumes or vapors
   b. Where embedded in masonry, concrete, adobe, fill, or plaster
   c. In a shallow chase in masonry, concrete, or adobe and covered with plaster, adobe, or similar finish
   d. Where exposed or subject to excessive moisture or dampness

334.15 Exposed Work. In exposed work, except as provided in 300.11(A), the cable shall be installed as specified in 334.15(A) through (C).

(A) To Follow Surface. The cable shall closely follow the surface of the building finish or of running boards.

(B) Protection from Physical Damage. The cable shall be protected from physical damage where necessary by conduit, electrical metallic tubing, Schedule 80 PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit, pipe, guard strips, listed surface metal or nonmetallic raceway, or other means. Where passing through a floor, the cable shall be enclosed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, Schedule 80 PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit, listed surface metal or nonmetallic raceway, or other metal pipe extending at least 150 mm (6 in.) above the floor.

(C) In Unfinished Basements. Where the cable is run at angles with joists in unfinished basements, it shall be permissible to secure cables not smaller than two 6 AWG or three 8 AWG conductors directly to the lower edges of the joists. Smaller cables shall be run either through bored holes in joists or on running boards.

334.17 Through or Parallel to Framing Members. Types NM, NMC, or NMS cable shall be protected in accordance with 300.4 where installed through or parallel to framing members. Grommets used as required in 300.4(B)(1) shall remain in place and be listed for the purpose of cable protection.

334.23 In Accessible Attics. The installation of cable in accessible attics or roof spaces shall also comply with 320.23.

334.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable shall be made so that the cable will not be damaged. The radius of the curve of the inner edge of any bend during or after installation shall not be less than five times the diameter of the cable.

334.30 Securing and Supporting. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall be secured by staples, cable ties, straps, hangers, or similar fittings designed and installed so as not to damage the cable at intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft) and within 300 mm (12 in.) of every cabinet, box, or fitting. Flat cables shall not be stapled on edge.

(A) Horizontal Runs through Holes and Notches. In other than vertical runs, cables installed in accordance with 300.4 shall be considered supported and secured where

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-188

such support does not exceed 1.4-m (4½-ft) intervals and the nonmetallic-sheathed cable is securely fastened in place by an approved means within 300 mm (12 in.) of each box, cabinet, conduit body, or other nonmetallic-sheathed cable termination.

FPN: See 314.17(C) for support where nonmetallic boxes are used.

(B) Unsupported Cables. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall be permitted to be unsupported where the cable:

(1) Is fished between access points, where concealed in finished buildings or finished panels for prefabricated buildings and supporting is impracticable
(2) Is not more than 1.4 m (4½ ft) from the last point of support for connections within an accessible ceiling to luminaire(s) [lighting fixture(s)] or equipment

(C) Wiring Device Without a Separate Outlet Box. A wiring device identified for the use, without a separate outlet box, incorporating an integral cable clamp shall be permitted where the cable is secured in place at intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft) and within 300 mm (12 in.) from the wiring device wall opening, and there shall be at least a 300 mm (12 in.) loop of unbroken cable or 150 mm (6 in.) of a cable end available on the interior side of the finished wall to permit replacement.

334.40 Boxes and Fittings.

(A) Boxes of Insulating Material. Nonmetallic outlet boxes shall be permitted as provided in 314.3.

(B) Devices of Insulating Material. Switch, outlet, and tap devices of insulating material shall be permitted to be used without boxes in exposed cable wiring and for rewiring in existing buildings where the cable is concealed and fished. Openings in such devices shall form a close fit around the outer covering of the cable, and the device shall fully enclose the part of the cable from which any part of the covering has been removed. Where connections to conductors are by binding-screw terminals, there shall be available as many terminals as conductors.

(C) Devices with Integral Enclosures. Wiring devices with integral enclosures identified for such use shall be permitted as provided in 300.15(E).

334.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable shall be determined in accordance with 310.15. The ampacity shall be in accordance with the 60°C (140°F) conductor temperature rating. The 90°C (194°F) rating shall be permitted to be used for ampacity derating purposes, provided the final derated ampacity does not exceed that for a 60°C (140°F) rated conductor. The ampacity of Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable installed in cable tray shall be determined in accordance with 392.11.

III. Construction Specifications

334.100 Construction. The outer cable sheath of nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall be a nonmetallic material.

334.104 Conductors. The insulated power conductors shall be sizes 14 AWG through 2 AWG with copper conductors or sizes 12 AWG through 2 AWG with aluminum or copper-clad aluminum conductors. The signaling conductors shall comply with 780.5.

334.108 Equipment Grounding. In addition to the insulated conductors, the cable shall be permitted to have an insulated or bare conductor for equipment grounding purposes only. Where provided, the grounding conductor shall be sized in accordance with Article 250.

334.112 Insulation. The insulated power conductors shall be one of the types listed in Table 310.13 that is suitable for branch circuit wiring or one that is identified for use in these cables. Conductor insulation shall be rated at 90°C (194°F).

FPN: Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable identified by the markings NM-B, NMC-B, and NMS-B meet this requirement.

334.116 Sheath. The outer sheath of nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall comply with 334.116(A), (B), and (C).

(A) Type NM. The overall covering shall be flame retardant and moisture resistant.

(B) Type NMC. The overall covering shall be flame retardant, moisture resistant, fungus resistant, and corrosion resistant.

(C) Type NMS. The overall covering shall be flame retardant and moisture resistant. The sheath shall be applied so as to separate the power conductors from the communications and signaling conductors. The signaling conductors shall be permitted to be shielded. An optional outer jacket shall be permitted.

FPN: For composite optical cable, see 770.5 and 770.52.

ARTICLE 336
Power and Control Tray Cable: Type TC

I. General

336.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for power and control tray cable, Type TC.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-189

336.2 Definition.

Power and Control Tray Cable, Type TC. A factory assembly of two or more insulated conductors, with or without associated bare or covered grounding conductors, under a nonmetallic jacket, for installation in cable trays, in raceways, or where supported by a messenger wire.

II. Installation

336.10 Uses Permitted. Type TC tray cable shall be permitted to be used in the following:

(1) For power, lighting, control, and signal circuits.
(2) In cable trays, or in raceways, or where supported in outdoor locations by a messenger wire.
(3) In cable trays in hazardous (classified) locations as permitted in Articles 392, 501, 502, 504, and 505 in industrial establishments where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation.
(4) For Class I circuits as permitted in Article 725.
(5) For non–power-limited fire alarm circuits if conductors comply with the requirements of 760.27.
(6) In industrial establishments where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, and where the cable is continuously supported and protected against physical damage using mechanical protection, such as struts, angles, or channel, Type TC tray cable that complies with the crush and impact requirements of Type MC cable and is identified for such use shall be permitted between a cable tray and the utilization equipment or device. The cable shall be secured at intervals not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft). Equipment grounding for the utilization equipment shall be provided by an equipment grounding conductor within the cable. In cables containing conductors size 6 AWG or smaller, the equipment grounding conductor shall be provided within the cable or, at the time of installation, one or more insulated conductors shall be permanently identified as an equipment grounding conductor in accordance with 250.119(B).
(7) Where installed in wet locations, Type TC cable shall also be resistant to moisture and corrosive agents.

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

336.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type TC tray cable shall not be used in the following:

(1) Installed where it will be exposed to physical damage
(2) Installed as open cable on brackets or cleats, except as permitted in 340.10(6)
(3) Used where exposed to direct rays of the sun, unless identified as sunlight resistant
(4) Direct buried, unless identified for such use

336.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Type TC cable shall be made so as not to damage the cable. For Type TC cable without metal shielding, the minimum bending radius shall be as follows:

(1) Four times the overall diameter for cables 25 mm (1 in.) or less in diameter
(2) Five times the overall diameter for cables larger than 25 mm (1 in.) but not more than 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter
(3) Six times the overall diameter for cables larger than 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter

Type TC cables with metallic shielding shall have a minimum bending radius of not less than 12 times the cable overall diameter.

336.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Type TC tray cable shall be determined in accordance with 392.11 for 14 AWG and larger conductors, in accordance with 402.5 for 18 AWG through 16 AWG conductors where installed in cable tray, and in accordance with 310.15 where installed in a raceway or as messenger supported wiring.

III. Construction Specifications

336.100 Construction. A metallic sheath or armor as defined in 330.116 shall not be permitted either under or over the nonmetallic jacket. Metallic shield(s) shall be permitted over groups of conductors, under the outer jacket, or both.

336.104 Conductors. The insulated conductors of Type TC tray cable shall be in sizes 18 AWG through 1000 kcmil copper and sizes 12 AWG through 1000 kcmil aluminum or copper-clad aluminum. Insulated conductors of sizes 14 AWG and larger copper and sizes 12 AWG and larger aluminum or copper-clad aluminum shall be one of the types listed in Table 310.13 or Table 310.62 that is suitable for branch circuit and feeder circuits or one that is identified for such use.

(A) Fire Alarm Systems. Where used for fire alarm systems, conductors shall also be in accordance with 760.27.

(B) Thermocouple Circuits. Conductors in Type TC cables used for thermocouple circuits in accordance with Article 725 shall also be permitted to be any of the materials used for thermocouple extension wire.

(C) Class I Circuit Conductors. Insulated conductors of 18 AWG and 16 AWG copper shall also be in accordance with 725.27.

336.116 Jacket. The outer jacket shall be a flame-retardant, nonmetallic material.

336.120 Marking. There shall be no voltage marking on a Type TC cable employing thermocouple extension wire.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-190

ARTICLE 338
Service-Entrance Cable: Types SE and USE

I. General

338.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications of service-entrance cable.

338.2 Definitions.

Service-Entrance Cable. A single conductor or multiconductor assembly provided with or without an overall covering, primarily used for services, and of the following types:

Type SE. Service-entrance cable having a flame-retardant, moisture-resistant covering.

Type USE. Service-entrance cable, identified for underground use, having a moisture-resistant covering, but not required to have a flame-retardant covering.

II. Installation

338.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) Service-Entrance Conductors. Service-entrance cable used as service-entrance conductors shall be installed as required by Article 230.

Type USE used for service laterals shall be permitted to emerge from the ground outside at terminations in meter bases or other enclosures where protected in accordance with 300.5(D).

(B) Branch Circuits or Feeders.

(1) Grounded Conductor Insulated. Type SE service-entrance cables shall be permitted in wiring systems where all of the circuit conductors of the cable are of the rubber-covered or thermoplastic type.

(2) Grounded Conductor Not Insulated. Type SE service-entrance cable shall be permitted for use where the insulated conductors are used for circuit wiring and the uninsulated conductor is used only for equipment grounding purposes.

Exception: Uninsulated conductors shall be permitted as a grounded conductor in accordance with 250.140.

(3) Temperature Limitations. Type SE service-entrance cable used to supply appliances shall not be subject to conductor temperatures in excess of the temperature specified for the type of insulation involved.

(4) Installation Methods for Branch Circuits and Feeders.

(a) Interior Installations. In addition to the provisions of this article, Type SE service-entrance cable used for interior wiring shall comply with the installation requirements of Parts I and II of Article 334, excluding 334.80.

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

(b) Exterior Installations. In addition to the provisions of this article, service-entrance cable used for feeders or branch circuits, where installed as exterior wiring, shall be installed as required by Article 225. The cable shall be supported in accordance with 334.30, unless used as messenger-supported wiring as allowed by Article 396.

Type USE cable shall be installed outside in accordance with the provisions of Article 340. Where Type USE cable emerges from the ground at terminations, it shall be protected in accordance with 300.5(D).

Multiconductor service-entrance cable shall be permitted to be installed as messenger-supported wiring in accordance with Articles 225 and 396.

338.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Types USE and SE cable shall be made so that the cable will not be damaged. The radius of the curve of the inner edge of any bend, during or after installation, shall not be less than five times the diameter of the cable.

III. Construction

338.100 Construction. Cabled, single-conductor, Type USE constructions recognized for underground use shall be permitted to have a bare copper conductor cabled with the assembly. Type USE single, parallel, or cabled conductor assemblies recognized for underground use shall be permitted to have a bare copper concentric conductor applied. These constructions shall not require an outer overall covering.

FPN: See 230.41, Exception, item (b), for directly buried, uninsulated service-entrance conductors.

Type SE or USE cable containing two or more conductors shall be permitted to have one conductor uninsulated.

338.120 Marking. Service-entrance cable shall be marked as required in 310.11. Cable with the neutral conductor smaller than the ungrounded conductors shall be so marked.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-191

ARTICLE 340
Underground Feeder and Branch-Circuit Cable: Type UF

I. General

340.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for underground feeder and branch-circuit cable, Type UF.

340.2 Definition.

Underground Feeder and Branch-Circuit Cable, Type UF. A listed factory assembly of one or more insulated conductors with an integral or an overall covering of nonmetallic material suitable for direct burial in the earth.

II. Installation

340.10 Uses Permitted. Type UF cable shall be permitted as follows:

(1) For use underground, including direct burial in the earth. For underground requirements, see 300.5
(2) As single-conductor cables. Where installed as single-conductor cables, all conductors of the feeder grounded conductor or branch circuit, including the grounded conductor and equipment grounding conductor, if any, shall be installed in accordance with 300.3.
(3) For wiring in wet, dry, or corrosive locations under the recognized wiring methods of this *Code*.
(4) Installed as nonmetallic-sheathed cable. Where so installed, the installation and conductor requirements shall comply with the provisions of Article 334 and shall be of the multiconductor type.
(5) For solar photovoltaic systems in accordance with 690.31.
(6) As single-conductor cables as the nonheating leads for heating cables as provided in 424.43.
(7) Supported by cable trays. Type UF cable supported by cable trays shall be of the multiconductor type.

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

340.12 Uses Not Permitted. Type UF cable shall not be used as follows:

(1) As service-entrance cable
(2) In commercial garages
(3) In theaters and similar locations
(4) In motion picture studios
(5) In storage battery rooms
(6) In hoistways, or on elevators or escalators
(7) In hazardous (classified) locations
(8) Embedded in poured cement, concrete, or aggregate, except where embedded in plaster as nonheating leads where permitted in 424.43
(9) Where exposed to direct rays of the sun, unless identified as sunlight resistant
(10) Where subject to physical damage
(11) As overhead cable, except where installed as messenger-supported wiring in accordance with Article 396

340.24 Bending Radius. Bends in Type UF cable shall be made so that the cable shall not be damaged. The radius of the curve of the inner edge of any bend shall not be less than five times the diameter of the cable.

340.80 Ampacity. The ampacity of Type UF cable shall be that of 60°C (140°F) conductors in accordance with 310.15.

III. Construction Specifications

340.104 Conductors. The conductors shall be sizes 14 AWG copper or 12 AWG aluminum or copper-clad aluminum through 4/0 AWG.

340.108 Equipment Grounding. In addition to the insulated conductors, the cable shall be permitted to have an insulated or bare conductor for equipment grounding purposes only.

340.112 Insulation. The conductors of Type UF shall be one of the moisture-resistant types listed in Table 310.13 that is suitable for branch-circuit wiring or one that is identified for such use.

340.116 Sheath. The overall covering shall be flame retardant; moisture, fungus, and corrosion resistant; and suitable for direct burial in the earth.

ARTICLE 342
Intermediate Metal Conduit: Type IMC

I. General

342.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for intermediate metal conduit (IMC) and associated fittings.

342.2 Definition.

Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC). A steel threadable raceway of circular cross section designed for the physical protection and routing of conductors and cables and for use

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-192

as an equipment grounding conductor when installed with its integral or associated coupling and appropriate fittings.

342.6 Listing Requirements. IMC, factory elbows and couplings, and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

342.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) All Atmospheric Conditions and Occupancies. Use of IMC shall be permitted under all atmospheric conditions and occupancies.

(B) Corrosion Environments. IMC, elbows, couplings, and fittings shall be permitted to be installed in concrete, in direct contact with the earth, or in areas subject to severe corrosive influences where protected by corrosion protection and judged suitable for the condition.

(C) Cinder Fill. IMC shall be permitted to be installed in or under cinder fill where subject to permanent moisture where protected on all sides by a layer of noncinder concrete not less than 50 mm (2 in.) thick; where the conduit is not less than 450 mm (18 in.) under the fill; or where protected by corrosion protection and judged suitable for the condition.

(D) Wet Locations. All supports, bolts, straps, screws, and so forth, shall be of corrosion-resistant materials or protected against corrosion by corrosion-resistant materials.

FPN: See 300.6 for protection against corrosion.

342.14 Dissimilar Metals. Where practicable, dissimilar metals in contact anywhere in the system shall be avoided to eliminate the possibility of galvanic action.

Aluminum fittings and enclosures shall be permitted to be used with IMC.

342.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. IMC smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

(B) Maximum. IMC larger than metric designator 103 (trade size 4) shall not be used.

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

342.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

342.24 Bends — How Made. Bends of IMC shall be made so that the conduit will not be damaged and so that the internal diameter of the conduit will not be effectively reduced. The radius of the curve of any field bend to the centerline of the conduit shall not be less than indicated in Table 344.24.

342.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

342.28 Reaming and Threading. All cut ends shall be reamed or otherwise finished to remove rough edges. Where conduit is threaded in the field, a standard cutting die with a taper of 1 in 16 (¾ in. taper per foot) shall be used.

FPN: See ANSI/ASME B.1.20.1-1983, *Standard for Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch).*

342.30 Securing and Supporting. IMC shall be installed as a complete system as provided in Article 300 and shall be securely fastened in place and supported in accordance with 342.30(A) and (B).

(A) Securely Fastened. Each IMC shall be securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of each outlet box, junction box, device box, cabinet, conduit body, or other conduit termination. Fastening shall be permitted to be increased to a distance of 1.5 m (5 ft) where structural members do not readily permit fastening within 900 mm (3 ft). Where approved, conduit shall not be required to be securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of the service head for above-the-roof termination of a mast.

(B) Supports. IMC shall be supported in accordance with one of the following:

(1) Conduit shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 3 m (10 ft).
(2) The distance between supports for straight runs of conduit shall be permitted in accordance with Table 344.30(B)(2), provided the conduit is made up with threaded couplings and such supports prevent transmission of stresses to termination where conduit is deflected between supports.
(3) Exposed vertical risers from industrial machinery or fixed equipment shall be permitted to be supported at intervals not exceeding 6 m (20 ft), if the conduit is made up with threaded couplings, the conduit is firmly supported at the top and bottom of the riser, and no other means of intermediate support is readily available.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-193

(4) Horizontal runs of IMC supported by openings through framing members at intervals not exceeding 3 m (10 ft) and securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of termination points shall be permitted.

342.42 Couplings and Connectors.

(A) Threadless. Threadless couplings and connectors used with conduit shall be made tight. Where buried in masonry or concrete, they shall be the concretetight type. Where installed in wet locations, they shall be the raintight type. Threadless couplings and connectors shall not be used on threaded conduit ends unless listed for the purpose.

(B) Running Threads. Running threads shall not be used on conduit for connection at couplings.

342.46 Bushings. Where a conduit enters a box, fitting, or other enclosure, a bushing shall be provided to protect the wire from abrasion unless the design of the box, fitting, or enclosure is such as to afford equivalent protection.

FPN: See 300.4(F) for the protection of conductors 4 AWG and larger at bushings.

342.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

342.60 Grounding. IMC shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor.

III. Construction Specifications

342.120 Marking. Each length shall be clearly and durably marked at least every 1.5 m (5 ft) with the letters IMC. Each length shall be marked as required in 110.21.

342.130 Standard Lengths. The standard length of IMC shall be 3.05 m (10 ft), including an attached coupling, and each end shall be threaded. Longer or shorter lengths with or without coupling and threaded or unthreaded shall be permitted.

ARTICLE 344
Rigid Metal Conduit: Type RMC

I. General

344.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for rigid metal conduit (RMC) and associated fittings.

344.2 Definition.

Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC). A threadable raceway of circular cross section designed for the physical protection and routing of conductors and cables and for use as an equipment grounding conductor when installed with its integral or associated coupling and appropriate fittings. RMC is generally made of steel (ferrous) with protective coatings or aluminum (nonferrous). Special use types are silicon bronze and stainless steel.

344.6 Listing Requirements. RMC, factory elbows and couplings, and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

344.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) All Atmospheric Conditions and Occupancies. Use of RMC shall be permitted under all atmospheric conditions and occupancies. Ferrous raceways and fittings protected from corrosion solely by enamel shall be permitted only indoors and in occupancies not subject to severe corrosive influences.

(B) Corrosion Environments. RMC, elbows, couplings, and fittings shall be permitted to be installed in concrete, in direct contact with the earth, or in areas subject to severe corrosive influences where protected by corrosion protection and judged suitable for the condition.

(C) Cinder Fill. RMC shall be permitted to be installed in or under cinder fill where subject to permanent moisture where protected on all sides by a layer of noncinder concrete not less than 50 mm (2 in.) thick; where the conduit is not less than 450 mm (18 in.) under the fill; or where protected by corrosion protection and judged suitable for the condition.

(D) Wet Locations. All supports, bolts, straps, screws, and so forth, shall be of corrosion-resistant materials or protected against corrosion by corrosion-resistant materials.

FPN: See 300.6 for protection against corrosion.

344.14 Dissimilar Metals. Where practicable, dissimilar metals in contact anywhere in the system shall be avoided to eliminate the possibility of galvanic action. Aluminum fittings and enclosures shall be permitted to be used with steel RMC, and steel fittings and enclosures shall be permitted to be used with aluminum RMC where not subject to severe corrosive influences.

344.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. RMC smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-194

Exception: For enclosing the leads of motors as permitted in 430.145(B).

(B) Maximum. RMC larger than metric designator 155 (trade size 6) shall not be used.

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

344.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors or cables shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

344.24 Bends — How Made. Bends of RMC shall be made so that the conduit is not damaged and the internal diameter of the conduit is not effectively reduced. The radius of the curve of any field bend to the centerline of the conduit shall not be less than indicated in Table 344.24.

Table 344.24 Radius of Conduit Bends

Conduit Size		One Shot and Full Shoe Benders		Other Bends	
Metric Designator	Trade Size	mm	in.	mm	in.
16	½	101.6	4	101.6	4
21	¾	114.3	4½	127	5
27	1	146.05	5¾	152.4	6
35	1¼	184.15	7¼	203.2	8
41	1½	209.55	8¼	254	10
53	2	241.3	9½	304.8	12
63	2½	266.7	10½	381	15
78	3	330.2	13	457.2	18
91	3½	381	15	533.4	21
103	4	406.4	16	609.6	24
129	5	609.6	24	762	30
155	6	762	30	914.4	36

344.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

344.28 Reaming and Threading. All cut ends shall be reamed or otherwise finished to remove rough edges. Where conduit is threaded in the field, a standard cutting die with a 1 in 16 taper (¾-in. taper per foot) shall be used.

FPN: See ANSI/ASME B.1.20.1-1983, *Standard for Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch).*

344.30 Securing and Supporting. RMC shall be installed as a complete system as provided in Article 300 and shall be securely fastened in place and supported in accordance with 344.30(A) and (B).

(A) Securely Fastened. RMC shall be securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of each outlet box, junction box, device box, cabinet, conduit body, or other conduit termination. Fastening shall be permitted to be increased to a distance of 1.5 m (5 ft) where structural members do not readily permit fastening within 900 mm (3 ft). Where approved, conduit shall not be required to be securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of the service head for above-the-roof termination of a mast.

(B) Supports. RMC shall be supported in accordance with one of the following.

(1) Conduit shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 3 m (10 ft).
(2) The distance between supports for straight runs of conduit shall be permitted in accordance with Table 344.30(B)(2), provided the conduit is made up with threaded couplings, and such supports prevent transmission of stresses to termination where conduit is deflected between supports.
(3) Exposed vertical risers from industrial machinery or fixed equipment shall be permitted to be supported at intervals not exceeding 6 m (20 ft), if the conduit is made up with threaded couplings, the conduit is firmly supported at the top and bottom of the riser, and no other means of intermediate support is readily available.
(4) Horizontal runs of RMC supported by openings through framing members at intervals not exceeding 3 m (10 ft) and securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of termination points shall be permitted.

Table 344.30(B)(2) Supports for Rigid Metal Conduit

Conduit Size		Maximum Distance Between Rigid Metal Conduit Supports	
Metric Designator	Trade Size	m	ft
16–21	½–¾	3.0	10
27	1	3.7	12
35–41	1¼–1½	4.3	14
53–63	2–2½	4.9	16
78 and larger	3 and larger	6.1	20

344.42 Couplings and Connectors.

(A) Threadless. Threadless couplings and connectors used with conduit shall be made tight. Where buried in masonry

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-195

or concrete, they shall be the concretetight type. Where installed in wet locations, they shall be the raintight type. Threadless couplings and connectors shall not be used on threaded conduit ends unless listed for the purpose.

(B) Running Threads. Running threads shall not be used on conduit for connection at couplings.

344.46 Bushings. Where a conduit enters a box, fitting, or other enclosure, a bushing shall be provided to protect the wire from abrasion unless the design of the box, fitting, or enclosure is such as to afford equivalent protection.

FPN: See 300.4(F) for the protection of conductors sizes 4 AWG and larger at bushings.

344.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

344.60 Grounding. RMC shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor.

III. Construction Specifications

344.120 Marking. Each length shall be clearly and durably identified in every 3 m (10 ft) as required in the first sentence of 110.21. Nonferrous conduit of corrosion-resistant material shall have suitable markings.

344.130 Standard Lengths. The standard length of RMC shall be 3.05 m (10 ft), including an attached coupling, and each end shall be threaded. Longer or shorter lengths with or without coupling and threaded or unthreaded shall be permitted.

ARTICLE 348
Flexible Metal Conduit: Type FMC

I. General

348.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for flexible metal conduit (FMC) and associated fittings.

348.2 Definition.

Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC). A raceway of circular cross section made of helically wound, formed, interlocked metal strip.

348.6 Listing Requirements. FMC and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

348.10 Uses Permitted. FMC shall be permitted to be used in exposed and concealed locations.

348.12 Uses Not Permitted. FMC shall not be used in the following:

(1) In wet locations unless the conductors are approved for the specific conditions and the installation is such that liquid is not likely to enter raceways or enclosures to which the conduit is connected
(2) In hoistways, other than as permitted in 620.21(A)(1)
(3) In storage battery rooms
(4) In any hazardous (classified) location other than as permitted in 501.4(B) and 504.20
(5) Where exposed to materials having a deteriorating effect on the installed conductors, such as oil or gasoline
(6) Underground or embedded in poured concrete or aggregate
(7) Where subject to physical damage

348.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. FMC less than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used unless permitted in 348.20(A)(1) through (5) for metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜).

(1) For enclosing the leads of motors as permitted in 430.145(B)
(2) In lengths not in excess of 1.8 m (6 ft) for any of the following uses:
   a. For utilization equipment
   b. As part of a listed assembly
   c. For tap connections to luminaires (lighting fixtures) as permitted in 410.67(C)
(3) For manufactured wiring systems as permitted in 604.6(A)
(4) In hoistways as permitted in 620.21(A)(1)
(5) As part of a listed assembly to connect wired luminaire (fixture) sections as permitted in 410.77(C)

(B) Maximum. FMC larger than metric designator 103 (trade size 4) shall not be used.

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

348.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9, or as permitted in Table 348.22 for metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜).

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-196

Table 348.22 Maximum Number of Insulated Conductors in Metric Designator 12 (Trade Size 3/8) Flexible Metal Conduit*

Size (AWG)	Types RFH-2, SF-2		Types TF, XHHW, TW		Types TFN, THHN, THWN		Types FEP, FEBP, PF, PGF	
	Fittings Inside Conduit	Fittings Outside Conduit	Fittings Inside Conduit	Fittings Outside Conduit	Fittings Inside Conduit	Fittings Outside Conduit	Fittings Inside Conduit	Fittings Outside Conduit
18	2	3	3	5	5	8	5	8
16	1	2	3	4	4	6	4	6
14	1	2	2	3	3	4	3	4
12	—	—	1	2	2	3	2	3
10	—	—	1	1	1	1	1	2

*In addition, one covered or bare equipment grounding conductor of the same size shall be permitted.

348.24 Bends —How Made. Bends in conduit shall be made so that the conduit is not damaged and the internal diameter of the conduit is not effectively reduced. Bends shall be permitted to be made manually without auxiliary equipment. The radius of the curve to the centerline of any bend shall not be less than shown in Table 344.24 using the column "Other Bends."

348.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

348.28 Trimming. All cut ends shall be trimmed or otherwise finished to remove rough edges, except where fittings that thread into the convolutions are used.

348.30 Securing and Supporting. FMC shall be securely fastened in place and supported in accordance with 348.30(A) and (B).

(A) Securely Fastened. FMC shall be securely fastened in place by an approved means within 300 mm (12 in.) of each box, cabinet, conduit body, or other conduit termination and shall be supported and secured at intervals not to exceed 1.4 m (4½ ft).

Exception No. 1: Where FMC is fished.

Exception No. 2: Lengths not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft) at terminals where flexibility is required.

Exception No. 3: Lengths not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) from a luminaire (fixture) terminal connection for tap connections to luminaires (light fixtures) as permitted in 410.67(C).

(B) Supports. Horizontal runs of flexible metal conduit FMC supported by openings through framing members at intervals not greater than 1.4 m (4½ ft) and securely fastened within 300 mm (12 in.) of termination points shall be permitted.

348.42 Couplings and Connectors. Angle connectors shall not be used for concealed raceway installations.

348.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

348.60 Grounding and Bonding. Where used to connect equipment where flexibility is required, an equipment grounding conductor shall be installed.

Where required or installed, equipment grounding conductors shall be installed in accordance with 250.134(B).

Where required or installed, equipment bonding jumpers shall be installed in accordance with 250.102.

ARTICLE 350
Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit: Type LFMC

I. General

350.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC) and associated fittings.

350.2 Definition.

Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC). A raceway of circular cross section having an outer liquidtight, nonmetallic, sunlight-resistant jacket over an inner flexible metal core with associated couplings, connectors, and fittings for the installation of electric conductors.

350.6 Listing Requirements. LFMC and associated fittings shall be listed.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-197

II. Installation

350.10 Uses Permitted. LFMC shall be permitted to be used in exposed or concealed locations as follows:

(1) Where conditions of installation, operation, or maintenance require flexibility or protection from liquids, vapors, or solids
(2) As permitted by 501.4(B), 502.4, 503.3, and 504.20 and in other hazardous (classified) locations where specifically approved, and by 553.7(B)
(3) For direct burial where listed and marked for the purpose

350.12 Uses Not Permitted. LFMC shall not be used as follows:

(1) Where subject to physical damage
(2) Where any combination of ambient and conductor temperature produces an operating temperature in excess of that for which the material is approved

350.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. LFMC smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

Exception: LFMC of metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜) shall be permitted as covered in 348.20(A).

(B) Maximum. The maximum size of LFMC shall be metric designator 103 (trade size 4).

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

350.22 Number of Conductors or Cables.

(A) Metric Designators 16 through 103 (Trade Sizes ½ through 4). The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

(B) Metric Designator 12 (Trade Size ⅜). The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted in Table 348.22, "Fittings Outside Conduit" columns.

350.24 Bends — How Made. Bends in conduit shall be made so that the conduit will not be damaged and the internal diameter of the conduit will not be effectively reduced. Bends shall be permitted to be made manually without auxiliary equipment. The radius of the curve to the centerline of any bend shall not be less than shown in Table 344.24 using the column "Other Bends."

350.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

350.30 Securing and Supporting. LFMC shall be securely fastened in place and supported in accordance with 350.30(A) and (B).

(A) Securely Fastened. LFMC shall be securely fastened in place by an approved means within 300 mm (12 in.) of each box, cabinet, conduit body, or other conduit termination and shall be supported and secured at intervals not to exceed 1.4 m (4½ ft).

Exception No. 1: Where LFMC is fished.

Exception No. 2: Lengths not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft) at terminals where flexibility is necessary.

Exception No. 3: Lengths not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) from a luminaire (fixture) terminal connection for tap conductors to luminaires (lighting fixtures), as permitted in 410.67(C).

(B) Supports. Horizontal runs of LFMC supported by openings through framing members at intervals not greater than 1.4 m (4½ ft) and securely fastened within 300 mm (12 in.) of termination points shall be permitted.

350.42 Couplings and Connectors. Angle connectors shall not be used for concealed raceway installations.

350.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

350.60 Grounding and Bonding. Where used to connect equipment where flexibility is required, an equipment grounding conductor shall be installed.

Where required or installed, equipment grounding conductors shall be installed in accordance with 250.134(B).

Where required or installed, equipment bonding jumpers shall be installed in accordance with 250.102.

FPN: See 501.16(B), 502.16(B), and 503.16(B) for types of equipment grounding conductors.

III. Construction Specifications

350.120 Marking. LFMC shall be marked according to 110.21. The trade size and other information required by the listing shall also be marked on the conduit. Conduit suitable for direct burial shall be so marked.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-198

ARTICLE 352
Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit: Type RNC

I. General

352.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for rigid nonmetallic conduit (RNC) and associated fittings.

352.2 Definition.

Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (RNC). A nonmetallic raceway of circular cross section, with integral or associated couplings, connectors, and fittings for the installation of electrical conductors.

352.6 Listing Requirements. RNC, factory elbows, and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

352.10 Uses Permitted. The use of RNC shall be permitted under the following conditions.

FPN: Extreme cold may cause some nonmetallic conduits to become brittle and therefore more susceptible to damage from physical contact.

(A) Concealed. In walls, floors, and ceilings.

(B) Corrosive Influences. In locations subject to severe corrosive influences as covered in 300.6 and where subject to chemicals for which the materials are specifically approved.

(C) Cinders. In cinder fill.

(D) Wet Locations. In portions of dairies, laundries, canneries, or other wet locations and in locations where walls are frequently washed, the entire conduit system including boxes and fittings used therewith shall be installed and equipped so as to prevent water from entering the conduit. All supports, bolts, straps, screws, and so forth, shall be of corrosion-resistant materials or be protected against corrosion by approved corrosion-resistant materials.

(E) Dry and Damp Locations. In dry and damp locations not prohibited by 352.12.

(F) Exposed. For exposed work where not subject to physical damage if identified for such use.

(G) Underground Installations. For underground installations, see 300.5 and 300.50. Conduits listed for the purpose shall be permitted to be installed underground in continuous lengths from a reel.

(H) Support of Conduit Bodies. Rigid nonmetallic conduit shall be permitted to support nonmetallic conduit bodies not larger than the largest trade size of an entering raceway. The conduit bodies shall not contain devices or support luminaires (fixtures) or other equipment.

352.12 Uses Not Permitted. RNC shall not be used in the following locations.

(A) Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

(1) In hazardous (classified) locations, except as permitted in 503.3(A), 504.20, 514.8, and 515.8
(2) In Class I, Division 2 locations, except as permitted in 501.4(B), Exception

(B) Support of Luminaires (Fixtures). For the support of luminaires (fixtures) or other equipment not described in 352.10(H).

(C) Physical Damage. Where subject to physical damage unless identified for such use.

(D) Ambient Temperatures. Where subject to ambient temperatures in excess of 50°C (122°F) unless listed otherwise.

(E) Insulation Temperature Limitations. For conductors whose insulation temperature limitations would exceed those for which the conduit is listed.

(F) Theaters and Similar Locations. In theaters and similar locations, except as provided in Articles 518 and 520.

352.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. RNC smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

(B) Maximum. RNC larger than metric designator 155 (trade size 6) shall not be used.

FPN: The trade sizes and metric designators are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions. See 300.1(C).

352.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

352.24 Bends — How Made. Bends shall be made so that the conduit will not be damaged and the internal diameter of the conduit will not be effectively reduced. Field bends shall be made only with bending equipment identified for

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-199

the purpose. The radius of the curve to the centerline of such bends shall not be less than shown in Table 344.24, column "Other Bends."

352.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

352.28 Trimming. All cut ends shall be trimmed inside and outside to remove rough edges.

352.30 Securing and Supporting. RNC shall be installed as a complete system as provided in 300.18 and shall be fastened so that movement from thermal expansion or contraction is permitted. RNC shall be securely fastened and supported in accordance with 352.30(A) and (B).

(A) Securely Fastened. RNC shall be securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of each outlet box, junction box, device box, conduit body, or other conduit termination. Conduit listed for securing at other than 900 mm (3 ft) shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the listing.

(B) Supports. RNC shall be supported as required in Table 352.30(B). Conduit listed for support at spacings other than as shown in Table 352.30(B) shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the listing. Horizontal runs of RNC supported by openings through framing members at intervals not exceeding those in Table 352.30(B) and securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of termination points shall be permitted.

Table 352.30(B) Support of Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (RNC)

Conduit Size		Maximum Spacing Between Supports	
Metric Designator	Trade Size	mm or m	ft
16–27	½–1	900 mm	3
35–53	1¼–2	1.5 m	5
63–78	2½–3	1.8 m	6
91–129	3½–5	2.1 m	7
155	6	2.5 m	8

352.44 Expansion Fittings. Expansion fittings for RNC shall be provided to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction where the length change, in accordance with Table 352.44(A) or (B), is expected to be 6 mm (¼ in.)or greater in a straight run between securely mounted items such as boxes, cabinets, elbows, or other conduit terminations.

352.46 Bushings. Where a conduit enters a box, fitting, or other enclosure, a bushing or adapter shall be provided to protect the wire from abrasion unless the box, fitting, or enclosure design provides equivalent protection.

FPN: See 300.4(F) for the protection of conductors 4 AWG and larger at bushings.

352.48 Joints. All joints between lengths of conduit, and between conduit and couplings, fittings, and boxes, shall be made by an approved method.

352.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

352.60 Grounding. Where equipment grounding is required by Article 250, a separate equipment grounding conductor shall be installed in the conduit.

Exception No. 1: As permitted in 250.134(B), Exception No. 2, for dc circuits and 250.134(B), Exception No. 1, for separately run equipment grounding conductors.

Exception No. 2: Where the grounded conductor is used to ground equipment as permitted in 250.142.

III. Construction Specifications

352.100 Construction. RNC and fittings shall be composed of suitable nonmetallic material that is resistant to moisture and chemical atmospheres. For use above ground, it shall also be flame retardant, resistant to impact and crushing, resistant to distortion from heat under conditions likely to be encountered in service, and resistant to low temperature and sunlight effects. For use underground, the material shall be acceptably resistant to moisture and corrosive agents and shall be of sufficient strength to withstand abuse, such as by impact and crushing, in handling and during installation. Where intended for direct burial, without encasement in concrete, the material shall also be capable of withstanding continued loading that is likely to be encountered after installation.

352.120 Marking. Each length of RNC shall be clearly and durably marked at least every 3 m (10 ft) as required in the first sentence of 110.21. The type of material shall also be included in the marking unless it is visually identifiable. For conduit recognized for use above ground, these markings shall be permanent. For conduit limited to underground use only, these markings shall be sufficiently durable to remain legible until the material is installed. Conduit shall be permitted to be surface marked to indicate special characteristics of the material.

FPN: Examples of these markings include but are not limited to "limited smoke" and "sunlight resistant."

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-200

Table 352.44(A) Expansion Characteristics of PVC Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit Coefficient of Thermal Expansion = 6.084×10^{-5} mm/mm/°C (3.38×10^{-5} in./in./°F)

Temperature Change (°C)	Length Change of PVC Conduit (mm/m)	Temperature Change (°F)	Length Change of PVC Conduit (in./100 ft)	Temperature Change (°F)	Length Change of PVC Conduit (in./100 ft)
5	0.30	5	0.20	105	4.26
10	0.61	10	0.41	110	4.46
15	0.91	15	0.61	115	4.66
20	1.22	20	0.81	120	4.87
25	1.52	25	1.01	125	5.07
30	1.83	30	1.22	130	5.27
35	2.13	35	1.42	135	5.48
40	2.43	40	1.62	140	5.68
45	2.74	45	1.83	145	5.88
50	3.04	50	2.03	150	6.08
55	3.35	55	2.23	155	6.29
60	3.65	60	2.43	160	6.49
65	3.95	65	2.64	165	6.69
70	4.26	70	2.84	170	6.90
75	4.56	75	3.04	175	7.10
80	4.87	80	3.24	180	7.30
85	5.17	85	3.45	185	7.50
90	5.48	90	3.65	190	7.71
95	5.78	95	3.85	195	7.91
100	6.08	100	4.06	200	8.11

Table 352.44(B) Expansion Characteristics of Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC) Coefficient of Thermal Expansion = 2.7×10^{-5} mm/mm/°C (1.5×10^{-5} in./in./°F)

Temperature Change (°C)	Length Change of RTRC Conduit (mm/m)	Temperature Change (°F)	Length Change of RTRC Conduit (in./100 ft)	Temperature Change (°F)	Length Change of RTRC Conduit (in./100 ft)
5	0.14	5	0.09	105	1.89
10	0.27	10	0.18	110	1.98
15	0.41	15	0.27	115	2.07
20	0.54	20	0.36	120	2.16
25	0.68	25	0.45	125	2.25
30	0.81	30	0.54	130	2.34
35	0.95	35	0.63	135	2.43
40	1.08	40	0.72	140	2.52
45	1.22	45	0.81	145	2.61
50	1.35	50	0.90	150	2.70
55	1.49	55	0.99	155	2.79
60	1.62	60	1.08	160	2.88
65	1.76	65	1.17	165	2.97
70	1.89	70	1.26	170	3.06
75	2.03	75	1.35	175	3.15
80	2.16	80	1.44	180	3.24
85	2.30	85	1.53	185	3.33
90	2.43	90	1.62	190	3.42
95	2.57	95	1.71	195	3.51
100	2.70	100	1.80	200	3.60

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-201

ARTICLE 354
Nonmetallic Underground Conduit with Conductors: Type NUCC

I. General

354.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (NUCC).

354.2 Definition.

Nonmetallic Underground Conduit with Conductors (NUCC). A factory assembly of conductors or cables inside a nonmetallic, smooth wall conduit with a circular cross section.

354.6 Listing Requirements. NUCC and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

354.10 Uses Permitted. The use of NUCC and fittings shall be permitted in the following:

(1) For direct burial underground installation (For minimum cover requirements, see Table 300.5 and Table 300.50 under Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit.)
(2) Encased or embedded in concrete
(3) In cinder fill
(4) In underground locations subject to severe corrosive influences as covered in 300.6 and where subject to chemicals for which the assembly is specifically approved

354.12 Uses Not Permitted. NUCC shall not be used in the following:

(1) In exposed locations
(2) Inside buildings

Exception: The conductor or the cable portion of the assembly, where suitable, shall be permitted to extend within the building for termination purposes in accordance with 300.3.

(3) In hazardous (classified) locations except as permitted by 503.3(A), 504.20, 514.8, and 515.8, and in Class I, Division 2 locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3)

354.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. NUCC smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

(B) Maximum. NUCC larger than metric designator 103 (trade size 4) shall not be used.

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

354.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors or cables shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill in Table 1, Chapter 9.

354.24 Bends — How Made. Bends shall be manually made so that the conduit will not be damaged and the internal diameter of the conduit will not be effectively reduced. The radius of the curve of the centerline of such bends shall not be less than shown in Table 354.24.

Table 354.24 Minimum Bending Radius for Nonmetallic Underground Conduit with Conductors (NUCC)

Conduit Size		Minimum Bending Radius	
Metric Designator	Trade Size	mm	in.
16	½	250	10
21	¾	300	12
27	1	350	14
35	1¼	450	18
41	1½	500	20
53	2	650	26
63	2½	900	36
78	3	1200	48
103	4	1500	60

354.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between termination points.

354.28 Trimming. For termination, the conduit shall be trimmed away from the conductors or cables using an approved method that will not damage the conductor or cable insulation or jacket. All conduit ends shall be trimmed inside and out to remove rough edges.

354.46 Bushings. Where the NUCC enters a box, fitting, or other enclosure, a bushing or adapter shall be provided to protect the conductor or cable from abrasion unless the design of the box, fitting, or enclosure provides equivalent protection.

FPN: See 300.4(F) for the protection of conductors size 4 AWG or larger.

354.48 Joints. All joints between conduit, fittings, and boxes shall be made by an approved method.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-202

354.50 Conductor Terminations. All terminations between the conductors or cables and equipment shall be made by an approved method for that type of conductor or cable.

354.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in junction boxes or other enclosures.

354.60 Grounding. Where equipment grounding is required by Article 250, an assembly containing a separate equipment grounding conductor shall be used.

III. Construction Specifications

354.100 Construction.

(A) General. NUCC is an assembly that is provided in continuous lengths shipped in a coil, reel, or carton.

(B) Nonmetallic Underground Conduit. The nonmetallic underground conduit shall be listed and composed of a material that is resistant to moisture and corrosive agents. It shall also be capable of being supplied on reels without damage or distortion and shall be of sufficient strength to withstand abuse, such as impact or crushing, in handling and during installation without damage to conduit or conductors.

(C) Conductors and Cables. Conductors and cables used in NUCC shall be listed and shall comply with 310.8(C). Conductors of different systems shall be installed in accordance with 300.3(C).

(D) Conductor Fill. The maximum number of conductors or cables in NUCC shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill in Table 1, Chapter 9.

354.120 Marking. NUCC shall be clearly and durably marked at least every 3.05 m (10 ft) as required by 110.21. The type of conduit material shall also be included in the marking.

Identification of conductors or cables used in the assembly shall be provided on a tag attached to each end of the assembly or to the side of a reel. Enclosed conductors or cables shall be marked in accordance with 310.11.

ARTICLE 356
Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit: Type LFNC

I. General

356.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit (LFNC) and associated fittings.

356.2 Definition.

Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (LFNC). A raceway of circular cross section of various types as follows:

(1) A smooth seamless inner core and cover bonded together and having one or more reinforcement layers between the core and covers, designated as Type LFNC-A
(2) A smooth inner surface with integral reinforcement within the conduit wall, designated as Type LFNC-B
(3) A corrugated internal and external surface without integral reinforcement within the conduit wall, designated as LFNC-C.

LFNC is flame resistant and with fittings and is approved for the installation of electrical conductors.

FPN: FNMC is an alternative designation for LFNC.

356.6 Listing Requirements. LFNC and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

356.10 Uses Permitted. LFNC shall be permitted to be used in exposed or concealed locations for the following purposes:

FPN: Extreme cold may cause some types of nonmetallic conduits to become brittle and therefore more susceptible to damage from physical contact.

(1) Where flexibility is required for installation, operation, or maintenance
(2) Where protection of the contained conductors is required from vapors, liquids, or solids
(3) For outdoor locations where listed and marked as suitable for the purpose
(4) For direct burial where listed and marked for the purpose
(5) Type LFNC-B shall be permitted to be installed in lengths longer than 1.8 m (6 ft) where secured in accordance with 356.30
(6) Type LFNC-B as a listed manufactured prewired assembly, metric designator 16 through 27 (trade size ½ through 1) conduit

356.12 Uses Not Permitted. LFNC shall not be used as follows:

(1) Where subject to physical damage
(2) Where any combination of ambient and conductor temperatures is in excess of that for which the LFNC is approved
(3) In lengths longer than 1.8 m (6 ft), except as permitted by 356.10(5) or where a longer length is approved as essential for a required degree of flexibility

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-203

(4) Where voltage of the contained conductors is in excess of 600 volts, nominal

356.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. LFNC smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used unless permitted in 356.20(A)(1) through (3) for metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜).

(1) For enclosing the leads of motors as permitted in 430.145(B)
(2) In lengths not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) as part of a listed assembly for tap connections to luminaires (lighting fixtures) as required in 410.67(C), or for utilization equipment
(3) For electric sign conductors in accordance with 600.32(A)

(B) Maximum. LFNC larger than metric designator 103 (trade size 4) shall not be used.

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

356.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

356.24 Bends — How Made. Bends in conduit shall be made so that the conduit is not damaged and the internal diameter of the conduit is not effectively reduced. Bends shall be permitted to be made manually without auxiliary equipment. The radius of the curve to the centerline of any bend shall not be less than shown in Table 344.24 using the column "Other Bends."

356.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

356.28 Trimming. All cut ends of conduit shall be trimmed inside and outside to remove rough edges.

356.30 Securing and Supporting. Type LFNC-B shall be securely fastened and supported in accordance with one of the following:

(1) The conduit shall be securely fastened at intervals not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft) and within 300 mm (12 in.) on each side of every outlet box, junction box, cabinet, or fitting.
(2) Securing or supporting of the conduit shall not be required where it is fished, installed in lengths not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft) at terminals where flexibility is required, or installed in lengths not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) from a luminaire (fixture) terminal connection for tap conductors to luminaires (lighting fixtures) permitted in 410.67(C).
(3) Horizontal runs of LFNC supported by openings through framing members at intervals not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft) and securely fastened within 300 mm (12 in.) of termination points shall be permitted.

356.42 Couplings and Connectors. Angle connectors shall not be used for concealed raceway installations.

356.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

356.60 Grounding and Bonding. Where used to connect equipment where flexibility is required, an equipment grounding conductor shall be installed.

Where required or installed, equipment grounding conductors shall be installed in accordance with 250.134(B).

Where required or installed, equipment bonding jumpers shall be installed in accordance with 250.102.

III. Construction Specifications

356.100 Construction. LFNC-B as a prewired manufactured assembly shall be provided in continuous lengths capable of being shipped in a coil, reel, or carton without damage.

356.120 Marking. LFNC shall be marked at least every 600 mm (2 ft) in accordance with 110.21. The marking shall include a type designation in accordance with 356.2 and the trade size. Conduit that is intended for outdoor use or direct burial shall be marked.

The type, size, and quantity of conductors used in prewired manufactured assemblies shall be identified by means of a printed tag or label attached to each end of the manufactured assembly and either the carton, coil, or reel. The enclosed conductors shall be marked in accordance with 310.11.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-204

ARTICLE 358
Electrical Metallic Tubing: Type EMT

I. General

358.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for electrical metallic tubing (EMT) and associated fittings.

358.2 Definition.

Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT). An unthreaded thin-wall raceway of circular cross section designed for the physical protection and routing of conductors and cables and for use as an equipment grounding conductor when installed utilizing appropriate fittings. EMT is generally made of steel (ferrous) with protective coatings or aluminum (nonferrous).

358.6 Listing Requirements. EMT, factory elbows, and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

358.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) Exposed and Concealed. The use of EMT shall be permitted for both exposed and concealed work.

(B) Corrosion Protection. Ferrous or nonferrous EMT, elbows, couplings, and fittings shall be permitted to be installed in concrete, in direct contact with the earth, or in areas subject to severe corrosive influences where protected by corrosion protection and judged suitable for the condition.

(C) Wet Locations. All supports, bolts, straps, screws, and so forth shall be of corrosion-resistant materials or protected against corrosion by corrosion-resistant materials.

FPN: See 300.6 for protection against corrosion.

358.12 Uses Not Permitted. EMT shall not be used under the following conditions:

(1) Where, during installation or afterward, it will be subject to severe physical damage
(2) Where protected from corrosion solely by enamel
(3) In cinder concrete or cinder fill where subject to permanent moisture unless protected on all sides by a layer of noncinder concrete at least 50 mm (2 in.) thick or unless the tubing is at least 450 mm (18 in.) under the fill
(4) In any hazardous (classified) location except as permitted by 502.4, 503.3, and 504.20
(5) For the support of luminaires (fixtures) or other equipment except conduit bodies no larger than the largest trade size of the tubing
(6) Where practicable, dissimilar metals in contact anywhere in the system shall be avoided to eliminate the possibility of galvanic action

Exception: Aluminum fittings and enclosures shall be permitted to be used with steel EMT where not subject to severe corrosive influences.

358.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. EMT smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

Exception: For enclosing the leads of motors as permitted in 430.145(B).

(B) Maximum. The maximum size of EMT shall be metric designator 103 (trade size 4).

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

358.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

358.24 Bends — How Made. Bends shall be made so that the tubing is not damaged and the internal diameter of the tubing is not effectively reduced. The radius of the curve of any field bend to the centerline of the conduit shall not be less than shown in Table 344.24 for one-shot and full shoe benders.

358.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

358.28 Reaming and Threading.

(A) Reaming. All cut ends of EMT shall be reamed or otherwise finished to remove rough edges.

(B) Threading. EMT shall not be threaded.

Exception: EMT with factory threaded integral couplings complying with 358.100.

358.30 Securing and Supporting. EMT shall be installed as a complete system as provided in Article 300 and shall

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-205

be securely fastened in place and supported in accordance with 358.30(A) and (B).

(A) Securely Fastened. EMT shall be securely fastened in place at least every 3 m (10 ft). In addition, each EMT run between termination points shall be securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of each outlet box, junction box, device box, cabinet, conduit body, or other tubing termination.

Exception No. 1: Fastening of unbroken lengths shall be permitted to be increased to a distance of 1.5 m (5 ft) where structural members do not readily permit fastening within 900 mm (3 ft).

Exception No. 2: For concealed work in finished buildings or prefinished wall panels where such securing is impracticable, unbroken lengths (without coupling) of EMT shall be permitted to be fished.

(B) Supports. Horizontal runs of EMT supported by openings through framing members at intervals not greater than 3 m (10 ft) and securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of termination points shall be permitted.

358.42 Couplings and Connectors. Couplings and connectors used with EMT shall be made up tight. Where buried in masonry or concrete, they shall be concretetight type. Where installed in wet locations, they shall be of the raintight type.

358.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

358.60 Grounding. EMT shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor.

III. Construction Specifications

358.100 Construction. Factory-threaded integral couplings shall be permitted. Where EMT with a threaded integral coupling is used, threads for both the tubing and coupling shall be factory-made. The coupling and EMT threads shall be designed so as to prevent bending of the tubing at any part of the thread.

358.120 Marking. EMT shall be clearly and durably marked at least every 3 m (10 ft) as required in the first sentence of 110.21.

ARTICLE 360
Flexible Metallic Tubing: Type FMT

I. General

360.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for flexible metallic tubing (FMT) and associated fittings.

360.2 Definition.

Flexible Metallic Tubing (FMT). A raceway that is circular in cross section, flexible, metallic, and liquidtight without a nonmetallic jacket.

360.6 Listing Requirements. FMT and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

360.10 Uses Permitted. FMT shall be permitted to be used for branch circuits as follows:

(1) In dry locations
(2) Where concealed
(3) In accessible locations
(4) For system voltages of 1000 volts maximum

360.12 Uses Not Permitted. FMT shall not be used as follows:

(1) In hoistways
(2) In storage battery rooms
(3) In hazardous (classified) locations unless otherwise permitted under other articles in this *Code*
(4) Under ground for direct earth burial, or embedded in poured concrete or aggregate
(5) Where subject to physical damage
(6) In lengths over 1.8 m (6 ft)

360.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. FMT smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

Exception No. 1: FMT of metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜) shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with 300.22(B) and (C).

Exception No. 2: FMT of metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜) shall be permitted in lengths not in excess of 1.8 m (6 ft) as part of an approved assembly or for luminaires (lighting fixtures). See 410.67(C).

(B) Maximum. The maximum size of FMT shall be metric designator 21 (trade size ¾).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-206

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

360.22 Number of Conductors.

(A) FMT — Metric Designators 16 and 21 (Trade Sizes ½ and ¾). The number of conductors in metric designators 16 (trade size ½) and 21 (trade size ¾) shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

(B) FMT — Metric Designator 12 (Trade Size ⅜). The number of conductors in metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜) shall not exceed that permitted in Table 348.22.

360.24 Bends.

(A) Infrequent Flexing Use. Where FMT may be infrequently flexed in service after installation, the radii of bends measured to the inside of the bend shall not be less than specified in Table 360.24(A).

Table 360.24(A) Minimum Radii for Flexing Use

Metric Designator	Trade Size	Minimum Radii for Flexing Use	
		mm	in.
12	⅜	25.4	10
16	½	317.5	12½
21	¾	444.5	17½

(B) Fixed Bends. Where FMT is bent for installation purposes and is not flexed or bent as required by use after installation, the radii of bends measured to the inside of the bend shall not be less than specified in Table 360.24(B).

Table 360.24(B) Minimum Radii for Fixed Bends

Metric Designator	Trade Size	Minimum Radii for Fixed Bends	
		mm	in.
12	⅜	88.9	3½
16	½	101.6	4
21	¾	127.0	5

360.40 Boxes and Fittings. Fittings shall effectively close any openings in the connection.

360.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made in accordance with 300.15.

360.60 Grounding. FMT shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor where installed in accordance with 250.118(8).

III. Construction Specifications

360.120 Marking. FMT shall be marked according to 110.21.

ARTICLE 362
Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing: Type ENT

I. General

362.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for electrical nonmetallic tubing (ENT) and associated fittings.

362.2 Definition.

Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT). A nonmetallic pliable corrugated raceway of circular cross section with integral or associated couplings, connectors, and fittings for the installation of electric conductors. ENT is composed of a material that is resistant to moisture and chemical atmospheres and is flame retardant.

A pliable raceway is a raceway that can be bent by hand with a reasonable force, but without other assistance.

362.6 Listing Requirements. ENT and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

362.10 Uses Permitted. For the purpose of this article, the first floor of a building shall be that floor that has 50 percent or more of the exterior wall surface area level with or above finished grade. One additional level that is the first level and not designed for human habitation and used only for vehicle parking, storage, or similar use shall be permitted. The use of ENT and fittings shall be permitted in the following:

(1) In any building not exceeding three floors above grade
   a. For exposed work, where not prohibited by 362.12
   b. Concealed within walls, floors, and ceilings

(2) In any building exceeding three floors above grade, ENT shall be concealed within walls, floors, and ceil-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-207

ings where the walls, floors, and ceilings provide a thermal barrier of material that has at least a 15-minute finish rating as identified in listings of fire-rated assemblies. The 15-minute-finish-rated thermal barrier shall be permitted to be used for combustible or noncombustible walls, floors, and ceilings.

Exception: Where a fire sprinkler system(s) is installed in accordance with NFPA 13-1999, Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems, on all floors, ENT is permitted to be used within walls, floors, and ceilings, exposed or concealed, in buildings exceeding three floors above grade.

FPN: A finish rating is established for assemblies containing combustible (wood) supports. The finish rating is defined as the time at which the wood stud or wood joist reaches an average temperature rise of 121°C (250°F) or an individual temperature of 163°C (325°F) as measured on the plane of the wood nearest the fire. A finish rating is not intended to represent a rating for a membrane ceiling.

(3) In locations subject to severe corrosive influences as covered in 300.6 and where subject to chemicals for which the materials are specifically approved.
(4) In concealed, dry, and damp locations not prohibited by 362.12.
(5) Above suspended ceilings where the suspended ceilings provide a thermal barrier of material that has at least a 15-minute finish rating as identified in listings of fire-rated assemblies, except as permitted in 362.10(1)(a).

Exception: Where a fire sprinkler system(s) is installed in accordance with NFPA 13-1999, Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems, on all floors, ENT is permitted to be used within walls, floors, and ceilings, exposed or concealed, in buildings exceeding three floors above grade.

(6) Encased in poured concrete, or embedded in a concrete slab on grade where ENT is placed on sand or approved screenings, provided fittings identified for this purpose are used for connections.
(7) For wet locations indoors as permitted in this section or in a concrete slab on or below grade, with fittings listed for the purpose.
(8) Metric designator 16 through 27 (trade size ½ through 1) as listed manufactured prewired assembly.

FPN: Extreme cold may cause some types of nonmetallic conduits to become brittle and therefore more susceptible to damage from physical contact.

362.12 Uses Not Permitted. ENT shall not be used in the following:

(1) In hazardous (classified) locations, except as permitted by 504.20 and 505.15(A)(1)
(2) For the support of luminaires (fixtures) and other equipment
(3) Where subject to ambient temperatures in excess of 50°C (122°F) unless listed otherwise
(4) For conductors whose insulation temperature limitations would exceed those for which the tubing is listed
(5) For direct earth burial
(6) Where the voltage is over 600 volts
(7) In exposed locations, except as permitted by 362.10(1), 362.10(5), and 362.10(7)
(8) In theaters and similar locations, except as provided in Articles 518 and 520
(9) Where exposed to the direct rays of the sun, unless identified as sunlight resistant
(10) Where subject to physical damage

362.20 Size.

(A) Minimum. ENT smaller than metric designator 16 (trade size ½) shall not be used.

(B) Maximum. ENT larger than metric designator 53 (trade size 2) shall not be used.

FPN: See 300.1(C) for the metric designators and trade sizes. These are for identification purposes only and do not relate to actual dimensions.

362.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors shall not exceed that permitted by the percentage fill in Table 1, Chapter 9.

Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles. The number of cables shall not exceed the allowable percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

362.24 Bends — How Made. Bends shall be made so that the tubing will not be damaged and that the internal diameter of the tubing will not be effectively reduced. Bends shall be permitted to be made manually without auxiliary equipment, and the radius of the curve to the centerline of such bends shall not be less than shown in Table 344.24 using the column "Other Bends."

362.26 Bends — Number in One Run. There shall not be more than the equivalent of four quarter bends (360 degrees total) between pull points, for example, conduit bodies and boxes.

362.28 Trimming. All cut ends shall be trimmed inside and outside to remove rough edges.

362.30 Securing and Supporting. ENT shall be installed as a complete system as provided in Article 300 and shall be securely fastened in place and supported in accordance with 362.30(A) and (B).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-208

(A) Securely Fastened. ENT shall be securely fastened at intervals not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft). In addition, ENT shall be securely fastened in place within 900 mm (3 ft) of each outlet box, device box, junction box, cabinet, or fitting where it terminates.

Exception: Lengths not exceeding a distance of 1.8 m (6 ft) from a luminaire (fixture) terminal connection for tap connections to lighting luminaires (fixtures) shall be permitted without being secured.

(B) Supports. Horizontal runs of ENT supported by openings in framing members at intervals not exceeding 900 mm (3 ft) and securely fastened within 900 mm (3 ft) of termination points shall be permitted.

362.46 Bushings. Where a tubing enters a box, fitting, or other enclosure, a bushing or adapter shall be provided to protect the wire from abrasion unless the box, fitting, or enclosure design provides equivalent protection.

FPN: See 300.4(F) for the protection of conductors size 4 AWG or larger.

362.48 Joints. All joints between lengths of tubing and between tubing and couplings, fittings, and boxes shall be by an approved method.

362.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made only in accordance with 300.15.

FPN: See Article 314 for rules on the installation and use of boxes and conduit bodies.

362.60 Grounding. Where equipment grounding is required by Article 250, a separate equipment grounding conductor shall be installed in the raceway.

III. Construction Specifications

362.100 Construction. ENT shall be made of material that does not exceed the ignitibility, flammability, smoke generation, and toxicity characteristics of rigid (nonplasticized) polyvinyl chloride.

ENT, as a prewired manufactured assembly, shall be provided in continuous lengths capable of being shipped in a coil, reel, or carton without damage.

362.120 Marking. ENT shall be clearly and durably marked at least every 3 m (10 ft) as required in the first sentence of 110.21. The type of material shall also be included in the marking. Marking for limited smoke shall be permitted on the tubing that has limited smoke-producing characteristics.

The type, size, and quantity of conductors used in prewired manufactured assemblies shall be identified by means of a printed tag or label attached to each end of the manufactured assembly and either the carton, coil, or reel. The enclosed conductors shall be marked in accordance with 310.11.

ARTICLE 366
Auxiliary Gutters

366.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation and construction requirements of metal auxiliary gutters and nonmetallic auxiliary gutters and associated fittings.

366.2 Use. Auxiliary gutters shall be permitted to supplement wiring spaces at meter centers, distribution centers, switchboards, and similar points of wiring systems and may enclose conductors or busbars but shall not be used to enclose switches, overcurrent devices, appliances, or other similar equipment.

366.3 Extension Beyond Equipment. An auxiliary gutter shall not extend a greater distance than 9 m (30 ft) beyond the equipment that it supplements.

Exception: As permitted in 620.35 for elevators, an auxiliary gutter shall be permitted to extend a distance greater than 9 m (30 ft) beyond the equipment that it supplements.

FPN: For wireways, see Articles 376 and 378. For busways, see Article 368.

366.4 Supports.

(A) Sheet Metal Auxiliary Gutters. Sheet metal auxiliary gutters shall be supported throughout their entire length at intervals not exceeding 1.5 m (5 ft).

(B) Nonmetallic Auxiliary Gutters. Nonmetallic auxiliary gutters shall be supported at intervals not to exceed 900 mm (3 ft) and at each end or joint, unless listed for other support intervals. In no case shall the distance between supports exceed 3 m (10 ft).

366.5 Covers. Covers shall be securely fastened to the gutter.

366.6 Number of Conductors.

(A) Sheet Metal Auxiliary Gutters. The sum of the cross-sectional areas of all contained conductors at any cross section of a sheet metal auxiliary gutter shall not exceed 20 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the sheet metal auxiliary gutter. The derating factors in 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall be applied only where the number of current-carrying conductors, including neutral conductors classified as

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-209

current-carrying under the provisions of 310.15(B)(4), exceeds 30. Conductors for signaling circuits or controller conductors between a motor and its starter and used only for starting duty shall not be considered as current-carrying conductors.

(B) Nonmetallic Auxiliary Gutters. The sum of cross-sectional areas of all contained conductors at any cross section of the nonmetallic auxiliary gutter shall not exceed 20 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the nonmetallic auxiliary gutter.

366.7 Ampacity of Conductors.

(A) Sheet Metal Auxiliary Gutters. Where the number of current-carrying conductors contained in the sheet metal auxiliary gutter is 30 or less, the correction factors specified in 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall not apply. The current carried continuously in bare copper bars in sheet metal auxiliary gutters shall not exceed 1.55 amperes/mm^2 (1000 amperes/in.^{2}) of cross section of the conductor. For aluminum bars, the current carried continuously shall not exceed 1.09 amperes/mm^2 (700 amperes/in.^{2}) of cross section of the conductor.

(B) Nonmetallic Auxiliary Gutters. The derating factors specified in 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall be applicable to the current-carrying conductors in the nonmetallic auxiliary gutter.

366.8 Clearance of Bare Live Parts. Bare conductors shall be securely and rigidly supported so that the minimum clearance between bare current-carrying metal parts of different potential mounted on the same surface will not be less than 50 mm (2 in.), nor less than 25 mm (1 in.) for parts that are held free in the air. A clearance not less than 25 mm (1 in.) shall be secured between bare current-carrying metal parts and any metal surface. Adequate provisions shall be made for the expansion and contraction of busbars.

366.9 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall comply with 366.9(A) through (D).

(A) Within Gutters. Splices or taps shall be permitted within gutters where they are accessible by means of removable covers or doors. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill the gutter to more than 75 percent of its area.

(B) Bare Conductors. Taps from bare conductors shall leave the gutter opposite their terminal connections, and conductors shall not be brought in contact with uninsulated current-carrying parts of different potential.

(C) Suitably Identified. All taps shall be suitably identified at the gutter as to the circuit or equipment that they supply.

(D) Overcurrent Protection. Tap connections from conductors in auxiliary gutters shall be provided with overcurrent protection as required in 240.21.

366.10 Construction and Installation. Auxiliary gutters shall comply with 366.10(A) through (F).

(A) Electrical and Mechanical Continuity. Gutters shall be constructed and installed so that adequate electrical and mechanical continuity of the complete system is secured.

(B) Substantial Construction. Gutters shall be of substantial construction and shall provide a complete enclosure for the contained conductors. All surfaces, both interior and exterior, shall be suitably protected from corrosion. Corner joints shall be made tight, and where the assembly is held together by rivets, bolts, or screws, such fasteners shall be spaced not more than 300 mm (12 in.) apart.

(C) Smooth Rounded Edges. Suitable bushings, shields, or fittings having smooth, rounded edges shall be provided where conductors pass between gutters, through partitions, around bends, between gutters and cabinets or junction boxes, and at other locations where necessary to prevent abrasion of the insulation of the conductors.

(D) Deflected Insulated Conductors. Where insulated conductors are deflected within an auxiliary gutter, either at the ends or where conduits, fittings, or other raceways or cables enter or leave the gutter, or where the direction of the gutter is deflected greater than 30 degrees, dimensions corresponding to 312.6 shall apply.

(E) Indoor and Outdoor Use.

(1) Sheet Metal Auxiliary Gutters. Sheet metal auxiliary gutters installed in wet locations shall be suitable for such locations.

(2) Nonmetallic Auxiliary Gutters.

(a) Nonmetallic auxiliary gutters installed outdoors shall comply with the following:

(1) Be listed and marked as suitable for exposure to sunlight
(2) Be listed and marked as suitable for use in wet locations
(3) Be listed for the maximum ambient temperature of the installation, and marked for the installed conductor insulation temperature rating
(4) Have expansion fittings installed where the expected length change due to expansion and contraction due to temperature change is more than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) Nonmetallic auxiliary gutters installed indoors shall comply with the following:

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-210

(1) Be listed for the maximum ambient temperature of the installation and marked for the installed conductor insulation temperature rating
(2) Have expansion fittings installed where expected length change, due to expansion and contraction due to temperature change, is more than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

FPN: Extreme cold may cause nonmetallic auxiliary gutter to become brittle and therefore more susceptible to damage from physical contact.

(F) Grounding. Grounding shall be in accordance with the provisions of Article 250.

ARTICLE 368
Busways

I. General Requirements

368.1 Scope. This article covers service-entrance, feeder, and branch-circuit busways and associated fittings.

368.2 Definition.

Busway. A grounded metal enclosure containing factory-mounted, bare or insulated conductors, which are usually copper or aluminum bars, rods, or tubes.

FPN: For cablebus, refer to Article 370.

368.4 Use.

(A) Uses Permitted. Busways shall be permitted to be installed where they are located as follows:

(1) Located in the open and are visible, except as permitted in 368.6, or
(2) Installed behind access panels, provided the busways are totally enclosed, of nonventilating-type construction, and installed so that the joints between sections and at fittings are accessible for maintenance purposes. Where installed behind access panels, means of access shall be provided, and the following conditions shall be met:
   a. The space behind the access panels shall not be used for air-handling purposes, or
   b. Where the space behind the access panels is used for environmental air, other than ducts and plenums, there shall be no provisions for plug-in connections, and the conductors shall be insulated.

(B) Uses Not Permitted. Busways shall not be installed as follows:

(1) Where subject to severe physical damage or corrosive vapors
(2) In hoistways
(3) In any hazardous (classified) location, unless specifically approved for such use

FPN: See 501.4(B).

(4) Outdoors or in wet or damp locations unless identified for such use

Lighting busway and trolley busway shall not be installed less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above the floor or working platform unless provided with a cover identified for the purpose.

368.5 Support. Busways shall be securely supported at intervals not exceeding 1.5 m (5 ft) unless otherwise designed and marked.

368.6 Through Walls and Floors.

(A) Walls. Unbroken lengths of busway shall be permitted to be extended through dry walls.

(B) Floors. Floor penetrations shall comply with (1) and (2):

(1) Busways shall be permitted to be extended vertically through dry floors if totally enclosed (unventilated) where passing through and for a minimum distance of 1.8 m (6 ft) above the floor to provide adequate protection from physical damage.
(2) In other than industrial establishments, where a vertical riser penetrates two or more dry floors, a minimum 100 mm (4 in.) high curb shall be installed around all floor openings for riser busways to prevent liquids from entering the opening. The curb shall be installed within 300 mm (12 in.) of the floor opening. Electrical equipment shall be located so that it will not be damaged by liquids that are retained by the curb.

FPN: See 300.21 for information concerning the spread of fire or products of combustion.

368.7 Dead Ends. A dead end of a busway shall be closed.

368.8 Branches from Busways. Branches from busways shall be permitted to be made in accordance with 368.8(A), (B), and (C).

(A) General. Branches from busways shall be made in accordance with Articles 320, 330, 332, 342, 344, 348, 350, 352, 356, 358, 362, 368, 384, 386, and 388. Where a separate equipment grounding conductor is used, connection of the equipment grounding conductor to the busway shall comply with 250.8 and 250.12.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-211

(B) Cord and Cable Assemblies. Suitable cord and cable assemblies approved for extra-hard usage or hard usage and listed bus drop cable shall be permitted as branches from busways for the connection of portable equipment or the connection of stationary equipment to facilitate their interchange in accordance with 400.7 and 400.8 and the following conditions:

(1) The cord or cable shall be attached to the building by an approved means.
(2) The length of the cord or cable from a busway plug-in device to a suitable tension take-up support device shall not exceed 1.8 m (6 ft).

Exception: In industrial establishments only, where the conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation, lengths exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) shall be permitted between the busway plug-in device and the tension take-up support device where the cord or cable is supported at intervals not exceeding 2.5 m (8 ft).

(3) The cord or cable shall be installed as a vertical riser from the tension take-up support device to the equipment served.
(4) Strain relief cable grips shall be provided for the cord or cable at the busway plug-in device and equipment terminations.

(C) Branches from Trolley-Type Busways. Suitable cord and cable assemblies approved for extra-hard usage or hard usage and listed bus drop cable shall be permitted as branches from trolley-type busways for the connection of movable equipment in accordance with 400.7 and 400.8.

368.9 Overcurrent Protection. Overcurrent protection shall be provided in accordance with 368.10 through 368.13.

368.10 Rating of Overcurrent Protection — Feeders. A busway shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with the allowable current rating of the busway.

Exception No. 1: The applicable provisions of 240.4 shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: Where used as transformer secondary ties, the provisions of 450.6(A)(3) shall be permitted.

368.11 Reduction in Ampacity Size of Busway. Overcurrent protection shall be required where busways are reduced in ampacity.

Exception: For industrial establishments only, omission of overcurrent protection shall be permitted at points where busways are reduced in ampacity, provided that the length of the busway having the smaller ampacity does not exceed 15 m (50 ft) and has an ampacity at least equal to one-third the rating or setting of the overcurrent device next back on the line, and provided that such busway is free from contact with combustible material.

368.12 Feeder or Branch Circuits. Where a busway is used as a feeder, devices or plug-in connections for tapping off feeder or branch circuits from the busway shall contain the overcurrent devices required for the protection of the feeder or branch circuits. The plug-in device shall consist of an externally operable circuit breaker or an externally operable fusible switch. Where such devices are mounted out of reach and contain disconnecting means, suitable means such as ropes, chains, or sticks shall be provided for operating the disconnecting means from the floor.

Exception No. 1: As permitted in 240.21.

Exception No. 2: For fixed or semifixed luminaires (lighting fixtures), where the branch-circuit overcurrent device is part of the luminaire (fixture) cord plug on cord-connected luminaires (fixtures).

Exception No. 3: Where luminaires (fixtures) without cords are plugged directly into the busway and the overcurrent device is mounted on the luminaire (fixture).

368.13 Rating of Overcurrent Protection — Branch Circuits. A busway used as a branch circuit shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with 210.20. Where so used, the circuit shall comply with the applicable requirements of Articles 210, 430, and 440.

368.15 Marking. Busways shall be marked with the voltage and current rating for which they are designed, and with the manufacturer's name or trademark in such manner as to be visible after installation.

II. Requirements for Over 600 Volts, Nominal

368.21 Identification. Each bus run shall be provided with a permanent nameplate on which the following information shall be provided:

(1) Rated voltage
(2) Rated continuous current; if bus is forced-cooled, both the normal forced-cooled rating and the self-cooled (not forced-cooled) rating for the same temperature rise shall be given
(3) Rated frequency
(4) Rated impulse withstand voltage
(5) Rated 60-Hz withstand voltage (dry)
(6) Rated momentary current
(7) Manufacturer's name or trademark

FPN: See ANSI C37.23-1987 (R1991), *Guide for Metal-Enclosed Bus and Calculating Losses in Isolated-Phase*

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-212

Bus, for construction and testing requirements for metal-enclosed buses.

368.22 Grounding. Metal-enclosed bus shall be grounded in accordance with Article 250.

368.23 Adjacent and Supporting Structures. Metal-enclosed busways shall be installed so that temperature rise from induced circulating currents in any adjacent metallic parts will not be hazardous to personnel or constitute a fire hazard.

368.24 Neutral. Neutral bus, where required, shall be sized to carry all neutral load current, including harmonic currents, and shall have adequate momentary and short-circuit rating consistent with system requirements.

368.25 Barriers and Seals. Bus runs that have sections located both inside and outside of buildings shall have a vapor seal at the building wall to prevent interchange of air between indoor and outdoor sections.

Exception: Vapor seals shall not be required in forced-cooled bus.

Fire barriers shall be provided where fire walls, floors, or ceilings are penetrated.

FPN: See 300.21 for information concerning the spread of fire or products of combustion.

368.26 Drain Facilities. Drain plugs, filter drains, or similar methods shall be provided to remove condensed moisture from low points in bus run.

368.27 Ventilated Bus Enclosures. Ventilated bus enclosures shall be installed in accordance with Article 110, Part III, and 490.24.

368.28 Terminations and Connections. Where bus enclosures terminate at machines cooled by flammable gas, seal-off bushings, baffles, or other means shall be provided to prevent accumulation of flammable gas in the bus enclosures.

Flexible or expansion connections shall be provided in long, straight runs of bus to allow for temperature expansion or contraction, or where the bus run crosses building vibration insulation joints.

All conductor termination and connection hardware shall be accessible for installation, connection, and maintenance.

368.29 Switches. Switching devices or disconnecting links provided in the bus run shall have the same momentary rating as the bus. Disconnecting links shall be plainly marked to be removable only when bus is de-energized. Switching devices that are not load-break shall be interlocked to prevent operation under load, and disconnecting link enclosures shall be interlocked to prevent access to energized parts.

368.30 Wiring 600 Volts or Less, Nominal. Secondary control devices and wiring that are provided as part of the metal-enclosed bus run shall be insulated by fire-retardant barriers from all primary circuit elements with the exception of short lengths of wire, such as at instrument transformer terminals.

ARTICLE 370
Cablebus

370.1 Scope. This article covers the use and installation requirements of cablebus and associated fittings.

370.2 Definition.

Cablebus. An assembly of insulated conductors with fittings and conductor terminations in a completely enclosed, ventilated protective metal housing. Cablebus is ordinarily assembled at the point of installation from the components furnished or specified by the manufacturer in accordance with instructions for the specific job. This assembly is designed to carry fault current and to withstand the magnetic forces of such current.

370.3 Use. Approved cablebus shall be permitted at any voltage or current for which spaced conductors are rated and shall be installed for exposed work only, except as permitted in 370.6. Cablebus installed outdoors or in corrosive, wet, or damp locations shall be identified for such use. Cablebus shall not be installed in hoistways or hazardous (classified) locations unless specifically approved for such use. Cablebus shall be permitted to be used for branch circuits, feeders, and services.

Cablebus framework, where bonded as required by Article 250, shall be permitted as the equipment grounding conductor for branch circuits and feeders.

370.4 Conductors.

(A) Types of Conductors. The current-carrying conductors in cablebus shall have an insulation rating of 75°C (167°F) or higher of an approved type and suitable for the application in accordance with Articles 310 and 490.

(B) Ampacity of Conductors. The ampacity of conductors in cablebus shall be in accordance with Tables 310.17 and 310.19, or with Tables 310.69 and 310.70 for installations over 600 volts.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-213

(C) Size and Number of Conductors. The size and number of conductors shall be that for which the cablebus is designed, and in no case smaller than 1/0 AWG.

(D) Conductor Supports. The insulated conductors shall be supported on blocks or other mounting means designed for the purpose.

The individual conductors in a cablebus shall be supported at intervals not greater than 900 mm (3 ft) for horizontal runs and 450 mm (1½ ft) for vertical runs. Vertical and horizontal spacing between supported conductors shall not be less than one conductor diameter at the points of support.

370.5 Overcurrent Protection. Cablebus shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with the allowable ampacity of the cablebus conductors in accordance with 240.4.

Exception: Overcurrent protection shall be permitted in accordance with 240.100 and 240.101 for over 600 volts, nominal.

370.6 Support and Extension Through Walls and Floors.

(A) Support. Cablebus shall be securely supported at intervals not exceeding 3.7 m (12 ft).

Exception: Where spans longer than 3.7 m (12 ft) are required, the structure shall be specifically designed for the required span length.

(B) Transversely Routed. Cablebus shall be permitted to extend transversely through partitions or walls, other than fire walls, provided the section within the wall is continuous, protected against physical damage, and unventilated.

(C) Through Dry Floors and Platforms. Except where firestops are required, cablebus shall be permitted to extend vertically through dry floors and platforms, provided the cablebus is totally enclosed at the point where it passes through the floor or platform and for a distance of 1.8 m (6 ft) above the floor or platform.

(D) Through Floors and Platforms in Wet Locations. Except where firestops are required, cablebus shall be permitted to extend vertically through floors and platforms in wet locations where (1) there are curbs or other suitable means to prevent waterflow through the floor or platform opening, and (2) where the cablebus is totally enclosed at the point where it passes through the floor or platform and for a distance of 1.8 m (6 ft) above the floor or platform.

370.7 Fittings. A cablebus system shall include approved fittings for the following:

(1) Changes in horizontal or vertical direction of the run
(2) Dead ends
(3) Terminations in or on connected apparatus or equipment or the enclosures for such equipment
(4) Additional physical protection where required, such as guards where subject to severe physical damage

370.8 Conductor Terminations. Approved terminating means shall be used for connections to cablebus conductors.

370.9 Grounding. A cablebus installation shall be grounded and bonded in accordance with Article 250, excluding 250.86, Exception No. 2.

370.10 Marking. Each section of cablebus shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trade designation and the maximum diameter, number, voltage rating, and ampacity of the conductors to be installed. Markings shall be located so as to be visible after installation.

ARTICLE 372
Cellular Concrete Floor Raceways

372.1 Scope. This article covers cellular concrete floor raceways, the hollow spaces in floors constructed of precast cellular concrete slabs, together with suitable metal fittings designed to provide access to the floor cells.

372.2 Definitions.

Cell. A single, enclosed tubular space in a floor made of precast cellular concrete slabs, the direction of the cell being parallel to the direction of the floor member.

Header. Transverse metal raceways for electric conductors, providing access to predetermined cells of a precast cellular concrete floor, thereby permitting the installation of electric conductors from a distribution center to the floor cells.

372.3 Other Articles. Cellular concrete floor raceways shall comply with the applicable provisions of Article 300.

372.4 Uses Not Permitted. Conductors shall not be installed in precast cellular concrete floor raceways as follows:

(1) Where subject to corrosive vapor
(2) In any hazardous (classified) locations except as permitted by 504.20, and in Class I, Division 2 locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-214

(3) In commercial garages, other than for supplying ceiling outlets or extensions to the area below the floor but not above

FPN: See 300.8 for installation of conductors with other systems.

372.5 Header. The header shall be installed in a straight line at right angles to the cells. The header shall be mechanically secured to the top of the precast cellular concrete floor. The end joints shall be closed by a metal closure fitting and sealed against the entrance of concrete. The header shall be electrically continuous throughout its entire length and shall be electrically bonded to the enclosure of the distribution center.

372.6 Connection to Cabinets and Other Enclosures. Connections from headers to cabinets and other enclosures shall be made by means of listed metal raceways and listed fittings.

372.7 Junction Boxes. Junction boxes shall be leveled to the floor grade and sealed against the free entrance of water or concrete. Junction boxes shall be of metal and shall be mechanically and electrically continuous with the header.

372.8 Markers. A suitable number of markers shall be installed for the future location of cells.

372.9 Inserts. Inserts shall be leveled and sealed against the entrance of concrete. Inserts shall be of metal and shall be fitted with grounded-type receptacles. A grounding conductor shall connect the insert receptacles to a positive ground connection provided on the header. Where cutting through the cell wall for setting inserts or other purposes (such as providing access openings between header and cells), chips and other dirt shall not be allowed to remain in the raceway, and the tool used shall be designed so as to prevent the tool from entering the cell and damaging the conductors.

372.10 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than 1/0 AWG shall be installed, except by special permission.

372.11 Maximum Number of Conductors. The combined cross-sectional area of all conductors or cables shall not exceed 40 percent of the cross-sectional area of the cell or header.

372.12 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made only in header access units or junction boxes.

For the purposes of this section, so-called loop wiring (continuous unbroken conductor connecting the individual outlets) shall not be considered to be a splice or tap.

372.13 Discontinued Outlets. When an outlet is abandoned, discontinued, or removed, the sections of circuit conductors supplying the outlet shall be removed from the raceway. No splices or reinsulated conductors, such as would be the case of abandoned outlets on loop wiring, shall be allowed in raceways.

ARTICLE 374
Cellular Metal Floor Raceways

374.1 Scope. This article covers the use and installation requirements for cellular metal floor raceways.

374.2 Definitions.

Cellular Metal Floor Raceway. The hollow spaces of cellular metal floors, together with suitable fittings, that may be approved as enclosures for electric conductors.

Cell. A single, enclosed tubular space in a cellular metal floor member, the axis of the cell being parallel to the axis of the metal floor member.

Header. A transverse raceway for electric conductors, providing access to predetermined cells of a cellular metal floor, thereby permitting the installation of electric conductors from a distribution center to the cells.

374.3 Uses Not Permitted. Conductors shall not be installed in cellular metal floor raceways as follows:

(1) Where subject to corrosive vapor
(2) In any hazardous (classified) location except as permitted by 504.20, and in Class I, Division 2 locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3)
(3) In commercial garages, other than for supplying ceiling outlets or extensions to the area below the floor but not above

FPN: See 300.8 for installation of conductors with other systems.

I. Installation

374.4 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than 1/0 AWG shall be installed, except by special permission.

374.5 Maximum Number of Conductors in Raceway. The combined cross-sectional area of all conductors or cables shall not exceed 40 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the cell or header.

374.6 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made only in header access units or junction boxes.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-215

For the purposes of this section, so-called loop wiring (continuous unbroken conductor connecting the individual outlets) shall not be considered to be a splice or tap.

374.7 Discontinued Outlets. When an outlet is abandoned, discontinued, or removed, the sections of circuit conductors supplying the outlet shall be removed from the raceway. No splices or reinsulated conductors, such as would be the case with abandoned outlets on loop wiring, shall be allowed in raceways.

374.8 Markers. A suitable number of markers shall be installed for locating cells in the future.

374.9 Junction Boxes. Junction boxes shall be leveled to the floor grade and sealed against the free entrance of water or concrete. Junction boxes used with these raceways shall be of metal and shall be electrically continuous with the raceway.

374.10 Inserts. Inserts shall be leveled to the floor grade and sealed against the entrance of concrete. Inserts shall be of metal and shall be electrically continuous with the raceway. In cutting through the cell wall and setting inserts, chips and other dirt shall not be allowed to remain in the raceway, and tools shall be used that are designed to prevent the tool from entering the cell and damaging the conductors.

374.11 Connection to Cabinets and Extensions from Cells. Connections between raceways and distribution centers and wall outlets shall be made by means of flexible metal conduit where not installed in concrete, rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, or approved fittings. Where there are provisions for the termination of an equipment grounding conductor, nonmetallic conduit, electrical nonmetallic tubing, or liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit where not installed in concrete shall be permitted.

II. Construction Specifications

374.12 General. Cellular metal floor raceways shall be constructed so that adequate electrical and mechanical continuity of the complete system will be secured. They shall provide a complete enclosure for the conductors. The interior surfaces shall be free from burrs and sharp edges, and surfaces over which conductors are drawn shall be smooth. Suitable bushings or fittings having smooth rounded edges shall be provided where conductors pass.

ARTICLE 376
Metal Wireways

I. General

376.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for metal wireways and associated fittings.

376.2 Definition.

Metal Wireways. Sheet metal troughs with hinged or removable covers for housing and protecting electric wires and cable and in which conductors are laid in place after the wireway has been installed as a complete system.

II. Installation

376.10 Uses Permitted. The use of metal wireways shall be permitted in the following:

(1) For exposed work
(2) In concealed spaces as permitted in 376.10(4)
(3) In hazardous (classified) locations as permitted by 501.4(B) for Class I, Division 2 locations; 502.4(B) for Class II, Division 2 locations; and 504.20 for intrinsically safe wiring. Where installed in wet locations, wireways shall be listed for the purpose.
(4) As extensions to pass transversely through walls if the length passing through the wall is unbroken. Access to the conductors shall be maintained on both sides of the wall.

376.12 Uses Not Permitted. Metal wireways shall not be used in the following:

(1) Where subject to severe physical damage
(2) Where subject to severe corrosive environments

376.21 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than that for which the wireway is designed shall be installed in any wireway.

376.22 Number of Conductors. The sum of the cross-sectional areas of all contained conductors at any cross section of a wireway shall not exceed 20 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the wireway. The derating factors in 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall be applied only where the number of current-carrying conductors, including neutral conductors classified as current-carrying under the provisions of 310.15(B)(4), exceeds 30. Conductors for signaling circuits or controller conductors between a motor and its starter and used only for starting duty shall not be considered as current-carrying conductors.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-216

376.23 Insulated Conductors. Insulated conductors installed in a metallic wireway shall comply with 376.23(A) and (B).

(A) Deflected Insulated Conductors. Where insulated conductors are deflected within a metallic wireway, either at the ends or where conduits, fittings, or other raceways or cables enter or leave the metallic wireway, or where the direction of the metallic wireway is deflected greater than 30 degrees, dimensions corresponding to 312.6(A) shall apply.

(B) Metallic Wireways Used as Pullboxes. Where insulated conductors 4 AWG or larger are pulled through a wireway, the distance between raceway and cable entries enclosing the same conductor shall not be less than that required in 314.28(A)(1) for straight pulls and 314.28(A)(2) for angle pulls.

376.30 Securing and Supporting. Metal wireways shall be supported in accordance with 376.30(A) and (B).

(A) Horizontal Support. Wireways shall be supported where run horizontally at each end and at intervals not to exceed 1.5 m (5 ft) or for individual lengths longer than 1.5 m (5 ft) at each end or joint, unless listed for other support intervals. The distance between supports shall not exceed 3 m (10 ft).

(B) Vertical Support. Vertical runs of wireways shall be securely supported at intervals not exceeding 4.5 m (15 ft) and shall not have more than one joint between supports. Adjoining wireway sections shall be securely fastened together to provide a rigid joint.

376.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be permitted within a wireway provided they are accessible. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill the wireway to more than 75 percent of its area at that point.

376.58 Dead Ends. Dead ends of metal wireways shall be closed.

376.70 Extensions from Metal Wireways. Extensions from wireways shall be made with cord pendants installed in accordance with 400.10 or any wiring method in Chapter 3 that includes a means for equipment grounding. Where a separate equipment grounding conductor is employed, connection of the equipment grounding conductors in the wiring method to the wireway shall comply with 250.8 and 250.12.

III. Construction Specifications

376.120 Marking. Metal wireways shall be marked so that their manufacturer's name or trademark will be visible after installation.

ARTICLE 378
Nonmetallic Wireways

I. General

378.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for nonmetallic wireways and associated fittings.

378.2 Definition.

Nonmetallic Wireways. Flame retardant, nonmetallic troughs with removable covers for housing and protecting electric wires and cables in which conductors are laid in place after the wireway has been installed as a complete system.

378.3 Other Articles. Installations of nonmetallic wireways shall comply with the applicable provisions of Article 300.

378.6 Listing Requirements. Nonmetallic wireways and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

378.10 Uses Permitted. The use of nonmetallic wireways shall be permitted in the following:

(1) Only for exposed work, except as permitted in 378.10(4).
(2) Where subject to corrosive environments where identified for the use.
(3) In wet locations where listed for the purpose.

FPN: Extreme cold may cause nonmetallic wireways to become brittle and therefore more susceptible to damage from physical contact.

(4) As extensions to pass transversely through walls if the length passing through the wall is unbroken. Access to the conductors shall be maintained on both sides of the wall.

378.12 Uses Not Permitted. Nonmetallic wireways shall not be used in the following:

(1) Where subject to physical damage
(2) In any hazardous (classified) location, except as permitted in 504.20
(3) Where exposed to sunlight unless listed and marked as suitable for the purpose
(4) Where subject to ambient temperatures other than those for which nonmetallic wireway is listed

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-217

(5) For conductors whose insulation temperature limitations would exceed those for which the nonmetallic wireway is listed

378.21 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than that for which the nonmetallic wireway is designed shall be installed in any nonmetallic wireway.

378.22 Number of Conductors. The sum of cross-sectional areas of all contained conductors at any cross section of the nonmetallic wireway shall not exceed 20 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the nonmetallic wireway. Conductors for signaling circuits or controller conductors between a motor and its starter and used only for starting duty shall not be considered as current-carrying conductors.

The derating factors specified in 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall be applicable to the current-carrying conductors up to and including the 20 percent fill specified above.

378.23 Insulated Conductors. Insulated conductors installed in a nonmetallic wireway shall comply with 378.23(A) and (B).

(A) Deflected Insulated Conductors. Where insulated conductors are deflected within a nonmetallic wireway, either at the ends or where conduits, fittings, or other raceways or cables enter or leave the nonmetallic wireway, or where the direction of the nonmetallic wireway is deflected greater than 30 degrees, dimensions corresponding to 312.6(A) shall apply.

(B) Nonmetallic Wireways Used as Pull Boxes. Where insulated conductors 4 AWG or larger are pulled through a wireway, the distance between raceway and cable entries enclosing the same conductor shall not be less than that required in 314.28(A)(1) for straight pulls and in 314.28(A)(2) for angle pulls.

378.30 Securing and Supporting. Nonmetallic wireway shall be supported in accordance with 378.30(A) and (B).

(A) Horizontal Support. Nonmetallic wireways shall be supported where run horizontally at intervals not to exceed 900 mm (3 ft), and at each end or joint, unless listed for other support intervals. In no case shall the distance between supports exceed 3 m (10 ft).

(B) Vertical Support. Vertical runs of nonmetallic wireway shall be securely supported at intervals not exceeding 1.2 m (4 ft), unless listed for other support intervals, and shall not have more than one joint between supports. Adjoining nonmetallic wireway sections shall be securely fastened together to provide a rigid joint.

378.44 Expansion Fittings. Expansion fittings for nonmetallic wireway shall be provided to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction where the length change is expected to be 6 mm (0.25 in.) or greater in a straight run.

FPN: See Table 352.44(A) for expansion characteristics of PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit. The expansion characteristics of PVC nonmetallic wireway are identical.

378.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be permitted within a nonmetallic wireway, provided they are accessible. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill the nonmetallic wireway to more than 75 percent of its area at that point.

378.58 Dead Ends. Dead ends of nonmetallic wireway shall be closed using listed fittings.

378.60 Grounding. Where equipment grounding is required by Article 250, a separate equipment grounding conductor shall be installed in the nonmetallic wireway. A separate equipment grounding conductor shall not be required where the grounded conductor is used to ground equipment as permitted in 250.142.

378.70 Extensions from Nonmetallic Wireways. Extensions from nonmetallic wireway shall be made with cord pendants or any wiring method of Chapter 3. A separate equipment grounding conductor shall be installed in, or an equipment grounding connection shall be made to, any of the wiring methods used for the extension.

III. Construction Specifications

378.120 Marking. Nonmetallic wireways shall be marked so that the manufacturer's name or trademark and interior cross-sectional area in square inches shall be visible after installation. Marking for limited smoke shall be permitted on the nonmetallic wireways that have limited smoke-producing characteristics.

ARTICLE 380
Multioutlet Assembly

380.1 Scope. This article covers the use and installation requirements for multioutlet assemblies.

380.2 Use.

(A) Permitted. The use of a multioutlet assembly shall be permitted in dry locations.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-218

(B) Not Permitted. A multioutlet assembly shall not be installed as follows:

(1) Where concealed, except that it shall be permissible to surround the back and sides of a metal multioutlet assembly by the building finish or recess a nonmetallic multioutlet assembly in a baseboard
(2) Where subject to severe physical damage
(3) Where the voltage is 300 volts or more between conductors unless the assembly is of metal having a thickness of not less than 1.02 mm (0.040 in.)
(4) Where subject to corrosive vapors
(5) In hoistways
(6) In any hazardous (classified) locations except Class I, Division 2 locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3)

380.3 Metal Multioutlet Assembly Through Dry Partitions. It shall be permissible to extend a metal multioutlet assembly through (not run within) dry partitions if arrangements are made for removing the cap or cover on all exposed portions and no outlet is located within the partitions.

ARTICLE 382
Nonmetallic Extensions

I. General

382.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for nonmetallic extensions.

382.2 Definition.

Nonmetallic Extension. An assembly of two insulated conductors within a nonmetallic jacket or an extruded thermoplastic covering. The classification includes surface extensions intended for mounting directly on the surface of walls or ceilings.

II. Installation

382.10 Uses Permitted. Nonmetallic extensions shall be permitted only where all the conditions in 382.10(A), (B), and (C) are met.

(A) From an Existing Outlet. The extension is from an existing outlet on a 15- or 20-ampere branch circuit.

(B) Exposed and in a Dry Location. The extension is run exposed and in a dry location.

(C) Residential or Offices. For nonmetallic surface extensions mounted directly on the surface of walls or ceilings, the building is occupied for residential or office purposes and does not exceed three floors above grade.

FPN No. 1: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

FPN No. 2: See 362.10 for definition of *first floor.*

382.12 Uses Not Permitted. Nonmetallic extensions shall not be used as follows:

(1) In unfinished basements, attics, or roof spaces
(2) Where the voltage between conductors exceeds 150 volts for nonmetallic surface extension and 300 volts for aerial cable
(3) Where subject to corrosive vapors
(4) Where run through a floor or partition, or outside the room in which it originates

382.15 Exposed. One or more extensions shall be permitted to be run in any direction from an existing outlet, but not on the floor or within 50 mm (2 in.) from the floor.

382.26 Bends. A bend that reduces the normal spacing between the conductors shall be covered with a cap to protect the assembly from physical damage.

382.30 Securing and Supporting. Nonmetallic surface extensions shall be secured in place by approved means at intervals not exceeding 200 mm (8 in.), with an allowance for 300 mm (12 in.) to the first fastening where the connection to the supplying outlet is by means of an attachment plug. There shall be at least one fastening between each two adjacent outlets supplied. An extension shall be attached to only woodwork or plaster finish and shall not be in contact with any metal work or other conductive material other than with metal plates on receptacles.

382.40 Boxes and Fittings. Each run shall terminate in a fitting that covers the end of the assembly. All fittings and devices shall be of a type identified for the use.

382.56 Splices and Taps. Extensions shall consist of a continuous unbroken length of the assembly, without splices, and without exposed conductors between fittings. Taps shall be permitted where approved fittings completely covering the tap connections are used. Aerial cable and its tap connectors shall be provided with an approved means for polarization. Receptacle-type tap connectors shall be of the locking type.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-219

ARTICLE 384
Strut-Type Channel Raceway

I. General

384.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications of strut-type channel raceway.

384.2 Definition.

Strut-Type Channel Raceway. A metallic raceway that is intended to be mounted to the surface of or suspended from a structure, with associated accessories for the installation of electrical conductors.

384.6 Listing Requirements. Strut-type channel raceways, closure strips, and accessories shall be listed and identified for such use.

II. Installation

384.10 Uses Permitted. The use of strut-type channel raceways shall be permitted in the following:

(1) Where exposed.
(2) In dry locations.
(3) In locations subject to corrosive vapors where protected by finishes judged suitable for the condition.
(4) Where the voltage is 600 volts or less.
(5) As power poles.
(6) In Class I, Division 2 hazardous (classified) locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3).
(7) As extensions of unbroken lengths through walls, partitions, and floors where closure strips are removable from either side and the portion within the wall, partition, or floor remains covered.
(8) Ferrous channel raceways and fittings protected from corrosion solely by enamel shall be permitted only indoors.

384.12 Uses Not Permitted. Strut type channel raceways shall not be used as follows:

(1) Where concealed.
(2) Ferrous channel raceways and fittings protected from corrosion solely by enamel shall not be permitted where subject to severe corrosive influences.

384.21 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than that for which the raceway is listed shall be installed in strut-type channel raceways.

384.22 Number of Conductors. The number of conductors permitted in strut-type channel raceways shall not exceed the percentage fill using Table 384.22 and applicable outside diameter (O.D.) dimensions of specific types and sizes of wire given in the tables in Chapter 9.

The derating factors of 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall not apply to conductors installed in strut-type channel raceways where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The cross-sectional area of the raceway exceeds 2500 mm^2 (4 in.^{2}).
(2) The current-carrying conductors do not exceed 30 in number.
(3) The sum of the cross-sectional areas of all contained conductors does not exceed 20 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the strut-type channel raceways. Formula for wire fill:

$$n = \frac{ca}{wa}$$

where:
n = number of wires
ca = channel area in square inches
wa = wire area

Table 384.22 Channel Size and Inside Diameter Area

Size Channel	Area		40% Area*		25% Area**	
	in.^{2}	mm^2	in.^{2}	mm^2	in.^{2}	mm^2
1⅝ × 13/16	0.887	572	0.355	229	0.222	143
1⅝ × 1	1.151	743	0.460	297	0.288	186
1⅝ × 1⅜	1.677	1076	0.671	433	0.419	270
1⅝ × 1⅝	2.028	1308	0.811	523	0.507	327
1⅝ × 2 7/16	3.169	2045	1.267	817	0.792	511
1⅝ × 3¼	4.308	2780	1.723	1112	1.077	695
1½ × ¾	0.849	548	0.340	219	0.212	137
1½ × 1½	1.828	1179	0.731	472	0.457	295
1½ × 1⅞	2.301	1485	0.920	594	0.575	371
1½ × 3	3.854	2487	1.542	995	0.964	622

*Raceways with external joiners shall use a 40 percent wire fill calculation to determine the number of conductors permitted.
**Raceways with internal joiners shall use a 25 percent wire fill calculation to determine the number of conductors permitted.

384.30 Securing and Supporting.

(A) Surface Mount. A surface mount strut-type channel raceway shall be secured to the mounting surface with retention straps external to the channel at intervals not exceeding 3 m (10 ft) and within 900 mm (3 ft) of each outlet box, cabinet, junction box, or other channel raceway termination.

(B) Suspension Mount. Strut-type channel raceways shall be permitted to be suspension mounted in air with approved appropriate methods designed for the purpose at intervals

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-220

not to exceed 3 m (10 ft) and within 900 mm (3 ft) of channel raceway terminations and ends.

384.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be permitted in raceways that are accessible after installation by having a removable cover. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill the raceway to more than 75 percent of its area at that point. All splices and taps shall be made by approved methods.

384.60 Grounding. Strut-type channel raceway enclosures providing a transition to or from other wiring methods shall have a means for connecting an equipment grounding conductor. Strut-type channel raceways shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor in accordance with 250.118(14). Where a snap-fit metal cover for strut-type channel raceways is used to achieve electrical continuity in accordance with the listing, this cover shall not be permitted as the means for providing electrical continuity for a receptacle mounted in the cover.

III. Construction Specifications

384.100 Construction. Strut-type channel raceways and their accessories shall be of a construction that distinguishes them from other raceways. Raceways and their elbows, couplings, and other fittings shall be designed so that the sections can be electrically and mechanically coupled together and installed without subjecting the wires to abrasion. They shall comply with 384.100(A), (B), and (C).

(A) Material. Raceways and accessories shall be formed of steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.

(B) Corrosion Protection. Steel raceways and accessories shall be protected against corrosion by galvanizing or an organic coating.

FPN: Enamel and PVC coatings are examples of organic coatings that provide corrosion protection.

(C) Cover. Covers of strut-type channel raceway shall be either metallic or nonmetallic.

384.120 Marking. Each length of strut-type channel raceways shall be clearly and durably identified as required in the first sentence of 110.21.

ARTICLE 386
Surface Metal Raceways

I. General

386.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for surface metal raceways and associated fittings.

386.2 Definition.

Surface Metal Raceway. A metallic raceway that is intended to be mounted to the surface of a structure, with associated couplings, connectors, boxes, and fittings for the installation of electrical conductors.

386.6 Listing Requirements. Surface metal raceway and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

386.10 Uses Permitted. The use of surface metal raceways shall be permitted in the following:

(1) In dry locations.
(2) In Class I, Division 2 hazardous (classified) locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3).
(3) Under raised floors, as permitted in 645.5(D)(2).
(4) Extension through walls and floors. Surface metal raceway shall be permitted to pass transversely through dry walls, dry partitions, and dry floors if the length passing through is unbroken. Access to the conductors shall be maintained on both sides of the wall, partition, or floor.

386.12 Uses Not Permitted. Surface metal raceways shall not be used in the following:

(1) Where subject to severe physical damage, unless otherwise approved
(2) Where the voltage is 300 volts or more between conductors, unless the metal has a thickness of not less than 1.02 mm (0.040 in.) nominal
(3) Where subject to corrosive vapors
(4) In hoistways
(5) Where concealed, except as permitted in 386.10(4)

386.21 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than that for which the raceway is designed shall be installed in surface metal raceway.

386.22 Number of Conductors or Cables. The number of conductors or cables installed in surface metal raceway shall not be greater than the number for which the raceway is designed. Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles.

The derating factors of 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall not apply to conductors installed in surface metal raceways where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The cross-sectional area of the raceway exceeds 2500 mm^2 (4 $in.^2$)
(2) The current-carrying conductors do not exceed 30 in number

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-221

(3) The sum of the cross-sectional areas of all contained conductors does not exceed 20 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the surface metal raceway

386.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be permitted in surface metal raceways having a removable cover that is accessible after installation. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill the raceway to more than 75 percent of its area at that point. Splices and taps in surface metal raceways without removable covers shall be made only in junction boxes. All splices and taps shall be made by approved methods.

Taps of Type FC cable installed in surface metal raceway shall be made in accordance with 322.56(B).

386.60 Grounding. Surface metal raceway enclosures providing a transition from other wiring methods shall have a means for connecting an equipment grounding conductor.

386.70 Combination Raceways. When combination surface metal raceways are used both for signaling and for lighting and power circuits, the different systems shall be run in separate compartments identified by sharply contrasting colors of the interior finish, and the same relative position of compartments shall be maintained throughout the premises.

III. Construction Specifications

386.100 Construction. Surface metal raceways shall be of such construction as will distinguish them from other raceways. Surface metal raceways and their elbows, couplings, and similar fittings shall be designed so that the sections can be electrically and mechanically coupled together and installed without subjecting the wires to abrasion.

Where covers and accessories of nonmetallic materials are used on surface metal raceways, they shall be identified for such use.

ARTICLE 388
Surface Nonmetallic Raceways

I. General

388.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for surface nonmetallic raceways and associated fittings.

388.2 Definition.

Surface Nonmetallic Raceway. A nonmetallic raceway that is intended to be mounted to the surface of a structure, with associated couplings, connectors, boxes, and fittings for the installation of electrical conductors.

388.6 Listing Requirements. Surface nonmetallic raceway and associated fittings shall be listed.

II. Installation

388.10 Uses Permitted. Surface nonmetallic raceway shall be permitted as follows:

(1) The use of surface nonmetallic raceways shall be permitted in dry locations.
(2) Extension through walls and floors shall be permitted. Surface nonmetallic raceway shall be permitted to pass transversely through dry walls, dry partitions, and dry floors if the length passing through is unbroken. Access to the conductors shall be maintained on both sides of the wall, partition, or floor.

388.12 Uses Not Permitted. Surface nonmetallic raceways shall not be used in the following:

(1) Where concealed, except as permitted in 388.10(2)
(2) Where subject to severe physical damage
(3) Where the voltage is 300 volts or more between conductors, unless listed for higher voltage
(4) In hoistways
(5) In any hazardous (classified) location except Class I, Division 2 locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3)
(6) Where subject to ambient temperatures exceeding those for which the nonmetallic raceway is listed
(7) For conductors whose insulation temperature limitations would exceed those for which the nonmetallic raceway is listed

388.21 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than that for which the raceway is designed shall be installed in surface nonmetallic raceway.

388.22 Number of Conductors or Cables. The number of conductors or cables installed in surface nonmetallic raceway shall not be greater than the number for which the raceway is designed. Cables shall be permitted to be installed where such use is permitted by the respective cable articles.

388.56 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be permitted in surface nonmetallic raceways having a removable cover that is accessible after installation. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill the raceway to more than 75 percent of its area at that point. Splices and taps in surface nonmetallic raceways without removable covers shall be made only in junction boxes. All splices and taps shall be made by approved methods.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-222

388.60 Grounding. Where equipment grounding is required by Article 250, a separate equipment grounding conductor shall be installed in the raceway.

388.70 Combination Raceways. When combination surface nonmetallic raceways are used both for signaling and for lighting and power circuits, the different systems shall be run in separate compartments identified by sharply contrasting colors of the interior finish.

III. Construction Specifications

388.100 Construction. Surface nonmetallic raceways shall be of such construction as will distinguish them from other raceways. Surface nonmetallic raceways and their elbows, couplings, and similar fittings shall be designed so that the sections can be mechanically coupled together and installed without subjecting the wires to abrasion.

Surface nonmetallic raceways and fittings are made of suitable nonmetallic material that is resistant to moisture and chemical atmospheres. It shall also be flame retardant, resistant to impact and crushing, resistant to distortion from heat under conditions likely to be encountered in service, and resistant to low-temperature effects.

388.120 Marking. Surface nonmetallic raceways that have limited smoke-producing characteristics shall be permitted to be so identified.

ARTICLE 390
Underfloor Raceways

390.1 Scope. This article covers the use and installation requirements for underfloor raceways.

390.2 Use.

(A) Permitted. The installation of underfloor raceways shall be permitted beneath the surface of concrete or other flooring material or in office occupancies where laid flush with the concrete floor and covered with linoleum or equivalent floor covering.

(B) Not Permitted. Underfloor raceways shall not be installed (1) where subject to corrosive vapors or (2) in any hazardous (classified) locations, except as permitted by 504.20 and in Class I, Division 2 locations as permitted in 501.4(B)(3). Unless made of a material judged suitable for the condition or unless corrosion protection approved for the condition is provided, ferrous or nonferrous metal underfloor raceways, junction boxes, and fittings shall not be installed in concrete or in areas subject to severe corrosive influences.

390.3 Covering. Raceway coverings shall comply with 390.3(A) through (D).

(A) Raceways Not Over 100 mm (4 in.) Wide. Half-round and flat-top raceways not over 100 mm (4 in.) in width shall have not less than 20 mm (¾ in.) of concrete or wood above the raceway.

Exception: As permitted in 390.3(C) and (D) for flat-top raceways.

(B) Raceways Over 100 mm (4 in.) Wide But Not Over 200 mm (8 in.) Wide. Flat-top raceways over 100 mm (4 in.) but not over 200 mm (8 in.) wide with a minimum of 25 mm (1 in.) spacing between raceways shall be covered with concrete to a depth of not less than 25 mm (1 in.). Raceways spaced less than 25 mm (1 in.) apart shall be covered with concrete to a depth of 38 mm (1½ in.).

(C) Trench-Type Raceways Flush with Concrete. Trench-type flush raceways with removable covers shall be permitted to be laid flush with the floor surface. Such approved raceways shall be designed so that the cover plates provide adequate mechanical protection and rigidity equivalent to junction box covers.

(D) Other Raceways Flush with Concrete. In office occupancies, approved metal flat-top raceways, if not over 100 mm (4 in.) in width, shall be permitted to be laid flush with the concrete floor surface, provided they are covered with substantial linoleum that is not less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) thick or with equivalent floor covering. Where more than one and not more than three single raceways are each installed flush with the concrete, they shall be contiguous with each other and joined to form a rigid assembly.

390.4 Size of Conductors. No conductor larger than that for which the raceway is designed shall be installed in underfloor raceways.

390.5 Maximum Number of Conductors in Raceway. The combined cross-sectional area of all conductors or cables shall not exceed 40 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the raceway.

390.6 Splices and Taps. Splices and taps shall be made only in junction boxes.

For the purposes of this section, so-called loop wiring (continuous, unbroken conductor connecting the individual outlets) shall not be considered to be a splice or tap.

Exception: Splices and taps shall be permitted in trench-type flush raceway having a removable cover that is acces-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-223

sible after installation. The conductors, including splices and taps, shall not fill more than 75 percent of the raceway area at that point.

390.7 Discontinued Outlets. When an outlet is abandoned, discontinued, or removed, the sections of circuit conductors supplying the outlet shall be removed from the raceway. No splices or reinsulated conductors, such as would be the case with abandoned outlets on loop wiring, shall be allowed in raceways.

390.8 Laid in Straight Lines. Underfloor raceways shall be laid so that a straight line from the center of one junction box to the center of the next junction box coincides with the centerline of the raceway system. Raceways shall be firmly held in place to prevent disturbing this alignment during construction.

390.9 Markers at Ends. A suitable marker shall be installed at or near each end of each straight run of raceways to locate the last insert.

390.10 Dead Ends. Dead ends of raceways shall be closed.

390.13 Junction Boxes. Junction boxes shall be leveled to the floor grade and sealed to prevent the free entrance of water or concrete. Junction boxes used with metal raceways shall be metal and shall be electrically continuous with the raceways.

390.14 Inserts. Inserts shall be leveled and sealed to prevent the entrance of concrete. Inserts used with metal raceways shall be metal and shall be electrically continuous with the raceway. Inserts set in or on fiber raceways before the floor is laid shall be mechanically secured to the raceway. Inserts set in fiber raceways after the floor is laid shall be screwed into the raceway. When cutting through the raceway wall and setting inserts, chips and other dirt shall not be allowed to remain in the raceway, and tools shall be used that are designed so as to prevent the tool from entering the raceway and damaging conductors that may be in place.

390.15 Connections to Cabinets and Wall Outlets. Connections from underfloor raceways to distribution centers and wall outlets shall be made by approved fittings or by any of the wiring methods in Chapter 3, where installed in accordance with the provisions of the respective articles.

ARTICLE 392
Cable Trays

392.1 Scope. This article covers cable tray systems, including ladder, ventilated trough, ventilated channel, solid bottom, and other similar structures.

FPN: For further information on cable trays, see NEMA–VE 1, 1998-*Metal Cable Tray Systems*; NEMA–VE 2-1996, *Metal Cable Tray Installation Guidelines*; and NEMA–FG-, 1998, *Nonmetallic Cable Tray Systems*.

392.2 Definition.

Cable Tray System. A unit or assembly of units or sections and associated fittings forming a structural system used to securely fasten or support cables and raceways.

392.3 Uses Permitted. Cable tray shall be permitted to be used as a support system for services, feeders, branch circuits, communications circuits, control circuits, and signaling circuits. Cable tray installations shall not be limited to industrial establishments. Where exposed to direct rays of the sun, insulated conductors and jacketed cables shall be identified as being sunlight resistant. Cable trays and their associated fittings shall be identified for the intended use.

(A) Wiring Methods. The wiring methods in Table 392.3(A) shall be permitted to be installed in cable tray systems under the conditions described in their respective articles and sections.

(B) In Industrial Establishments. The wiring methods in Table 392.3(A) shall be permitted to be used in any industrial establishment under the conditions described in their respective articles. In industrial establishments only, where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installed cable tray system, any of the cables in 392.3(B)(1) and (2) shall be permitted to be installed in ladder, ventilated trough, solid bottom, or ventilated channel cable trays.

(1) Single Conductors. Single-conductor cables shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the following:

(a) Single-conductor cable shall be 1/0 AWG or larger and shall be of a type listed and marked on the surface for use in cable trays. Where 1/0 AWG through 4/0 AWG single-conductor cables are installed in ladder cable tray, the maximum allowable rung spacing for the ladder cable tray shall be 230 mm (9 in.).

(b) Welding cables shall comply with the provisions of Article 630, Part IV.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-224

Table 392.3(A) Wiring Methods

Wiring Method	Article	Section
Armored cable	320	
Communication raceways	800	
Electrical metallic tubing	358	
Electrical nonmetallic tubing	362	
Fire alarm cables	760	
Flexible metal conduit	348	
Flexible metallic tubing	360	
Instrumentation tray cable	727	
Intermediate metal conduit	342	
Liquidtight flexible metal conduit	350	
Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit	356	
Metal-clad cable	330	
Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable	332	
Multiconductor service-entrance cable	338	
Multiconductor underground feeder and branch-circuit cable	340	
Multipurpose and communications cables	800	
Nonmetallic-sheathed cable	334	
Power and control tray cable	336	
Power-limited tray cable		725.61(C) and 725.71(F)
Optical fiber cables	770	
Optical fiber raceways	770	
Other factory-assembled, multiconductor control, signal, or power cables that are specifically approved for installation in cable trays		
Rigid metal conduit	344	
Rigid nonmetallic conduit	352	

(c) Single conductors used as equipment grounding conductors shall be insulated, covered, or bare, and they shall be 4 AWG or larger.

(2) Medium Voltage. Single- and multiconductor medium voltage cables shall be Type MV cable (Article 328). Single conductors shall be installed in accordance with 392.3(B)(1).

(C) Equipment Grounding Conductors. Metallic cable trays shall be permitted to be used as equipment grounding conductors where continuous maintenance and supervision ensure that qualified persons service the installed cable tray system and the cable tray complies with provisions of 392.7.

(D) Hazardous (Classified) Locations. Cable trays in hazardous (classified) locations shall contain only the cable types permitted in 501.4, 502.4, 503.3, 504.20, and 505.15.

(E) Nonmetallic Cable Tray. In addition to the uses permitted elsewhere in Article 392, nonmetallic cable tray shall be permitted in corrosive areas and in areas requiring voltage isolation.

392.4 Uses Not Permitted. Cable tray systems shall not be used in hoistways or where subject to severe physical damage. Cable tray systems shall not be used in environmental airspaces, except as permitted in 300.22, to support wiring methods recognized for use in such spaces.

392.5 Construction Specifications.

(A) Strength and Rigidity. Cable trays shall have suitable strength and rigidity to provide adequate support for all contained wiring.

(B) Smooth Edges. Cable trays shall not have sharp edges, burrs, or projections that could damage the insulation or jackets of the wiring.

(C) Corrosion Protection. Cable tray systems shall be corrosion resistant. If made of ferrous material, the system shall be protected from corrosion as required by 300.6.

(D) Side Rails. Cable trays shall have side rails or equivalent structural members.

(E) Fittings. Cable trays shall include fittings or other suitable means for changes in direction and elevation of runs.

(F) Nonmetallic Cable Tray. Nonmetallic cable trays shall be made of flame-retardant material.

392.6 Installation.

(A) Complete System. Cable trays shall be installed as a complete system. Field bends or modifications shall be made so that the electrical continuity of the cable tray system and support for the cables is maintained. Cable tray systems shall be permitted to have mechanically discontinuous segments between cable tray runs or between cable tray runs and equipment. The system shall provide for the support of the cables in accordance with their corresponding articles.

Where cable trays support individual conductors and where the conductors pass from one cable tray to another, or from a cable tray to raceway(s) or from a cable tray to equipment where the conductors are terminated, the distance between cable trays or between the cable tray and the raceway(s) or the equipment shall not exceed 1.8 m (6 ft). The conductors shall be secured to the cable tray(s) at the transition, and they shall be protected, by guarding or by location, from physical damage.

A bonding jumper sized in accordance with 250.102 shall connect the two sections of cable tray, or the cable tray and the raceway or equipment. Bonding shall be in accordance with 250.96.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-225

(B) Completed Before Installation. Each run of cable tray shall be completed before the installation of cables.

(C) Supports. Supports shall be provided to prevent stress on cables where they enter raceways or other enclosures from cable tray systems.

Cable trays shall be supported at intervals in accordance with the installation instructions.

(D) Covers. In portions of runs where additional protection is required, covers or enclosures providing the required protection shall be of a material that is compatible with the cable tray.

(E) Multiconductor Cables Rated 600 Volts or Less. Multiconductor cables rated 600 volts or less shall be permitted to be installed in the same cable tray.

(F) Cables Rated Over 600 Volts. Cables rated over 600 volts and those rated 600 volts or less installed in the same cable tray shall comply with either of the following:

(1) The cables rated over 600 volts are Type MC.
(2) The cables rated over 600 volts are separated from the cables rated 600 volts or less by a solid fixed barrier of a material compatible with the cable tray.

(G) Through Partitions and Walls. Cable trays shall be permitted to extend transversely through partitions and walls or vertically through platforms and floors in wet or dry locations where the installations, complete with installed cables, are made in accordance with the requirements of 300.21.

(H) Exposed and Accessible. Cable trays shall be exposed and accessible except as permitted by 392.6(G).

(I) Adequate Access. Sufficient space shall be provided and maintained about cable trays to permit adequate access for installing and maintaining the cables.

(J) Raceways, Cables, Boxes, and Conduit Bodies Supported from Cable Tray Systems. In industrial facilities where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installation and where the cable tray systems are designed and installed to support the load, such systems shall be permitted to support raceways and cables, and boxes and conduit bodies covered in 314.1. For raceways terminating at the tray, a listed cable tray clamp or adapter shall be used to securely fasten the raceway to the cable tray system. Additional supporting and securing of the raceway shall be in accordance with the requirements of the appropriate raceway article.

For raceways or cables running parallel to and attached to the bottom or side of a cable tray system, fastening and supporting shall be in accordance with the requirements of the appropriate raceway or cable article.

For boxes and conduit bodies attached to the bottom or side of a cable tray system, fastening and supporting shall be in accordance with the requirements of 314.23.

392.7 Grounding.

(A) Metallic Cable Trays. Metallic cable trays that support electrical conductors shall be grounded as required for conductor enclosures in Article 250.

(B) Steel or Aluminum Cable Tray Systems. Steel or aluminum cable tray systems shall be permitted to be used as equipment grounding conductors, provided that all the following requirements are met:

(1) The cable tray sections and fittings shall be identified for grounding purposes.
(2) The minimum cross-sectional area of cable trays shall conform to the requirements in Table 392.7(B).
(3) All cable tray sections and fittings shall be legibly and durably marked to show the cross-sectional area of metal in channel cable trays, or cable trays of one-piece construction, and the total cross-sectional area of both side rails for ladder or trough cable trays.
(4) Cable tray sections, fittings, and connected raceways shall be bonded in accordance with 250.96 using bolted mechanical connectors or bonding jumpers sized and installed in accordance with 250.102.

392.8 Cable Installation.

(A) Cable Splices. Cable splices made and insulated by approved methods shall be permitted to be located within a cable tray, provided they are accessible and do not project above the side rails.

(B) Fastened Securely. In other than horizontal runs, the cables shall be fastened securely to transverse members of the cable trays.

(C) Bushed Conduit and Tubing. A box shall not be required where cables or conductors are installed in bushed conduit and tubing used for support or for protection against physical damage.

(D) Connected in Parallel. Where single conductor cables comprising each phase or neutral of a circuit are connected in parallel as permitted in 310.4, the conductors shall be installed in groups consisting of not more than one conductor per phase or neutral to prevent current unbalance in the paralleled conductors due to inductive reactance.

Single conductors shall be securely bound in circuit groups to prevent excessive movement due to fault-current magnetic forces unless single conductors are cabled together, such as triplexed assemblies.

(E) Single Conductors. Where any of the single conductors installed in ladder or ventilated trough cable trays are

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-226

Table 392.7(B) Metal Area Requirements for Cable Trays Used as Equipment Grounding Conductor

Maximum Fuse Ampere Rating, Circuit Breaker Ampere Trip Setting, or Circuit Breaker Protective Relay Ampere Trip Setting for Ground-Fault Protection of Any Cable Circuit in the Cable Tray System	Minimum Cross-Sectional Area of Metal[a]			
	Steel Cable Trays		Aluminum Cable Trays	
	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$
60	129	0.20	129	0.20
100	258	0.40	129	0.20
200	451.5	0.70	129	0.20
400	645	1.00	258	0.40
600	967.5	1.50[b]	258	0.40
1000	—	—	387	0.60
1200	—	—	645	1.00
1600	—	—	967.5	1.50
2000	—	—	1290	2.00[b]

[a]Total cross-sectional area of both side rails for ladder or trough cable trays; or the minimum cross-sectional area of metal in channel cable trays or cable trays of one-piece construction.

[b]Steel cable trays shall not be used as equipment grounding conductors for circuits with ground-fault protection above 600 amperes. Aluminum cable trays shall not be used as equipment grounding conductors for circuits with ground-fault protection above 2000 amperes.

1/0 through 4/0 AWG, all single conductors shall be installed in a single layer. Conductors that are bound together to comprise each circuit group shall be permitted to be installed in other than a single layer.

392.9 Number of Multiconductor Cables, Rated 2000 Volts or Less, in Cable Trays. The number of multiconductor cables, rated 2000 volts or less, permitted in a single cable tray shall not exceed the requirements of this section. The conductor sizes herein apply to both aluminum and copper conductors.

(A) Any Mixture of Cables. Where ladder or ventilated trough cable trays contain multiconductor power or lighting cables, or any mixture of multiconductor power, lighting, control, and signal cables, the maximum number of cables shall conform to the following:

(1) Where all of the cables are 4/0 AWG or larger, the sum of the diameters of all cables shall not exceed the cable tray width, and the cables shall be installed in a single layer.
(2) Where all of the cables are smaller than 4/0 AWG, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables shall not exceed the maximum allowable cable fill area in Column 1 of Table 392.9 for the appropriate cable tray width.
(3) Where 4/0 AWG or larger cables are installed in the same cable tray with cables smaller than 4/0 AWG, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables smaller than 4/0 AWG shall not exceed the maximum allowable fill area resulting from the computation in Column 2 of Table 392.9 for the appropriate cable tray width. The 4/0 AWG and larger cables shall be installed in a single layer, and no other cables shall be placed on them.

(B) Multiconductor Control and/or Signal Cables Only. Where a ladder or ventilated trough cable tray having a usable inside depth of 150 mm (6 in.) or less contains multiconductor control and/or signal cables only, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables at any cross section shall not exceed 50 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the cable tray. A depth of 150 mm (6 in.) shall be used to compute the allowable interior cross-sectional area of any cable tray that has a usable inside depth of more than 150 mm (6 in.).

(C) Solid Bottom Cable Trays Containing Any Mixture. Where solid bottom cable trays contain multiconductor power or lighting cables, or any mixture of multiconductor power, lighting, control, and signal cables, the maximum number of cables shall conform to the following:

(1) Where all of the cables are 4/0 AWG or larger, the sum of the diameters of all cables shall not exceed 90 percent of the cable tray width, and the cables shall be installed in a single layer.
(2) Where all of the cables are smaller than 4/0 AWG, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables shall not exceed the maximum allowable cable fill area in Column 3 of Table 392.9 for the appropriate cable tray width.
(3) Where 4/0 AWG or larger cables are installed in the same cable tray with cables smaller than 4/0 AWG, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables smaller than 4/0 AWG shall not exceed the maximum allowable fill area resulting from the computation in Column 4 of Table 392.9 for the appropriate cable tray width. The 4/0 AWG and larger cables shall be installed in a single layer, and no other cables shall be placed on them.

(D) Solid Bottom Cable Tray — Multiconductor Control and/or Signal Cables Only. Where a solid bottom cable tray having a usable inside depth of 150 mm (6 in.) or less contains multiconductor control and/or signal cables only, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables at any cross section shall not exceed 40 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the cable tray. A depth of 150 mm (6 in.) shall be used to compute the allowable interior cross-sectional area of any cable tray that has a usable inside depth of more than 150 mm (6 in.).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-227

Table 392.9 Allowable Cable Fill Area for Multiconductor Cables in Ladder, Ventilated Trough, or Solid Bottom Cable Trays for Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less

Inside Width of Cable Tray		Maximum Allowable Fill Area for Multiconductor Cables							
		Ladder or Ventilated Trough Cable Trays, 392.9(A)				Solid Bottom Cable Trays, 392.9(C)			
		Column 1 Applicable for 392.9(A)(2) Only		Column 2[a] Applicable for 392.9(A)(3) Only		Column 3 Applicable for 392.9(C)(2) Only		Column 4[a] Applicable for 392.9(C)(3) Only	
mm	in.	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$
150	6.0	4,500	7.0	4,500 – (1.2 Sd)[b]	7 – (1.2 Sd)[b]	3,500	5.5	3,500 – Sd[b]	5.5 – Sdb
225	9.0	6,800	10.5	6,800 – (1.2 Sd)	10.5 – (1.2 Sd)	5,100	8.0	5,100 – Sd	8.0 – Sd
300	12.0	9,000	14.0	9,000 – (1.2 Sd)	14 – (1.2 Sd)	7,100	11.0	7,100 – Sd	11.0 – Sd
450	18.0	13,500	21.0	13,500 – (1.2 Sd)	21 – (1.2 Sd)	10,600	16.5	10,600 – Sd	16.5 – Sd
600	24.0	18,000	28.0	18,000 – (1.2 Sd)	28 – (1.2 Sd)	14,200	22.0	14,200 – Sd	22.0 – Sd
750	30.0	22,500	35.0	22,500 – (1.2 Sd)	35 – (1.2 Sd)	17,700	27.5	17,700 – Sd	27.5 – Sd
900	36.0	27,000	42.0	27,000 – (1.2 Sd)	42 – (1.2 Sd)	21,300	33.0	21,300 – Sd	33.0 – Sd

[a]The maximum allowable fill areas in Columns 2 and 4 shall be computed. For example, the maximum allowable fill in mm^2 for a 150-mm wide cable tray in Column 2 shall be 4500 minus (1.2 multiplied by Sd) [the maximum allowable fill, in square inches, for a 6-in. wide cable tray in Column 2 shall be 7 minus (1.2 multiplied by Sd)].

[b]The term *Sd* in Columns 2 and 4 is equal to the sum of the diameters, in mm, of all cables 107.2 mm (in inches, of all 4/0 AWG) and larger multiconductor cables in the same cable tray with smaller cables.

(E) Ventilated Channel Cable Trays. Where ventilated channel cable trays contain multiconductor cables of any type, the following shall apply:

(1) Where only one multiconductor cable is installed, the cross-sectional area shall not exceed the value specified in Column 1 of Table 392.9(E).
(2) Where more than one multiconductor cable is installed, the sum of the cross-sectional area of all cables shall not exceed the value specified in Column 2 of Table 392.9(E).

(F) Solid Channel Cable Trays. Where solid channel cable trays contain multiconductor cables of any type, the following shall apply:

(1) Where only one multiconductor cable is installed, the cross-sectional area of the cable shall not exceed the value specified in Column 1 of Table 392.9(F).
(2) Where more than one multiconductor cable is installed, the sum of the cross-sectional area of all cable shall not exceed the value specified in Column 2 of Table 392.9(F).

392.10 Number of Single-Conductor Cables, Rated 2000 Volts or Less, in Cable Trays. The number of single-conductor cables, rated 2000 volts or less, permitted in a single cable tray section shall not exceed the requirements of this section. The single conductors, or conductor assemblies, shall be evenly distributed across the cable tray. The conductor sizes herein apply to both aluminum and copper conductors.

Table 392.9(E) Allowable Cable Fill Area for Multiconductor Cables in Ventilated Channel Cable Trays for Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less

Inside Width of Cable Tray		Maximum Allowable Fill Area for Multiconductor Cables			
		Column 1 One Cable		Column 2 More Than One Cable	
mm	in.	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$
75	3	1500	2.3	850	1.3
100	4	2900	4.5	1600	2.5
150	6	4500	7.0	2450	3.8

Table 392.9(F) Allowable Cable Fill Area for Multiconductor Cables in Solid Channel Cable Trays for Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less

Inside Width of Cable Tray		Column 1 One Cable		Column 2 More Than One Cable	
mm	in.	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$
50	2	850	1.3	500	0.8
75	3	1300	2.0	700	1.1
100	4	2400	3.7	1400	2.1
150	6	3600	5.5	2100	3.2

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-228

(A) Ladder or Ventilated Trough Cable Trays. Where ladder or ventilated trough cable trays contain single-conductor cables, the maximum number of single conductors shall conform to the following:

(1) Where all of the cables are 1000 kcmil or larger, the sum of the diameters of all single-conductor cables shall not exceed the cable tray width.
(2) Where all of the cables are from 250 kcmil up to 1000 kcmil, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all single-conductor cables shall not exceed the maximum allowable cable fill area in Column 1 of Table 392.10(A) for the appropriate cable tray width.
(3) Where 1000 kcmil or larger single-conductor cables are installed in the same cable tray with single-conductor cables smaller than 1000 kcmil, the sum of the cross-sectional areas of all cables smaller than 1000 kcmil shall not exceed the maximum allowable fill area resulting from the computation in Column 2 of Table 392.10(A) for the appropriate cable tray width.
(4) Where any of the single conductor cables are 1/0 through 4/0 AWG, the sum of the diameters of all single conductor cables shall not exceed the cable tray width.

(B) Ventilated Channel Cable Trays. Where 50 mm (2 in.), 75 mm (3 in.), 100 mm (4 in.), or 150 mm (6 in.) wide ventilated channel cable trays contain single-conductor cables, the sum of the diameters of all single conductors shall not exceed the inside width of the channel.

392.11 Ampacity of Cables, Rated 2000 Volts or Less, in Cable Trays.

(A) Multiconductor Cables. The allowable ampacity of multiconductor cables, nominally rated 2000 volts or less, installed according to the requirements of 392.9 shall be as given in Tables 310.16 and 310.18, subject to the provisions of (1), (2), (3), and 310.15(A)(2).

(1) The derating factors of 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall apply only to multiconductor cables with more than three current-carrying conductors. Derating shall be limited to the number of current-carrying conductors in the cable and not to the number of conductors in the cable tray.
(2) Where cable trays are continuously covered for more than 1.8 m (6 ft) with solid unventilated covers, not over 95 percent of the allowable ampacities of Tables 310.16 and 310.18 shall be permitted for multiconductor cables.
(3) Where multiconductor cables are installed in a single layer in uncovered trays, with a maintained spacing of not less than one cable diameter between cables, the ampacity shall not exceed the allowable ambient temperature-corrected ampacities of multiconductor cables, with not more than three insulated conductors rated 0 through 2000 volts in free air, in accordance with 310.15(C).

FPN: See Table B.310.3.

(B) Single-Conductor Cables. The allowable ampacity of single-conductor cables shall be as permitted by 310.15(A)(2). The derating factors of 310.15(B)(2)(a) shall not apply to the ampacity of cables in cable trays. The ampacity of single-conductor cables, or single conductors cabled together (triplexed, quadruplexed, etc.), nominally rated 2000 volts or less shall comply with the following:

(1) Where installed according to the requirements of 392.10, the ampacities for 600 kcmil and larger single-

Table 392.10(A) Allowable Cable Fill Area for Single-Conductor Cables in Ladder or Ventilated Trough Cable Trays for Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less

		Maximum Allowable Fill Area for Single-Conductor Cables in Ladder or Ventilated Trough Cable Trays			
Inside Width of Cable Tray		Column 1 Applicable for 392.10(A)(2) Only		Column 2[a] Applicable for 392.10(A)(3) Only	
mm	in.	mm^2	$in.^2$	mm^2	$in.^2$
150	6	4,200	6.5	4,200–(1.1Sd)[b]	6.5–(1.1Sd)[b]
225	9	6,100	9.5	6,100–(1.1 Sd)	9.5–(1.1 Sd)
300	12	8,400	13.0	8,400–(1.1 Sd)	13.0–(1.1 Sd)
450	18	12,600	19.5	12,600–(1.1 Sd)	19.5–(1.1 Sd)
600	24	16,800	26.0	16,800–(1.1 Sd)	26.0–(1.1 Sd)
750	30	21,000	32.5	21,000–(1.1 Sd)	32.5–(1.1 Sd)
900	36	25,200	39.0	25,200–(1.1 Sd)	39.0–(1.1 Sd)

[a]The maximum allowable fill areas in Column 2 shall be computed. For example, the maximum allowable fill, in mm^2 for a 150 mm wide cable tray in Column 2 shall be 4192.5 minus (1.1 multiplied by Sd) [the maximum allowable fill, in square inches, for a 6-in. wide cable tray in Column 2 shall be 6.5 minus (1.1 multiplied by Sd)].

[b]The term *Sd* in Column 2 is equal to the sum of the diameters, in mm, of all cables 507 mm^2 (in inches, of all 1000 kcmil) and larger single-conductor cables in the same ladder or ventilated trough cable tray with small cables.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-229

conductor cables in uncovered cable trays shall not exceed 75 percent of the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.17 and 310.19. Where cable trays are continuously covered for more than 1.8 m (6 ft) with solid unventilated covers, the ampacities for 600 kcmil and larger cables shall not exceed 70 percent of the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.17 and 310.19.

(2) Where installed according to the requirements of 392.10, the ampacities for 1/0 AWG through 500 kcmil single-conductor cables in uncovered cable trays shall not exceed 65 percent of the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.17 and 310.19. Where cable trays are continuously covered for more than 1.8 m (6 ft) with solid unventilated covers, the ampacities for 1/0 AWG through 500 kcmil cables shall not exceed 60 percent of the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.17 and 310.19.

(3) Where single conductors are installed in a single layer in uncovered cable trays, with a maintained space of not less than one cable diameter between individual conductors, the ampacity of 1/0 AWG and larger cables shall not exceed the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.17 and 310.19.

(4) Where single conductors are installed in a triangular or square configuration in uncovered cable trays, with a maintained free airspace of not less than 2.15 times one conductor diameter (2.15 × O.D.) of the largest conductor contained within the configuration and adjacent conductor configurations or cables, the ampacity of 1/0 AWG and larger cables shall not exceed the allowable ampacities of two or three single insulated conductors rated 0 through 2000 volts supported on a messenger in accordance with 310.15(B).

FPN: See Table 310.20.

392.12 Number of Type MV and Type MC Cables (2001 Volts or Over) in Cable Trays. The number of cables rated 2001 volts or over permitted in a single cable tray shall not exceed the requirements of this section.

The sum of the diameters of single-conductor and multiconductor cables shall not exceed the cable tray width, and the cables shall be installed in a single layer. Where single conductor cables are triplexed, quadruplexed, or bound together in circuit groups, the sum of the diameters of the single conductors shall not exceed the cable tray width, and these groups shall be installed in single layer arrangement.

392.13 Ampacity of Type MV and Type MC Cables (2001 Volts or Over) in Cable Trays. The ampacity of cables, rated 2001 volts, nominal, or over, installed according to 392.12 shall not exceed the requirements of this section.

(A) Multiconductor Cables (2001 Volts or Over). The allowable ampacity of multiconductor cables shall be as given in Tables 310.75 and 310.76, subject to the following provisions:

(1) Where cable trays are continuously covered for more than 1.8 m (6 ft) with solid unventilated covers, not more than 95 percent of the allowable ampacities of Tables 310.75 and 310.76 shall be permitted for multiconductor cables.

(2) Where multiconductor cables are installed in a single layer in uncovered cable trays, with maintained spacing of not less than one cable diameter between cables, the ampacity shall not exceed the allowable ampacities of Tables 310.71 and 310.72.

(B) Single-Conductor Cables (2001 Volts or Over). The ampacity of single-conductor cables, or single conductors cabled together (triplexed, quadruplexed, etc.), shall comply with the following:

(1) The ampacities for 1/0 AWG and larger single-conductor cables in uncovered cable trays shall not exceed 75 percent of the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.69 and 310.70. Where the cable trays are covered for more than 1.8 m (6 ft) with solid unventilated covers, the ampacities for 1/0 AWG and larger single-conductor cables shall not exceed 70 percent of the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.69 and 310.70.

(2) Where single-conductor cables are installed in a single layer in uncovered cable trays, with a maintained space of not less than one cable diameter between individual conductors, the ampacity of 1/0 AWG and larger cables shall not exceed the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.69 and 310.70.

(3) Where single conductors are installed in a triangular or square configuration in uncovered cable trays, with a maintained free air space of not less than 2.15 times the diameter (2.15 × O.D.) of the largest conductor contained within the configuration and adjacent conductor configurations or cables, the ampacity of 1/0 AWG and larger cables shall not exceed the allowable ampacities in Tables 310.67 and 310.68.

ARTICLE 394
Concealed Knob-and-Tube Wiring

I. General

394.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications of concealed knob-and-tube wiring.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-230

394.2. Definition.

Concealed Knob-and-Tube Wiring. A wiring method using knobs, tubes, and flexible nonmetallic tubing for the protection and support of single insulated conductors.

II. Installation

394.10 Uses Permitted. Concealed knob-and-tube wiring shall be permitted to be installed in the hollow spaces of walls and ceilings or in unfinished attics and roof spaces as provided in 394.23 only as follows:

(1) For extensions of existing installations
(2) Elsewhere by special permission

394.12 Uses Not Permitted. Concealed knob-and-tube wiring shall not be used in the following:

(1) Commercial garages
(2) Theaters and similar locations
(3) Motion picture studios
(4) Hazardous (classified) locations
(5) Hollow spaces of walls, ceilings, and attics where such spaces are insulated by loose, rolled, or foamed-in-place insulating material that envelops the conductors

394.17 Through or Parallel to Framing Members. Conductors shall comply with 398.17 where passing through holes in structural members. Where passing through wood cross members in plastered partitions, conductors shall be protected by noncombustible, nonabsorbent, insulating tubes extending not less than 75 mm (3 in.) beyond the wood member.

394.19 Clearances.

(A) General. A clearance of not less than 75 mm (3 in.) shall be maintained between conductors and a clearance of not less than 25 mm (1 in.) between the conductor and the surface over which it passes.

(B) Limited Conductor Space. Where space is too limited to provide these minimum clearances, such as at meters, panelboards, outlets, and switch points, the individual conductors shall be enclosed in flexible nonmetallic tubing, which shall be continuous in length between the last support and the enclosure or terminal point.

(C) Clearance from Piping, Exposed Conductors, and So Forth. Conductors shall comply with 398.19 for clearances from other exposed conductors, piping, and so forth.

394.23 In Accessible Attics. Conductors in unfinished attics and roof spaces shall comply with 394.23(A) or (B).

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

(A) Accessible by Stairway or Permanent Ladder. Conductors shall be installed along the side of or through bored holes in floor joists, studs, or rafters. Where run through bored holes, conductors in the joists and in studs or rafters to a height of not less than 2.1 m (7 ft) above the floor or floor joists shall be protected by substantial running boards extending not less than 25 mm (1 in.) on each side of the conductors. Running boards shall be securely fastened in place. Running boards and guard strips shall not be required where conductors are installed along the sides of joists, studs, or rafters.

(B) Not Accessible by Stairway or Permanent Ladder. Conductors shall be installed along the sides of or through bored holes in floor joists, studs, or rafters.

Exception: In buildings completed before the wiring is installed, attic and roof spaces that are not accessible by stairway or permanent ladder and have headroom at all points less than 900 mm (3 ft), the wiring shall be permitted to be installed on the edges of rafters or joists facing the attic or roof space.

394.30 Securing and Supporting.

(A) Supporting. Conductors shall be rigidly supported on noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating materials and shall not contact any other objects. Supports shall be installed as follows:

(1) Within 150 mm (6 in.) of each side of each tap or splice, and
(2) At intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft).

Where it is impracticable to provide supports, conductors shall be permitted to be fished through hollow spaces in dry locations, provided each conductor is individually enclosed in flexible nonmetallic tubing that is in continuous lengths between supports, between boxes, or between a support and a box.

(B) Securing. Where solid knobs are used, conductors shall be securely tied thereto by tie wires having insulation equivalent to that of the conductor.

394.42 Devices. Switches shall comply with 404.4 and 404.10(B).

394.56 Splices and Taps. Splices shall be soldered unless approved splicing devices are used. In-line or strain splices shall not be used.

III. Construction Specifications

394.104 Conductors. Conductors shall be of a type specified by Article 310.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-231

ARTICLE 396
Messenger Supported Wiring

I. General

396.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications for messenger supported wiring.

396.2 Definition.

Messenger Supported Wiring. An exposed wiring support system using a messenger wire to support insulated conductors by any one of the following:

(1) A messenger with rings and saddles for conductor support
(2) A messenger with a field-installed lashing material for conductor support
(3) Factory-assembled aerial cable
(4) Multiplex cables utilizing a bare conductor, factory assembled and twisted with one or more insulated conductors, such as duplex, triplex, or quadruplex type of construction

II. Installation

396.10 Uses Permitted.

(A) Cable Types. The cable types in Table 396.10(A) shall be permitted to be installed in messenger supported wiring under the conditions described in the article or section referenced for each.

Table 396.10(A) Cable Types

Cable Type	Section	Article
Metal-clad cable		330
Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable		332
Multiconductor service-entrance cable		338
Multiconductor underground feeder and branch-circuit cable		340
Other factory-assembled, multiconductor control, signal, or power cables that are identified for the use		
Power and control tray cable		336
Power-limited tray cable	725.61(C) and 725.71(E)	

(B) In Industrial Establishments. In industrial establishments only, where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installed messenger supported wiring, the following shall be permitted:

(1) Any of the conductor types shown in Table 310.13 or Table 310.62
(2) MV cable

Where exposed to weather, conductors shall be listed for use in wet locations. Where exposed to direct rays of the sun, conductors or cables shall be sunlight resistant.

(C) Hazardous (Classified) Locations. Messenger supported wiring shall be permitted to be used in hazardous (classified) locations where the contained cables are permitted for such use in 501.4, 502.4, 503.3, and 504.20.

396.12 Uses Not Permitted. Messenger supported wiring shall not be used in hoistways or where subject to physical damage.

396.30 Messenger Support. The messenger shall be supported at dead ends and at intermediate locations so as to eliminate tension on the conductors. The conductors shall not be permitted to come into contact with the messenger supports or any structural members, walls, or pipes.

396.56 Conductor Splices and Taps. Conductor splices and taps made and insulated by approved methods shall be permitted in messenger supported wiring.

396.60 Grounding. The messenger shall be grounded as required by 250.80 and 250.86 for enclosure grounding.

ARTICLE 398
Open Wiring on Insulators

I. General

398.1 Scope. This article covers the use, installation, and construction specifications of open wiring on insulators.

398.2 Definition.

Open Wiring on Insulators. An exposed wiring method using cleats, knobs, tubes, and flexible tubing for the protection and support of single insulated conductors run in or on buildings.

II. Installation

398.10 Uses Permitted. Open wiring on insulators shall be permitted only for industrial or agricultural establishments on systems of 600 volts, nominal, or less, as follows:

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-232

(1) Indoors or outdoors
(2) In wet or dry locations
(3) Where subject to corrosive vapors
(4) For services

398.12 Uses Not Permitted. Open wiring on insulators shall not be installed where concealed by the building structure.

398.15 Exposed Work.

(A) Dry Locations. In dry locations, where not exposed to severe physical damage, conductors shall be permitted to be separately enclosed in flexible nonmetallic tubing. The tubing shall be in continuous lengths not exceeding 4.5 m (15 ft) and secured to the surface by straps at intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft).

(B) Entering Spaces Subject to Dampness, Wetness, or Corrosive Vapors. Conductors entering or leaving locations subject to dampness, wetness, or corrosive vapors shall have drip loops formed on them and shall then pass upward and inward from the outside of the buildings, or from the damp, wet, or corrosive location, through noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating tubes.

FPN: See 230.52 for individual conductors entering buildings or other structures.

(C) Exposed to Physical Damage. Conductors within 2.1 m (7 ft) from the floor shall be considered exposed to physical damage. Where open conductors cross ceiling joists and wall studs and are exposed to physical damage, they shall be protected by one of the following methods:

(1) Guard strips not less than 25 mm (1 in.) nominal in thickness and at least as high as the insulating supports, placed on each side of and close to the wiring.
(2) A substantial running board at least 13 mm (½ in.) thick in back of the conductors with side protections. Running boards shall extend at least 25 mm (1 in.) outside the conductors, but not more than 50 mm (2 in.), and the protecting sides shall be at least 50 mm (2 in.) high and at least 25 mm (1 in.) nominal in thickness.
(3) Boxing made in accordance with (C)(1) or (C)(2) and furnished with a cover kept at least 25 mm (1 in.) away from the conductors within. Where protecting vertical conductors on side walls, the boxing shall be closed at the top and the holes through which the conductors pass shall be bushed.
(4) Rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or electrical metallic tubing, in which case the rules of Articles 342, 344, 352, or 358 shall apply; or by metal piping, in which case the conductors shall be encased in continuous lengths of approved flexible tubing.

398.17 Through or Parallel to Framing Members. Open conductors shall be separated from contact with walls, floors, wood cross members, or partitions through which they pass by tubes or bushings of noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating material. Where the bushing is shorter than the hole, a waterproof sleeve of noninductive material shall be inserted in the hole and an insulating bushing slipped into the sleeve at each end in such a manner as to keep the conductors absolutely out of contact with the sleeve. Each conductor shall be carried through a separate tube or sleeve.

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

398.19 Clearances. Open conductors shall be separated at least 50 mm (2 in.) from metal raceways, piping, or other conducting material, and from any exposed lighting, power, or signaling conductor, or shall be separated therefrom by a continuous and firmly fixed nonconductor in addition to the insulation of the conductor. Where any insulating tube is used, it shall be secured at the ends. Where practicable, conductors shall pass over rather than under any piping subject to leakage or accumulations of moisture.

398.23 In Accessible Attics. Conductors in unfinished attics and roof spaces shall comply with 398.23(A) or (B).

(A) Accessible by Stairway or Permanent Ladder. Conductors shall be installed along the side of or through bored holes in floor joists, studs, or rafters. Where run through bored holes, conductors in the joists and in studs or rafters to a height of not less than 2.1 m (7 ft) above the floor or floor joists shall be protected by substantial running boards extending not less than 25 mm (1 in.) on each side of the conductors. Running boards shall be securely fastened in place. Running boards and guard strips shall not be required for conductors installed along the sides of joists, studs, or rafters.

(B) Not Accessible by Stairway or Permanent Ladder. Conductors shall be installed along the sides of or through bored holes in floor joists, studs, or rafters.

Exception: In buildings completed before the wiring is installed, attic and roof spaces that are not accessible by stairway or permanent ladder and have headroom at all points less than 900 mm (3 ft), the wiring shall be permitted to be installed on the edges of rafters or joists facing the attic or roof space.

398.30 Securing and Supporting.

(A) Conductor Sizes Smaller Than 8 AWG. Conductors smaller than 8 AWG shall be rigidly supported on noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating materials and shall not

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-233

contact any other objects. Supports shall be installed as follows:

(1) Within 150 mm (6 in.) from a tap or splice
(2) Within 300 mm (12 in.) of a dead-end connection to a lampholder or receptacle
(3) At intervals not exceeding 1.4 m (4½ ft) and at closer intervals sufficient to provide adequate support where likely to be disturbed

(B) Conductor Sizes 8 AWG and Larger. Supports for conductors 8 AWG or larger installed across open spaces shall be permitted up to 4.5 m (15 ft) apart if noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating spacers are used at least every 1.4 m (4½ ft) to maintain at least 65 mm (2½ in.) between conductors.

Where not likely to be disturbed in buildings of mill construction, 8 AWG and larger conductors shall be permitted to be run across open spaces if supported from each wood cross member on approved insulators maintaining 150 mm (6 in.) between conductors.

(C) Industrial Establishments. In industrial establishments only, where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the system, conductors of sizes 250 kcmil and larger shall be permitted to be run across open spaces where supported at intervals up to 9.0 m (30 ft) apart.

(D) Mounting of Conductor Supports. Where nails are used to mount knobs, they shall not be smaller than tenpenny. Where screws are used to mount knobs, or where nails or screws are used to mount cleats, they shall be of a length sufficient to penetrate the wood to a depth equal to at least one-half the height of the knob and the full thickness of the cleat. Cushion washers shall be used with nails.

(E) Tie Wires. 8 AWG or larger conductors supported on solid knobs shall be securely tied thereto by tie wires having an insulation equivalent to that of the conductor.

398.42 Devices. Surface-type snap switches shall be mounted in accordance with 404.10(A), and boxes shall not be required. Other type switches shall be installed in accordance with 404.4.

III. Construction Specifications

398.104 Conductors. Conductors shall be of a type specified by Article 310.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-234

Chapter 4 Equipment for General Use

ARTICLE 400
Flexible Cords and Cables

I. General

400.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements, applications, and construction specifications for flexible cords and flexible cables.

400.2 Other Articles. Flexible cords and flexible cables shall comply with this article and with the applicable provisions of other articles of this *Code*.

400.3 Suitability. Flexible cords and cables and their associated fittings shall be suitable for the conditions of use and location.

400.4 Types. Flexible cords and flexible cables shall conform to the description in Table 400.4. Types of flexible cords and flexible cables other than those listed in the table shall be the subject of special investigation.

Table 400.4 Flexible Cords and Cables (See 400.4.)

Trade Name	Type Letter	Voltage	AWG or kcmil	Number of Conductors	Insulation	Nominal Insulation Thickness[1]			Braid on Each Conductor	Outer Covering	Use		
						AWG or kcmil	mm	mils					
Lamp cord	C	300 600	18–16 14–10	2 or more	Thermoset or thermoplastic	18–16 14–10	0.76 1.14	30 45	Cotton	None	Pendant or portable	Dry locations	Not hard usage
Elevator cable	E See Note 5. See Note 9. See Note 10.	300 or 600	20–2	2 or more	Thermoset	20–16 14–12 12–10 8–2	0.51 0.76 1.14 1.52	20 30 45 60	Cotton	Three cotton, Outer one flame-retardant & moisture-resistant. See Note 3.	Elevator lighting and control	Unclassified locations	
						20–16 14–12 12–10 8–2	0.51 0.76 1.14 1.52	20 30 45 60	Flexible nylon jacket				
Elevator cable	EO See Note 5. See Note 10.	300 or 600	20–2	2 or more	Thermoset	20–16 14–12 12–10 8–2	0.51 0.76 1.14 1.52	20 30 45 60	Cotton	Outer one Three cotton, flame-retardant & moisture-resistant. See Note 3.	Elevator lighting and control	Unclassified locations	
										One cotton and a neoprene jacket. See Note 3.		Hazardous (classified) locations	
Elevator cable	ET See Note 5. See Note 10.	300 or 600	20–2	2 or more	Thermoplastic	20–16 14–12 12–10 8–2	0.51 0.76 1.14 1.52	20 30 45 60	Rayon	Three cotton or equivalent. Outer one flame-retardant & moisture-resistant. See Note 3.	Unclassified locations		
	ETLB See Note 5. See Note 10.	300 or 600							None				
	ETP See Note 5. See Note 10.	300 or 600							Rayon	Thermoplastic	Hazardous (classified) locations		
	ETT See Note 5. See Note 10.	300 or 600							None	One cotton or equivalent and a thermoplastic jacket			
Portable power cable	G	2000	12–500	2–6 plus grounding conductor(s)	Thermoset	12–2 1–4/0 250–500	1.52 2.03 2.41	60 80 95		Oil-resistant thermoset	Portable and extra hard usage		

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-236

Table 400.4 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Voltage	AWG or kcmil	Number of Conductors	Insulation	Nominal Insulation Thickness[1]			Braid on Each Conductor	Outer Covering	Use		
						AWG or kcmil	mm	mils					
	G-GC	2000	12–500	3–6 plus grounding conductors and 1 ground check conductor	Thermoset	12–2 1–4/0 250–500	1.52 2.03 2.41	60 80 95		Oil-resistant thermoset			
Heater cord	HPD	300	18–12	2, 3, or 4	Thermoset	18–16 14–12	0.38 0.76	15 30	None	Cotton or rayon	Portable heaters	Dry locations	Not hard usage
Parallel heater cord	HPN See Note 6.	300	18–12	2 or 3	Oil-resistant thermoset	18–16 14–12	1.14 1.52 2.41	45 60 95	None	Oil-resistant thermoset	Portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
Thermoset jacketed heater cords	HSJ	300	18–12	2, 3, or 4	Thermoset	18–16	0.76	30	None	Cotton and Thermoset	Portable or portable heater	Damp locations	Hard usage
	HSJO	300	18–12		Oil-resistant thermoset	14–12	1.14	45		Cotton and oil-resistant thermoset			
	HSJOO	300	18–12										
Non-integral parallel cords	NISP-1 See Note 6.	300	20-18	2 or 3	Thermoset	20-18	0.38	15	None	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	NISP-2 See Note 6.	300	18-16			18-16	0.76	30					
	NISPE-1 See Note 6.	300	20-18		Thermo-plastic elastomer	20-18	0.38	15		Thermoplastic elastomer			
	NISPE-2 See Note 6.	300	18-16			18-16	0.76	30					
	NISPT-1 See Note 6.	300	20-18		Thermo-plastic	20-18	0.38	15		Thermoplastic			
	NISPT-2 See Note 6.	300	18-16			18-16	0.76	30					
Twisted portable cord	PD	300 600	18–16 14-10	2 or more	Thermoset or thermo-plastic	18–16 14–10	0.76 1.14	30 45	Cotton	Cotton or rayon	Pendant or portable	Dry locations	Not hard usage
Portable power cable	PPE	2000	12–500	1–6 plus optional grounding conductor(s)	Thermo-plastic elastomer	12–2 1–4/0 250–500	1.52 2.03 2.41	60 80 95		Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer	Portable, extra hard usage		
Hard service cord	S See Note 4.	600	18–12	2 or more	Thermoset	18–16 14–10 8–2	0.76 1.14 1.52	30 45 60	None	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra hard usage
Flexible stage and lighting power cable	SC	600	8–250	1 or more		8–2 1–4/0 250	1.52 2.03 2.41	60 80 95		Thermoset[2]	Portable, extra hard usage		
	SCE	600			Thermo-plastic elastomer					Thermoplastic elastomer[2]			
	SCT	600			Thermo-plastic					Thermoplastic[2]			
Hard service cord	SE See Note 4.	600	18–2	2 or more	Thermo-plastic elastomer	18–16 14–10 8–2	0.76 1.14 1.52	30 45 60	None	Thermoplastic elastomer	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra hard usage
	SEW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-237

Table 400.4 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Voltage	AWG or kcmil	Number of Conductors	Insulation	Nominal Insulation Thickness[1]			Braid on Each Conductor	Outer Covering	Use		
						AWG or kcmil	mm	mils					
	SEO See Note 4.	600								Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer		Damp locations	
	SEOW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
	SEOO See Note 4.	600			Oil-resistant thermo-plastic elastomer							Damp locations	
	SEOOW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
Junior hard service cord	SJ	300	18–10	2–6	Thermoset	18–12	0.76	30	None	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Hard usage
	SJE	300			Thermo-plastic elastomer					Thermoplastic elastomer			
	SJEW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJEO	300								Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer		Damp locations	
	SJEOW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJEOO	300			Oil-resistant thermo-plastic elastomer							Damp locations	
	SJEOOW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJO	300			Thermoset					Oil-resistant thermoset		Damp locations	
	SJOW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJOO	300			Oil-resistant thermoset							Damp locations	
	SJOOW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJT	300			Thermo-plastic	10	1.14	45		Thermoplastic		Damp locations	
	SJTW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJTO	300			Thermo-plastic	18–12	0.76	30		Oil-resistant thermoplastic		Damp locations	
	SJTOW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SJTOO	300			Oil-resistant thermo-plastic							Damp locations	
	SJTOOW See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-238

Table 400.4 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Voltage	AWG or kcmil	Number of Conductors	Insulation	Nominal Insulation Thickness[1]			Braid on Each Conductor	Outer Covering	Use		
						AWG or kcmil	mm	mils					
Hard service cord	SO See Note 4.	600	18–2	2 or more	Thermoset	18–16	0.76	30		Oil-resistant thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra hard usage
	SOW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
	SOO See Note 4.	600			Oil-resistant thermoset	14–10 8–2	1.14 1.52	45 60				Damp locations	
	SOOW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
All thermoset parallel cord	SP-1 See Note 6.	300	20–18	2 or 3	Thermoset	20–18	0.76	30	None	None	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	SP-2 See Note 6.	300	18–16			18-16	1.14	45					
	SP-3 See Note 6.	300	18–10			18–16 14 12 10	1.52 2.03 2.41 2.80	60 80 95 110			Refrigerators, room air conditioners, and as permitted in 422.16(B)		
All elastomer (thermoplastic) parallel cord	SPE-1 See Note 6.	300	20-18	2 or 3	Thermoplastic elastomer	20–18	0.76	30	None	None	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not Hard usage
	SPE-2 See Note 6.	300	18–16			18–16	1.14	45					
	SPE-3 See Note 6.	300	18–10			18–16 14 12 10	1.52 2.03 2.41 2.80	60 80 95 110			Refrigerators, room air conditioners, and as permitted in 422.16(B)		
All plastic parallel cord	SPT-1 See Note 6.	300	20–18	2 or 3	Thermoplastic	20–18	0.76	30	None	None	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	SPT-1W See Note 6. See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SPT-2 See Note 6.	300	18–16			18–16	1.14	45				Damp locations	
	SPT-2W See Note 6. See Note 13.	300										Damp and wet locations	
	SPT-3 See Note 6.	300	18–10			18–16 14 12 10	1.52 2.03 2.41 2.80	60 80 95 110			Refrigerators, room air conditioners, and as permitted in 422.16(B)	Damp locations	Not hard usage
Range, dryer cable	SRD	300	10–4	3 or 4	Thermoset	10–4	1.14	45	None	Thermoset	Portable	Damp locations	Ranges, dryers
	SRDE	300	10–4	3 or 4	Thermoplastic elastomer				None	Thermoplastic elastomer			
	SRDT	300	10–4	3 or 4	Thermoplastic				None	Thermoplastic			

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-239

Table 400.4 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Voltage	AWG or kcmil	Number of Conductors	Insulation	Nominal Insulation Thickness[1]			Braid on Each Conductor	Outer Covering	Use		
						AWG or kcmil	mm	mils					
Hard service cord	ST See Note 4.	600	18–2	2 or more	Thermo-plastic	18–16 14–10 8–2	0.76 1.14 1.52	30 45 60	None	Thermoplastic	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra hard usage
	STW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
	STO See Note 4.	600								Oil-resistant thermoplastic		Damp locations	
	STOW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
	STOO See Note 4.	600			Oil-resistant thermo-plastic							Damp locations	
	STOOW See Note 4. See Note 13.	600										Damp and wet locations	
Vacuum cleaner cord	SV See Note 6.	300	18–16	2 or 3	Thermoset	18–16	0.38	15	None	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	SVE See Note 6.	300			Thermo-plastic elastomer					Thermoplastic elastomer			
	SVEO See Note 6.	300								Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer			
	SVEOO See Note 6.	300			Oil-resistant thermo-plas tic elastomer								
	SVO	300			Thermoset					Oil-resistant thermoset			
	SVOO	300			Oil-resistant thermoset					Oil-resistant thermoset			
	SVT See Note 6.	300			Thermo-plastic					Thermoplastic			
	SVTO See Note 6.	300			Thermo-plastic					Oil-resistant thermoplastic			
	SVTOO	300			Oil-resistant thermo-plastic								
Parallel tinsel cord	TPT See Note 2.	300	27	2	Thermo-plastic	27	0.76	30	None	Thermoplastic	Attached to an appliance	Damp locations	Not hard usage
Jacketed tinsel cord	TST See Note 2.	300	27	2	Thermo-plastic	27	0.38	15	None	Thermoplastic	Attached to an appliance	Damp locations	Not Hard Usage
Portable power-cable	W	2000	12–500 501–1000	1–6 1	Thermoset	12–2 1–4/0 250–500 501–1000	1.52 2.03 2.41 2.80	60 80 95 110		Oil-resistant thermoset	Portable, extra hard usage		
Electric vehicle cable	EV	600	18–500 See Note 11.	2 or more plus grounding conduc-tor(s), plus optional hybrid data, signal com-munica-tions, and optical fiber cables	Thermoset with optional nylon See Note 12.	18–16 14–10 8–2 1–4/0 250–500	0.76 (0.51) 1.14 (0.76) 1.52 (1.14) 2.03 (1.52) 2.41 (1.90)	30 (20) 45 (30) 60 (45) 80 (60) 95 (75) See Note 12.	Optional	Thermoset	Electric vehicle charging	Wet locations	Extra hard usage
	EVJ	300	18-12 See Note 11.			18–12	0.76 (0.51)	30 (20) See Note 12.					Hard usage

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-240

Table 400.4 *Continued*

Trade Name	Type Letter	Voltage	AWG or kcmil	Number of Conductors	Insulation	Nominal Insulation Thickness[1]			Braid on Each Conductor	Outer Covering	Use		
						AWG or kcmil	mm	mils					
	EVE	600	18-500 See Note 11.	2 or more plus grounding conductor(s), plus optional hybrid data, signal communications, and optical fiber cables	Thermoplastic elastomer with optional nylon See Note 12.	18–16 14–10 8–2 1–4/0 250–500	0.76 (0.51) 1.14 (0.76) 1.52 (1.14) 2.03 (1.52) 2.41 (1.90)	30 (20) 45 (30) 60 (45) 80 (60) 95 (75) See Note 12.		Thermoplastic elastomer			Extra hard usage
	EVJE	300	18–12 See Note 11.			18–12	0.76 (0.51)	30 (20) See Note 12.					Hard usage
	EVT	600	18–500 See Note 11.	2 or more plus grounding conductor(s), plus optional hybrid data, signal communications, and optical fiber cables	Thermoplastic with optional nylon See Note 12.	18–16 14–10 8–2 1–4/0 250–500	0.76 (0.51) 1.14 (0.76) 1.52 (1.14) 2.03 (1.52) 2.41 (1.90)	30 (20) 45 (30) 60 (45) 80 (60) 95 (75) See Note 12.	Optional	Thermoplastic	Electric vehicle charging	Wet Locations	Extra hard usage
	EVJT	300	18–12 See Note 11.			18–12	0.76 (0.51)	30 (20) See Note 12.					Hard usage

*See Note 8.

**The required outer covering on some single conductor cables may be integral with the insulation.

Notes:

1. All types listed in Table 400.4 shall have individual conductors twisted together except for Types HPN, SP-1, SP-2, SP-3, SPE-1, SPE-2, SPE-3, SPT-1, SPT-2, SPT-3, TPT, NISP-1, NISP-2, NISPT-1, NISPT-2, NISPE-1, NISPE-2, and three-conductor parallel versions of SRD, SRDE, and SRDT.

2. Types TPT and TST shall be permitted in lengths not exceeding 2.5 m (8 ft) where attached directly, or by means of a special type of plug, to a portable appliance rated at 50 watts or less and of such nature that extreme flexibility of the cord is essential.

3. Rubber-filled or varnished cambric tapes shall be permitted as a substitute for the inner braids.

4. Types G, G-GC, S, SC, SCE, SCT, SE, SEO, SEOO, SO, SOO, ST, STO, STOO, PPE, and W shall be permitted for use on theater stages, in garages, and elsewhere where flexible cords are permitted by this *Code*.

5. Elevator traveling cables for operating control and signal circuits shall contain nonmetallic fillers as necessary to maintain concentricity. Cables shall have steel supporting members as required for suspension by 620.41. In locations subject to excessive moisture or corrosive vapors or gases, supporting members of other materials shall be permitted. Where steel supporting members are used, they shall run straight through the center of the cable assembly and shall not be cabled with the copper strands of any conductor.

In addition to conductors used for control and signaling circuits, Types E, EO, ET, ETLB, ETP, and ETT elevator cables shall be permitted to incorporate in the construction, one or more 20 AWG telephone conductor pairs, one or more coaxial cables, or one or more optical fibers. The 20 AWG conductor pairs shall be permitted to be covered with suitable shielding for telephone, audio, or higher frequency communications circuits; the coaxial cables consist of a center conductor, insulation, and shield for use in video or other radio frequency communications circuits. The optical fiber shall be suitably covered with flame-retardant thermoplastic. The insulation of the conductors shall be rubber or thermoplastic of thickness not less than specified for the other conductors of the particular type of cable. Metallic shields shall have their own protective covering. Where used, these components shall be permitted to be incorporated in any layer of the cable assembly but shall not run straight through the center.

6.The third conductor in these cables shall be used for equipment grounding purpose only. The insulation of the grounding conductor for Types SPE-1, SPE-2, SPE-3, SPT-1, SPT-2, SPT-3, NISPT-1, NISPT-2, NISPE-1, and NISPE-2 shall be permitted to be thermoset polymer.

7. The individual conductors of all cords, except those of heat-resistant cords, shall have a thermoset or thermoplastic insulation, except that the equipment grounding conductor where used shall be in accordance with 400.23(B).

8. Where the voltage between any two conductors exceeds 300, but does not exceed 600, flexible cord of 10 AWG and smaller shall have thermoset or thermoplastic insulation on the individual conductors at least 1.14 mm (45 mils) in thickness, unless Type S, SE, SEO, SEOO, SO, SOO, ST, STO, or STOO cord is used.

9. Insulations and outer coverings that meet the requirements as flame retardant, limited smoke, and are so listed, shall be permitted to be marked for limited smoke after the code type designation.

10. Elevator cables in sizes 20 AWG through 14 AWG are rated 300 volts, and sizes 10 through 2 are rated 600 volts. 12 AWG is rated 300 volts with a 0.76-mm (30-mil) insulation thickness and 600 volts with a 1.14-mm (45-mil) insulation thickness.

11. Conductor size for Types EV, EVJ, EVE, EVJE, EVT, and EVJT cables apply to nonpower-limited circuits only. Conductors of power-limited (data, signal, or communications) circuits may extend beyond the stated AWG size range. All conductors shall be insulated for the same cable voltage rating.

12. Insulation thickness for Types EV, EVJ, EVEJE, EVT, and EVJT cables of nylon construction is indicated in parentheses.

13. Cords that comply with the requirements for outdoor cords and are so listed shall be permitted to be designated as weather and water resistant with the suffix "W" after the code type designation. Cords with the "W" suffix are suitable for use in wet locations.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-241

400.5 Ampacities for Flexible Cords and Cables. Table 400.5(A) provides the allowable ampacities, and Table 400.5(B) provides the ampacities for flexible cords and cables with not more than three current-carrying conductors. These tables shall be used in conjunction with applicable end-use product standards to ensure selection of the proper size and type. If the number of current-carrying conductors exceeds three, the allowable ampacity or the ampacity of each conductor shall be reduced from the 3-conductor rating as shown in Table 400.5.

Table 400.5 Adjustment Factors for More Than Three Current-Carrying Conductors in a Flexible Cord or Cable

Number of Conductors	Percent of Value in Tables 400.5(A) and 400.5(B)
4 – 6	80
7 – 9	70
10 – 20	50
21 – 30	45
31 – 40	40
41 and above	35

Ultimate Insulation Temperature. In no case shall conductors be associated together in such a way with respect to the kind of circuit, the wiring method used, or the number of conductors such that the limiting temperature of the conductors is exceeded.

A neutral conductor that carries only the unbalanced current from other conductors of the same circuit shall not be required to meet the requirements of a current-carrying conductor.

In a 3-wire circuit consisting of two phase wires and the neutral of a 4-wire, 3-phase, wye-connected system, a common conductor carries approximately the same current as the line-to-neutral currents of the other conductors and shall be considered to be a current-carrying conductor.

On a 4-wire, 3-phase, wye circuit where the major portion of the load consists of nonlinear loads, there are harmonic currents present in the neutral conductor and the neutral shall be considered to be a current-carrying conductor.

An equipment grounding conductor shall not be considered a current-carrying conductor.

Where a single conductor is used for both equipment grounding and to carry unbalanced current from other conductors, as provided for in 250.140 for electric ranges and electric clothes dryers, it shall not be considered as a current-carrying conductor.

Exception: For other loading conditions, adjustment factors shall be permitted to be calculated under 310.15(C).

FPN: See Annex B, Table B.310.11, for adjustment factors for more than three current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable with load diversity.

400.6 Markings.

(A) Standard Markings. Flexible cords and cables shall be marked by means of a printed tag attached to the coil reel or carton. The tag shall contain the information required in 310.11(A). Types S, SC, SCE, SCT, SE, SEO,

Table 400.5(A) Allowable Ampacity for Flexible Cords and Cables [Based on Ambient Temperature of 30°C (86°F). See 400.13 and Table 400.4.]

Size (AWG)	Thermoplastic Types TPT, TST	Thermoset Types C, E, EO, PD, S, SJ, SJO, SJOW, SJOO, SJOOW, SO, SOW, SOO, SOOW, SP-1, SP-2, SP-3, SRD, SV, SVO, SVOO. / Thermoplastic Types ET, ETLB, ETP, ETT, SE, SEW, SEO, SEOW, SEOOW, SJE, SJEW, SJEO, SJEOW, SJEOOW, SJT, SJTW, SJTO, SJTOW, SJTOO, SJTOOW, SPE-1, SPE-2, SPE-3, SPT-1, SPT-1W, SPT-2, SPT-2W, SPT-3, ST, SRDE, SRDT, STO, STOW, STOO, STOOW, SVE, SVEO, SVT, SVTO, SVTOO		Types HPD, HPN, HSJ, HSJO, HSJOO
		A+	B+	
27*	0.5	—	—	—
20	—	5**	***	—
18	—	7	10	10
17	—	—	12	13
16	—	10	13	15
15	—	—	—	17
14	—	15	18	20
12	—	20	25	30
10	—	25	30	35
8	—	35	40	—
6	—	45	55	—
4	—	60	70	—
2	—	80	95	—

*Tinsel cord.

**Elevator cables only.

***7 amperes for elevator cables only; 2 amperes for other types.

+The allowable currents under subheading A apply to 3-conductor cords and other multiconductor cords connected to utilization equipment so that only 3 conductors are current-carrying. The allowable currents under subheading B apply to 2-conductor cords and other multiconductor cords connected to utilization equipment so that only 2 conductors are current carrying.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-242

Table 400.5(B) Ampacity of Cable Types SC, SCE, SCT, PPE, G, G-GC, and W. [Based on Ambient Temperature of 30°C (86°F). See Table 400.4.] Temperature Rating of Cable.

Size (AWG or kcmil)	60°C (140°F)			75°C (167°F)			90°C (194°F)		
	D[1]	E[2]	F[3]	D[1]	E[2]	F[3]	D[1]	E[2]	F[3]
12	—	31	26	—	37	31	—	42	35
10	—	44	37	—	52	43	—	59	49
8	60	55	48	70	65	57	80	74	65
6	80	72	63	95	88	77	105	99	87
4	105	96	84	125	115	101	140	130	114
3	120	113	99	145	135	118	165	152	133
2	140	128	112	170	152	133	190	174	152
1	165	150	131	195	178	156	220	202	177
1/0	195	173	151	230	207	181	260	234	205
2/0	225	199	174	265	238	208	300	271	237
3/0	260	230	201	310	275	241	350	313	274
4/0	300	265	232	360	317	277	405	361	316
250	340	296	259	405	354	310	455	402	352
300	375	330	289	445	395	346	505	449	393
350	420	363	318	505	435	381	570	495	433
400	455	392	343	545	469	410	615	535	468
500	515	448	392	620	537	470	700	613	536
600	575	—	—	690	—	—	780	—	—
700	630	—	—	755	—	—	855	—	—
750	655	—	—	785	—	—	885	—	—
800	680	—	—	815	—	—	920	—	—
900	730	—	—	870	—	—	985	—	—
1000	780	—	—	935	—	—	1055	—	—

[1]The ampacities under subheading D shall be permitted for single-conductor Types SC, SCE, SCT, PPE, and W cable only where the individual conductors are not installed in raceways and are not in physical contact with each other except in lengths not to exceed 600 mm (24 in.) where passing through the wall of an enclosure.

[2]The ampacities under subheading E apply to two-conductor cables and other multiconductor cables connected to utilization equipment so that only two conductors are current carrying.

[3]The ampacities under subheading F apply to three-conductor cables and other multiconductor cables connected to utilization equipment so that only three conductors are current carrying.

SEOO, SJ, SJE, SJEO, SJEOO, SJO, SJT, SJTO, SJTOO, SO, SOO, ST, STO, STOO, SEW, SEOW, SEOOW, SJEW, SJEOW, SJEOOW, SJOW, SJTW, SJTOW, SJTOOW, SOW, SOOW, STW, STOW, and STOOW flexible cords and G, G-GC, PPE, and W flexible cables shall be durably marked on the surface at intervals not exceeding 610 mm (24 in.) with the type designation, size, and number of conductors.

(B) Optional Markings. Flexible cords and cable types listed in Table 400.4 shall be permitted to be surface marked to indicate special characteristics of the cable materials. These markings include, but are not limited to, markings for limited smoke, sunlight resistance, and so forth.

400.7 Uses Permitted.

(A) Uses. Flexible cords and cables shall be used only for the following:

(1) Pendants
(2) Wiring of luminaires (fixtures)
(3) Connection of portable lamps, portable and mobile signs, or appliances
(4) Elevator cables
(5) Wiring of cranes and hoists
(6) Connection of utilization equipment to facilitate frequent interchange
(7) Prevention of the transmission of noise or vibration
(8) Appliances where the fastening means and mechanical connections are specifically designed to permit ready removal for maintenance and repair, and the appliance is intended or identified for flexible cord connection
(9) Data processing cables as permitted by 645.5
(10) Connection of moving parts
(11) Temporary wiring as permitted in 527.4(B) and 527.4(C)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-243

(B) Attachment Plugs. Where used as permitted in 400.7(A)(3), (A)(6), and (A)(8), each flexible cord shall be equipped with an attachment plug and shall be energized from a receptacle outlet.

Exception: As permitted in 368.8.

400.8 Uses Not Permitted. Unless specifically permitted in 400.7, flexible cords and cables shall not be used for the following:

(1) As a substitute for the fixed wiring of a structure
(2) Where run through holes in walls, structural ceilings, suspended ceilings, dropped ceilings, or floors
(3) Where run through doorways, windows, or similar openings
(4) Where attached to building surfaces

Exception: Flexible cord and cable shall be permitted to be attached to building surfaces in accordance with the provisions of 368.8.

(5) Where concealed by walls, floors, or ceilings or located above suspended or dropped ceilings
(6) Where installed in raceways, except as otherwise permitted in this *Code*

400.9 Splices. Flexible cord shall be used only in continuous lengths without splice or tap where initially installed in applications permitted by 400.7(A). The repair of hard-service cord and junior hard-service cord (see Trade Name column in Table 400.4) 14 AWG and larger shall be permitted if conductors are spliced in accordance with 110.14(B) and the completed splice retains the insulation, outer sheath properties, and usage characteristics of the cord being spliced.

400.10 Pull at Joints and Terminals. Flexible cords and cables shall be connected to devices and to fittings so that tension is not transmitted to joints or terminals.

Exception: Listed portable single pole devices that are intended to accommodate such tension at their terminals shall be permitted to be used with single-conductor flexible cable.

FPN: Some methods of preventing pull on a cord from being transmitted to joints or terminals are knotting the cord, winding with tape, and fittings designed for the purpose.

400.11 In Show Windows and Show Cases. Flexible cords used in show windows and show cases shall be Type S, SE, SEO, SEOO, SJ, SJE, SJEO, SJEOO, SJO, SJOO, SJT, SJTO, SJTOO, SO, SOO, ST, STO, STOO, SEW, SEOW, SEOOW, SJEW, SJEOW, SJEOOW, SJOW, SJOOW, SJTW, SJTOW, SJTOOW, SOW, SOOW, STW, STOW, or STOOW.

Exception No. 1: For the wiring of chain-supported luminaires (lighting fixtures).

Exception No. 2: As supply cords for portable lamps and other merchandise being displayed or exhibited.

400.12 Minimum Size. The individual conductors of a flexible cord or cable shall not be smaller than the sizes in Table 400.4.

Exception: The size of the insulated ground-check conductor of Type G-GC cables shall be not smaller than 10 AWG.

400.13 Overcurrent Protection. Flexible cords not smaller than 18 AWG, and tinsel cords or cords having equivalent characteristics of smaller size approved for use with specific appliances, shall be considered as protected against overcurrent by the overcurrent devices described in 240.5.

400.14 Protection from Damage. Flexible cords and cables shall be protected by bushings or fittings where passing through holes in covers, outlet boxes, or similar enclosures.

II. Construction Specifications

400.20 Labels. Flexible cords shall be examined and tested at the factory and labeled before shipment.

400.21 Nominal Insulation Thickness. The nominal thickness of insulation for conductors of flexible cords and cables shall not be less than specified in Table 400.4.

Exception: The nominal insulation thickness for the ground-check conductors of Type G-GC cables shall not be less than 1.14 mm (45 mils) for 8 AWG and not less than 0.76 mm (30 mils) for 10 AWG.

400.22 Grounded-Conductor Identification. One conductor of flexible cords that is intended to be used as a grounded circuit conductor shall have a continuous marker that readily distinguishes it from the other conductor or conductors. The identification shall consist of one of the methods indicated in 400.22(A) through (F).

(A) Colored Braid. A braid finished to show a white or gray color and the braid on the other conductor or conductors finished to show a readily distinguishable solid color or colors.

(B) Tracer in Braid. A tracer in a braid of any color contrasting with that of the braid and no tracer in the braid of the other conductor or conductors. No tracer shall be used

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-244

in the braid of any conductor of a flexible cord that contains a conductor having a braid finished to show white or gray.

Exception: In the case of Types C and PD and cords having the braids on the individual conductors finished to show white or gray. In such cords, the identifying marker shall be permitted to consist of the solid white or gray finish on one conductor, provided there is a colored tracer in the braid of each other conductor.

(C) Colored Insulation. A white or gray insulation on one conductor and insulation of a readily distinguishable color or colors on the other conductor or conductors for cords having no braids on the individual conductors.

For jacketed cords furnished with appliances, one conductor having its insulation colored light blue, with the other conductors having their insulation of a readily distinguishable color other than white or gray.

Exception: Cords that have insulation on the individual conductors integral with the jacket.

The insulation shall be permitted to be covered with an outer finish to provide the desired color.

(D) Colored Separator. A white or gray separator on one conductor and a separator of a readily distinguishable solid color on the other conductor or conductors of cords having insulation on the individual conductors integral with the jacket.

(E) Tinned Conductors. One conductor having the individual strands tinned and the other conductor or conductors having the individual strands untinned for cords having insulation on the individual conductors integral with the jacket.

(F) Surface Marking. One or more stripes, ridges, or grooves located on the exterior of the cord so as to identify one conductor for cords having insulation on the individual conductors integral with the jacket.

400.23 Equipment Grounding Conductor Identification. A conductor intended to be used as an equipment grounding conductor shall have a continuous identifying marker readily distinguishing it from the other conductor or conductors. Conductors having a continuous green color or a continuous green color with one or more yellow stripes shall not be used for other than equipment grounding purposes. The identifying marker shall consist of one of the methods in 400.23(A) or (B).

(A) Colored Braid. A braid finished to show a continuous green color or a continuous green color with one or more yellow stripes.

(B) Colored Insulation or Covering. For cords having no braids on the individual conductors, an insulation of a continuous green color or a continuous green color with one or more yellow stripes.

400.24 Attachment Plugs. Where a flexible cord is provided with an equipment grounding conductor and equipped with an attachment plug, the attachment plug shall comply with 250.138(A) and (B).

III. Portable Cables Over 600 Volts, Nominal

400.30 Scope. This part applies to multiconductor portable cables used to connect mobile equipment and machinery.

400.31 Construction.

(A) Conductors. The conductors shall be 8 AWG copper or larger and shall employ flexible stranding.

Exception: The size of the insulated ground-check conductor of Type G-GC cables shall be not smaller than 10 AWG.

(B) Shields. Cables operated at over 2000 volts shall be shielded. Shielding shall be for the purpose of confining the voltage stresses to the insulation.

(C) Equipment Grounding Conductor(s). An equipment grounding conductor(s) shall be provided. The total area shall not be less than that of the size of the equipment grounding conductor required in 250.122.

400.32 Shielding. All shields shall be grounded.

400.33 Grounding. Grounding conductors shall be connected in accordance with Part V of Article 250.

400.34 Minimum Bending Radii. The minimum bending radii for portable cables during installation and handling in service shall be adequate to prevent damage to the cable.

400.35 Fittings. Connectors used to connect lengths of cable in a run shall be of a type that lock firmly together. Provisions shall be made to prevent opening or closing these connectors while energized. Suitable means shall be used to eliminate tension at connectors and terminations.

400.36 Splices and Terminations. Portable cables shall not contain splices unless the splices are of the permanent molded, vulcanized types in accordance with 110.14(B). Terminations on portable cables rated over 600 volts, nominal, shall be accessible only to authorized and qualified personnel.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-245

ARTICLE 402
Fixture Wires

402.1 Scope. This article covers general requirements and construction specifications for fixture wires.

402.2 Other Articles. Fixture wires shall comply with this article and also with the applicable provisions of other articles of this *Code*.

FPN: For application in luminaires (lighting fixtures), see Article 410.

402.3 Types. Fixture wires shall be of a type listed in Table 402.3, and they shall comply with all requirements of that table. The fixture wires listed in Table 402.3 are all suitable for service at 600 volts, nominal, unless otherwise specified.

FPN: Thermoplastic insulation may stiffen at temperatures colder than −10°C (+14°F), requiring that care be exercised during installation at such temperatures. Thermoplastic insulation may also be deformed at normal temperatures where subjected to pressure, requiring that care be exercised during installation and at points of support.

Table 402.3 Fixture Wires

Name	Type Letter	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions
			AWG	mm	mils			
Heat-resistant rubber-covered fixture wire — flexible stranding	FFH-2	Heat-resistant rubber Cross-linked synthetic polymer	18–16 18–16	0.76 0.76	30 30	Nonmetallic covering	75°C 167°F	Fixture wiring
ECTFE — solid or 7-strand	HF	Ethylene chlorotrifluoroethylene	18–14	0.38	15	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
ECTFE — flexible stranding	HFF	Ethylene chlorotrifluoroethylene	18–14	0.38	15	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
Tape insulated fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	KF-1	Aromatic polyimide tape	18–10	0.14	5.5	None	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
	KF-2	Aromatic polyimide tape	18–10	0.21	8.4	None	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring
Tape insulated fixture wire — flexible stranding	KFF-1	Aromatic polyimide tape	18–10	0.14	5.5	None	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
	KFF-2	Aromatic polyimide tape	18–10	0.21	8.4	None	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring
Perfluoro-alkoxy — solid or 7-strand (nickel or nickel-coated copper)	PAF	Perfluoro-alkoxy	18–14	0.51	20	None	250°C 482°F	Fixture wiring (nickel or nickel-coated copper)
Perfluoro-alkoxy — flexible stranding	PAFF	Perfluoro-alkoxy	18–14	0.51	20	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-246

Table 402.3 *Continued*

Name	Type Letter	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions
			AWG	mm	mils			
Fluorinated ethylene propylene fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	PF	Fluorinated ethylene propylene	18–14	0.51	20	None	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring
Fluorinated ethylene propylene fixture wire — flexible stranding	PFF	Fluorinated ethylene propylene	18–14	0.51	20	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
Fluorinated ethylene propylene fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	PGF	Fluorinated ethylene propylene	18–14	0.36	14	Glass braid	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring
Fluorinated ethylene propylene fixture wire — flexible stranding	PGFF	Fluorinated ethylene propylene	18–14	0.36	14	Glass braid	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
Extruded polytetra-fluoroethylene — solid or 7-strand (nickel or nickel-coated copper)	PTF	Extruded polytetra-fluoroethyl-ene	18–14	0.51	20	None	250°C 482°F	Fixture wiring (nickel or nickel-coated copper)
Extruded polytetra-fluoroethylene — flexible stranding 26-36 (AWG silver or nickel-coated copper)	PTFF	Extruded polytetra-fluoroethyl-ene	18–14	0.51	20	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring (silver or nickel-coated copper)
Heat-resistant rubber-covered fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	RFH-1	Heat-resis-tant rubber	18	0.38	15	Nonmetallic covering	75°C 167°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
	RFH-2	Heat-resis-tant rubber Cross-linked synthetic polymer	18–16	0.76	30	None or nonmetallic covering	75°C 167°F	Fixture wiring
Heat-resistant cross-linked synthetic polymer-insulated fixture wire — solid or stranded	RFHH-2*	Cross-linked synthetic polymer	18–16	0.76	30	None or nonmetallic covering	90°C 194°F	Fixture wiring — multi-conductor cable
	RFHH-3*		18–16	1.14	45			
Silicone insulated fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	SF-1	Silicone rubber	18	0.38	15	Nonmetallic covering	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
	SF-2	Silicone rubber	18–12 10	0.76 1.14	30 45	Nonmetallic covering	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-247

Table 402.3 *Continued*

Name	Type Letter	Insulation	Thickness of Insulation			Outer Covering	Maximum Operating Temperature	Application Provisions
			AWG	mm	mils			
Silicone insulated fixture wire — flexible stranding	SFF-1	Silicone rubber	18	0.38	15	Nonmetallic covering	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
	SFF-2	Silicone rubber	18–12 10	0.76 1.14	30 45	Nonmetallic covering	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
Thermoplastic covered fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	TF*	Thermoplastic	18–16	0.76	30	None	60°C 140°F	Fixture wiring
Thermoplastic covered fixture wire — flexible stranding	TFF*	Thermoplastic	18–16	0.76	30	None	60°C 140°F	Fixture wiring
Heat-resistant thermoplastic covered fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	TFN*	Thermoplastic	18–16	0.38	15	Nylon-jacketed or equivalent	90°C 194°F	Fixture wiring
Heat-resistant thermoplastic covered fixture wire — flexible stranded	TFFN*	Thermoplastic	18–16	0.38	15	Nylon-jacketed or equivalent	90°C 194°F	Fixture wiring
Cross-linked polyolefin insulated fixture wire — solid or 7-strand	XF*	Cross-linked polyolefin	18–14 12-10	0.76 1.14	30 45	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
Cross-linked polyolefin insulated fixture wire — flexible stranded	XFF*	Cross-linked polyolefin	18–14 12–10	0.76 1.14	30 45	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring — limited to 300 volts
Modified ETFE — solid or 7-strand	ZF	Modified ethylene tetrafluoro-ethylene	18–14	0.38	15	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
Flexible stranding	ZFF	Modified ethylene tetrafluoro-ethylene	18–14	0.38	15	None	150°C 302°F	Fixture wiring
High temp. modified ETFE — solid or 7-strand	ZHF	Modified ethylene tetrafluoro-ethylene	18–14	0.38	15	None	200°C 392°F	Fixture wiring

*Insulations and outer coverings that meet the requirements of flame retardant, limited smoke, and are so listed shall be permitted to be marked for limited smoke after the *Code* type designation.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-248

402.5 Allowable Ampacities for Fixture Wires. The allowable ampacity of fixture wire shall be as specified in Table 402.5.

Table 402.5 Allowable Ampacity for Fixture Wires

Size (AWG)	Allowable Ampacity
18	6
16	8
14	17
12	23
10	28

No conductor shall be used under such conditions that its operating temperature exceeds the temperature specified in Table 402.3 for the type of insulation involved.

FPN: See 310.10 for temperature limitation of conductors.

402.6 Minimum Size. Fixture wires shall not be smaller than 18 AWG.

402.7 Number of Conductors in Conduit or Tubing. The number of fixture wires permitted in a single conduit or tubing shall not exceed the percentage fill specified in Table 1, Chapter 9.

402.8 Grounded Conductor Identification. One conductor of fixture wires that is intended to be used as a grounded conductor shall be identified by means of stripes or by the means described in 400.22(A) through (E).

402.9 Marking.

(A) Method of Marking. Thermoplastic insulated fixture wire shall be durably marked on the surface at intervals not exceeding 610 mm (24 in.). All other fixture wire shall be marked by means of a printed tag attached to the coil, reel, or carton.

(B) Optional Marking. Fixture wire types listed in Table 402.3 shall be permitted to be surface marked to indicate special characteristics of the cable materials. These markings include, but are not limited to, markings for limited smoke, sunlight resistance, and so forth.

402.10 Uses Permitted. Fixture wires shall be permitted (1) for installation in luminaires (lighting fixtures) and in similar equipment where enclosed or protected and not subject to bending or twisting in use, or (2) for connecting luminaires (lighting fixtures) to the branch-circuit conductors supplying the luminaires (fixtures).

402.11 Uses Not Permitted. Fixture wires shall not be used as branch-circuit conductors.

402.12 Overcurrent Protection. Overcurrent protection for fixture wires shall be as specified in 240.5.

ARTICLE 404
Switches

I. Installation

404.1 Scope. The provisions of this article shall apply to all switches, switching devices, and circuit breakers where used as switches.

404.2 Switch Connections.

(A) Three-Way and Four-Way Switches. Three-way and four-way switches shall be wired so that all switching is done only in the ungrounded circuit conductor. Where in metal raceways or metal-armored cables, wiring between switches and outlets shall be in accordance with 300.20(A).

Exception: Switch loops shall not require a grounded conductor.

(B) Grounded Conductors. Switches or circuit breakers shall not disconnect the grounded conductor of a circuit.

Exception: A switch or circuit breaker shall be permitted to disconnect a grounded circuit conductor where all circuit conductors are disconnected simultaneously, or where the device is arranged so that the grounded conductor cannot be disconnected until all the ungrounded conductors of the circuit have been disconnected.

404.3 Enclosure.

(A) General. Switches and circuit breakers shall be of the externally operable type mounted in an enclosure listed for the intended use. The minimum wire-bending space at terminals and minimum gutter space provided in switch enclosures shall be as required in 312.6.

Exception No. 1: Pendant- and surface-type snap switches and knife switches mounted on an open-face switchboard or panelboard shall be permitted without enclosures.

Exception No. 2: Switches and circuit breakers installed in accordance with 110.27(A)(1), (2), (3), or (4) shall be permitted without enclosures.

(B) Used as a Raceway. Enclosures shall not be used as junction boxes, auxiliary gutters, or raceways for conductors feeding through or tapping off to other switches or

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-249

overcurrent devices, unless the enclosure complies with 312.8.

404.4 Wet Locations. A switch or circuit breaker in a wet location or outside of a building shall be enclosed in a weatherproof enclosure or cabinet that shall comply with 312.2(A). Switches shall not be installed within wet locations in tub or shower spaces unless installed as part of a listed tub or shower assembly.

404.5 Time Switches, Flashers, and Similar Devices. Time switches, flashers, and similar devices shall be of the enclosed type or shall be mounted in cabinets or boxes or equipment enclosures. Energized parts shall be barriered to prevent operator exposure when making manual adjustments or switching.

Exception: Devices mounted so they are accessible only to qualified persons shall be permitted without barriers, provided they are located within an enclosure such that any energized parts within 152 mm (6.0 in.) of the manual adjustment or switch are covered by suitable barriers.

404.6 Position and Connection of Switches.

(A) Single-Throw Knife Switches. Single-throw knife switches shall be placed so that gravity will not tend to close them. Single-throw knife switches, approved for use in the inverted position, shall be provided with a locking device that ensures that the blades remain in the open position when so set.

(B) Double-Throw Knife Switches. Double-throw knife switches shall be permitted to be mounted so that the throw is either vertical or horizontal. Where the throw is vertical, a locking device shall be provided to hold the blades in the open position when so set.

(C) Connection of Switches. Single-throw knife switches and switches with butt contacts shall be connected so that their blades are de-energized when the switch is in the open position. Bolted pressure contact switches shall have barriers that prevent inadvertent contact with energized blades. Single-throw knife switches, bolted pressure contact switches, molded case switches, switches with butt contacts, and circuit breakers used as switches shall be connected so that the terminals supplying the load are de-energized when the switch is in the open position.

Exception: The blades and terminals supplying the load of a switch shall be permitted to be energized when the switch is in the open position where the switch is connected to circuits or equipment inherently capable of providing a backfeed source of power. For such installations, a permanent sign shall be installed on the switch enclosure or immediately adjacent to open switches with the following words or equivalent: WARNING — LOAD SIDE TERMINALS MAY BE ENERGIZED BY BACKFEED.

404.7 Indicating. General-use and motor-circuit switches, circuit breakers, and molded case switches, where mounted in an enclosure as described in 404.3, shall clearly indicate whether they are in the open (off) or closed (on) position.

Where these switch or circuit breaker handles are operated vertically rather than rotationally or horizontally, the up position of the handle shall be the (on) position.

Exception: Vertically operated double-throw switches shall be permitted to be in the closed (on) position with the handle in either the up or down position.

404.8 Accessibility and Grouping.

(A) Location. All switches and circuit breakers used as switches shall be located so that they may be operated from a readily accessible place. They shall be installed so that the center of the grip of the operating handle of the switch or circuit breaker, when in its highest position, is not more than 2.0 m (6 ft 7 in.) above the floor or working platform.

Exception No. 1: On busway installations, fused switches and circuit breakers shall be permitted to be located at the same level as the busway. Suitable means shall be provided to operate the handle of the device from the floor.

Exception No. 2: Switches and circuit breakers installed adjacent to motors, appliances, or other equipment that they supply shall be permitted to be located higher than specified in the foregoing and to be accessible by portable means.

Exception No. 3: Hookstick operable isolating switches shall be permitted at greater heights.

(B) Voltage Between Adjacent Devices. A snap switch shall not be grouped or ganged in enclosures with other snap switches, receptacles, or similar devices, unless they are arranged so that the voltage between adjacent devices does not exceed 300 volts, or unless they are installed in enclosures equipped with permanently installed barriers between adjacent devices.

404.9 Provisions for General-Use Snap Switches.

(A) Faceplates. Faceplates provided for snap switches mounted in boxes and other enclosures shall be installed so as to completely cover the opening and, where the switch is flush mounted, seat against the finished surface.

(B) Grounding. Snap switches, including dimmer and similar control switches, shall be effectively grounded and shall provide a means to ground metal faceplates, whether or not a metal faceplate is installed. Snap switches shall be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-250

considered effectively grounded if either of the following conditions is met.

(1) The switch is mounted with metal screws to a metal box or to a nonmetallic box with integral means for grounding devices.
(2) An equipment grounding conductor or equipment bonding jumper is connected to an equipment grounding termination of the snap switch.

Exception to (B): Where no grounding means exists within the snap-switch enclosure or where the wiring method does not include or provide an equipment ground, a snap switch without a grounding connection shall be permitted for replacement purposes only. A snap switch wired under the provisions of this exception and located within reach of earth, grade conducting floors, or other conducting surfaces shall be provided with a faceplate of nonconducting, noncombustible material.

(C) Construction. Metal faceplates shall be of ferrous metal not less than 0.76 mm (0.030 in.) in thickness or of nonferrous metal not less than 1.02 mm (0.040 in.) in thickness. Faceplates of insulating material shall be noncombustible and not less than 2.54 mm (0.010 in.) in thickness, but they shall be permitted to be less than 2.54 mm (0.010 in.) in thickness if formed or reinforced to provide adequate mechanical strength.

404.10 Mounting of Snap Switches.

(A) Surface-Type. Snap switches used with open wiring on insulators shall be mounted on insulating material that separates the conductors at least 13 mm (½ in.) from the surface wired over.

(B) Box Mounted. Flush-type snap switches mounted in boxes that are set back of the wall surface as permitted in 314.20 shall be installed so that the extension plaster ears are seated against the surface of the wall. Flush-type snap switches mounted in boxes that are flush with the wall surface or project from it shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the switch is seated against the box.

404.11 Circuit Breakers as Switches. A hand-operable circuit breaker equipped with a lever or handle, or a power-operated circuit breaker capable of being opened by hand in the event of a power failure, shall be permitted to serve as a switch if it has the required number of poles.

FPN: See the provisions contained in 240.81 and 240.83.

404.12 Grounding of Enclosures. Metal enclosures for switches or circuit breakers shall be grounded as specified in Article 250. Where nonmetallic enclosures are used with metal raceways or metal-armored cables, provision shall be made for grounding continuity.

Except as covered in 404.9(B), Exception, nonmetallic boxes for switches shall be installed with a wiring method that provides or includes an equipment ground.

404.13 Knife Switches.

(A) Isolating Switches. Knife switches rated at over 1200 amperes at 250 volts or less, and at over 600 amperes at 251 to 600 volts, shall be used only as isolating switches and shall not be opened under load.

(B) To Interrupt Currents. To interrupt currents over 1200 amperes at 250 volts, nominal, or less, or over 600 amperes at 251 to 600 volts, nominal, a circuit breaker or a switch of special design listed for such purpose shall be used.

(C) General-Use Switches. Knife switches of ratings less than specified in 404.13(A) and (B) shall be considered general-use switches.

FPN: See definition of *General-Use Switch* in Article 100.

(D) Motor-Circuit Switches. Motor-circuit switches shall be permitted to be of the knife-switch type.

FPN: See definition of a *Motor-Circuit Switch* in Article 100.

404.14 Rating and Use of Snap Switches. Snap switches shall be used within their ratings and as indicated in 404.14(A) through (D).

FPN No. 1: For switches on signs and outline lighting, see 600.6.

FPN No. 2: For switches controlling motors, see 430.83, 430.109, and 430.110.

(A) Alternating Current General-Use Snap Switch. A form of general-use snap switch suitable only for use on ac circuits for controlling the following:

(1) Resistive and inductive loads, including electric-discharge lamps, not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at the voltage involved
(2) Tungsten-filament lamp loads not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at 120 volts
(3) Motor loads not exceeding 80 percent of the ampere rating of the switch at its rated voltage

(B) Alternating-Current or Direct-Current General-Use Snap Switch. A form of general-use snap switch suitable for use on either ac or dc circuits for controlling the following:

(1) Resistive loads not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at the voltage applied.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-251

(2) Inductive loads not exceeding 50 percent of the ampere rating of the switch at the applied voltage. Switches rated in horsepower are suitable for controlling motor loads within their rating at the voltage applied.
(3) Tungsten-filament lamp loads not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at the applied voltage if T-rated.

(C) CO/ALR Snap Switches. Snap switches rated 20 amperes or less directly connected to aluminum conductors shall be listed and marked CO/ALR.

(D) Alternating-Current Specific-Use Snap Switches Rated for 347 Volts. Snap switches rated 347 volts ac shall be listed and shall be used only for controlling the following.

(1) Noninductive Loads. Noninductive loads other than tungsten-filament lamps not exceeding the ampere and voltage ratings of the switch.

(2) Inductive Loads. Inductive loads not exceeding the ampere and voltage ratings of the switch. Where particular load characteristics or limitations are specified as a condition of the listing, those restrictions shall be observed regardless of the ampere rating of the load.

The ampere rating of the switch shall not be less than 15 amperes at a voltage rating of 347 volts ac. Flush-type snap switches rated 347 volts ac shall not be readily interchangeable in box mounting with switches identified in 404.14(A) and (B).

(E) Dimmer Switches. General-use dimmer switches shall be used only to control permanently installed incandescent luminaires (lighting fixtures) unless listed for the control of other loads and installed accordingly.

II. Construction Specifications

404.15 Marking.

(A) Ratings. Switches shall be marked with the current, voltage, and, if horsepower rated, the maximum rating for which they are designed.

(B) Off Indication. Where in the off position, a switching device with a marked OFF position shall completely disconnect all ungrounded conductors to the load it controls.

404.16 600-Volt Knife Switches. Auxiliary contacts of a renewable or quick-break type or the equivalent shall be provided on all knife switches rated 600 volts and designed for use in breaking current over 200 amperes.

404.17 Fused Switches. A fused switch shall not have fuses in parallel except as permitted in 240.8.

404.18 Wire-Bending Space. The wire-bending space required by 404.3 shall meet Table 312.6(B) spacings to the enclosure wall opposite the line and load terminals.

ARTICLE 406
Receptacles, Cord Connectors, and Attachment Plugs (Caps)

406.1 Scope. This article covers the rating, type, and installation of receptacles, cord connectors, and attachment plugs (cord caps).

406.2 Receptacle Rating and Type.

(A) Receptacles. Receptacles shall be listed for the purpose and marked with the manufacturer's name or identification and voltage and ampere ratings.

(B) Rating. Receptacles and cord connectors shall be rated not less than 15 amperes, 125 volts, or 15 amperes, 250 volts, and shall be of a type not suitable for use as lampholders.

FPN: See 210.21(B) for receptacle ratings where installed on branch circuits.

(C) Receptacles for Aluminum Conductors. Receptacles rated 20 amperes or less and designed for the direct connection of aluminum conductors shall be marked CO/ALR.

(D) Isolated Ground Receptacles. Receptacles incorporating an isolated grounding connection intended for the reduction of electrical noise (electromagnetic interference) as permitted in 250.146(D) shall be identified by an orange triangle located on the face of the receptacle.

(1) Receptacles so identified shall be used only with grounding conductors that are isolated in accordance with 250.146(D).

(2) Isolated ground receptacles installed in nonmetallic boxes shall be covered with a nonmetallic faceplate.

Exception: Where an isolated ground receptacle is installed in a nonmetallic box, a metal faceplate shall be permitted if the box contains a feature or accessory that permits the effective grounding of the faceplate.

406.3 General Installation Requirements. Receptacle outlets shall be located in branch circuits in accordance with Part III of Article 210. General installation requirements shall be in accordance with 406.3(A) through (F).

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-252

(A) Grounding Type. Receptacles installed on 15- and 20-ampere branch circuits shall be of the grounding type. Grounding-type receptacles shall be installed only on circuits of the voltage class and current for which they are rated, except as provided in Tables 210.21(B)(2) and (B)(3).

Exception: Nongrounding-type receptacles installed in accordance with 406.3(D).

(B) To Be Grounded. Receptacles and cord connectors that have grounding contacts shall have those contacts effectively grounded.

Exception No. 1: Receptacles mounted on portable and vehicle-mounted generators in accordance with 250.34.

Exception No. 2: Replacement receptacles as permitted by 406.3(D).

(C) Methods of Grounding. The grounding contacts of receptacles and cord connectors shall be grounded by connection to the equipment grounding conductor of the circuit supplying the receptacle or cord connector.

FPN: For installation requirements for the reduction of electrical noise, see 250.146(D).

The branch-circuit wiring method shall include or provide an equipment-grounding conductor to which the grounding contacts of the receptacle or cord connector shall be connected.

FPN No. 1: 250.118 describes acceptable grounding means.

FPN No. 2: For extensions of existing branch circuits, see 250.130.

(D) Replacements. Replacement of receptacles shall comply with 406.3(D)(1), (2), and (3) as applicable.

(1) Grounding-Type Receptacles. Where a grounding means exists in the receptacle enclosure or a grounding conductor is installed in accordance with 250.130(C), grounding-type receptacles shall be used and shall be connected to the grounding conductor in accordance with 406.3(C) or 250.130(C).

(2) Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupters. Ground-fault circuit-interrupter protected receptacles shall be provided where replacements are made at receptacle outlets that are required to be so protected elsewhere in this *Code*.

(3) Nongrounding-Type Receptacles. Where grounding means does not exist in the receptacle enclosure, the installation shall comply with (a), (b), or (c).

(a) A nongrounding-type receptacle(s) shall be permitted to be replaced with another nongrounding-type receptacle(s).

(b) A nongrounding-type receptacle(s) shall be permitted to be replaced with a ground-fault circuit interrupter-type of receptacle(s). These receptacles shall be marked "No Equipment Ground." An equipment grounding conductor shall not be connected from the ground-fault circuit-interrupter-type receptacle to any outlet supplied from the ground-fault circuit-interrupter receptacle.

(c) A nongrounding-type receptacle(s) shall be permitted to be replaced with a grounding-type receptacle(s) where supplied through a ground-fault circuit interrupter. Grounding-type receptacles supplied through the ground-fault circuit interrupter shall be marked "GFCI Protected" and "No Equipment Ground." An equipment grounding conductor shall not be connected between the grounding-type receptacles.

(E) Cord-and-Plug-Connected Equipment. The installation of grounding-type receptacles shall not be used as a requirement that all cord-and-plug-connected equipment be of the grounded type.

FPN: See 250.114 for types of cord-and-plug-connected equipment to be grounded.

(F) Noninterchangeable Types. Receptacles connected to circuits that have different voltages, frequencies, or types of current (ac or dc) on the same premises shall be of such design that the attachment plugs used on these circuits are not interchangeable.

406.4 Receptacle Mounting. Receptacles shall be mounted in boxes or assemblies designed for the purpose, and such boxes or assemblies shall be securely fastened in place.

(A) Boxes That Are Set Back. Receptacles mounted in boxes that are set back of the wall surface, as permitted in 314.20, shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the receptacle is held rigidly at the surface of the wall.

(B) Boxes That Are Flush. Receptacles mounted in boxes that are flush with the wall surface or project therefrom shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the receptacle is held rigidly against the box or raised box cover.

(C) Receptacles Mounted on Covers. Receptacles mounted to and supported by a cover shall be held rigidly against the cover by more than one screw or shall be a device assembly or box cover listed and identified for securing by a single screw.

(D) Position of Receptacle Faces. After installation, receptacle faces shall be flush with or project from faceplates of insulating material and shall project a minimum of 0.4 mm (0.015 in.) from metal faceplates.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-253

(E) Receptacles in Countertops and Similar Work Surfaces in Dwelling Units. Receptacles shall not be installed in a face-up position in countertops or similar work surfaces.

(F) Exposed Terminals. Receptacles shall be enclosed so that live wiring terminals are not exposed to contact.

406.5 Receptacle Faceplates (Cover Plates). Receptacle faceplates shall be installed so as to completely cover the opening and seat against the mounting surface.

(A) Metal faceplates shall be of ferrous metal not less than 0.76 mm (0.030 in.) in thickness or of nonferrous metal not less than 1.02 mm (0.040 in.) in thickness.

(B) Metal faceplates shall be grounded.

(C) Faceplates of insulating material shall be noncombustible and not less than 2.54 mm (0.10 in.) in thickness but shall be permitted to be less than 2.54 mm (0.10 in.) in thickness if formed or reinforced to provide adequate mechanical strength.

406.6 Attachment Plugs. All attachment plugs and cord connectors shall be listed for the purpose and marked with the manufacturer's name or identification and voltage and ampere ratings.

(A) Attachment plugs and cord connectors shall be constructed so that there are no exposed current-carrying parts except the prongs, blades, or pins. The cover for wire terminations shall be a part that is essential for the operation of an attachment plug or connector (dead-front construction).

(B) Attachment plugs shall be installed so that their prongs, blades, or pins are not energized unless inserted into an energized receptacle. No receptacle shall be installed so as to require an energized attachment plug as its source of supply.

(C) Attachment Plug Ejector Mechanisms. Attachment plug ejector mechanisms shall not adversely affect engagement of the blades of the attachment plug with the contacts of the receptacle.

406.7 Noninterchangeability. Receptacles, cord connectors, and attachment plugs shall be constructed so that receptacle or cord connectors do not accept an attachment plug with a different voltage or current rating from that for which the device is intended. However, a 20-ampere T-slot receptacle or cord connector shall be permitted to accept a 15-ampere attachment plug of the same voltage rating. Non–grounding-type receptacles and connectors shall not accept grounding-type attachment plugs.

406.8 Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations.

(A) Damp Locations. A receptacle installed outdoors in a location protected from the weather or in other damp locations shall have an enclosure for the receptacle that is weatherproof when the receptacle is covered (attachment plug cap not inserted and receptacle covers closed).

An installation suitable for wet locations shall also be considered suitable for damp locations.

A receptacle shall be considered to be in a location protected from the weather where located under roofed open porches, canopies, marquees, and the like, and will not be subjected to a beating rain or water runoff.

(B) Wet Locations.

(1) 15- and 20-Ampere Outdoor Receptacles. 15- and 20-ampere, 125- and 250-volt receptacles installed outdoors in a wet location shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof whether or not the attachment plug cap is inserted.

(2) Other Receptacles. All other receptacles installed in a wet location shall comply with (a) or (b):

(a) A receptacle installed in a wet location where the product intended to be plugged into it is not attended while in use (e.g., sprinkler system controller, landscape lighting, holiday lights, and so forth) shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof with the attachment plug cap inserted or removed.

(b) A receptacle installed in a wet location where the product intended to be plugged into it will be attended while in use (e.g., portable tools, and so forth) shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof when the attachment plug is removed.

(C) Bathtub and Shower Space. A receptacle shall not be installed within a bathtub or shower space.

(D) Protection for Floor Receptacles. Standpipes of floor receptacles shall allow floor-cleaning equipment to be operated without damage to receptacles.

(E) Flush Mounting with Faceplate. The enclosure for a receptacle installed in an outlet box flush-mounted on a wall surface shall be made weatherproof by means of a weatherproof faceplate assembly that provides a watertight connection between the plate and the wall surface.

406.9 Grounding-Type Receptacles, Adapters, Cord Connectors, and Attachment Plugs.

(A) Grounding Poles. Grounding-type receptacles, cord connectors, and attachment plugs shall be provided with one fixed grounding pole in addition to the circuit poles. The grounding contacting pole of grounding-type plug-in

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-254

ground-fault circuit interrupters shall be permitted to be of the movable, self-restoring type on circuits operating at not over 150 volts between any two conductors or any conductor and ground.

(B) Grounding-Pole Identification. Grounding-type receptacles, adapters, cord connections, and attachment plugs shall have a means for connection of a grounding conductor to the grounding pole.

A terminal for connection to the grounding pole shall be designated by one of the following:

(1) A green-colored hexagonal-headed or -shaped terminal screw or nut, not readily removable.
(2) A green-colored pressure wire connector body (a wire barrel).
(3) A similar green-colored connection device, in the case of adapters. The grounding terminal of a grounding adapter shall be a green-colored rigid ear, lug, or similar device. The grounding connection shall be designed so that it cannot make contact with current-carrying parts of the receptacle, adapter, or attachment plug. The adapter shall be polarized.
(4) If the terminal for the equipment grounding conductor is not visible, the conductor entrance hole shall be marked with the word *green* or *ground*, the letters G or GR, or the grounding symbol, as shown in Figure 406.9(B)(4), or otherwise identified by a distinctive green color. If the terminal for the equipment grounding conductor is readily removable, the area adjacent to the terminal shall be similarly marked.



Figure 406.9(B)(4) Grounding symbol.

(C) Grounding Terminal Use. A grounding terminal or grounding-type device shall not be used for purposes other than grounding.

(D) Grounding-Pole Requirements. Grounding-type attachment plugs and mating cord connectors and receptacles shall be designed so that the grounding connection is made before the current-carrying connections. Grounding-type devices shall be designed so grounding poles of attachment plugs cannot be brought into contact with current-carrying parts of receptacles or cord connectors.

(E) Use. Grounding-type attachment plugs shall be used only with a cord having an equipment grounding conductor.

FPN: See 200.10(B) for identification of grounded conductor terminals.

406.10 Connecting Receptacle Grounding Terminal to Box. The connection of the receptacle grounding terminal shall comply with 250.146.

ARTICLE 408
Switchboards and Panelboards

I. General

408.1 Scope. This article covers the following:

(1) All switchboards, panelboards, and distribution boards installed for the control of light and power circuits
(2) Battery-charging panels supplied from light or power circuits

408.2 Other Articles. Switches, circuit breakers, and overcurrent devices used on switchboards, panelboards, and distribution boards, and their enclosures, shall comply with this article and also with the requirements of Articles 240, 250, 312, 314, 404, and other articles that apply. Switchboards and panelboards in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with the requirements of Articles 500 through 517.

408.3 Support and Arrangement of Busbars and Conductors.

(A) Conductors and Busbars on a Switchboard or Panelboard. Conductors and busbars on a switchboard or panelboard shall comply with 408.3(A)(1), (2), and (3) as applicable.

(1) Location. Conductors and busbars shall be located so as to be free from physical damage and shall be held firmly in place.

(2) Service Switchboards. Barriers shall be placed in all service switchboards such that no uninsulated, ungrounded service busbar or service terminal is exposed to inadvertent contact by persons or maintenance equipment while servicing load terminations.

(3) Same Vertical Section. Other than the required interconnections and control wiring, only those conductors that are intended for termination in a vertical section of a switchboard shall be located in that section.

Exception: Conductors shall be permitted to travel horizontally through vertical sections of switchboards where such conductors are isolated from busbars by a barrier.

(B) Overheating and Inductive Effects. The arrangement of busbars and conductors shall be such as to avoid overheating due to inductive effects.

(C) Used as Service Equipment. Each switchboard or panelboard, if used as service equipment, shall be provided with a main bonding jumper sized in accordance with 250.28(D) or the equivalent placed within the panelboard or one of the sections of the switchboard for connecting the

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-255

grounded service conductor on its supply side to the switchboard or panelboard frame. All sections of a switchboard shall be bonded together using an equipment grounding conductor sized in accordance with Table 250.122.

Exception: Switchboards and panelboards used as service equipment on high-impedance grounded-neutral systems in accordance with 250.36 shall not be required to be provided with a main bonding jumper.

(D) Terminals. In switchboards and panelboards, load terminals for field wiring, including grounded circuit conductor load terminals and connections to the ground bus for load equipment grounding conductors, shall be located so that it is not necessary to reach across or beyond an uninsulated ungrounded line bus in order to make connections.

(E) Phase Arrangement. The phase arrangement on 3-phase buses shall be A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, or left to right, as viewed from the front of the switchboard or panelboard. The B phase shall be that phase having the higher voltage to ground on 3-phase, 4-wire, delta-connected systems. Other busbar arrangements shall be permitted for additions to existing installations and shall be marked.

Exception: Equipment within the same single section or multisection switchboard or panelboard as the meter on 3-phase, 4-wire, delta-connected systems shall be permitted to have the same phase configuration as the metering equipment.

FPN: See 110.15 for requirements on marking the busbar or phase conductor having the higher voltage to ground where supplied from a 4-wire, delta-connected system.

(F) Minimum Wire-Bending Space. The minimum wire-bending space at terminals and minimum gutter space provided in panelboards and switchboards shall be as required in 312.6.

408.4 Circuit Directory. All circuits and circuit modifications shall be legibly identified as to purpose or use on a circuit directory located on the face or inside of the panel door in the case of a panelboard, and at each switch on a switchboard.

II. Switchboards

408.5 Location of Switchboards. Switchboards that have any exposed live parts shall be located in permanently dry locations and then only where under competent supervision and accessible only to qualified persons. Switchboards shall be located so that the probability of damage from equipment or processes is reduced to a minimum.

408.6 Switchboards in Damp or Wet Locations. Switchboards in damp or wet locations shall be installed to comply with 312.2(A).

408.7 Location Relative to Easily Ignitible Material. Switchboards shall be placed so as to reduce to a minimum the probability of communicating fire to adjacent combustible materials. Where installed over a combustible floor, suitable protection thereto shall be provided.

408.8 Clearances.

(A) From Ceiling. For other than a totally enclosed switchboard, a space not less than 900 mm (3 ft) shall be provided between the top of the switchboard and any combustible ceiling, unless a noncombustible shield is provided between the switchboard and the ceiling.

(B) Around Switchboards. Clearances around switchboards shall comply with the provisions of 110.26.

408.9 Conductor Insulation. An insulated conductor used within a switchboard shall be listed, shall be flame retardant, and shall be rated not less than the voltage applied to it and not less than the voltage applied to other conductors or busbars with which it may come in contact.

408.10 Clearance for Conductors Entering Bus Enclosures. Where conduits or other raceways enter a switchboard, floor-standing panelboard, or similar enclosure at the bottom, sufficient space shall be provided to permit installation of conductors in the enclosure. The wiring space shall not be less than shown in Table 408.10 where the conduit or raceways enter or leave the enclosure below the busbars, their supports, or other obstructions. The conduit or raceways, including their end fittings, shall not rise more than 75 mm (3 in.) above the bottom of the enclosure.

Table 408.10 Clearance for Conductors Entering Bus Enclosures

	Minimum Spacing Between Bottom of Enclosure and Busbars, Their Supports, or Other Obstructions	
Conductor	mm	in.
Insulated busbars, their supports, or other obstructions	200	8
Noninsulated busbars	250	10

408.12 Grounding of Instruments, Relays, Meters, and Instrument Transformers on Switchboards. Instruments, relays, meters, and instrument transformers located on switchboards shall be grounded as specified in 250.170 through 250.178.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-256

III. Panelboards

408.13 General. All panelboards shall have a rating not less than the minimum feeder capacity required for the load computed in accordance with Article 220. Panelboards shall be durably marked by the manufacturer with the voltage and the current rating and the number of phases for which they are designed and with the manufacturer's name or trademark in such a manner so as to be visible after installation, without disturbing the interior parts or wiring.

FPN: See 110.22 for additional requirements.

408.14 Classification of Panelboards. Panelboards shall be classified for the purposes of this article as either lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards or power panelboards, based on their content. A lighting and appliance branch circuit is a branch circuit that has a connection to the neutral of the panelboard and that has overcurrent protection of 30 amperes or less in one or more conductors.

(A) Lighting and Appliance Branch-Circuit Panelboard. A lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboard is one having more than 10 percent of its overcurrent devices protecting lighting and appliance branch circuits.

(B) Power Panelboard. A power panelboard is one having 10 percent or fewer of its overcurrent devices protecting lighting and appliance branch circuits.

408.15 Number of Overcurrent Devices on One Panelboard. Not more than 42 overcurrent devices (other than those provided for in the mains) of a lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboard shall be installed in any one cabinet or cutout box.

A lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboard shall be provided with physical means to prevent the installation of more overcurrent devices than that number for which the panelboard was designed, rated, and approved.

For the purposes of this article, a 2-pole circuit breaker shall be considered two overcurrent devices; a 3-pole circuit breaker shall be considered three overcurrent devices.

408.16 Overcurrent Protection.

(A) Lighting and Appliance Branch-Circuit Panelboard Individually Protected. Each lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboard shall be individually protected on the supply side by not more than two main circuit breakers or two sets of fuses having a combined rating not greater than that of the panelboard.

Exception No. 1: Individual protection for a lighting and appliance panelboard shall not be required if the panelboard feeder has overcurrent protection not greater than the rating of the panelboard.

Exception No. 2: For existing installations, individual protection for lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards shall not be required where such panelboards are used as service equipment in supplying an individual residential occupancy.

(B) Power Panelboard Protection. In addition to the requirements of 408.13, a power panelboard with supply conductors that include a neutral and having more than 10 percent of its overcurrent devices protecting branch circuits rated 30 amperes or less shall be protected by an overcurrent protective device having a rating not greater than that of the panelboard. The overcurrent protective device shall be located within or at any point on the supply side of the panelboard.

Exception: This individual protection shall not be required for a power panelboard used as service equipment with multiple disconnecting means in accordance with 230.71.

(C) Snap Switches Rated at 30 Amperes or Less. Panelboards equipped with snap switches rated at 30 amperes or less shall have overcurrent protection not in excess of 200 amperes.

(D) Supplied Through a Transformer. Where a panelboard is supplied through a transformer, the overcurrent protection in 408.16(A), (B), and (C) shall be located on the secondary side of the transformer.

Exception: A panelboard supplied by the secondary side of a transformer shall be considered as protected by the overcurrent protection provided on the primary side of the transformer where that protection is in accordance with 240.21(C)(1).

(E) Delta Breakers. A 3-phase disconnect or overcurrent device shall not be connected to the bus of any panelboard that has less than 3-phase buses. Delta breakers shall not be installed in panelboards.

(F) Back-Fed Devices. Plug-in-type overcurrent protection devices or plug-in type-main lug assemblies that are backfed and used to terminate field-installed ungrounded supply conductors shall be secured in place by an additional fastener that requires other than a pull to release the device from the mounting means on the panel.

408.17 Panelboards in Damp or Wet Locations. Panelboards in damp or wet locations shall be installed to comply with 312.2(A).

408.18 Enclosure. Panelboards shall be mounted in cabinets, cutout boxes, or enclosures designed for the purpose and shall be dead-front.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-257

Exception: Panelboards other than of the dead-front, externally operable type shall be permitted where accessible only to qualified persons.

408.19 Relative Arrangement of Switches and Fuses. In panelboards, fuses of any type shall be installed on the load side of any switches.

Exception: Fuses installed as part of service equipment in accordance with the provisions of 230.94 shall be permitted on the line side of the service switch.

408.20 Grounding of Panelboards. Panelboard cabinets and panelboard frames, if of metal, shall be in physical contact with each other and shall be grounded. Where the panelboard is used with nonmetallic raceway or cable or where separate grounding conductors are provided, a terminal bar for the grounding conductors shall be secured inside the cabinet. The terminal bar shall be bonded to the cabinet and panelboard frame, if of metal; otherwise it shall be connected to the grounding conductor that is run with the conductors feeding the panelboard.

Exception: Where an isolated equipment grounding conductor is provided as permitted by 250.146(D), the insulated equipment grounding conductor that is run with the circuit conductors shall be permitted to pass through the panelboard without being connected to the panelboard's equipment grounding terminal bar.

Grounding conductors shall not be connected to a terminal bar provided for grounded conductors (may be a neutral) unless the bar is identified for the purpose and is located where interconnection between equipment grounding conductors and grounded circuit conductors is permitted or required by Article 250.

408.21 Grounded Conductor Terminations. Each grounded conductor shall terminate within the panelboard in an individual terminal that is not also used for another conductor.

Exception: Grounded conductors of circuits with parallel conductors shall be permitted to terminate in a single terminal if the terminal is identified for connection of more than one conductor.

IV. Construction Specifications

408.30 Panels. The panels of switchboards shall be made of moisture-resistant, noncombustible material.

408.31 Busbars. Insulated or bare busbars shall be rigidly mounted.

408.32 Protection of Instrument Circuits. Instruments, pilot lights, potential transformers, and other switchboard devices with potential coils shall be supplied by a circuit that is protected by standard overcurrent devices rated 15 amperes or less.

Exception No. 1: Overcurrent devices rated more than 15 amperes shall be permitted where the interruption of the circuit could create a hazard. Short-circuit protection shall be provided.

Exception No. 2: For ratings of 2 amperes or less, special types of enclosed fuses shall be permitted.

408.33 Component Parts. Switches, fuses, and fuseholders used on panelboards shall comply with the applicable requirements of Articles 240 and 404.

408.35 Wire-Bending Space in Panelboards. The enclosure for a panelboard shall have the top and bottom wire-bending space sized in accordance with Table 312.6(B) for the largest conductor entering or leaving the enclosure. Side wire-bending space shall be in accordance with Table 312.6(A) for the largest conductor to be terminated in that space.

Exception No. 1: Either the top or bottom wire-bending space shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table 312.6(A) for a lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboard rated 225 amperes or less.

Exception No. 2: Either the top or bottom wire-bending space for any panelboard shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table 312.6(A) where at least one side wire-bending space is sized in accordance with Table 312.6(B) for the largest conductor to be terminated in any side wire-bending space.

Exception No. 3: The top and bottom wire-bending space shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table 312.6(A) spacings if the panelboard is designed and constructed for wiring using only one single 90 degree bend for each conductor, including the grounded circuit conductor, and the wiring diagram shows and specifies the method of wiring that shall be used.

Exception No. 4: Either the top or the bottom wire-bending space, but not both, shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table 312.6(A) where there are no conductors terminated in that space.

408.36 Minimum Spacings. The distance between bare metal parts, busbars, and so forth shall not be less than specified in Table 408.36.

Where close proximity does not cause excessive heating, parts of the same polarity at switches, enclosed fuses, and so forth shall be permitted to be placed as close together as convenience in handling will allow.

Exception: The distance shall be permitted to be less than that specified in Table 408.36 at circuit breakers and

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-258

Table 408.36 Minimum Spacings Between Bare Metal Parts

	Opposite Polarity Where Mounted on the Same Surface		Opposite Polarity Where Held Free in Air		Live Parts to Ground*	
Voltage	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.
Not over 125 volts, nominal	19.1	¾	12.7	½	12.7	½
Not over 250 volts, nominal	31.8	1¼	19.1	¾	12.7	½
Not over 600 volts, nominal	50.8	2	25.4	1	25.4	1

*For spacing between live parts and doors of cabinets, see 312.11(A)(1), (2), and (3).

switches and in listed components installed in switchboards and panelboards.

ARTICLE 410
Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures), Lampholders, and Lamps

I. General

410.1 Scope. This article covers luminaires (lighting fixtures), lampholders, pendants, incandescent filament lamps, arc lamps, electric-discharge lamps, the wiring and equipment forming part of such lamps, luminaires (fixtures), and lighting installations.

410.2 Application of Other Articles. Equipment for use in hazardous (classified) locations shall conform to Articles 500 through 517. Lighting systems operating at 30 volts or less shall conform to Article 411. Arc lamps used in theaters shall comply with 520.61, and arc lamps used in projection machines shall comply with 540.20. Arc lamps used on constant-current systems shall comply with the general requirements of Article 490.

410.3 Live Parts. Luminaires (fixtures), lampholders, and lamps shall have no live parts normally exposed to contact. Exposed accessible terminals in lampholders and switches shall not be installed in metal luminaire (fixture) canopies or in open bases of portable table or floor lamps.

Exception: Cleat-type lampholders located at least 2.5 m (8 ft) above the floor shall be permitted to have exposed terminals.

II. Luminaire (Fixture) Locations

410.4 Luminaires (Fixtures) in Specific Locations.

(A) Wet and Damp Locations. Luminaires (fixtures) installed in wet or damp locations shall be installed so that water cannot enter or accumulate in wiring compartments, lampholders, or other electrical parts. All luminaires (fixtures) installed in wet locations shall be marked, "Suitable for Wet Locations." All luminaires (fixtures) installed in damp locations shall be marked, "Suitable for Wet Locations" or "Suitable for Damp Locations."

(B) Corrosive Locations. Luminaires (fixtures) installed in corrosive locations shall be of a type suitable for such locations.

(C) In Ducts or Hoods. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be permitted to be installed in commercial cooking hoods where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The luminaire (fixture) shall be identified for use within commercial cooking hoods and installed so that the temperature limits of the materials used are not exceeded.
(2) The luminaire (fixture) shall be constructed so that all exhaust vapors, grease, oil, or cooking vapors are excluded from the lamp and wiring compartment. Diffusers shall be resistant to thermal shock.
(3) Parts of the luminaire (fixture) exposed within the hood shall be corrosion resistant or protected against corrosion, and the surface shall be smooth so as not to collect deposits and to facilitate cleaning.
(4) Wiring methods and materials supplying the luminaire(s) [fixture(s)] shall not be exposed within the cooking hood.

FPN: See 110.11 for conductors and equipment exposed to deteriorating agents.

(D) Bathtub and Shower Areas. No parts of cord-connected luminaires (fixtures), hanging luminaires (fixtures), lighting track, pendants, or ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans shall be located within a zone measured 900 mm (3 ft) horizontally and 2.5 m (8 ft) vertically from the top of the bathtub rim or shower stall threshold. This zone is all encompassing and includes the zone directly over the tub or shower stall.

410.5 Luminaires (Fixtures) Near Combustible Material. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be constructed, installed, or

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-259

equipped with shades or guards so that combustible material is not subjected to temperatures in excess of 90°C (194°F).

410.6 Luminaires (Fixtures) Over Combustible Material. Lampholders installed over highly combustible material shall be of the unswitched type. Unless an individual switch is provided for each luminaire (fixture), lampholders shall be located at least 2.5 m (8 ft) above the floor or shall be located or guarded so that the lamps cannot be readily removed or damaged.

410.7 Luminaires (Fixtures) in Show Windows. Chain-supported luminaires (fixtures) used in a show window shall be permitted to be externally wired. No other externally wired luminaires (fixtures) shall be used.

410.8 Luminaires (Fixtures) in Clothes Closets.

(A) Definition.

Storage Space. The volume bounded by the sides and back closet walls and planes extending from the closet floor vertically to a height of 1.8 m (6 ft) or the highest clothes-hanging rod and parallel to the walls at a horizontal distance of 600 mm (24 in.) from the sides and back of the closet walls, respectively, and continuing vertically to the closet ceiling parallel to the walls at a horizontal distance of 300 mm (12 in.) or the width of the shelf, whichever is greater; for a closet that permits access to both sides of a hanging rod, this space includes the volume below the highest rod extending 300 mm (12 in.) on either side of the rod on a plane horizontal to the floor extending the entire length of the rod.

FPN: See Figure 410.8.

(B) Luminaire (Fixture) Types Permitted. Listed luminaires (fixtures) of the following types shall be permitted to be installed in a closet:

(1) A surface-mounted or recessed incandescent luminaire (fixture) with a completely enclosed lamp
(2) A surface-mounted or recessed fluorescent luminaire (fixture)

(C) Luminaire (Fixture) Types Not Permitted. Incandescent luminaires (fixtures) with open or partially enclosed lamps and pendant luminaires (fixtures) or lampholders shall not be permitted.

(D) Location. Luminaires (fixtures) in clothes closets shall be permitted to be installed as follows:

(1) Surface-mounted incandescent luminaires (fixtures) installed on the wall above the door or on the ceiling, provided there is a minimum clearance of 300 mm (12 in.) between the luminaire (fixture) and the nearest point of a storage space

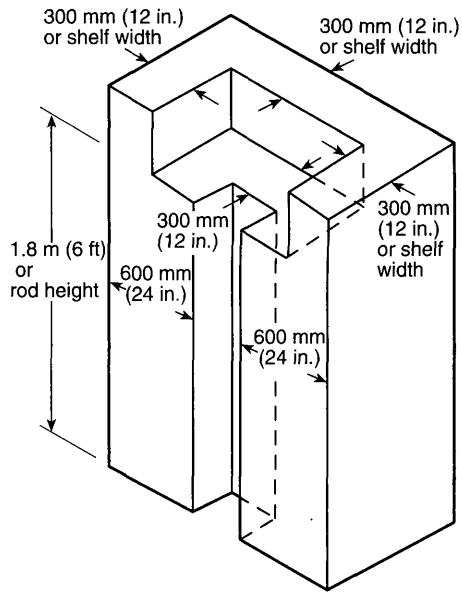


Figure 410.8 Closet storage space.

(2) Surface-mounted fluorescent luminaires (fixtures) installed on the wall above the door or on the ceiling, provided there is a minimum clearance of 150 mm (6 in.) between the luminaire (fixture) and the nearest point of a storage space
(3) Recessed incandescent luminaires (fixtures) with a completely enclosed lamp installed in the wall or the ceiling, provided there is a minimum clearance of 150 mm (6 in.) between the luminaire (fixture) and the nearest point of a storage space
(4) Recessed fluorescent luminaires (fixtures) installed in the wall or the ceiling, provided there is a minimum clearance of 150 mm (6 in.) between the luminaire (fixture) and the nearest point of a storage space

410.9 Space for Cove Lighting. Coves shall have adequate space and shall be located so that lamps and equipment can be properly installed and maintained.

III. Provisions at Luminaire (Fixture) Outlet Boxes, Canopies, and Pans

410.10 Space for Conductors. Canopies and outlet boxes taken together shall provide adequate space so that luminaire (fixture) conductors and their connecting devices can be properly installed.

410.11 Temperature Limit of Conductors in Outlet Boxes. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be of such construction or installed so that the conductors in outlet boxes shall not

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-260

be subjected to temperatures greater than that for which the conductors are rated.

Branch-circuit wiring, other than 2-wire or multiwire branch circuits supplying power to luminaires (fixtures) connected together, shall not be passed through an outlet box that is an integral part of a luminaire (fixture) unless the luminaire (fixture) is identified for through-wiring.

FPN: See 410.32 for wiring supplying power to fixtures connected together.

410.12 Outlet Boxes to Be Covered. In a completed installation, each outlet box shall be provided with a cover unless covered by means of a luminaire (fixture) canopy, lampholder, receptacle, or similar device.

410.13 Covering of Combustible Material at Outlet Boxes. Any combustible wall or ceiling finish exposed between the edge of a luminaire (fixture) canopy or pan and an outlet box shall be covered with noncombustible material.

410.14 Connection of Electric-Discharge Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures).

(A) Independent of the Outlet Box. Electric-discharge luminaires (lighting fixtures) supported independently of the outlet box shall be connected to the branch circuit through metal raceway, nonmetallic raceway, Type MC cable, Type AC cable, Type MI cable, nonmetallic sheathed cable, or by flexible cord as permitted in 410.30(B) or (C).

(B) Access to Boxes. Electric-discharge luminaires (lighting fixtures) surface mounted over concealed outlet, pull, or junction boxes shall be installed with suitable openings in back of the fixture to provide access to the boxes.

IV. Luminaire (Fixture) Supports

410.15 Supports.

(A) General. Luminaires (fixtures) and lampholders shall be securely supported. A luminaire (fixture) that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lb) or exceeds 400 mm (16 in.) in any dimension shall not be supported by the screw shell of a lampholder.

(B) Metal Poles Supporting Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures). Metal poles shall be permitted to be used to support luminaires (lighting fixtures) and as a raceway to enclose supply conductors, provided the following conditions are met:

(1) A metal pole shall have a handhole not less than 50 mm × 100 mm (2 in. × 4 in.) with a raintight cover to provide access to the supply terminations within the pole or pole base.

Exception No. 1: No handhole shall be required in a pole 2.5 m (8 ft) or less in height above grade where the supply wiring method continues without splice or pull point, and where the interior of the pole and any splices are accessible by removing the luminaire (fixture).

Exception No. 2: No handhole shall be required in a metal pole 6.0 m (20 ft) or less in height above grade that is provided with a hinged base.

(2) Where raceway risers or cable is not installed within the pole, a threaded fitting or nipple shall be brazed or welded to the pole opposite the handhole for the supply connection.

(3) A metal pole shall be provided with a grounding terminal.
   a. A pole with a handhole shall have the grounding terminal accessible from the handhole.
   b. A pole with a hinged base shall have the grounding terminal accessible within the base.

Exception: No grounding terminal shall be required in a pole 2.5 m (8 ft) or less in height above grade where the supply wiring method continues without splice or pull, and where the interior of the pole and any splices are accessible by removing the luminaire (fixture).

(4) A pole with a hinged base shall have the hinged base and pole bonded together.

(5) Metal raceways or other equipment grounding conductors shall be bonded to the pole with an equipment grounding conductor recognized by 250.118 and sized in accordance with 250.122.

(6) Conductors in vertical metal poles used as raceway shall be supported as provided in 300.19.

410.16 Means of Support.

(A) Outlet Boxes. Outlet boxes or fittings installed as required by 314.23 shall be permitted to support luminaires (fixtures).

(B) Inspection. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be installed so that the connections between the luminaire (fixture) conductors and the circuit conductors can be inspected without requiring the disconnection of any part of the wiring unless the luminaires (fixtures) are connected by attachment plugs and receptacles.

(C) Suspended Ceilings. Framing members of suspended ceiling systems used to support luminaires (fixtures) shall be securely fastened to each other and shall be securely attached to the building structure at appropriate intervals. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be securely fastened to the ceiling framing member by mechanical means such as bolts, screws, or rivets. Listed clips identified for use with the type of ceiling framing member(s) and luminaire(s) [fixture(s)] shall also be permitted.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-261

(D) Luminaire (Fixture) Studs. Luminaire (fixture) studs that are not a part of outlet boxes, hickeys, tripods, and crowfeet shall be made of steel, malleable iron, or other material suitable for the application.

(E) Insulating Joints. Insulating joints that are not designed to be mounted with screws or bolts shall have an exterior metal casing, insulated from both screw connections.

(F) Raceway Fittings. Raceway fittings used to support a luminaire(s) [lighting fixture(s)] shall be capable of supporting the weight of the complete fixture assembly and lamp(s).

(G) Busways. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be permitted to be connected to busways in accordance with 368.12.

(H) Trees. Outdoor luminaires (lighting fixtures) and associated equipment shall be permitted to be supported by trees.

FPN No. 1: See 225.26 for restrictions for support of overhead conductors.

FPN No. 2: See 300.5(D) for protection of conductors.

V. Grounding

410.17 General. Luminaires (fixtures) and lighting equipment shall be grounded as required in Article 250 and Part V of this article.

410.18 Exposed Luminaire (Fixture) Parts.

(A) Exposed Conductive Parts. Exposed metal parts shall be grounded or insulated from ground and other conducting surfaces or be inaccessible to unqualified personnel. Lamp tie wires, mounting screws, clips, and decorative bands on glass spaced at least 38 mm (1½ in.) from lamp terminals shall not be required to be grounded.

(B) Made of Insulating Material. Luminaires (fixtures) directly wired or attached to outlets supplied by a wiring method that does not provide a ready means for grounding shall be made of insulating material and shall have no exposed conductive parts.

Exception: Replacement luminaires (fixtures) shall be permitted to connect an equipment grounding conductor from the outlet in compliance with 250.130(C). The luminaire (fixture) shall then be grounded in accordance wtih 410.18(A).

410.20 Equipment Grounding Conductor Attachment. Luminaires (fixtures) with exposed metal parts shall be provided with a means for connecting an equipment grounding conductor for such luminaires (fixtures).

410.21 Methods of Grounding. Luminaires (fixtures) and equipment shall be considered grounded where mechanically connected to an equipment grounding conductor as specified in 250.118 and sized in accordance with 250.122.

VI. Wiring of Luminaires (Fixtures)

410.22 Luminaire (Fixture) Wiring — General. Wiring on or within fixtures shall be neatly arranged and shall not be exposed to physical damage. Excess wiring shall be avoided. Conductors shall be arranged so that they are not subjected to temperatures above those for which they are rated.

410.23 Polarization of Luminaires (Fixtures). Luminaires (fixtures) shall be wired so that the screw shells of lampholders are connected to the same luminaire (fixture) or circuit conductor or terminal. The grounded conductor, where connected to a screw-shell lampholder, shall be connected to the screw shell.

410.24 Conductor Insulation. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be wired with conductors having insulation suitable for the environmental conditions, current, voltage, and temperature to which the conductors will be subjected.

FPN: For ampacity of luminaire (fixture) wire, maximum operating temperature, voltage limitations, minimum wire size, and so forth, see Article 402.

410.27 Pendant Conductors for Incandescent Filament Lamps.

(A) Support. Pendant lampholders with permanently attached leads, where used for other than festoon wiring, shall be hung from separate stranded rubber-covered conductors that are soldered directly to the circuit conductors but supported independently thereof.

(B) Size. Unless part of listed decorative lighting assemblies, pendant conductors shall not be smaller than 14 AWG for mogul-base or medium-base screw-shell lampholders or smaller than 18 AWG for intermediate or candelabra-base lampholders.

(C) Twisted or Cabled. Pendant conductors longer than 900 mm (3 ft) shall be twisted together where not cabled in a listed assembly.

410.28 Protection of Conductors and Insulation.

(A) Properly Secured. Conductors shall be secured in a manner that does not tend to cut or abrade the insulation.

(B) Protection Through Metal. Conductor insulation shall be protected from abrasion where it passes through metal.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-262

(C) Luminaire (Fixture) Stems. Splices and taps shall not be located within luminaire (fixture) arms or stems.

(D) Splices and Taps. No unnecessary splices or taps shall be made within or on a luminaire (fixture).

FPN: For approved means of making connections, see 110.14.

(E) Stranding. Stranded conductors shall be used for wiring on luminaire (fixture) chains and on other movable or flexible parts.

(F) Tension. Conductors shall be arranged so that the weight of the luminaire (fixture) or movable parts does not put tension on the conductors.

410.29 Cord-Connected Showcases. Individual showcases, other than fixed, shall be permitted to be connected by flexible cord to permanently installed receptacles, and groups of not more than six such showcases shall be permitted to be coupled together by flexible cord and separable locking-type connectors with one of the group connected by flexible cord to a permanently installed receptacle.

The installation shall comply with 410.29(A) through (E).

(A) Cord Requirements. Flexible cord shall be of the hard-service type, having conductors not smaller than the branch-circuit conductors, having ampacity at least equal to the branch-circuit overcurrent device, and having an equipment grounding conductor.

FPN: See Table 250.122 for size of equipment grounding conductor.

(B) Receptacles, Connectors, and Attachment Plugs. Receptacles, connectors, and attachment plugs shall be of a listed grounding type rated 15 or 20 amperes.

(C) Support. Flexible cords shall be secured to the undersides of showcases so that

(1) Wiring is not exposed to mechanical damage.
(2) A separation between cases not in excess of 50 mm (2 in.), or more than 300 mm (12 in.) between the first case and the supply receptacle, is ensured.
(3) The free lead at the end of a group of showcases has a female fitting not extending beyond the case.

(D) No Other Equipment. Equipment other than showcases shall not be electrically connected to showcases.

(E) Secondary Circuit(s). Where showcases are cord-connected, the secondary circuit(s) of each electric-discharge lighting ballast shall be limited to one showcase.

410.30 Cord-Connected Lampholders and Luminaires (Fixtures).

(A) Lampholders. Where a metal lampholder is attached to a flexible cord, the inlet shall be equipped with an insulating bushing that, if threaded, is not smaller than metric designator 12 (trade size 3/8) pipe size. The cord hole shall be of a size appropriate for the cord, and all burrs and fins shall be removed in order to provide a smooth bearing surface for the cord.

Bushing having holes 7 mm (9/32 in.) in diameter shall be permitted for use with plain pendant cord and holes 11 mm (13/32 in.) in diameter with reinforced cord.

(B) Adjustable Luminaires (Fixtures). Luminaires (fixtures) that require adjusting or aiming after installation shall not be required to be equipped with an attachment plug or cord connector, provided the exposed cord is of the hard-usage or extra-hard-usage type and is not longer than that required for maximum adjustment. The cord shall not be subject to strain or physical damage.

(C) Electric-Discharge Luminaires (Fixtures).

(1) A listed luminaire (fixture) or a listed assembly shall be permitted to be cord connected if the following conditions apply:

(1) The luminaire (fixture) is located directly below the outlet box or busway.
(2) The flexible cord meets all the following:
   a. Is visible for its entire length outside the luminaire (fixture)
   b. Is not subject to strain or physical damage
   c. Is terminated in a grounding-type attachment plug cap or busway plug or has a luminaire (fixture) assembly with a strain relief and canopy

(2) Electric-discharge luminaires (lighting fixtures) provided with mogul-base, screw-shell lampholders shall be permitted to be connected to branch circuits of 50 amperes or less by cords complying with 240.5. Receptacles and attachment plugs shall be permitted to be of lower ampere rating than the branch circuit but not less than 125 percent of the luminaire (fixture) full-load current.

(3) Electric-discharge luminaires (lighting fixtures) equipped with a flanged surface inlet shall be permitted to be supplied by cord pendants equipped with cord connectors. Inlets and connectors shall be permitted to be of lower ampere rating than the branch circuit but not less than 125 percent of the luminaire (fixture) load current.

410.31 Luminaires (Fixtures) as Raceways. Luminaires (fixtures) shall not be used as a raceway for circuit conductors unless listed and marked for use as a raceway.

410.32 Wiring Supplying Luminaires (Fixtures) Connected Together. Luminaires (fixtures) designed for end-to-end connection to form a continuous assembly, or luminaires (fixtures) connected together by recognized wiring

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-263

methods, shall be permitted to contain the conductors of a 2-wire branch circuit, or one multiwire branch circuit, supplying the connected luminaires (fixtures) and need not be listed as a raceway. One additional 2-wire branch circuit separately supplying one or more of the connected luminaires (fixtures) shall also be permitted.

FPN: See Article 100 for the definition of *Multiwire Branch Circuit.*

410.33 Branch Circuit Conductors and Ballasts. Branch-circuit conductors within 75 mm (3 in.) of a ballast shall have an insulation temperature rating not lower than 90°C (194°F) unless supplying a luminaire (fixture) listed and marked as suitable for a different insulation temperature.

VII. Construction of Luminaires (Fixtures)

410.34 Combustible Shades and Enclosures. Adequate airspace shall be provided between lamps and shades or other enclosures of combustible material.

410.35 Luminaire (Fixture) Rating.

(A) Marking. All luminaires (fixtures) shall be marked with the maximum lamp wattage or electrical rating, manufacturer's name, trademark, or other suitable means of identification. A luminaire (fixture) requiring supply wire rated higher than 60°C (140°F) shall be marked in letters not smaller than 6 mm (¼ in.) high, prominently displayed on the luminaire (fixture) and shipping carton or equivalent.

(B) Electrical Rating. The electrical rating shall include the voltage and frequency and shall indicate the current rating of the unit, including the ballast, transformer, or autotransformer.

410.36 Design and Material. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be constructed of metal, wood, or other material suitable for the application and shall be designed and assembled so as to secure requisite mechanical strength and rigidity. Wiring compartments, including their entrances, shall be such that conductors may be drawn in and withdrawn without physical damage.

410.37 Nonmetallic Luminaires (Fixtures). When luminaire (fixture) wiring compartments are constructed from combustible material, armored or lead-covered conductors with suitable fittings shall be used or the wiring compartment shall be lined with metal.

410.38 Mechanical Strength.

(A) Tubing for Arms. Tubing used for arms and stems where provided with cut threads shall not be less than 1.02 mm (0.040 in.) in thickness and where provided with rolled (pressed) threads shall not be less than 0.64 mm (0.025 in.) in thickness. Arms and other parts shall be fastened to prevent turning.

(B) Metal Canopies. Metal canopies supporting lampholders, shades, and so forth exceeding 4 kg (8 lb), or incorporating attachment-plug receptacles, shall not be less than 0.51 mm (0.020 in.) in thickness. Other canopies shall not be less than 0.41 mm (0.016 in.) if made of steel and not less than 0.51 mm (0.020 in.) if of other metals.

(C) Canopy Switches. Pull-type canopy switches shall not be inserted in the rims of metal canopies that are less than 0.64 mm (0.025 in.) in thickness unless the rims are reinforced by the turning of a bead or the equivalent. Pull-type canopy switches, whether mounted in the rims or elsewhere in sheet metal canopies, shall not be located more than 90 mm (3½ in.) from the center of the canopy. Double set-screws, double canopy rings, a screw ring, or equal method shall be used where the canopy supports a pull-type switch or pendant receptacle.

The thickness requirements in the preceding paragraph shall apply to measurements made on finished (formed) canopies.

410.39 Wiring Space. Bodies of luminaires (fixtures), including portable lamps, shall provide ample space for splices and taps and for the installation of devices, if any. Splice compartments shall be of nonabsorbent, noncombustible material.

410.42 Portable Lamps.

(A) General. Portable lamps shall be wired with flexible cord recognized by 400.4 and an attachment plug of the polarized or grounding type. Where used with Edison-base lampholders, the grounded conductor shall be identified and attached to the screw shell and the identified blade of the attachment plug.

(B) Portable Handlamps. In addition to the provisions of 410.42(A), portable handlamps shall comply with the following.

(1) Metal shell, paper-lined lampholders shall not be used.
(2) Handlamps shall be equipped with a handle of molded composition or other insulating material.
(3) Handlamps shall be equipped with a substantial guard attached to the lampholder or handle.
(4) Metallic guards shall be grounded by means of an equipment grounding conductor run with circuit conductors within the power-supply cord.
(5) Portable handlamps shall not be required to be grounded where supplied through an isolating transformer with an ungrounded secondary of not over 50 volts.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-264

410.44 Cord Bushings. A bushing or the equivalent shall be provided where flexible cord enters the base or stem of a portable lamp. The bushing shall be of insulating material unless a jacketed type of cord is used.

410.45 Tests. All wiring shall be free from short circuits and grounds and shall be tested for these defects prior to being connected to the circuit.

410.46 Live Parts. Exposed live parts within porcelain luminaires (fixtures) shall be suitably recessed and located so as to make it improbable that wires come in contact with them. There shall be a spacing of at least 13 mm (½ in.) between live parts and the mounting plane of the luminaire (fixture).

VIII. Installation of Lampholders

410.47 Screw-Shell Type. Lampholders of the screw-shell type shall be installed for use as lampholders only. Where supplied by a circuit having a grounded conductor, the grounded conductor shall be connected to the screw shell.

410.48 Double-Pole Switched Lampholders. Where supplied by the ungrounded conductors of a circuit, the switching device of lampholders of the switched type shall simultaneously disconnect both conductors of the circuit.

410.49 Lampholders in Wet or Damp Locations. Lampholders installed in wet or damp locations shall be of the weatherproof type.

IX. Construction of Lampholders

410.50 Insulation. The outer metal shell and the cap shall be lined with insulating material that prevents the shell and cap from becoming a part of the circuit. The lining shall not extend beyond the metal shell more than 3 mm (⅛ in.) but shall prevent any current-carrying part of the lamp base from being exposed when a lamp is in the lampholding device.

410.52 Switched Lampholders. Switched lampholders shall be of such construction that the switching mechanism interrupts the electrical connection to the center contact. The switching mechanism shall also be permitted to interrupt the electrical connection to the screw shell if the connection to the center contact is simultaneously interrupted.

X. Lamps and Auxiliary Equipment

410.53 Bases, Incandescent Lamps. An incandescent lamp for general use on lighting branch circuits shall not be equipped with a medium base if rated over 300 watts, or with a mogul base if rated over 1500 watts. Special bases or other devices shall be used for over 1500 watts.

410.54 Electric-Discharge Lamp Auxiliary Equipment.

(A) Enclosures. Auxiliary equipment for electric-discharge lamps shall be enclosed in noncombustible cases and treated as sources of heat.

(B) Switching. Where supplied by the ungrounded conductors of a circuit, the switching device of auxiliary equipment shall simultaneously disconnect all conductors.

XI. Special Provisions for Flush and Recessed Luminaires (Fixtures)

410.64 General. Luminaires (fixtures) installed in recessed cavities in walls or ceilings shall comply with 410.65 through 410.72.

410.65 Temperature.

(A) Combustible Material. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be installed so that adjacent combustible material will not be subjected to temperatures in excess of 90°C (194°F).

(B) Fire-Resistant Construction. Where a luminaire (fixture) is recessed in fire-resistant material in a building of fire-resistant construction, a temperature higher than 90°C (194°F) but not higher than 150°C (302°F) shall be considered acceptable if the luminaire (fixture) is plainly marked that it is listed for that service.

(C) Recessed Incandescent Luminaires (Fixtures). Incandescent luminaires (fixtures) shall have thermal protection and shall be identified as thermally protected.

Exception No. 1: Thermal protection shall not be required in a recessed luminaire (fixture) identified for use and installed in poured concrete.

Exception No. 2: Thermal protection shall not be required in a recessed luminaire (fixture) whose design, construction, and thermal performance characteristics are equivalent to a thermally protected luminaire (fixture) and are identified as inherently protected.

410.66 Clearance and Installation.

(A) Clearance.

(1) Non-Type IC. A recessed luminaire (fixture) that is not identified for contact with insulation shall have all recessed parts spaced not less than 13 mm (½ in.) from combustible materials. The points of support and the trim finishing off the opening in the ceiling or wall surface shall be permitted to be in contact with combustible materials.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-265

(2) Type IC. A recessed luminaire (fixture) that is identified for contact with insulation, Type IC, shall be permitted to be in contact with combustible materials at recessed parts, points of support, and portions passing through or finishing off the opening in the building structure.

(B) Installation. Thermal insulation shall not be installed above a recessed luminaire (fixture) or within 75 mm (3 in.) of the recessed luminaire's (fixture's) enclosure, wiring compartment, or ballast unless it is identified for contact with insulation, Type IC.

410.67 Wiring.

(A) General. Conductors that have insulation suitable for the temperature encountered shall be used.

(B) Circuit Conductors. Branch-circuit conductors that have an insulation suitable for the temperature encountered shall be permitted to terminate in the luminaire (fixture).

(C) Tap Conductors. Tap conductors of a type suitable for the temperature encountered shall be permitted to run from the luminaire (fixture) terminal connection to an outlet box placed at least 300 mm (1 ft) from the luminaire (fixture). Such tap conductors shall be in suitable raceway or Type AC or MC cable of at least 450 mm (18 in.) but not more than 1.8 m (6 ft) in length.

XII. Construction of Flush and Recessed Luminaires (Fixtures)

410.68 Temperature. Luminaires (fixtures) shall be constructed so that adjacent combustible material is not subject to temperatures in excess of 90°C (194°F).

410.70 Lamp Wattage Marking. Incandescent lamp luminaires (fixtures) shall be marked to indicate the maximum allowable wattage of lamps. The markings shall be permanently installed, in letters at least 6 mm (¼ in.) high, and shall be located where visible during relamping.

410.71 Solder Prohibited. No solder shall be used in the construction of a luminaire (fixture) box.

410.72 Lampholders. Lampholders of the screw-shell type shall be of porcelain or other suitable insulating materials. Where used, cements shall be of the high-heat type.

XIII. Special Provisions for Electric-Discharge Lighting Systems of 1000 Volts or Less

410.73 General.

(A) Open-Circuit Voltage of 1000 Volts or Less. Equipment for use with electric-discharge lighting systems and designed for an open-circuit voltage of 1000 volts or less shall be of a type intended for such service.

(B) Considered as Energized. The terminals of an electric-discharge lamp shall be considered as energized where any lamp terminal is connected to a circuit of over 300 volts.

(C) Transformers of the Oil-Filled Type. Transformers of the oil-filled type shall not be used.

(D) Additional Requirements. In addition to complying with the general requirements for luminaires (lighting fixtures), such equipment shall comply with Part XIII of this article.

(E) Thermal Protection — Fluorescent Luminaires (Fixtures).

(1) Integral Thermal Protection. The ballast of a fluorescent luminaire (fixture) installed indoors shall have integral thermal protection. Replacement ballasts shall also have thermal protection integral with the ballast.

(2) Simple Reactance Ballasts. A simple reactance ballast in a fluorescent luminaire (fixture) with straight tubular lamps shall not be required to be thermally protected.

(3) Exit Fixtures. A ballast in a fluorescent exit luminaire (fixture) shall not have thermal protection.

(4) Emergency Egress Luminaires (Fixtures). A ballast in a fluorescent luminaire (fixture) that is used for egress lighting and energized only during an emergency shall not have thermal protection.

(F) High-Intensity Discharge Luminaires (Fixtures).

(1) Recessed. Recessed high-intensity luminaires (fixtures) designed to be installed in wall or ceiling cavities shall have thermal protection and be identified as thermally protected.

(2) Inherently Protected. Thermal protection shall not be required in a recessed high-intensity luminaire (fixture) whose design, construction, and thermal performance characteristics are equivalent to a thermally protected luminaire (fixture) and are identified as inherently protected.

(3) Installed in Poured Concrete. Thermal protection shall not be required in a recessed high-intensity discharge luminaire (fixture) identified for use and installed in poured concrete.

(4) Recessed Remote Ballasts. A recessed remote ballast for a high-intensity discharge luminaire (fixture) shall have thermal protection that is integral with the ballast and be identified as thermally protected.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-266

410.74 Direct-Current Equipment. Luminaires (fixtures) installed on dc circuits shall be equipped with auxiliary equipment and resistors designed for dc operation. The luminaires (fixtures) shall be marked for dc operation.

410.75 Open-Circuit Voltage Exceeding 300 Volts. Equipment having an open-circuit voltage exceeding 300 volts shall not be installed in dwelling occupancies unless such equipment is designed so that there will be no exposed live parts when lamps are being inserted, are in place, or are being removed.

410.76 Luminaire (Fixture) Mounting.

(A) Exposed Ballasts. Luminaires (fixtures) that have exposed ballasts or transformers shall be installed so that such ballasts or transformers will not be in contact with combustible material.

(B) Combustible Low-Density Cellulose Fiberboard. Where a surface-mounted luminaire (fixture) containing a ballast is to be installed on combustible low-density cellulose fiberboard, it shall be listed for this condition or shall be spaced not less than 38 mm (1½ in.) from the surface of the fiberboard. Where such luminaires (fixtures) are partially or wholly recessed, the provisions of 410.64 through 410.72 shall apply.

FPN: Combustible low-density cellulose fiberboard includes sheets, panels, and tiles that have a density of 320 kg/m^3 (20 lb/ft^3) or less and that are formed of bonded plant fiber material but does not include solid or laminated wood or fiberboard that has a density in excess of 320 kg/m^3 (20 lb/ft^3) or is a material that has been integrally treated with fire-retarding chemicals to the degree that the flame spread in any plane of the material will not exceed 25, determined in accordance with tests for surface burning characteristics of building materials. See ANSI/ASTM E84-1997, *Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.*

410.77 Equipment Not Integral with Luminaire (Fixture).

(A) Metal Cabinets. Auxiliary equipment, including reactors, capacitors, resistors, and similar equipment, where not installed as part of a luminaire (lighting fixture) assembly, shall be enclosed in accessible, permanently installed metal cabinets.

(B) Separate Mounting. Separately mounted ballasts that are intended for direct connection to a wiring system shall not be required to be separately enclosed.

(C) Wired Luminaire (Fixture) Sections. Wired luminaire (fixture) sections are paired, with a ballast(s) supplying a lamp or lamps in both. For interconnection between paired units, it shall be permissible to use metric designator 12 (trade size ⅜) flexible metal conduit in lengths not exceeding 7.5 m (25 ft), in conformance with Article 348. Luminaire (fixture) wire operating at line voltage, supplying only the ballast(s) of one of the paired luminaires (fixtures), shall be permitted in the same raceway as the lamp supply wires of the paired luminaires (fixtures).

410.78 Autotransformers. An autotransformer that is used to raise the voltage to more than 300 volts, as part of a ballast for supplying lighting units, shall be supplied only by a grounded system.

410.79 Switches. Snap switches shall comply with 404.14.

XIV. Special Provisions for Electric-Discharge Lighting Systems of More Than 1000 Volts

410.80 General.

(A) Listing. Electric-discharge lighting systems with an open-circuit voltage exceeding 1000 volts shall be listed and installed in conformance with that listing.

(B) Dwelling Occupancies. Equipment that has an open-circuit voltage exceeding 1000 volts shall not be installed in or on dwelling occupancies.

(C) Live Parts. The terminal of an electric-discharge lamp shall be considered as a live part.

(D) Additional Requirements. In addition to complying with the general requirements for luminaires (lighting fixtures), such equipment shall comply with Part XIV of this article.

FPN: For signs and outline lighting, see Article 600.

410.81 Control.

(A) Disconnection. Luminaires (fixtures) or lamp installation shall be controlled either singly or in groups by an externally operable switch or circuit breaker that opens all ungrounded primary conductors.

(B) Within Sight or Locked Type. The switch or circuit breaker shall be located within sight from the luminaires (fixtures) or lamps, or it shall be permitted elsewhere if it is provided with a means for locking in the open position.

410.82 Lamp Terminals and Lampholders. Parts that must be removed for lamp replacement shall be hinged or held captive. Lamps or lampholders shall be designed so that there are no exposed live parts when lamps are being inserted or removed.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-267

410.83 Transformers.

(A) Type. Transformers shall be enclosed, identified for the use, and listed.

(B) Voltage. The secondary-circuit voltage shall not exceed 15,000 volts, nominal, under any load condition. The voltage to ground of any ouput terminals of the secondary circuit shall not exceed 7500 volts, under any load conditions.

(C) Rating. Transformers shall have a secondary short-circuit current rating of not more than 150 mA if the open-circuit voltage is over 7500 volts, and not more than 300 mA if the open-circuit voltage rating is 7500 volts or less.

(D) Secondary Connections. Secondary circuit outputs shall not be connected in parallel or in series.

410.84 Transformer Locations.

(A) Accessible. Transformers shall be accessible after installation.

(B) Secondary Conductors. Transformers shall be installed as near to the lamps as practicable to keep the secondary conductors as short as possible.

(C) Adjacent to Combustible Materials. Transformers shall be located so that adjacent combustible materials are not subjected to temperatures in excess of 90°C (194°F).

410.85 Exposure to Damage. Lamps shall not be located where normally exposed to physical damage.

410.86 Marking. Each luminaire (fixture) or each secondary circuit of tubing having an open-circuit voltage of over 1000 volts shall have a clearly legible marking in letters not less than 6 mm (¼ in.) high reading "Caution . . . volts." The voltage indicated shall be the rated open-circuit voltage.

410.87 Switches. Snap switches shall comply with 404.4.

XV. Lighting Track

410.100 Definition.

Lighting Track. A manufactured assembly designed to support and energize luminaires (lighting fixtures) that are capable of being readily repositioned on the track. Its length may be altered by the addition or subtraction of sections of track.

410.101 Installation.

(A) Lighting Track. Lighting track shall be permanently installed and permanently connected to a branch circuit. Only lighting track fittings shall be installed on lighting track. Lighting track fittings shall not be equipped with general-purpose receptacles.

(B) Connected Load. The connected load on lighting track shall not exceed the rating of the track. Lighting track shall be supplied by a branch circuit having a rating not more than that of the track.

(C) Locations Not Permitted. Lighting track shall not be installed in the following locations:

(1) Where likely to be subjected to physical damage
(2) In wet or damp locations
(3) Where subject to corrosive vapors
(4) In storage battery rooms
(5) In hazardous (classified) locations
(6) Where concealed
(7) Where extended through walls or partitions
(8) Less than 1.5 m (5 ft) above the finished floor except where protected from physical damage or track operating at less than 30 volts rms open-circuit voltage
(9) Within the zone measured 900 mm (3 ft) horizontally and 2.5 m (8 ft) vertically from the top of the bathtub rim

(D) Support. Fittings identified for use on lighting track shall be designed specifically for the track on which they are to be installed. They shall be securely fastened to the track, shall maintain polarization and grounding, and shall be designed to be suspended directly from the track.

410.103 Heavy-Duty Lighting Track. Heavy-duty lighting track is lighting track identified for use exceeding 20 amperes. Each fitting attached to a heavy-duty lighting track shall have individual overcurrent protection.

410.104 Fastening. Lighting track shall be securely mounted so that each fastening will be suitable for supporting the maximum weight of luminaires (fixtures) that can be installed. Unless identified for supports at greater intervals, a single section 1.2 m (4 ft) or shorter in length shall have two supports, and, where installed in a continuous row, each individual section of not more than 1.2 m (4 ft) in length shall have one additional support.

410.105 Construction Requirements.

(A) Construction. The housing for the lighting track system shall be of substantial construction to maintain rigidity. The conductors shall be installed within the track housing, permitting insertion of a luminaire (fixture), and designed to prevent tampering and accidental contact with live parts. Components of lighting track systems of different voltages shall not be interchangeable. The track conductors shall be a minimum 12 AWG or equal and shall be copper. The track system ends shall be insulated and capped.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-268

(B) Grounding. Lighting track shall be grounded in accordance with Article 250, and the track sections shall be securely coupled to maintain continuity of the circuitry, polarization, and grounding throughout.

ARTICLE 411
Lighting Systems Operating at 30 Volts or Less

411.1 Scope. This article covers lighting systems operating at 30 volts or less and their associated components.

411.2 Definition.

Lighting Systems Operating at 30 Volts or Less. A lighting system consisting of an isolating power supply operating at 30 volts (42.4 volts peak) or less, under any load condition, with one or more secondary circuits, each limited to 25 amperes maximum, supplying luminaires (lighting fixtures) and associated equipment identified for the use.

411.3 Listing Required. Lighting systems operating at 30 volts or less shall be listed for the purpose.

411.4 Locations Not Permitted. Lighting systems operating at 30 volts or less shall not be installed (1) where concealed or extended through a building wall, unless using a wiring method specified in Chapter 3, or (2) within 3.0 m (10 ft) of pools, spas, fountains, or similar locations, except as permitted by Article 680.

411.5 Secondary Circuits.

(A) Grounding. Secondary circuits shall not be grounded.

(B) Isolation. The secondary circuit shall be insulated from the branch circuit by an isolating transformer.

(C) Bare Conductors. Exposed bare conductors and current-carrying parts shall be permitted. Bare conductors shall not be installed less than 2.1 m (7 ft) above the finished floor, unless specifically listed for a lower installation height.

411.6 Branch Circuit. Lighting systems operating at 30 volts or less shall be supplied from a maximum 20-ampere branch circuit.

411.7 Hazardous (Classified) Locations. Where installed in hazardous (classified) locations, these systems shall conform with Articles 500 through 517 in addition to this article.

ARTICLE 422
Appliances

I. General

422.1 Scope. This article covers electric appliances used in any occupancy.

422.3 Other Articles. Appliances for use in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with Articles 500 through 517.

The requirements of Article 430 shall apply to the installation of motor-operated appliances, and the requirements of Article 440 shall apply to the installation of appliances containing a hermetic refrigerant motor-compressor(s), except as specifically amended in this article.

422.4 Live Parts. Appliances shall have no live parts normally exposed to contact other than those parts functioning as open-resistance heating elements, such as the heating element of a toaster, which are necessarily exposed.

II. Installation

422.10 Branch-Circuit Rating. This section specifies the ratings of branch circuits capable of carrying appliance current without overheating under the conditions specified.

(A) Individual Circuits. The rating of an individual branch circuit shall not be less than the marked rating of the appliance or the marked rating of an appliance having combined loads as provided in 422.62.

The rating of an individual branch circuit for motor-operated appliances not having a marked rating shall be in accordance with Part II of Article 430.

The branch-circuit rating for an appliance that is continuously loaded, other than a motor-operated appliance, shall not be less than 125 percent of the marked rating, or not less than 100 percent of the marked rating if the branch-circuit device and its assembly are listed for continuous loading at 100 percent of its rating.

Branch circuits for household cooking appliances shall be permitted to be in accordance with Table 220.19.

(B) Circuits Supplying Two or More Loads. For branch circuits supplying appliance and other loads, the rating shall be determined in accordance with 210.23.

422.11 Overcurrent Protection. Appliances shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with 422.11(A) through (G) and 422.10.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-269

(A) Branch-Circuit Overcurrent Protection. Branch circuits shall be protected in accordance with 240.4.

If a protective device rating is marked on an appliance, the branch-circuit overcurrent device rating shall not exceed the protective device rating marked on the appliance.

(B) Household-Type Appliance with Surface Heating Elements. A household-type appliance with surface heating elements having a maximum demand of more than 60 amperes computed in accordance with Table 220.19 shall have its power supply subdivided into two or more circuits, each of which shall be provided with overcurrent protection rated at not over 50 amperes.

(C) Infrared Lamp Commercial and Industrial Heating Appliances. Infrared lamp commercial and industrial heating appliances shall have overcurrent protection not exceeding 50 amperes.

(D) Open-Coil or Exposed Sheathed-Coil Types of Surface Heating Elements in Commercial-Type Heating Appliances. Open-coil or exposed sheathed-coil types of surface heating elements in commercial-type heating appliances shall be protected by overcurrent protective devices rated at not over 50 amperes.

(E) Single Nonmotor-Operated Appliance. If the branch circuit supplies a single non–motor-operated appliance, the rating of overcurrent protection shall

(1) Not exceed that marked on the appliance;
(2) If the overcurrent protection rating is not marked and the appliance is rated 13.3 amperes or less, not exceed 20 amperes; or
(3) If the overcurrent protection rating is not marked and the appliance is rated over 13.3 amperes, not exceed 150 percent of the appliance rated current. Where 150 percent of the appliance rating does not correspond to a standard overcurrent device ampere rating, the next higher standard rating shall be permitted.

(F) Electric Heating Appliances Employing Resistance-Type Heating Elements Rated More Than 48 Amperes.

(1) Electric Heating Appliances. Electric heating appliances employing resistance-type heating elements rated more than 48 amperes, other than household appliances with surface heating elements covered by 422.11(B), and commercial-type heating appliances covered by 422.11(D), shall have the heating elements subdivided. Each subdivided load shall not exceed 48 amperes and shall be protected at not more than 60 amperes.

These supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be (1) factory-installed within or on the heater enclosure or provided as a separate assembly by the heater manufacturer; (2) accessible; and (3) suitable for branch-circuit protection.

The main conductors supplying these overcurrent protective devices shall be considered branch-circuit conductors.

(2) Commercial Kitchen and Cooking Appliances. Commercial kitchen and cooking appliances using sheathed-type heating elements not covered in 422.11(D) shall be permitted to be subdivided into circuits not exceeding 120 amperes and protected at not more than 150 amperes where one of the following is met:

(1) Elements are integral with and enclosed within a cooking surface.
(2) Elements are completely contained within an enclosure identified as suitable for this use.
(3) Elements are contained within an ASME-rated and stamped vessel.

(3) Water Heaters and Steam Boilers. Water heaters and steam boilers employing resistance-type immersion electric heating elements contained in an ASME-rated and stamped vessel or listed instantaneous water heaters shall be permitted to be subdivided into circuits not exceeding 120 amperes and protected at not more than 150 amperes.

(G) Motor-Operated Appliances. Motors of motor-operated appliances shall be provided with overload protection in accordance with Part III of Article 430. Hermetic refrigerant motor-compressors in air-conditioning or refrigerating equipment shall be provided with overload protection in accordance with Part VI of Article 440. Where appliance overcurrent protective devices that are separate from the appliance are required, data for selection of these devices shall be marked on the appliance. The minimum marking shall be that specified in 430.7 and 440.4.

422.12 Central Heating Equipment. Central heating equipment other than fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit.

Exception: Auxiliary equipment, such as a pump, valve, humidifier, or electrostatic air cleaner directly associated with the heating equipment, shall be permitted to be connected to the same branch circuit.

422.13 Storage-Type Water Heaters. A branch circuit supplying a fixed storage-type water heater that has a capacity of 450 L (120 gal) or less shall have a rating not less than 125 percent of the nameplate rating of the water heater.

FPN: For branch-circuit rating, see 422.10.

422.14 Infrared Lamp Industrial Heating Appliances. Infrared industrial heating appliance lampholders shall be permitted to be connected to any of the branch circuits in

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-270

Article 210 and, in industrial occupancies, shall be permitted to be operated in series on circuits of over 150 volts to ground, provided the voltage rating of the lampholders is not less than the circuit voltage.

Each section, panel, or strip carrying a number of infrared lampholders (including the internal wiring of such section, panel, or strip) shall be considered an appliance. The terminal connection block of each such assembly shall be considered an individual outlet.

422.15 Central Vacuum Outlet Assemblies.

(A) Listed central vacuum outlet assemblies shall be permitted to be connected to a branch circuit in accordance with 210.23(A).

(B) The ampacity of the connecting conductors shall not be less than the ampacity of the branch circuit conductors to which they are connected.

(C) An equipment grounding conductor shall be used where the central vacuum outlet assembly has accessible non–current-carrying metal parts.

422.16 Flexible Cords.

(A) General. Flexible cord shall be permitted (1) for the connection of appliances to facilitate their frequent interchange or to prevent the transmission of noise or vibration or (2) to facilitate the removal or disconnection of appliances that are fastened in place, where the fastening means and mechanical connections are specifically designed to permit ready removal for maintenance or repair and the appliance is intended or identified for flexible cord connection.

(B) Specific Appliances.

(1) Electrically Operated Kitchen Waste Disposers. Electrically operated kitchen waste disposers shall be permitted to be cord-and-plug connected with a flexible cord identified as suitable for the purpose in the installation instructions of the appliance manufacturer, where all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The flexible cord shall be terminated with a grounding type attachment plug.

Exception: A listed kitchen waste disposer distinctly marked to identify it as protected by a system of double insulation, or its equivalent, shall not be required to be terminated with a grounding-type attachment plug.

(2) The length of the cord shall not be less than 450 mm (18 in.) and not over 900 mm (36 in.).

(3) Receptacles shall be located to avoid physical damage to the flexible cord.

(4) The receptacle shall be accessible.

(2) Built-in Dishwashers and Trash Compactors. Built-in dishwashers and trash compactors shall be permitted to be cord-and-plug connected with a flexible cord identified as suitable for the purpose in the installation instructions of the appliance manufacturer where all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The flexible cord shall be terminated with a grounding-type attachment plug.

Exception: A listed dishwasher or trash compactor distinctly marked to identify it as protected by a system of double insulation, or its equivalent, shall not be required to be terminated with a grounding-type attachment plug.

(2) The length of the cord shall be 0.9 m to 1.2 m (3 ft to 4 ft) measured from the face of the attachment plug to the plane of the rear of the appliance.

(3) Receptacles shall be located to avoid physical damage to the flexible cord.

(4) The receptacle shall be located in the space occupied by the appliance or adjacent thereto.

(5) The receptacle shall be accessible.

(3) Wall-Mounted Ovens and Counter-Mounted Cooking Units. Wall-mounted ovens and counter-mounted cooking units complete with provisions for mounting and for making electrical connections shall be permitted to be permanently connected or, only for ease in servicing or for installation, cord-and-plug connected.

A separable connector or a plug and receptacle combination in the supply line to an oven or cooking unit shall be approved for the temperature of the space in which it is located.

422.17 Protection of Combustible Material.

Each electrically heated appliance that is intended by size, weight, and service to be located in a fixed position shall be placed so as to provide ample protection between the appliance and adjacent combustible material.

422.18 Support of Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans.

(A) Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans 16 kg (35 lb) or Less. Ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans that do not exceed 16 kg (35 lb) in weight, with or without accessories, shall be permitted to be supported by outlet boxes identified for such use and supported in accordance with 314.23 and 314.27.

(B) Ceiling-Suspended (Paddle) Fans Exceeding 16 kg (35 lb). Ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans exceeding 16 kg (35 lb) in weight, with or without accessories, shall be supported independently of the outlet box. See 314.23.

Exception: Listed outlet boxes or outlet box systems that are identified for the purpose shall be permitted to support

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-271

ceiling-suspended fans, with or without accessories, that weigh 32 kg (70 lb) or less.

422.20 Other Installation Methods. Appliances employing methods of installation other than covered by this article shall be permitted to be used only by special permission.

III. Disconnecting Means

422.30 General. A means shall be provided to disconnect each appliance from all ungrounded conductors in accordance with the following sections of Part III. If an appliance is supplied by more than one source, the disconnecting means shall be grouped and identified.

422.31 Disconnection of Permanently Connected Appliances.

(A) Rated at Not Over 300 Volt-Amperes or ⅛ Horsepower. For permanently connected appliances rated at not over 300 volt-amperes or ⅛ hp, the branch-circuit overcurrent device shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means.

(B) Appliances Rated Over 300 Volt-Amperes or ⅛ Horsepower. For permanently connected appliances rated over 300 volt-amperes or ⅛ hp, the branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means where the switch or circuit breaker is within sight from the appliance or is capable of being locked in the open position.

FPN: For appliances employing unit switches, see 422.34.

422.32 Disconnecting Means for Motor-Driven Appliance. If a switch or circuit breaker serves as the disconnecting means for a permanently connected motor-driven appliance of more than ⅛ hp, it shall be located within sight from the motor controller and shall comply with Part IX of Article 430.

Exception: If a motor-driven appliance of more than ⅛ hp is provided with a unit switch that complies with 422.34(A), (B), (C), or (D), the switch or circuit breaker serving as the other disconnecting means shall be permitted to be out of sight from the motor controller.

422.33 Disconnection of Cord-and-Plug-Connected Appliances.

(A) Separable Connector or an Attachment Plug and Receptacle. For cord-and-plug-connected appliances, an accessible separable connector or an accessible plug and receptacle shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means. Where the separable connector or plug and receptacle are not accessible, cord-and-plug-connected appliances shall be provided with disconnecting means in accordance with 422.31.

(B) Connection at the Rear Base of a Range. For cord-and-plug-connected household electric ranges, an attachment plug and receptacle connection at the rear base of a range, if it is accessible from the front by removal of a drawer, shall be considered as meeting the intent of 422.33(A).

(C) Rating. The rating of a receptacle or of a separable connector shall not be less than the rating of any appliance connected thereto.

Exception: Demand factors authorized elsewhere in this Code shall be permitted to be applied to the rating of a receptacle or of a separable connector.

422.34 Unit Switch(es) as Disconnecting Means. A unit switch(es) with a marked-off position that is a part of an appliance and disconnects all ungrounded conductors shall be permitted as the disconnecting means required by this article where other means for disconnection are provided in the following types of occupancies.

(A) Multifamily Dwellings. In multifamily dwellings, the other disconnecting means shall be within the dwelling unit, or on the same floor as the dwelling unit in which the appliance is installed, and shall be permitted to control lamps and other appliances.

(B) Two-Family Dwellings. In two-family dwellings, the other disconnecting means shall be permitted either inside or outside of the dwelling unit in which the appliance is installed. In this case, an individual switch or circuit breaker for the dwelling unit shall be permitted and shall also be permitted to control lamps and other appliances.

(C) One-Family Dwellings. In one-family dwellings, the service disconnecting means shall be permitted to be the other disconnecting means.

(D) Other Occupancies. In other occupancies, the branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker, where readily accessible for servicing of the appliance, shall be permitted as the other disconnecting means.

422.35 Switch and Circuit Breaker to Be Indicating. Switches and circuit breakers used as disconnecting means shall be of the indicating type.

IV. Construction

422.40 Polarity in Cord-and-Plug-Connected Appliances. If the appliance is provided with a manually oper-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-272

ated, line-connected, single-pole switch for appliance on–off operation, an Edison-base lampholder, or a 15- or 20-ampere receptacle, the attachment plug shall be of the polarized or grounding type.

A 2-wire, nonpolarized attachment plug shall be permitted to be used on a listed double-insulated shaver.

FPN: For polarity of Edison-base lampholders, see 410.42(A).

422.41 Cord-and-Plug-Connected Appliances Subject to Immersion. Cord-and-plug-connected portable, free-standing hydromassage units and hand-held hair dryers shall be constructed to provide protection for personnel against electrocution when immersed while in the "on" or "off" position.

422.42 Signals for Heated Appliances. In other than dwelling-type occupancies, each electrically heated appliance or group of appliances intended to be applied to combustible material shall be provided with a signal or an integral temperature-limiting device.

422.43 Flexible Cords.

(A) Heater Cords. All cord-and-plug-connected smoothing irons and electrically heated appliances that are rated at more than 50 watts and produce temperatures in excess of 121°C (250°F) on surfaces with which the cord is likely to be in contact shall be provided with one of the types of approved heater cords listed in Table 400.4.

(B) Other Heating Appliances. All other cord-and-plug-connected electrically heated appliances shall be connected with one of the approved types of cord listed in Table 400.4, selected in accordance with the usage specified in that table.

422.44 Cord-and-Plug-Connected Immersion Heaters. Electric heaters of the cord-and-plug-connected immersion type shall be constructed and installed so that current-carrying parts are effectively insulated from electrical contact with the substance in which they are immersed.

422.45 Stands for Cord-and-Plug-Connected Appliances. Each smoothing iron and other cord-and-plug-connected electrically heated appliance intended to be applied to combustible material shall be equipped with an approved stand, which shall be permitted to be a separate piece of equipment or a part of the appliance.

422.46 Flatirons. Electrically heated smoothing irons shall be equipped with an identified temperature-limiting means.

422.47 Water Heater Controls. All storage or instantaneous-type water heaters shall be equipped with a temperature-limiting means in addition to its control thermostat to disconnect all ungrounded conductors. Such means shall be as follows:

(1) Installed to sense maximum water temperature; and
(2) Either a trip-free, manually reset type or a type having a replacement element. Such water heaters shall be marked to require the installation of a temperature and pressure relief valve.

Exception No. 1: Storage water heaters that are identified as being suitable for use with supply water temperature of 82°C (180°F) or above and a capacity of 60 kW or above.

Exception No. 2: Instantaneous-type water heaters that are identified as being suitable for such use, with a capacity of 4 L (1 gal) or less.

FPN: See ANSI Z21.22-1999/CSA 4.4-M99, *Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems.*

422.48 Infrared Lamp Industrial Heating Appliances.

(A) 300 Watts or Less. Infrared heating lamps rated at 300 watts or less shall be permitted with lampholders of the medium-base, unswitched porcelain type or other types identified as suitable for use with infrared heating lamps rated 300 watts or less.

(B) Over 300 Watts. Screw-shell lampholders shall not be used with infrared lamps rated over 300 watts, unless the lampholders are identified as being suitable for use with infrared heating lamps rated over 300 watts.

422.49 High-Pressure Spray Washers. All single-phase cord-and-plug-connected high-pressure spray washing machines rated at 250 volts or less shall be provided with factory-installed ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel. The ground-fault circuit interrupter shall be an integral part of the attachment plug or shall be located in the supply cord within 300 mm (12 in.) of the attachment plug.

422.50 Cord-and-Plug-Connected Pipe Heating Assemblies. Cord-and-plug-connected pipe heating assemblies intended to prevent freezing of piping shall be listed.

V. Marking

422.60 Nameplate.

(A) Nameplate Marking. Each electric appliance shall be provided with a nameplate giving the identifying name and the rating in volts and amperes, or in volts and watts. If the appliance is to be used on a specific frequency or frequencies, it shall be so marked.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-273

Where motor overload protection external to the appliance is required, the appliance shall be so marked.

FPN: See 422.11 for overcurrent protection requirements.

(B) To Be Visible. Marking shall be located so as to be visible or easily accessible after installation.

422.61 Marking of Heating Elements. All heating elements that are rated over one ampere, replaceable in the field, and a part of an appliance shall be legibly marked with the ratings in volts and amperes, or in volts and watts, or with the manufacturer's part number.

422.62 Appliances Consisting of Motors and Other Loads.

(A) Nameplate Horsepower Markings. Where a motor-operated appliance nameplate includes a horsepower rating, that rating shall not be less than the horsepower rating on the motor nameplate. Where an appliance consists of multiple motors, or one or more motors and other loads, the nameplate value shall not be less than the equivalent horsepower of the combined loads, calculated in accordance with 430.110(C)(1).

(B) Additional Nameplate Markings. Appliances, other than those factory-equipped with cords and attachment plugs and with nameplates in compliance with 422.60, shall be marked in accordance with 422.62(B)(1) or (2).

(1) Marking. In addition to the marking required in 422.60, the marking on an appliance consisting of a motor with other load(s) or motors with or without other load(s) shall specify the minimum supply circuit conductor ampacity and the maximum rating of the circuit overcurrent protective device. This requirement shall not apply to an appliance with a nameplate in compliance with 422.60 where both the minimum supply circuit conductor ampacity and maximum rating of the circuit overcurrent protective device are not more than 15 amperes.

(2) Alternate Marking Method. An alternative marking method shall be permitted to specify the rating of the largest motor in volts and amperes, and the additional load(s) in volts and amperes, or volts and watts in addition to the marking required in 422.60. The ampere rating of a motor ⅛ horsepower or less or a nonmotor load 1 ampere or less shall be permitted to be omitted unless such loads constitute the principal load.

ARTICLE 424
Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment

I. General

424.1 Scope. This article covers fixed electric equipment used for space heating. For the purpose of this article, heating equipment shall include heating cable, unit heaters, boilers, central systems, or other approved fixed electric space-heating equipment. This article shall not apply to process heating and room air conditioning.

424.2 Other Articles. All requirements of this *Code* shall apply where applicable. Fixed electric space-heating equipment for use in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with Articles 500 through 517. Fixed electric space-heating equipment incorporating a hermetic refrigerant motor-compressor shall also comply with Article 440.

424.3 Branch Circuits.

(A) Branch-Circuit Requirements. Individual branch circuits shall be permitted to supply any size fixed electric space-heating equipment.

Branch circuits supplying two or more outlets for fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be rated 15, 20, 25, or 30 amperes. In other than residential occupancies, fixed infrared heating equipment shall be permitted to be supplied from branch circuits rated not over 50 amperes.

(B) Branch-Circuit Sizing. The ampacity of the branch-circuit conductors and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices supplying fixed electric space-heating equipment consisting of resistance elements with or without a motor shall not be less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters. The rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices shall be permitted in accordance with 240.4(B). A contactor, thermostat, relay, or similar device, listed for continuous operation at 100 percent of its rating, shall be permitted to supply its full-rated load as provided in 210.19(A), Exception.

The size of the branch-circuit conductors and overcurrent protective devices supplying fixed electric space-heating equipment, including a hermetic refrigerant motor-compressor with or without resistance units, shall be computed in accordance with 440.34 and 440.35. The provisions of this section shall not apply to conductors that form an integral part of approved fixed electric space-heating equipment.

II. Installation

424.9 General. All fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be installed in an approved manner.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-274

Permanently installed electric baseboard heaters equipped with factory-installed receptacle outlets, or outlets provided as a separate listed assembly, shall be permitted in lieu of a receptacle outlet(s) that is required by 210.50(B). Such receptacle outlets shall not be connected to the heater circuits.

FPN: Listed baseboard heaters include instructions that may not permit their installation below receptacle outlets.

424.10 Special Permission. Fixed electric space-heating equipment and systems installed by methods other than covered by this article shall be permitted only by special permission.

424.11 Supply Conductors. Fixed electric space-heating equipment requiring supply conductors with over 60°C insulation shall be clearly and permanently marked. This marking shall be plainly visible after installation and shall be permitted to be adjacent to the field connection box.

424.12 Locations.

(A) Exposed to Physical Damage. Where subject to physical damage, fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be protected in an approved manner.

(B) Damp or Wet Locations. Heaters and related equipment installed in damp or wet locations shall be approved for such locations and shall be constructed and installed so that water or other liquids cannot enter or accumulate in or on wired sections, electrical components, or ductwork.

FPN No. 1: See 110.11 for equipment exposed to deteriorating agents.

FPN No. 2: See 680.27(C) for pool deck areas.

424.13 Spacing from Combustible Materials. Fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be installed to provide the required spacing between the equipment and adjacent combustible material, unless it has been found to be acceptable where installed in direct contact with combustible material.

III. Control and Protection of Fixed Electric Space-Heating Equipment

424.19 Disconnecting Means. Means shall be provided to disconnect the heater, motor controller(s), and supplementary overcurrent protective device(s) of all fixed electric space-heating equipment from all ungrounded conductors. Where heating equipment is supplied by more than one source, the disconnecting means shall be grouped and marked.

(A) Heating Equipment with Supplementary Overcurrent Protection. The disconnecting means for fixed electric space-heating equipment with supplementary overcurrent protection shall be within sight from the supplementary overcurrent protective device(s), on the supply side of these devices, if fuses, and, in addition, shall comply with either 424.19(A)(1) or (2).

(1) Heater Containing No Motor Rated Over ⅛ Horsepower. The above disconnecting means or unit switches complying with 424.19(C) shall be permitted to serve as the required disconnecting means for both the motor controller(s) and heater under either item (1) or (2):

(1) The disconnecting means provided is also within sight from the motor controller(s) and the heater.
(2) The disconnecting means provided shall be capable of being locked in the open position.

(2) Heater Containing a Motor(s) Rated Over ⅛ Horsepower. The above disconnecting means shall be permitted to serve as the required disconnecting means for both the motor controller(s) and heater by one of the means specified in items (1) through (4):

(1) Where the disconnecting means is also in sight from the motor controller(s) and the heater.
(2) Where the disconnecting means is not within sight from the heater, a separate disconnecting means shall be installed, or the disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the open position, or unit switches complying with 424.19(C) shall be permitted.
(3) Where the disconnecting means is not within sight from the motor controller location, a disconnecting means complying with 430.102 shall be provided.
(4) Where the motor is not in sight from the motor controller location, 430.102(B) shall apply.

(B) Heating Equipment Without Supplementary Overcurrent Protection.

(1) Without Motor or with Motor Not Over ⅛ Horsepower. For fixed electric space-heating equipment without a motor rated over ⅛ hp, the branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means where the switch or circuit breaker is within sight from the heater or is capable of being locked in the open position.

(2) Over ⅛ Horsepower. For motor-driven electric space-heating equipment with a motor rated over ⅛ hp, a disconnecting means shall be located within sight from the motor controller or shall be permitted to comply with the requirements in 424.19(A)(2).

(C) Unit Switch(es) as Disconnecting Means. A unit switch(es) with a marked "off" position that is part of a

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-275

fixed heater and disconnects all ungrounded conductors shall be permitted as the disconnecting means required by this article where other means for disconnection are provided in the types of occupancies in 424.19(C)(1) through (C)(4).

(1) Multifamily Dwellings. In multifamily dwellings, the other disconnecting means shall be within the dwelling unit, or on the same floor as the dwelling unit in which the fixed heater is installed, and shall also be permitted to control lamps and appliances.

(2) Two-Family Dwellings. In two-family dwellings, the other disconnecting means shall be permitted either inside or outside of the dwelling unit in which the fixed heater is installed. In this case, an individual switch or circuit breaker for the dwelling unit shall be permitted and shall also be permitted to control lamps and appliances.

(3) One-Family Dwellings. In one-family dwellings, the service disconnecting means shall be permitted to be the other disconnecting means.

(4) Other Occupancies. In other occupancies, the branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker, where readily accessible for servicing of the fixed heater, shall be permitted as the other disconnecting means.

424.20 Thermostatically Controlled Switching Devices.

(A) Serving as Both Controllers and Disconnecting Means. Thermostatically controlled switching devices and combination thermostats and manually controlled switches shall be permitted to serve as both controllers and disconnecting means, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Provided with a marked "off" position
(2) Directly open all ungrounded conductors when manually placed in the "off" position
(3) Designed so that the circuit cannot be energized automatically after the device has been manually placed in the "off" position
(4) Located as specified in 424.19

(B) Thermostats That Do Not Directly Interrupt All Ungrounded Conductors. Thermostats that do not directly interrupt all ungrounded conductors and thermostats that operate remote-control circuits shall not be required to meet the requirements of 424.20(A). These devices shall not be permitted as the disconnecting means.

424.21 Switch and Circuit Breaker to Be Indicating. Switches and circuit breakers used as disconnecting means shall be of the indicating type.

424.22 Overcurrent Protection.

(A) Branch-Circuit Devices. Electric space-heating equipment, other than such motor-operated equipment as required by Articles 430 and 440 to have additional overcurrent protection, shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent where supplied by one of the branch circuits in Article 210.

(B) Resistance Elements. Resistance-type heating elements in electric space-heating equipment shall be protected at not more than 60 amperes. Equipment rated more than 48 amperes and employing such elements shall have the heating elements subdivided, and each subdivided load shall not exceed 48 amperes. Where a subdivided load is less than 48 amperes, the rating of the supplementary overcurrent protective device shall comply with 424.3(B). A boiler employing resistance-type immersion heating elements contained in an ASME rated and stamped vessel shall be permitted to comply with 424.72(A).

(C) Overcurrent Protective Devices. The supplementary overcurrent protective devices for the subdivided loads specified in 424.22(B) shall be (1) factory-installed within or on the heater enclosure or supplied for use with the heater as a separate assembly by the heater manufacturer; (2) accessible, but shall not be required to be readily accessible; and (3) suitable for branch-circuit protection.

FPN: See 240.10.

Where cartridge fuses are used to provide this overcurrent protection, a single disconnecting means shall be permitted to be used for the several subdivided loads.

FPN No. 1: For supplementary overcurrent protection, see 240.10.

FPN No. 2: For disconnecting means for cartridge fuses in circuits of any voltage, see 240.40.

(D) Branch-Circuit Conductors. The conductors supplying the supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be considered branch-circuit conductors.

Where the heaters are rated 50 kW or more, the conductors supplying the supplementary overcurrent protective devices specified in 424.22(C) shall be permitted to be sized at not less than 100 percent of the nameplate rating of the heater, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The heater is marked with a minimum conductor size.
(2) The conductors are not smaller than the marked minimum size.
(3) A temperature-actuated device controls the cyclic operation of the equipment.

(E) Conductors for Subdivided Loads. Field-wired conductors between the heater and the supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be sized at not less than

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-276

125 percent of the load served. The supplementary overcurrent protective devices specified in 424.22(C) shall protect these conductors in accordance with 240.4.

Where the heaters are rated 50 kW or more, the ampacity of field-wired conductors between the heater and the supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be permitted to be not less than 100 percent of the load of their respective subdivided circuits, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The heater is marked with a minimum conductor size.
(2) The conductors are not smaller than the marked minimum size.
(3) A temperature-activated device controls the cyclic operation of the equipment.

IV. Marking of Heating Equipment

424.28 Nameplate.

(A) Marking Required. Each unit of fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be provided with a nameplate giving the identifying name and the normal rating in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

Electric space-heating equipment intended for use on alternating current only or direct current only shall be marked to so indicate. The marking of equipment consisting of motors over ⅛ hp and other loads shall specify the rating of the motor in volts, amperes, and frequency, and the heating load in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

(B) Location. This nameplate shall be located so as to be visible or easily accessible after installation.

424.29 Marking of Heating Elements. All heating elements that are replaceable in the field and are a part of an electric heater shall be legibly marked with the ratings in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

V. Electric Space-Heating Cables

424.34 Heating Cable Construction. Heating cables shall be furnished complete with factory-assembled nonheating leads at least 2.1 m (7 ft) in length.

424.35 Marking of Heating Cables. Each unit shall be marked with the identifying name or identification symbol, catalog number, and ratings in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

Each unit length of heating cable shall have a permanent legible marking on each nonheating lead located within 75 mm (3 in.) of the terminal end. The lead wire shall have the following color identification to indicate the circuit voltage on which it is to be used:

(1) 120 volt, nominal — yellow
(2) 208 volt, nominal — blue
(3) 240 volt, nominal — red
(4) 277 volt, nominal — brown
(5) 480 volt, nominal — orange

424.36 Clearances of Wiring in Ceilings. Wiring located above heated ceilings shall be spaced not less than 50 mm (2 in.) above the heated ceiling and shall be considered as operating at an ambient temperature of 50°C (122°F). The ampacity of conductors shall be computed on the basis of the correction factors shown in the 0–2000 volt ampacity tables of Article 310. If this wiring is located above thermal insulation having a minimum thickness of 50 mm (2 in.), the wiring shall not require correction for temperature.

424.37 Location of Branch-Circuit and Feeder Wiring in Exterior Walls. Wiring methods shall comply with Article 300 and 310.10.

424.38 Area Restrictions.

(A) Shall Not Extend Beyond the Room or Area. Heating cables shall not extend beyond the room or area in which they originate.

(B) Uses Prohibited. Heating cables shall not be installed in the following:

(1) In closets
(2) Over walls
(3) Over partitions that extend to the ceiling, unless they are isolated single runs of embedded cable
(4) Over cabinets whose clearance from the ceiling is less than the minimum horizontal dimension of the cabinet to the nearest cabinet edge that is open to the room or area

(C) In Closet Ceilings as Low-Temperature Heat Sources to Control Relative Humidity. The provisions of 424.38(B) shall not prevent the use of cable in closet ceilings as low-temperature heat sources to control relative humidity, provided they are used only in those portions of the ceiling that are unobstructed to the floor by shelves or other permanent luminaires (fixtures).

424.39 Clearance from Other Objects and Openings. Heating elements of cables shall be separated at least 200 mm (8 in.) from the edge of outlet boxes and junction boxes that are to be used for mounting surface luminaires (lighting fixtures). A clearance of not less than 50 mm (2 in.) shall be provided from recessed luminaires (fixtures) and their trims, ventilating openings, and other such openings in room surfaces. Sufficient area shall be provided to ensure that no heating cable will be covered by any surface-mounted units.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-277

424.40 Splices. Embedded cables shall be spliced only where necessary and only by approved means, and in no case shall the length of the heating cable be altered.

424.41 Installation of Heating Cables on Dry Board, in Plaster, and on Concrete Ceilings.

(A) In Walls. Cables shall not be installed in walls unless it is necessary for an isolated single run of cable to be installed down a vertical surface to reach a dropped ceiling.

(B) Adjacent Runs. Adjacent runs of cable not exceeding 9 watts/m (2¾ watts/ft) shall not be installed less than 38 mm (1½ in.) on centers.

(C) Surfaces to Be Applied. Heating cables shall be applied only to gypsum board, plaster lath, or other fire-resistant material. With metal lath or other electrically conductive surfaces, a coat of plaster shall be applied to completely separate the metal lath or conductive surface from the cable.

FPN: See also 424.41(F).

(D) Splices. All heating cables, the splice between the heating cable and nonheating leads, and 75-mm (3-in.) minimum of the nonheating lead at the splice shall be embedded in plaster or dry board in the same manner as the heating cable.

(E) Ceiling Surface. The entire ceiling surface shall have a finish of thermally noninsulating sand plaster that has a nominal thickness of 13 mm (½ in.), or other noninsulating material identified as suitable for this use and applied according to specified thickness and directions.

(F) Secured. Cables shall be secured by means of approved stapling, tape, plaster, nonmetallic spreaders, or other approved means either at intervals not exceeding 400 mm (16 in.) or at intervals not exceeding 1.8 m (6 ft) for cables identified for such use. Staples or metal fasteners that straddle the cable shall not be used with metal lath or other electrically conductive surfaces.

(G) Dry Board Installations. In dry board installations, the entire ceiling below the heating cable shall be covered with gypsum board not exceeding 13 mm (½ in.) thickness. The void between the upper layer of gypsum board, plaster lath, or other fire-resistant material and the surface layer of gypsum board shall be completely filled with thermally conductive, nonshrinking plaster or other approved material or equivalent thermal conductivity.

(H) Free from Contact with Conductive Surfaces. Cables shall be kept free from contact with metal or other electrically conductive surfaces.

(I) Joists. In dry board applications, cable shall be installed parallel to the joist, leaving a clear space centered under the joist of 65 mm (2½ in.) (width) between centers of adjacent runs of cable. A surface layer of gypsum board shall be mounted so that the nails or other fasteners do not pierce the heating cable.

(J) Crossing Joists. Cables shall cross joists only at the ends of the room unless the cable is required to cross joists elsewhere in order to satisfy the manufacturer's instructions that the installer avoid placing the cable too close to ceiling penetrations and luminaires (lighting fixtures).

424.42 Finished Ceilings. Finished ceilings shall not be covered with decorative panels or beams constructed of materials that have thermal insulating properties, such as wood, fiber, or plastic. Finished ceilings shall be permitted to be covered with paint, wallpaper, or other approved surface finishes.

424.43 Installation of Nonheating Leads of Cables.

(A) Free Nonheating Leads. Free nonheating leads of cables shall be installed in accordance with approved wiring methods from the junction box to a location within the ceiling. Such installations shall be permitted to be single conductors in approved raceways, single or multiconductor Type UF, Type NMC, Type MI, or other approved conductors.

(B) Leads in Junction Box. Not less than 150 mm (6 in.) of free nonheating lead shall be within the junction box. The marking of the leads shall be visible in the junction box.

(C) Excess Leads. Excess leads of heating cables shall not be cut but shall be secured to the underside of the ceiling and embedded in plaster or other approved material, leaving only a length sufficient to reach the junction box with not less than 150 mm (6 in.) of free lead within the box.

424.44 Installation of Cables in Concrete or Poured Masonry Floors.

(A) Watts per Linear Foot. Constant wattage heating cables shall not exceed 54 watts/linear meter (16½ watts/linear foot) of cable.

(B) Spacing Between Adjacent Runs. The spacing between adjacent runs of cable shall not be less than 25 mm (1 in.) on centers.

(C) Secured in Place. Cables shall be secured in place by nonmetallic frames or spreaders or other approved means while the concrete or other finish is applied.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-278

Cables shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless protected from expansion and contraction.

(D) Spacings Between Heating Cable and Metal Embedded in the Floor. Spacings shall be maintained between the heating cable and metal embedded in the floor, unless the cable is a grounded metal-clad cable.

(E) Leads Protected. Leads shall be protected where they leave the floor by rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing, or by other approved means.

(F) Bushings or Approved Fittings. Bushings or approved fittings shall be used where the leads emerge within the floor slab.

(G) Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection for Heated Floors of Bathrooms, and in Hydromassage Bathtub, Spa, and Hot Tub Locations. Ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel shall be provided for electrically heated floors in bathrooms, and in hydromassage bathtub, spa, and hot tub locations.

424.45 Inspection and Tests. Cable installations shall be made with due care to prevent damage to the cable assembly and shall be inspected and approved before cables are covered or concealed.

VI. Duct Heaters

424.57 General. Part VI shall apply to any heater mounted in the airstream of a forced-air system where the air-moving unit is not provided as an integral part of the equipment.

424.58 Identification. Heaters installed in an air duct shall be identified as suitable for the installation.

424.59 Airflow. Means shall be provided to ensure uniform and adequate airflow over the face of the heater in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

FPN: Heaters installed within 1.2 m (4 ft) of the outlet of an air-moving device, heat pump, air conditioner, elbows, baffle plates, or other obstructions in ductwork may require turning vanes, pressure plates, or other devices on the inlet side of the duct heater to ensure an even distribution of air over the face of the heater.

424.60 Elevated Inlet Temperature. Duct heaters intended for use with elevated inlet air temperature shall be identified as suitable for use at the elevated temperatures.

424.61 Installation of Duct Heaters with Heat Pumps and Air Conditioners. Heat pumps and air conditioners having duct heaters closer than 1.2 m (4 ft) to the heat pump or air conditioner shall have both the duct heater and heat pump or air conditioner identified as suitable for such installation and so marked.

424.62 Condensation. Duct heaters used with air conditioners or other air-cooling equipment that could result in condensation of moisture shall be identified as suitable for use with air conditioners.

424.63 Fan Circuit Interlock. Means shall be provided to ensure that the fan circuit is energized when any heater circuit is energized. However, time- or temperature-controlled delay in energizing the fan motor shall be permitted.

424.64 Limit Controls. Each duct heater shall be provided with an approved, integral, automatic-reset temperature-limiting control or controllers to de-energize the circuit or circuits.

In addition, an integral independent supplementary control or controllers shall be provided in each duct heater that disconnects a sufficient number of conductors to interrupt current flow. This device shall be manually resettable or replaceable.

424.65 Location of Disconnecting Means. Duct heater controller equipment shall be either accessible with the disconnecting means installed at or within sight from the controller or as permitted by 424.19(A).

424.66 Installation. Duct heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions in such a manner that operation will not create a hazard to persons or property. Furthermore, duct heaters shall be located with respect to building construction and other equipment so as to permit access to the heater. Sufficient clearance shall be maintained to permit replacement of controls and heating elements and for adjusting and cleaning of controls and other parts requiring such attention. See 110.26.

FPN: For additional installation information, see NFPA 90A-1999, *Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, and NFPA 90B-1999, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems*.

VII. Resistance-Type Boilers

424.70 Scope. The provisions in Part VII of this article shall apply to boilers employing resistance-type heating elements. Electrode-type boilers shall not be considered as employing resistance-type heating elements. See Part VIII of this article.

424.71 Identification. Resistance-type boilers shall be identified as suitable for the installation.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-279

424.72 Overcurrent Protection.

(A) Boiler Employing Resistance-Type Immersion Heating Elements in an ASME Rated and Stamped Vessel. A boiler employing resistance-type immersion heating elements contained in an ASME rated and stamped vessel shall have the heating elements protected at not more than 150 amperes. Such a boiler rated more than 120 amperes shall have the heating elements subdivided into loads not exceeding 120 amperes.

Where a subdivided load is less than 120 amperes, the rating of the overcurrent protective device shall comply with 424.3(B).

(B) Boiler Employing Resistance-Type Heating Elements Rated More Than 48 Amperes and Not Contained in an ASME Rated and Stamped Vessel. A boiler employing resistance-type heating elements not contained in an ASME rated and stamped vessel shall have the heating elements protected at not more than 60 amperes. Such a boiler rated more than 48 amperes shall have the heating elements subdivided into loads not exceeding 48 amperes.

Where a subdivided load is less than 48 amperes, the rating of the overcurrent protective device shall comply with 424.3(B).

(C) Supplementary Overcurrent Protective Devices. The supplementary overcurrent protective devices for the subdivided loads as required by 424.72(A) and (B) shall be as follows:

(1) Factory-installed within or on the boiler enclosure or provided as a separate assembly by the boiler manufacturer
(2) Accessible, but need not be readily accessible
(3) Suitable for branch-circuit protection

Where cartridge fuses are used to provide this overcurrent protection, a single disconnecting means shall be permitted for the several subdivided circuits. See 240.40.

(D) Conductors Supplying Supplementary Overcurrent Protective Devices. The conductors supplying these supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be considered branch-circuit conductors.

Where the heaters are rated 50 kW or more, the conductors supplying the overcurrent protective device specified in 424.72(C) shall be permitted to be sized at not less than 100 percent of the nameplate rating of the heater, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The heater is marked with a minimum conductor size.
(2) The conductors are not smaller than the marked minimum size.
(3) A temperature- or pressure-actuated device controls the cyclic operation of the equipment.

(E) Conductors for Subdivided Loads. Field-wired conductors between the heater and the supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be sized at not less than 125 percent of the load served. The supplementary overcurrent protective devices specified in 424.72(C) shall protect these conductors in accordance with 240.4.

Where the heaters are rated 50 kW or more, the ampacity of field-wired conductors between the heater and the supplementary overcurrent protective devices shall be permitted to be not less than 100 percent of the load of their respective subdivided circuits, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The heater is marked with a minimum conductor size.
(2) The conductors are not smaller than the marked minimum size.
(3) A temperature-activated device controls the cyclic operation of the equipment.

424.73 Overtemperature Limit Control. Each boiler designed so that in normal operation there is no change in state of the heat transfer medium shall be equipped with a temperature-sensitive limiting means. It shall be installed to limit maximum liquid temperature and shall directly or indirectly disconnect all ungrounded conductors to the heating elements. Such means shall be in addition to a temperature regulating system and other devices protecting the tank against excessive pressure.

424.74 Overpressure Limit Control. Each boiler designed so that in normal operation there is a change in state of the heat transfer medium from liquid to vapor shall be equipped with a pressure-sensitive limiting means. It shall be installed to limit maximum pressure and shall directly or indirectly disconnect all ungrounded conductors to the heating elements. Such means shall be in addition to a pressure regulating system and other devices protecting the tank against excessive pressure.

VIII. Electrode-Type Boilers

424.80 Scope. The provisions in Part VIII of this article shall apply to boilers for operation at 600 volts, nominal, or less, in which heat is generated by the passage of current between electrodes through the liquid being heated.

FPN: For over 600 volts, see Part V of Article 490.

424.81 Identification. Electrode-type boilers shall be identified as suitable for the installation.

424.82 Branch-Circuit Requirements. The size of branch-circuit conductors and overcurrent protective devices shall be calculated on the basis of 125 percent of the total load (motors not included). A contactor, relay, or other

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-280

device, approved for continuous operation at 100 percent of its rating, shall be permitted to supply its full-rated load. See 210.19(A), Exception. The provisions of this section shall not apply to conductors that form an integral part of an approved boiler.

Where an electrode boiler is rated 50 kW or more, the conductors supplying the boiler electrode(s) shall be permitted to be sized at not less than 100 percent of the nameplate rating of the electrode boiler, provided all the following conditions are met:

(1) The electrode boiler is marked with a minimum conductor size.
(2) The conductors are not smaller than the marked minimum size.
(3) A temperature- or pressure-actuated device controls the cyclic operation of the equipment.

424.83 Overtemperature Limit Control. Each boiler designed so that in normal operation there is no change in state of the heat transfer medium shall be equipped with a temperature-sensitive limiting means. It shall be installed to limit maximum liquid temperature and shall directly or indirectly interrupt all current flow through the electrodes. Such means shall be in addition to the temperature regulating system and other devices protecting the tank against excessive pressure.

424.84 Overpressure Limit Control. Each boiler designed so that in normal operation there is a change in state of the heat transfer medium from liquid to vapor shall be equipped with a pressure-sensitive limiting means. It shall be installed to limit maximum pressure and shall directly or indirectly interrupt all current flow through the electrodes. Such means shall be in addition to a pressure regulating system and other devices protecting the tank against excessive pressure.

424.85 Grounding. For those boilers designed such that fault currents do not pass through the pressure vessel, and the pressure vessel is electrically isolated from the electrodes, all exposed non–current-carrying metal parts, including the pressure vessel, supply, and return connecting piping, shall be grounded in accordance with Article 250.

For all other designs, the pressure vessel containing the electrodes shall be isolated and electrically insulated from ground.

424.86 Markings. All electrode-type boilers shall be marked to show the following:

(1) The manufacturer's name
(2) The normal rating in volts, amperes, and kilowatts
(3) The electrical supply required specifying frequency, number of phases, and number of wires
(4) The marking "Electrode-Type Boiler"
(5) A warning marking, "All Power Supplies Shall Be Disconnected Before Servicing, Including Servicing the Pressure Vessel"

The nameplate shall be located so as to be visible after installation.

IX. Electric Radiant Heating Panels and Heating Panel Sets

424.90 Scope. The provisions of Part IX of this article shall apply to radiant heating panels and heating panel sets.

424.91 Definitions.

Heating Panel. A complete assembly provided with a junction box or a length of flexible conduit for connection to a branch circuit.

Heating Panel Set. A rigid or nonrigid assembly provided with nonheating leads or a terminal junction assembly identified as being suitable for connection to a wiring system.

424.92 Markings.

(A) Markings shall be permanent and in a location that is visible prior to application of panel finish.

(B) Each unit shall be identified as suitable for the installation.

(C) Each unit shall be marked with the identifying name or identification symbol, catalog number, and rating in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

(D) The manufacturers of heating panels or heating panel sets shall provide marking labels that indicate that the space-heating installation incorporates heating panels or heating panel sets and instructions that the labels shall be affixed to the panelboards to identify which branch circuits supply the circuits to those space-heating installations. If the heating panels and heating panel set installations are visible and distinguishable after installation, the labels shall not be required to be provided and affixed to the panelboards.

424.93 Installation.

(A) General.

(1) Manufacturer's Instructions. Heating panels and heating panel sets shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

(2) Locations Not Permitted. The heating portion shall not

(1) Be installed in or behind surfaces where subject to physical damage.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-281

(2) Be run through or above walls, partitions, cupboards, or similar portions of structures that extend to the ceiling.
(3) Be run in or through thermal insulation, but shall be permitted to be in contact with the surface of thermal insulation.

(3) Separation From Outlets for Luminaires (Lighting Fixtures). Edges of panels and panel sets shall be separated by not less than 200 mm (8 in.) from the edges of any outlet boxes and junction boxes that are to be used for mounting surface luminaires (lighting fixtures). A clearance of not less than 50 mm (2 in.) shall be provided from recessed luminaires (fixtures) and their trims, ventilating openings, and other such openings in room surfaces, unless the heating panels and panel sets are listed and marked for lesser clearances, in which case they shall be permitted to be installed at the marked clearances. Sufficient area shall be provided to ensure that no heating panel or heating panel set is to be covered by any surface-mounted units.

(4) Surfaces Covering Heating Panels. After the heating panels or heating panel sets are installed and inspected, it shall be permitted to install a surface that has been identified by the manufacturer's instructions as being suitable for the installation. The surface shall be secured so that the nails or other fastenings do not pierce the heating panels or heating panel sets.

(5) Surface Coverings. Surfaces permitted by 424.93(A)(4) shall be permitted to be covered with paint, wallpaper, or other approved surfaces identified in the manufacturer's instructions as being suitable.

(B) Heating Panel Sets.

(1) Mounting Location. Heating panel sets shall be permitted to be secured to the lower face of joists or mounted in between joists, headers, or nailing strips.

(2) Parallel to Joists or Nailing Strips. Heating panel sets shall be installed parallel to joists or nailing strips.

(3) Installation of Nails, Staples, or Other Fasteners. Nailing or stapling of heating panel sets shall be done only through the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Heating panel sets shall not be cut through or nailed through any point closer than 6 mm (¼ in.) to the element. Nails, staples, or other fasteners shall not be used where they penetrate current-carrying parts.

(4) Installed as Complete Unit. Heating panel sets shall be installed as complete units unless identified as suitable for field cutting in an approved manner.

424.94 Clearances of Wiring in Ceilings. Wiring located above heated ceilings shall be spaced not less than 50 mm (2 in.) above the heated ceiling and shall be considered as operating at an ambient of 50°C (122°F). The ampacity shall be computed on the basis of the correction factors given in the 0–2000 volt ampacity tables of Article 310. If this wiring is located above thermal insulations having a minimum thickness of 50 mm (2 in.), the wiring shall not require correction for temperature.

424.95 Location of Branch-Circuit and Feeder Wiring in Walls.

(A) Exterior Walls. Wiring methods shall comply with Article *300* and *310.10*.

(B) Interior Walls. Any wiring behind heating panels or heating panel sets located in interior walls or partitions shall be considered as operating at an ambient temperature of 40°C (104°F), and the ampacity shall be computed on the basis of the correction factors given in the 0–2000 volt ampacity tables of Article 310.

424.96 Connection to Branch-Circuit Conductors.

(A) General. Heating panels or heating panel sets assembled together in the field to form a heating installation in one room or area shall be connected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

(B) Heating Panels. Heating panels shall be connected to branch-circuit wiring by an approved wiring method.

(C) Heating Panel Sets.

(1) Connection to Branch Circuit Wiring. Heating panel sets shall be connected to branch-circuit wiring by a method identified as being suitable for the purpose.

(2) Panel Sets with Terminal Junction Assembly. A heating panel set provided with terminal junction assembly shall be permitted to have the nonheating leads attached at the time of installation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

424.97 Nonheating Leads. Excess nonheating leads of heating panels or heating panel sets shall be permitted to be cut to the required length. They shall meet the installation requirements of the wiring method employed in accordance with 424.96. Nonheating leads shall be an integral part of a heating panel and a heating panel set and shall not be subjected to the ampacity requirements of 424.3(B) for branch circuits.

424.98 Installation in Concrete or Poured Masonry.

(A) Maximum Heated Area. Heating panels or heating panel sets shall not exceed 355 watts/m^2 (33 watts/ft^2) of heated area.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-282

(B) Secured in Place and Identified as Suitable. Heating panels or heating panel sets shall be secured in place by means specified in the manufacturer's instructions and identified as suitable for the installation.

(C) Expansion Joints. Heating panels or heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless provision is made for expansion and contraction.

(D) Spacings. Spacings shall be maintained between heating panels or heating panel sets and metal embedded in the floor. Grounded metal-clad heating panels shall be permitted to be in contact with metal embedded in the floor.

(E) Protection of Leads. Leads shall be protected where they leave the floor by rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or electrical metallic tubing, or by other approved means.

(F) Bushings or Fittings Required. Bushings or approved fittings shall be used where the leads emerge within the floor slabs.

424.99 Installation Under Floor Covering.

(A) Identification. Heating panels or heating panel sets for installation under floor covering shall be identified as suitable for installation under floor covering.

(B) Maximum Heated Area. Heating panels or panel sets, installed under floor covering, shall not exceed 160 watts/m^2 (15 watts/ft^2) of heated area.

(C) Installation. Listed heating panels or panel sets, if installed under floor covering, shall be installed on floor surfaces that are smooth and flat in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall also comply with 424.99(C)(1) through (C) (5).

(1) Expansion Joints. Heating panels or heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless protected from expansion and contraction.

(2) Connection to Conductors. Heating panels and heating panel sets shall be connected to branch-circuit and supply wiring by wiring methods recognized in Chapter 3.

(3) Anchoring. Heating panels and heating panel sets shall be firmly anchored to the floor using an adhesive or anchoring system identified for this use.

(4) Coverings. After heating panels or heating panel sets are installed and inspected, they shall be permitted to be covered by a floor covering that has been identified by the manufacturer as being suitable for the installation. The covering shall be secured to the heating panel or heating panel sets with release-type adhesives or by means identified for this use.

(5) Fault Protection. A device to open all ungrounded conductors supplying the heating panels or heating panel sets, provided by the manufacturer, shall function when a low- or high-resistance line-to-line, line-to-grounded conductor, or line-to-ground fault occurs, such as the result of a penetration of the element or element assembly.

FPN: An integral grounding shield may be required to provide this protection.

ARTICLE 426
Fixed Outdoor Electric Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment

I. General

426.1 Scope. The requirements of this article shall apply to electrically energized heating systems and the installation of these systems.

(A) Embedded. Embedded in driveways, walks, steps, and other areas.

(B) Exposed. Exposed on drainage systems, bridge structures, roofs, and other structures.

426.2 Definitions. For the purpose of this article:

Heating System. A complete system consisting of components such as heating elements, fastening devices, nonheating circuit wiring, leads, temperature controllers, safety signs, junction boxes, raceways, and fittings.

Impedance Heating System. A system in which heat is generated in a pipe or rod, or combination of pipes and rods, by causing current to flow through the pipe or rod by direct connection to an ac voltage source from a dual-winding transformer. The pipe or rod shall be permitted to be embedded in the surface to be heated, or constitute the exposed components to be heated.

Resistance Heating Element. A specific separate element to generate heat that is embedded in or fastened to the surface to be heated.

FPN: Tubular heaters, strip heaters, heating cable, heating tape, and heating panels are examples of resistance heaters.

Skin-Effect Heating System. A system in which heat is generated on the inner surface of a ferromagnetic envelope embedded in or fastened to the surface to be heated.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-283

FPN: Typically, an electrically insulated conductor is routed through and connected to the envelope at the other end. The envelope and the electrically insulated conductor are connected to an ac voltage source from a dual-winding transformer.

426.3 Application of Other Articles. All requirements of this *Code* shall apply except as specifically amended in this article. Cord-and-plug-connected fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment intended for specific use and identified as suitable for this use shall be installed according to Article 422. Fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment for use in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with Articles 500 through 516.

426.4 Branch-Circuit Sizing. The ampacity of branch-circuit conductors and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices supplying fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment shall not be less than 125 percent of the total load of the heaters. The rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices shall be permitted in accordance with 240.4(B).

II. Installation

426.10 General. Equipment for outdoor electric deicing and snow melting shall be identified as being suitable for the following:

(1) The chemical, thermal, and physical environment
(2) Installation in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings and instructions

426.11 Use. Electrical heating equipment shall be installed in such a manner as to be afforded protection from physical damage.

426.12 Thermal Protection. External surfaces of outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment that operate at temperatures exceeding 60°C (140°F) shall be physically guarded, isolated, or thermally insulated to protect against contact by personnel in the area.

426.13 Identification. The presence of outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment shall be evident by the posting of appropriate caution signs or markings where clearly visible.

426.14 Special Permission. Fixed outdoor deicing and snow-melting equipment employing methods of construction or installation other than covered by this article shall be permitted only by special permission.

III. Resistance Heating Elements

426.20 Embedded Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment.

(A) Watt Density. Panels or units shall not exceed 1300 watts/m^2 (120 watts/ft^2) of heated area.

(B) Spacing. The spacing between adjacent cable runs is dependent upon the rating of the cable and shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) on centers.

(C) Cover. Units, panels, or cables shall be installed as follows:

(1) On a substantial asphalt or masonry base at least 50 mm (2 in.) thick and have at least 38 mm (1½ in.) of asphalt or masonry applied over the units, panels, or cables; or
(2) They shall be permitted to be installed over other approved bases and embedded within 90 mm (3½ in.) of masonry or asphalt but not less than 38 mm (1½ in.) from the top surface; or
(3) Equipment that has been specially investigated for other forms of installation shall be installed only in the manner for which it has been investigated.

(D) Secured. Cables, units, and panels shall be secured in place by frames or spreaders or other approved means while the masonry or asphalt finish is applied.

(E) Expansion and Contraction. Cables, units, and panels shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless provision is made for expansion and contraction.

426.21 Exposed Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment.

(A) Secured. Heating element assemblies shall be secured to the surface being heated by approved means.

(B) Overtemperature. Where the heating element is not in direct contact with the surface being heated, the design of the heater assembly shall be such that its temperature limitations shall not be exceeded.

(C) Expansion and Contraction. Heating elements and assemblies shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless provision is made for expansion and contraction.

(D) Flexural Capability. Where installed on flexible structures, the heating elements and assemblies shall have a flexural capability that is compatible with the structure.

426.22 Installation of Nonheating Leads for Embedded Equipment.

(A) Grounding Sheath or Braid. Nonheating leads having a grounding sheath or braid shall be permitted to be

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-284

embedded in the masonry or asphalt in the same manner as the heating cable without additional physical protection.

(B) Raceways. All but 25 mm to 150 mm (1 in. to 6 in.) of nonheating leads of Type TW and other approved types not having a grounding sheath shall be enclosed in a rigid conduit, electrical metallic tubing, intermediate metal conduit, or other raceways within asphalt or masonry; and the distance from the factory splice to raceway shall not be less than 25 mm (1 in.) or more than 150 mm (6 in.).

(C) Bushings. Insulating bushings shall be used in the asphalt or masonry where leads enter conduit or tubing.

(D) Expansion and Contraction. Leads shall be protected in expansion joints and where they emerge from masonry or asphalt by rigid conduit, electrical metallic tubing, intermediate metal conduit, other raceways, or other approved means.

(E) Leads in Junction Boxes. Not less than 150 mm (6 in.) of free nonheating lead shall be within the junction box.

426.23 Installation of Nonheating Leads for Exposed Equipment.

(A) Nonheating Leads. Power supply nonheating leads (cold leads) for resistance elements shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Preassembled nonheating leads on approved heaters shall be permitted to be shortened if the markings specified in 426.25 are retained. Not less than 150 mm (6 in.) of nonheating leads shall be provided within the junction box.

(B) Protection. Nonheating power supply leads shall be enclosed in a rigid conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, or other approved means.

426.24 Electrical Connection.

(A) Heating Element Connections. Electrical connections, other than factory connections of heating elements to nonheating elements embedded in masonry or asphalt or on exposed surfaces, shall be made with insulated connectors identified for the use.

(B) Circuit Connections. Splices and terminations at the end of the nonheating leads, other than the heating element end, shall be installed in a box or fitting in accordance with 110.14 and 300.15.

426.25 Marking. Each factory-assembled heating unit shall be legibly marked within 75 mm (3 in.) of each end of the nonheating leads with the permanent identification symbol, catalog number, and ratings in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

426.26 Corrosion Protection. Ferrous and nonferrous metal raceways, cable armor, cable sheaths, boxes, fittings, supports, and support hardware shall be permitted to be installed in concrete or in direct contact with the earth, or in areas subject to severe corrosive influences, where made of material suitable for the condition, or where provided with corrosion protection identified as suitable for the condition.

426.27 Grounding Braid or Sheath. Grounding means, such as copper braid, metal sheath, or other approved means, shall be provided as part of the heated section of the cable, panel, or unit.

426.28 Equipment Protection. Ground-fault protection of equipment shall be provided for fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment, except for equipment that employs mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable embedded in a noncombustible medium.

IV. Impedance Heating

426.30 Personnel Protection. Exposed elements of impedance heating systems shall be physically guarded, isolated, or thermally insulated with a weatherproof jacket to protect against contact by personnel in the area.

426.31 Isolation Transformer. A dual-winding transformer with a grounded shield between the primary and secondary windings shall be used to isolate the distribution system from the heating system.

426.32 Voltage Limitations. Unless protected by ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel, the secondary winding of the isolation transformer connected to the impedance heating elements shall not have an output voltage greater than 30 volts ac.

Where ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel is provided, the voltage shall be permitted to be greater than 30 but not more than 80 volts.

426.33 Induced Currents. All current-carrying components shall be installed in accordance with 300.20.

426.34 Grounding. An impedance heating system that is operating at a voltage greater than 30 but not more than 80 shall be grounded at a designated point(s).

V. Skin-Effect Heating

426.40 Conductor Ampacity. The current through the electrically insulated conductor inside the ferromagnetic envelope shall be permitted to exceed the ampacity values shown in Article 310, provided it is identified as suitable for this use.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-285

426.41 Pull Boxes. Where pull boxes are used, they shall be accessible without excavation by location in suitable vaults or above grade. Outdoor pull boxes shall be of watertight construction.

426.42 Single Conductor in Enclosure. The provisions of 300.20 shall not apply to the installation of a single conductor in a ferromagnetic envelope (metal enclosure).

426.43 Corrosion Protection. Ferromagnetic envelopes, ferrous or nonferrous metal raceways, boxes, fittings, supports, and support hardware shall be permitted to be installed in concrete or in direct contact with the earth, or in areas subjected to severe corrosive influences, where made of material suitable for the condition, or where provided with corrosion protection identified as suitable for the condition. Corrosion protection shall maintain the original wall thickness of the ferromagnetic envelope.

426.44 Grounding. The ferromagnetic envelope shall be grounded at both ends; and, in addition, it shall be permitted to be grounded at intermediate points as required by its design.

The provisions of 250.30 shall not apply to the installation of skin-effect heating systems.

FPN: For grounding methods, see Article 250.

VI. Control and Protection

426.50 Disconnecting Means.

(A) Disconnection. All fixed outdoor deicing and snow-melting equipment shall be provided with a means for disconnection from all ungrounded conductors. Where readily accessible to the user of the equipment, the branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means. Switches used as the disconnecting means shall be of the indicating type.

(B) Cord-and-Plug-Connected Equipment. The factory-installed attachment plug of cord-and-plug-connected equipment rated 20 amperes or less and 150 volts or less to ground shall be permitted to be the disconnecting means.

426.51 Controllers.

(A) Temperature Controller with "Off" Position. Temperature controlled switching devices that indicate an "off" position and that interrupt line current shall open all ungrounded conductors when the control device is in the "off" position. These devices shall not be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means unless provided with a positive lockout in the "off" position.

(B) Temperature Controller Without "Off" Position. Temperature controlled switching devices that do not have an "off" position shall not be required to open all ungrounded conductors and shall not be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means.

(C) Remote Temperature Controller. Remote controlled temperature-actuated devices shall not be required to meet the requirements of 426.51(A). These devices shall not be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means.

(D) Combined Switching Devices. Switching devices consisting of combined temperature-actuated devices and manually controlled switches that serve both as the controller and the disconnecting means shall comply with all of the following conditions:

(1) Open all ungrounded conductors when manually placed in the "off" position
(2) Be so designed that the circuit cannot be energized automatically if the device has been manually placed in the "off" position
(3) Be provided with a positive lockout in the "off" position

426.52 Overcurrent Protection. Fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent where supplied by a branch circuit as specified in 426.4.

426.54 Cord-and-Plug-Connected Deicing and Snow-Melting Equipment. Cord-and-plug-connected deicing and snow-melting equipment shall be listed.

ARTICLE 427
Fixed Electric Heating Equipment for Pipelines and Vessels

I. General

427.1 Scope. The requirements of this article shall apply to electrically energized heating systems and the installation of these systems used with pipelines or vessels or both.

427.2 Definitions.

Impedance Heating System. A system in which heat is generated in a pipeline or vessel wall by causing current to flow through the pipeline or vessel wall by direct connection to an ac voltage source from a dual-winding transformer.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-286

Induction Heating System. A system in which heat is generated in a pipeline or vessel wall by inducing current and hysteresis effect in the pipeline or vessel wall from an external isolated ac field source.

Integrated Heating System. A complete system consisting of components such as pipelines, vessels, heating elements, heat transfer medium, thermal insulation, moisture barrier, nonheating leads, temperature controllers, safety signs, junction boxes, raceways, and fittings.

Pipeline. A length of pipe including pumps, valves, flanges, control devices, strainers, and/or similar equipment for conveying fluids.

Resistance Heating Element. A specific separate element to generate heat that is applied to the pipeline or vessel externally or internally.

FPN: Tubular heaters, strip heaters, heating cable, heating tape, heating blankets, and immersion heaters are examples of resistance heaters.

Skin-Effect Heating System. A system in which heat is generated on the inner surface of a ferromagnetic envelope attached to a pipeline or vessel, or both.

FPN: Typically, an electrically insulated conductor is routed through and connected to the envelope at the other end. The envelope and the electrically insulated conductor are connected to an ac voltage source from a dual-winding transformer.

Vessel. A container such as a barrel, drum, or tank for holding fluids or other material.

427.3 Application of Other Articles. All requirements of this *Code* shall apply except as specifically amended in this article. Cord-connected pipe heating assemblies intended for specific use and identified as suitable for this use shall be installed according to Article 422. Fixed electric pipeline and vessel heating equipment for use in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with Articles 500 through 516.

427.4 Branch-Circuit Sizing. The ampacity of branch-circuit conductors and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices that supply fixed electric heating equipment for pipelines and vessels shall be not less than 125 percent of the total load of the heaters. The rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices shall be permitted in accordance with 240.4(B).

II. Installation

427.10 General. Equipment for pipeline and vessel electrical heating shall be identified as being suitable for (1) the chemical, thermal, and physical environment and (2) installation in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings and instructions.

427.11 Use. Electrical heating equipment shall be installed in such a manner as to be afforded protection from physical damage.

427.12 Thermal Protection. External surfaces of pipeline and vessel heating equipment that operate at temperatures exceeding 60°C (140°F) shall be physically guarded, isolated, or thermally insulated to protect against contact by personnel in the area.

427.13 Identification. The presence of electrically heated pipelines, vessels, or both, shall be evident by the posting of appropriate caution signs or markings at frequent intervals along the pipeline or vessel.

III. Resistance Heating Elements

427.14 Secured. Heating element assemblies shall be secured to the surface being heated by means other than the thermal insulation.

427.15 Not in Direct Contact. Where the heating element is not in direct contact with the pipeline or vessel being heated, means shall be provided to prevent overtemperature of the heating element unless the design of the heater assembly is such that its temperature limitations will not be exceeded.

427.16 Expansion and Contraction. Heating elements and assemblies shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless provisions are made for expansion and contraction.

427.17 Flexural Capability. Where installed on flexible pipelines, the heating elements and assemblies shall have a flexural capability that is compatible with the pipeline.

427.18 Power Supply Leads.

(A) Nonheating Leads. Power supply nonheating leads (cold leads) for resistance elements shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Preassembled nonheating leads on approved heaters shall be permitted to be shortened if the markings specified in 427.20 are retained. Not less than 150 mm (6 in.) of nonheating leads shall be provided within the junction box.

(B) Power Supply Leads Protection. Nonheating power supply leads shall be protected where they emerge from electrically heated pipeline or vessel heating units by rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metal-

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-287

lic tubing, or other raceways identified as suitable for the application.

(C) Interconnecting Leads. Interconnecting nonheating leads connecting portions of the heating system shall be permitted to be covered by thermal insulation in the same manner as the heaters.

427.19 Electrical Connections.

(A) Nonheating Interconnections. Nonheating interconnections, where required under thermal insulation, shall be made with insulated connectors identified as suitable for this use.

(B) Circuit Connections. Splices and terminations outside the thermal insulation shall be installed in a box or fitting in accordance with 110.14 and 300.15.

427.20 Marking. Each factory-assembled heating unit shall be legibly marked within 75 mm (3 in.) of each end of the nonheating leads with the permanent identification symbol, catalog number, and ratings in volts and watts or in volts and amperes.

427.22 Equipment Protection. Ground-fault protection of equipment shall be provided for electric heat tracing and heating panels. This requirement shall not apply in industrial establishments where there is alarm indication of ground faults and

(1) Conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the installed systems.
(2) Continued circuit operation is necessary for safe operation of equipment or processes.

427.23 Grounded Conductive Covering. Electric heating equipment shall be listed and have a grounded conductive covering in accordance with 427.23(A) or (B). The conductive covering shall provide an effective ground path for equipment protection.

(A) Heating Wires or Cables. Heating wires or cables shall have a grounded conductive covering that surrounds the heating element and bus wires, if any, and their electrical insulation.

(B) Heating Panels. Heating panels shall have a grounded conductive covering over the heating element and its electrical insulation on the side opposite the side attached to the surface to be heated.

IV. Impedance Heating

427.25 Personnel Protection. All accessible external surfaces of the pipeline, vessel, or both, being heated shall be physically guarded, isolated, or thermally insulated (with a weatherproof jacket for outside installations) to protect against contact by personnel in the area.

427.26 Isolation Transformer. A dual-winding transformer with a grounded shield between the primary and secondary windings shall be used to isolate the distribution system from the heating system.

427.27 Voltage Limitations. Unless protected by ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel, the secondary winding of the isolation transformer connected to the pipeline or vessel being heated shall not have an output voltage greater than 30 volts ac.

Where ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel is provided, the voltage shall be permitted to be greater than 30 but not more than 80 volts.

427.28 Induced Currents. All current-carrying components shall be installed in accordance with 300.20.

427.29 Grounding. The pipeline, vessel, or both, being heated that is operating at a voltage greater than 30 but not more than 80 shall be grounded at designated points.

427.30 Secondary Conductor Sizing. The ampacity of the conductors connected to the secondary of the transformer shall be at least 100 percent of the total load of the heater.

V. Induction Heating

427.35 Scope. This part covers the installation of line frequency induction heating equipment and accessories for pipelines and vessels.

FPN: See Article 665 for other applications.

427.36 Personnel Protection. Induction coils that operate or may operate at a voltage greater than 30 volts ac shall be enclosed in a nonmetallic or split metallic enclosure, isolated, or made inaccessible by location to protect personnel in the area.

427.37 Induced Current. Induction coils shall be prevented from inducing circulating currents in surrounding metallic equipment, supports, or structures by shielding, isolation, or insulation of the current paths. Stray current paths shall be bonded to prevent arcing.

VI. Skin-Effect Heating

427.45 Conductor Ampacity. The ampacity of the electrically insulated conductor inside the ferromagnetic envelope

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-288

shall be permitted to exceed the values given in Article 310, provided it is identified as suitable for this use.

427.46 Pull Boxes. Pull boxes for pulling the electrically insulated conductor in the ferromagnetic envelope shall be permitted to be buried under the thermal insulation, provided their locations are indicated by permanent markings on the insulation jacket surface and on drawings. For outdoor installations, pull boxes shall be of watertight construction.

427.47 Single Conductor in Enclosure. The provisions of 300.20 shall not apply to the installation of a single conductor in a ferromagnetic envelope (metal enclosure).

427.48 Grounding. The ferromagnetic envelope shall be grounded at both ends, and, in addition, it shall be permitted to be grounded at intermediate points as required by its design. The ferromagnetic envelope shall be bonded at all joints to ensure electrical continuity.

The provisions of 250.30 shall not apply to the installation of skin-effect heating systems.

FPN: See Article 250 for grounding methods.

VII. Control and Protection

427.55 Disconnecting Means.

(A) Switch or Circuit Breaker. Means shall be provided to disconnect all fixed electric pipeline or vessel heating equipment from all ungrounded conductors. The branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker, where readily accessible to the user of the equipment, shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means. The disconnecting means shall be of the indicating type and shall be provided with a positive lockout in the "off" position.

(B) Cord-and-Plug-Connected Equipment. The factory-installed attachment plug of cord-and-plug-connected equipment rated 20 amperes or less and 150 volts or less to ground shall be permitted to be the disconnecting means.

427.56 Controls.

(A) Temperature Control with "Off" Position. Temperature controlled switching devices that indicate an "off" position and that interrupt line current shall open all ungrounded conductors when the control device is in this "off" position. These devices shall not be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means unless provided with a positive lockout in the "off" position.

(B) Temperature Control Without "Off" Position. Temperature controlled switching devices that do not have an "off" position shall not be required to open all ungrounded conductors and shall not be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means.

(C) Remote Temperature Controller. Remote controlled temperature-actuated devices shall not be required to meet the requirements of 427.56(A) and (B). These devices shall not be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means.

(D) Combined Switching Devices. Switching devices consisting of combined temperature-actuated devices and manually controlled switches that serve both as the controllers and the disconnecting means shall comply with all the following conditions:

(1) Open all ungrounded conductors when manually placed in the "off" position
(2) Be designed so that the circuit cannot be energized automatically if the device has been manually placed in the "off" position
(3) Be provided with a positive lockout in the "off" position

427.57 Overcurrent Protection. Heating equipment shall be considered as protected against overcurrent where supplied by a branch circuit as specified in 427.4.

ARTICLE 430
Motors, Motor Circuits, and Controllers

I. General

430.1 Scope. This article covers motors, motor branch-circuit and feeder conductors and their protection, motor overload protection, motor control circuits, motor controllers, and motor control centers.

FPN No. 1: Installation requirements for motor control centers are covered in 110.26(F). Air conditioning and refrigerating equipment are covered in Article 440.

FPN No. 2: Figure 430.1 is for information only.

430.2 Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems. The incoming branch circuit or feeder to power conversion equipment included as a part of an adjustable-speed drive system shall be based on the rated input to the power conversion equipment. Where the power conversion equipment is marked to indicate that overload protection is included, additional overload protection shall not be required.

The disconnecting means shall be permitted to be in the incoming line to the conversion equipment and shall have a rating not less than 115 percent of the rated input current of the conversion unit.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-289

General, 430.1 through 430.18	Part I
Motor Circuit Conductors, 430.21 through 430.29	Part II
Motor and Branch-Circuit Overload Protection, 430.31 through 430.44	Part III
Motor Branch-Circuit Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection, 430.51 through 430.58	Part IV
Motor Feeder Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection, 430.61 through 430.63	Part V
Motor Control Circuits, 430.71 through 430.74	Part VI
Motor Controllers, 430.81 through 430.91	Part VII
Motor Control Centers, 430.92 through 430.98	Part VIII
Disconnecting Means, 430.101 through 430.113	Part IX
Over 600 Volts, Nominal, 430.121 through 430.127	Part X
Protection of Live Parts—All Voltages, 430.131 through 430.133	Part XI
Grounding—All Voltages, 430.141 through 430.145	Part XII
Tables, Tables 430.147 through 430.151(B)	Part XIII

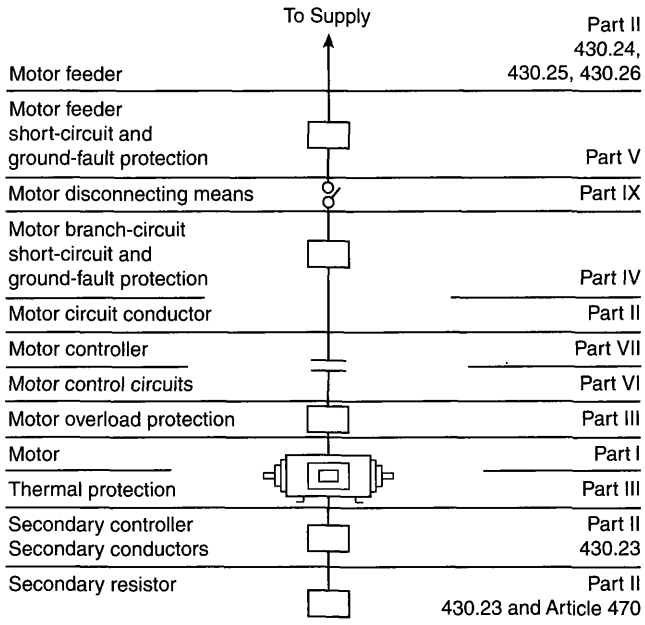


Figure 430.1 Article 430 contents.

FPN: Electrical resonance can result from the interaction of the nonsinusoidal currents from this type of load with power factor correction capacitors.

430.3 Part-Winding Motors. A part-winding start induction or synchronous motor is one that is arranged for starting by first energizing part of its primary (armature) winding and, subsequently, energizing the remainder of this winding in one or more steps. A standard part-winding start induction motor is arranged so that one-half of its primary winding can be energized initially, and, subsequently, the remaining half can be energized, both halves then carrying equal current. A hermetic refrigerant compressor motor shall not be considered a standard part-winding start induction motor.

Where separate overload devices are used with a standard part-winding start induction motor, each half of the motor winding shall be individually protected in accordance with 430.32 and 430.37 with a trip current one-half that specified.

Each motor-winding connection shall have branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection rated at not more than one-half that specified by 430.52.

Exception: A short-circuit and ground-fault protective device shall be permitted for both windings if the device will allow the motor to start. Where time-delay (dual-element) fuses are used, they shall be permitted to have a rating not exceeding 150 percent of the motor full-load current.

430.5 Other Articles. Motors and controllers shall also comply with the applicable provisions of Table 430.5.

Table 430.5 Other Articles

Equipment/Occupancy	Article	Section
Air-conditioning and refrigerating equipment	440	
Capacitors		460.8, 460.9
Commercial garages; aircraft hangars; motor fuel dispensing facilities; bulk storage plants; spray application, dipping, and coating processes; and inhalation anesthetizing locations	511, 513, 514, 515, 516, and 517 Part IV	
Cranes and hoists	610	
Electrically driven or controlled irrigation machines	675	
Elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, wheelchair lifts, and stairway chair lifts	620	
Fire pumps	695	
Hazardous (classified) locations	500–503 and 505	
Industrial machinery	670	
Motion picture projectors		540.11 and 540.20
Motion picture and television studios and similar locations	530	
Resistors and reactors	470	
Theaters, audience areas of motion picture and television studios, and similar locations		520.48
Transformers and transformer vaults	450	

430.6 Ampacity and Motor Rating Determination. The size of conductors supplying equipment covered by Article 430 shall be selected from the allowable ampacity tables in accordance with 310.15(B) or shall be calculated in accordance with 310.15(C). Where flexible cord is used, the size of the conductor shall be selected in accordance with 400.5.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-290

The required ampacity and motor ratings shall be determined as specified in 430.6(A), (B), and (C).

(A) General Motor Applications. For general motor applications, current ratings shall be determined based on (1) and (2).

(1) Table Values. The values given in Tables 430.147, 430.148, 430.149, and 430.150, including notes, shall be used to determine the ampacity of conductors or ampere ratings of switches, branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection, instead of the actual current rating marked on the motor nameplate. Where a motor is marked in amperes, but not horsepower, the horsepower rating shall be assumed to be that corresponding to the value given in Tables 430.147, 430.148, 430.149, and 430.150, interpolated if necessary.

Exception No. 1: Multispeed motors shall be in accordance with 430.22(A) and 430.52.

Exception No. 2: For equipment that employs a shaded-pole or permanent-split capacitor-type fan or blower motor that is marked with the motor type, the full load current for such motor marked on the nameplate of the equipment in which the fan or blower motor is employed shall be used instead of the horsepower rating to determine the ampacity or rating of the disconnecting means, the branch-circuit conductors, the controller, the branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection, and the separate overload protection. This marking on the equipment nameplate shall not be less than the current marked on the fan or blower motor nameplate.

Exception No. 3: For a listed motor-operated appliance that is marked with both motor horsepower and full-load current, the motor full-load current marked on the nameplate of the appliance shall be used instead of the horsepower rating on the appliance nameplate to determine the ampacity or rating of the disconnecting means, the branch-circuit conductors, the controller, the branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection, and any separate overload protection.

(2) Nameplate Values. Separate motor overload protection shall be based on the motor nameplate current rating.

(B) Torque Motors. For torque motors, the rated current shall be locked-rotor current, and this nameplate current shall be used to determine the ampacity of the branch-circuit conductors covered in 430.22 and 430.24, the ampere rating of the motor overload protection, and the ampere rating of motor branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection in accordance with 430.52(B).

FPN: For motor controllers and disconnecting means, see 430.83(D) and 430.110.

(C) Alternating-Current Adjustable Voltage Motors. For motors used in alternating-current, adjustable voltage, variable torque drive systems, the ampacity of conductors, or ampere ratings of switches, branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection, and so forth, shall be based on the maximum operating current marked on the motor or control nameplate, or both. If the maximum operating current does not appear on the nameplate, the ampacity determination shall be based on 150 percent of the values given in Tables 430.149 and 430.150.

430.7 Marking on Motors and Multimotor Equipment.

(A) Usual Motor Applications. A motor shall be marked with the following information.

(1) Manufacturer's name.
(2) Rated volts and full-load amperes. For a multispeed motor, full-load amperes for each speed, except shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors where amperes are required only for maximum speed.
(3) Rated frequency and number of phases if an ac motor.
(4) Rated full-load speed.
(5) Rated temperature rise or the insulation system class and rated ambient temperature.
(6) Time rating. The time rating shall be 5, 15, 30, or 60 minutes, or continuous.
(7) Rated horsepower if ⅛ hp or more. For a multispeed motor ⅛ hp or more, rated horsepower for each speed, except shaded-pole and permanent-split capacitor motors ⅛ hp or more where rated horsepower is required only for maximum speed. Motors of arc welders are not required to be marked with the horsepower rating.
(8) Code letter or locked-rotor amperes if an alternating-current motor rated ½ hp or more. On polyphase wound-rotor motors, the code letter shall be omitted.

FPN: See 430.7(B).

(9) Design letter for design B, C, D, or E motors.

FPN: Motor design letter definitions are found in ANSI/NEMA MG 1-1993, *Motors and Generators, Part 1, Definitions,* and in IEEE 100-1996, *Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronic Terms.*

(10) Secondary volts and full-load amperes if a wound-rotor induction motor.
(11) Field current and voltage for dc excited synchronous motors.
(12) Winding — straight shunt, stabilized shunt, compound, or series, if a dc motor. Fractional horsepower dc motors 175 mm (7 in.) or less in diameter shall not be required to be marked.
(13) A motor provided with a thermal protector complying with 430.32(A)(2) or (B)(2) shall be marked "Thermally Protected." Thermally protected motors rated 100 watts or less and complying with 430.32(B)(2)

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-291

shall be permitted to use the abbreviated marking "T.P."

(14) A motor complying with 430.32(B)(4) shall be marked "Impedance Protected." Impedance protected motors rated 100 watts or less and complying with 430.32(B)(4) shall be permitted to use the abbreviated marking "Z.P."

(B) Locked-Rotor Indicating Code Letters. Code letters marked on motor nameplates to show motor input with locked rotor shall be in accordance with Table 430.7(B).

The code letter indicating motor input with locked rotor shall be in an individual block on the nameplate, properly designated.

Table 430.7(B) Locked-Rotor Indicating Code Letters

Code Letter	Kilovolt-Amperes per Horsepower with Locked Rotor
A	0 – 3.14
B	3.15 – 3.54
C	3.55 – 3.99
D	4.0 – 4.49
E	4.5 – 4.99
F	5.0 – 5.59
G	5.6 – 6.29
H	6.3 – 7.09
J	7.1 – 7.99
K	8.0 – 8.99
L	9.0 – 9.99
M	10.0 – 11.19
N	11.2 – 12.49
P	12.5 – 13.99
R	14.0 – 15.99
S	16.0 – 17.99
T	18.0 – 19.99
U	20.0 – 22.39
V	22.4 and up

(1) Multispeed Motors. Multispeed motors shall be marked with the code letter designating the locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower for the highest speed at which the motor can be started.

Exception: Constant horsepower multispeed motors shall be marked with the code letter giving the highest locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower.

(2) Single-Speed Motors. Single-speed motors starting on wye connection and running on delta connections shall be marked with a code letter corresponding to the locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower for the wye connection.

(3) Dual-Voltage Motors. Dual-voltage motors that have a different locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower on the two voltages shall be marked with the code letter for the voltage giving the highest locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower.

(4) 50/60 Hz Motors. Motors with 50- and 60-Hz ratings shall be marked with a code letter designating the locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower on 60 Hz.

(5) Part Winding Motors. Part-winding start motors shall be marked with a code letter designating the locked-rotor kilovolt-ampere (kVA) per horsepower that is based on the locked-rotor current for the full winding of the motor.

(C) Torque Motors. Torque motors are rated for operation at standstill and shall be marked in accordance with 430.7(A), except that locked-rotor torque shall replace horsepower.

(D) Multimotor and Combination-Load Equipment.

(1) Factory-Wired. Multimotor and combination-load equipment shall be provided with a visible nameplate marked with the manufacturer's name, the rating in volts, frequency, number of phases, minimum supply circuit conductor ampacity, and the maximum ampere rating of the circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protective device. The conductor ampacity shall be computed in accordance with 430.24 and counting all of the motors and other loads that will be operated at the same time. The short-circuit and ground-fault protective device rating shall not exceed the value computed in accordance with 430.53. Multimotor equipment for use on two or more circuits shall be marked with the preceding information for each circuit.

(2) Not Factory-Wired. Where the equipment is not factory-wired and the individual nameplates of motors and other loads are visible after assembly of the equipment, the individual nameplates shall be permitted to serve as the required marking.

430.8 Marking on Controllers. A controller shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or identification, the voltage, the current or horsepower rating, and such other necessary data to properly indicate the motors for which it is suitable. A controller that includes motor overload protection suitable for group motor application shall be marked with the motor overload protection and the maximum branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protection for such applications.

Combination controllers that employ adjustable instantaneous trip circuit breakers shall be clearly marked to indicate the ampere settings of the adjustable trip element.

Where a controller is built-in as an integral part of a motor or of a motor-generator set, individual marking of the controller shall not be required if the necessary data are on the nameplate. For controllers that are an integral part of

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-292

equipment approved as a unit, the above marking shall be permitted on the equipment nameplate.

FPN: See 110.10 for information on circuit impedance and other characteristics.

430.9 Terminals.

(A) Markings. Terminals of motors and controllers shall be suitably marked or colored where necessary to indicate the proper connections.

(B) Conductors. Motor controllers and terminals of control circuit devices shall be connected with copper conductors unless identified for use with a different conductor.

(C) Torque Requirements. Control circuit devices with screw-type pressure terminals used with 14 AWG or smaller copper conductors shall be torqued to a minimum of 0.8 N•m (7 lb-in.) unless identified for a different torque value.

430.10 Wiring Space in Enclosures.

(A) General. Enclosures for motor controllers and disconnecting means shall not be used as junction boxes, auxiliary gutters, or raceways for conductors feeding through or tapping off to the other apparatus unless designs are employed that provide adequate space for this purpose.

FPN: See 312.8 for switch and overcurrent-device enclosures.

(B) Wire-Bending Space in Enclosures. Minimum wire-bending space within the enclosures for motor controllers shall be in accordance with Table 430.10(B) where measured in a straight line from the end of the lug or wire connector (in the direction the wire leaves the terminal) to the wall or barrier. Where alternate wire termination means are substituted for that supplied by the manufacturer of the controller, they shall be of a type identified by the manufacturer for use with the controller and shall not reduce the minimum wire-bending space.

430.11 Protection Against Liquids. Suitable guards or enclosures shall be provided to protect exposed current-carrying parts of motors and the insulation of motor leads where installed directly under equipment, or in other locations where dripping or spraying oil, water, or other injurious liquid may occur, unless the motor is designed for the existing conditions.

430.12 Motor Terminal Housings.

(A) Material. Where motors are provided with terminal housings, the housings shall be of metal and of substantial construction.

Table 430.10(B) Minimum Wire-Bending Space at the Terminals of Enclosed Motor Controllers

Size of Wire (AWG or kcmil)	Wires per Terminal*			
	1		2	
	mm	in.	mm	in.
14–10	Not specified		—	—
8–6	38	1½	—	—
4–3	50	2	—	—
2	65	2½	—	—
1	75	3	—	—
1/0	125	5	125	5
2/0	150	6	150	6
3/0–4/0	175	7	175	7
250	200	8	200	8
300	250	10	250	10
350–500	300	12	300	12
600–700	350	14	400	16
750–900	450	18	475	19

*Where provision for three or more wires per terminal exists, the minimum wire-bending space shall be in accordance with the requirements of Article 312.

Exception: In other than hazardous (classified) locations, substantial, nonmetallic, nonburning housings shall be permitted, provided an internal grounding means between the motor frame and the equipment grounding connection is incorporated within the housing.

(B) Dimensions and Space — Wire-to-Wire Connections. Where these terminal housings enclose wire-to-wire connections, they shall have minimum dimensions and usable volumes in accordance with Table 430.12(B).

(C) Dimensions and Space — Fixed Terminal Connections. Where these terminal housings enclose rigidly mounted motor terminals, the terminal housing shall beof sufficient size to provide minimum terminal spacings and usable volumes in accordance with Tables 430.12(C)(1) and 430.12(C)(2).

Table 430.12(B) Terminal Housings — Wire-to-Wire Connections Motors 275 mm (11 in.) in Diameter or Less

Horsepower	Cover Opening Minimum Dimension		Usable Volume Minimum	
	mm	in.	cm^3	$in.^3$
1 and smaller[a]	41	1⅝	170	10.5
1½, 2, and 3[b]	45	1¾	275	16.8
5 and 7½	50	2	365	22.4
10 and 15	65	2½	595	36.4

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-293

Motors Over 275 mm (11 in.) in Diameter — Alternating-Current Motors

Maximum Full Load Current for 3-Phase Motors with Maximum of 12 Leads (Amperes)	Terminal Box Cover Opening Minimum Dimension		Usable Volume Minimum		Typical Maximum Horsepower 3-Phase	
	mm	in.	cm^3	$in.^3$	230 Volt	460 Volt
45	65	2.5	595	36.4	15	30
70	84	3.3	1,265	77	25	50
110	100	4.0	2,295	140	40	75
160	125	5.0	4,135	252	60	125
250	150	6.0	7,380	450	100	200
400	175	7.0	13,775	840	150	300
600	200	8.0	25,255	1540	250	500

Direct-Current Motors

Maximum Full-Load Current for Motors with Maximum of 6 Leads (Amperes)	Terminal Box Minimum Dimensions		Usable Volume Minimum	
	mm	in.	cm^3	$in.^3$
68	65	2.5	425	26
105	84	3.3	900	55
165	100	4.0	1,640	100
240	125	5.0	2,950	180
375	150	6.0	5,410	330
600	175	7.0	9,840	600
900	200	8.0	18,040	1,100

Note: Auxiliary leads for such items as brakes, thermostats, space heaters, and exciting fields shall be permitted to be neglected if their current-carrying area does not exceed 25 percent of the current-carrying area of the machine power leads.

[a]For motors rated 1 hp and smaller and with the terminal housing partially or wholly integral with the frame or end shield, the volume of the terminal housing shall not be less than 18.0 cm^3 (1.1 $in.^3$) per wire-to-wire connection. The minimum cover opening dimension is not specified.

[b]For motors rated 1½, 2, and 3 hp and with the terminal housing partially or wholly integral with the frame or end shield, the volume of the terminal housing shall not be less than 23.0 cm^3 (1.4 $in.^3$) per wire-to-wire connection. The minimum cover opening dimension is not specified.

Table 430.12(C)(1) Terminal Spacings — Fixed Terminals

	Minimum Spacing			
	Between Line Terminals		Between Line Terminals and Other Uninsulated Metal Parts	
Nominal Volts	mm	in.	mm	in.
240 or less	6	¼	6	¼
Over 250 – 600	10	⅜	10	⅜

Table 430.12(C)(2) Usable Volumes — Fixed Terminals

Power-Supply Conductor Size (AWG)	Minimum Usable Volume per Power-Supply Conductor	
	cm^3	$in.^3$
14	16	1
12 and 10	20	1¼
8 and 6	37	2¼

(D) Large Wire or Factory Connections. For motors with larger ratings, greater number of leads, or larger wire sizes, or where motors are installed as a part of factory-wired equipment, without additional connection being required at the motor terminal housing during equipment installation, the terminal housing shall be of ample size to make connections, but the foregoing provisions for the volumes of terminal housings shall not be considered applicable.

(E) Equipment Grounding Connections. A means for attachment of an equipment grounding conductor termination in accordance with 250.8 shall be provided at motor terminal housings for wire-to-wire connections or fixed terminal connections. The means for such connections shall be permitted to be located either inside or outside the motor terminal housing.

Exception: Where a motor is installed as a part of factory-wired equipment that is required to be grounded and without additional connection being required at the motor terminal housing during equipment installation, a separate means for motor grounding at the motor terminal housing shall not be required.

430.13 Bushing. Where wires pass through an opening in an enclosure, conduit box, or barrier, a bushing shall be used to protect the conductors from the edges of openings having sharp edges. The bushing shall have smooth, well-rounded surfaces where it may be in contact with the conductors. If used where oils, greases, or other contaminants may be present, the bushing shall be made of material not deleteriously affected.

FPN: For conductors exposed to deteriorating agents, see 310.9.

430.14 Location of Motors.

(A) Ventilation and Maintenance. Motors shall be located so that adequate ventilation is provided and so that maintenance, such as lubrication of bearings and replacing of brushes, can be readily accomplished.

Exception: Ventilation shall not be required for submersible types of motors.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-294

(B) Open Motors. Open motors that have commutators or collector rings shall be located or protected so that sparks cannot reach adjacent combustible material.

Exception: Installation of these motors on wooden floors or supports shall be permitted.

430.16 Exposure to Dust Accumulations. In locations where dust or flying material collects on or in motors in such quantities as to seriously interfere with the ventilation or cooling of motors and thereby cause dangerous temperatures, suitable types of enclosed motors that do not overheat under the prevailing conditions shall be used.

FPN: Especially severe conditions may require the use of enclosed pipe-ventilated motors, or enclosure in separate dusttight rooms, properly ventilated from a source of clean air.

430.17 Highest Rated or Smallest Rated Motor. In determining compliance with 430.24, 430.53(B), and 430.53(C), the highest rated or smallest rated motor shall be based on the rated full-load current as selected from Tables 430.147, 430.148, 430.149, and 430.150.

430.18 Nominal Voltage of Rectifier Systems. The nominal value of the ac voltage being rectified shall be used to determine the voltage of a rectifier derived system.

Exception: The nominal dc voltage of the rectifier shall be used if it exceeds the peak value of the ac voltage being rectified.

II. Motor Circuit Conductors

430.21 General. Part II specifies ampacities of conductors that are capable of carrying the motor current without overheating under the conditions specified.

The provisions of Part II shall not apply to motor circuits rated over 600 volts, nominal.

The provisions of Articles 250, 300, and 310 shall not apply to conductors that form an integral part of equipment, such as motors, motor controllers, motor control centers, or other factory-assembled control equipment.

FPN No. 1: See 300.1(B) and 310.1 for similar requirements.

FPN No. 2: See 110.14(C) and 430.9(B) for equipment device terminal requirements.

FPN No. 3: For over 600 volts, nominal, see Part XI.

430.22 Single Motor.

(A) General. Branch-circuit conductors that supply a single motor used in a continuous duty application shall have an ampacity of not less than 125 percent of the motor's full-load current rating as determined by 430.6(A)(1).

Exception No. 1: For dc motors operating from a rectified single-phase power supply, the conductors between the field wiring terminals of the rectifier and the motor shall have an ampacity of not less than the following percent of the motor full-load current rating:

(a) Where a rectifier bridge of the single-phase half-wave type is used, 190 percent.
(b) Where a rectifier bridge of the single-phase full-wave type is used, 150 percent.

Exception No. 2: Circuit conductors supplying power conversion equipment included as part of an adjustable-speed drive system shall have an ampacity not less than 125 percent of the rated input to the power conversion equipment.

(B) Multispeed Motor. For a multispeed motor, the selection of branch-circuit conductors on the line side of the controller shall be based on the highest of the full-load current ratings shown on the motor nameplate. The selection of branch-circuit conductors between the controller and the motor shall be based on the current rating of the winding(s) that the conductors energize.

(C) Wye-Start, Delta-Run Motor. For a wye-start, delta-run connected motor, the selection of branch-circuit conductors on the line side of the controller shall be based on the motor full-load current. The selection of conductors between the controller and the motor shall be based on 58 percent of the motor full-load current.

(D) Part-Winding Motor. For a part-winding connected motor, the selection of branch-circuit conductors on the line side of the controller shall be based on the motor full-load current. The selection of conductors between the controller and the motor shall be based on 50 percent of the motor full-load current.

(E) Other Than Continuous Duty. Conductors for a motor used in a short-time, intermittent, periodic, or varying duty application shall have an ampacity of not less than the percentage of the motor nameplate current rating shown in Table 430.22(E), unless the authority having jurisdiction grants special permission for conductors of lower ampacity.

(F) Separate Terminal Enclosure. The conductors between a stationary motor rated 1 hp or less and the separate terminal enclosure permitted in 430.145(B) shall be permitted to be smaller than 14 AWG but not smaller than 18 AWG, provided they have an ampacity as specified in 430.22(A).

430.23 Wound-Rotor Secondary.

(A) Continuous Duty. For continuous duty, the conductors connecting the secondary of a wound-rotor ac motor to its

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-295

Table 430.22(E) Duty-Cycle Service

Classification of Service	Nameplate Current Rating Percentages			
	5-Minute Rated Motor	15-Minute Rated Motor	30- & 60-Minute Rated Motor	Continuous Rated Motor
Short-time duty operating valves, raising or lowering rolls, etc.	110	120	150	—
Intermittent duty freight and passenger elevators, tool heads, pumps, drawbridges, turntables, etc. (for arc welders, see 630.11)	85	85	90	140
Periodic duty rolls, ore- and coal-handling machines, etc.	85	90	95	140
Varying duty	110	120	150	200

Note: Any motor application shall be considered as continuous duty unless the nature of the apparatus it drives is such that the motor will not operate continuously with load under any condition of use.

controller shall have an ampacity not less than 125 percent of the full-load secondary current of the motor.

(B) Other Than Continuous Duty. For other than continuous duty, these conductors shall have an ampacity, in percent of full-load secondary current, not less than that specified in Table 430.22(E).

(C) Resistor Separate from Controller. Where the secondary resistor is separate from the controller, the ampacity of the conductors between controller and resistor shall not be less than that shown in Table 430.23(C).

Table 430.23(C) Secondary Conductor

Resistor Duty Classification	Ampacity of Conductor in Percent of Full-Load Secondary Current
Light starting duty	35
Heavy starting duty	45
Extra-heavy starting duty	55
Light intermittent duty	65
Medium intermittent duty	75
Heavy intermittent duty	85
Continuous duty	110

430.24 Several Motors or a Motor(s) and Other Load(s). Conductors supplying several motors, or a motor(s) and other load(s), shall have an ampacity not less than 125 percent of the full-load current rating of the highest rated motor plus the sum of the full-load current ratings of all the other motors in the group, as determined by 430.6(A), plus the ampacity required for the other loads.

FPN: See Annex D, Example No. D8.

Exception No. 1: Where one or more of the motors of the group are used for short-time, intermittent, periodic, or varying duty, the ampere rating of such motors to be used in the summation shall be determined in accordance with 430.22(E). For the highest rated motor, the greater of either the ampere rating from 430.22(E) or the largest continuous duty motor full-load current multiplied by 1.25 shall be used in the summation.

Exception No. 2: The ampacity of conductors supplying motor-operated fixed electric space-heating equipment shall conform with 424.3(B).

Exception No. 3: Where the circuitry is interlocked so as to prevent operation of selected motors or other loads at the same time, the conductor ampacity shall be permitted to be based on the summation of the currents of the motors and other loads to be operated at the same time that results in the highest total current.

430.25 Multimotor and Combination-Load Equipment. The ampacity of the conductors supplying multimotor and combination-load equipment shall not be less than the minimum circuit ampacity marked on the equipment in accordance with 430.7(D). Where the equipment is not factory-wired and the individual nameplates are visible in accordance with 430.7(D)(2), the conductor ampacity shall be determined in accordance with 430.24.

430.26 Feeder Demand Factor. Where reduced heating of the conductors results from motors operating on duty-cycle, intermittently, or from all motors not operating at one time, the authority having jurisdiction may grant permission for feeder conductors to have an ampacity less than specified in 430.24, provided the conductors have sufficient ampacity for the maximum load determined in accordance with the sizes and number of motors supplied and the character of their loads and duties.

430.27 Capacitors with Motors. Where capacitors are installed in motor circuits, conductors shall comply with 460.8 and 460.9.

430.28 Feeder Taps. Feeder tap conductors shall have an ampacity not less than that required by Part II, shall terminate in a branch-circuit protective device, and, in addition, shall meet one of the following requirements:

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-296

(1) Be enclosed either by an enclosed controller or by a raceway, be not more than 3.0 m (10 ft) in length, and, for field installation, be protected by an overcurrent device on the line side of the tap conductor, the rating or setting of which shall not exceed 1000 percent of the tap conductor ampacity
(2) Have an ampacity of at least one-third that of the feeder conductors, be suitably protected from physical damage or enclosed in a raceway, and be not more than 7.5 m (25 ft) in length
(3) Have the same ampacity as the feeder conductors

Exception: Feeder taps over 7.5 m (25 ft) long. In high-bay manufacturing buildings [over 11 m (35 ft) high at walls], where conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons service the systems, conductors tapped to a feeder shall be permitted to be not over 7.5 m (25 ft) long horizontally and not over 30.0 m (100 ft) in total length where all of the following conditions are met:

(a) The ampacity of the tap conductors is not less than one-third that of the feeder conductors.
(b) The tap conductors terminate with a single circuit breaker or a single set of fuses conforming with (1) Part IV, where the load-side conductors are a branch circuit, or (2) Part V, where the load-side conductors are a feeder.
(c) The tap conductors are suitably protected from physical damage and are installed in raceways.
(d) The tap conductors are continuous from end-to-end and contain no splices.
(e) The tap conductors shall be 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum or larger.
(f) The tap conductors shall not penetrate walls, floors, or ceilings.
(g) The tap shall not be made less than 9.0 m (30 ft) from the floor.

430.29 Constant Voltage Direct-Current Motors — Power Resistors. Conductors connecting the motor controller to separately mounted power accelerating and dynamic braking resistors in the armature circuit shall have an ampacity not less than the value calculated from Table 430.29 using motor full-load current. If an armature shunt resistor is used, the power accelerating resistor conductor ampacity shall be calculated using the total of motor full-load current and armature shunt resistor current.

Armature shunt resistor conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than that calculated from Table 430.29 using rated shunt resistor current as full-load current.

Table 430.29 Conductor Rating Factors for Power Resistors

Time in Seconds		Ampacity of Conductor in Percent of Full-Load Current
On	Off	
5	75	35
10	70	45
15	75	55
15	45	65
15	30	75
15	15	85
Continuous Duty		110

III. Motor and Branch-Circuit Overload Protection

430.31 General. Part III specifies overload devices intended to protect motors, motor-control apparatus, and motor branch-circuit conductors against excessive heating due to motor overloads and failure to start.

Overload in electrical apparatus is an operating overcurrent that, when it persists for a sufficient length of time, would cause damage or dangerous overheating of the apparatus. It does not include short circuits or ground faults.

These provisions shall not be interpreted as requiring overload protection where it might introduce additional or increased hazards, as in the case of fire pumps.

FPN: For protection of fire pump supply conductors, see 695.6.

The provisions of Part III shall not apply to motor circuits rated over 600 volts, nominal.

FPN No. 1: For over 600 volts, nominal, see Part X.

FPN No. 2: See Annex D, Example No. D8.

430.32 Continuous-Duty Motors.

(A) More Than 1 Horsepower. Each continuous-duty motor rated more than 1 hp shall be protected against overload by one of the means in 430.32(A)(1) through (A)(4).

(1) Separate Overload Device. A separate overload device that is responsive to motor current. This device shall be selected to trip or shall be rated at no more than the following percent of the motor nameplate full-load current rating:

Motors with a marked service factor 1.15 or greater	125%
Motors with a marked temperature rise 40°C or less	125%
All other motors	115%

Modification of this value shall be permitted as provided in 430.32(C). For a multispeed motor, each winding connection shall be considered separately.

Where a separate motor overload device is connected so that it does not carry the total current designated on the motor nameplate, such as for wye-delta starting, the proper percentage of nameplate current applying to the selection or setting of the overload device shall be clearly designated on

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-297

the equipment, or the manufacturer's selection table shall take this into account.

FPN: Where power factor correction capacitors are installed on the load side of the motor overload device, see 460.9.

(2) Thermal Protector. A thermal protector integral with the motor, approved for use with the motor it protects on the basis that it will prevent dangerous overheating of the motor due to overload and failure to start. The ultimate trip current of a thermally protected motor shall not exceed the following percentage of motor full-load current given in Tables 430.148, 430.149, and 430.150:

Motor full-load current 9 amperes or less	170%
Motor full-load current from 9.1 to, and including, 20 amperes	156%
Motor full-load current greater than 20 amperes	140%

If the motor current-interrupting device is separate from the motor and its control circuit is operated by a protective device integral with the motor, it shall be arranged so that the opening of the control circuit will result in interruption of current to the motor.

(3) Integral with Motor. A protective device integral with a motor that will protect the motor against damage due to failure to start shall be permitted if the motor is part of an approved assembly that does not normally subject the motor to overloads.

(4) Larger Than 1500 Horsepower. For motors larger than 1500 hp, a protective device having embedded temperature detectors that cause current to the motor to be interrupted when the motor attains a temperature rise greater than marked on the nameplate in an ambient temperature of 40°C.

(B) One Horsepower or Less, Automatically Started. Any motor of 1 hp or less that is started automatically shall be protected against overload by one of the following means.

(1) Separate Overload Device. A separate overload device that is responsive to motor current. This device shall be selected to trip or shall be rated at not more than the following percentage of the motor nameplate full-load current rating:

Motors with a marked service factor 1.15 or greater	125%
Motors with a marked temperature rise 40°C or less	125%
All other motors	115%

For a multispeed motor, each winding connection shall be considered separately. Modification of this value shall be permitted as provided in 430.32(C).

(2) Thermal Protector. A thermal protector integral with the motor, approved for use with the motor that it protects on the basis that it will prevent dangerous overheating of the motor due to overload and failure to start. Where the motor current-interrupting device is separate from the motor and its control circuit is operated by a protective device integral with the motor, it shall be arranged so that the opening of the control circuit results in interruption of current to the motor.

(3) Integral with Motor. A protective device integral with a motor that protects the motor against damage due to failure to start shall be permitted (1) if the motor is part of an approved assembly that does not subject the motor to overloads, or (2) if the assembly is also equipped with other safety controls (such as the safety combustion controls on a domestic oil burner) that protect the motor against damage due to failure to start. Where the assembly has safety controls that protect the motor, it shall be so indicated on the nameplate of the assembly where it will be visible after installation.

(4) Impedance-Protected. In case the impedance of the motor windings is sufficient to prevent overheating due to failure to start, the motor shall be permitted to be protected as specified in 430.32(D)(1) for manually started motors if the motor is part of an approved assembly in which the motor will limit itself so that it will not be dangerously overheated.

FPN: Many ac motors of less than 1/20 hp, such as clock motors, series motors, and so forth, and also some larger motors such as torque motors, come within this classification. It does not include split-phase motors having automatic switches that disconnect the starting windings.

(C) Selection of Overload Relay. Where the sensing element or setting of the overload relay selected in accordance with 430.32(A)(1) and 430.32(B)(1) is not sufficient to start the motor or to carry the load, higher size sensing elements or incremental settings shall be permitted to be used, provided the trip current of the overload relay does not exceed the following percentage of motor nameplate full-load current rating:

Motors with marked service factor 1.15 or greater	140%
Motors with a marked temperature rise 40°C or less	140%
All other motors	130%

If not shunted during the starting period of the motor as provided in 430.35, the overload device shall have sufficient time delay to permit the motor to start and accelerate its load.

FPN: A Class 20 or 30 overload relay will provide a longer motor acceleration time than a Class 10 or 20, respectively.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-298

Use of a higher class overload relay may preclude the need for selection of a higher trip current.

(D) One Horsepower or Less, Nonautomatically Started.

(1) Within Sight from Controller. Each continuous-duty motor rated at 1 hp or less that is not permanently installed, is nonautomatically started, and is within sight from the controller location shall be permitted to be protected against overload by the branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protective device. This branch-circuit protective device shall not be larger than that specified in Part IV of Article 430.

Exception: Any such motor shall be permitted on a nominal 120-volt branch circuit protected at not over 20 amperes.

(2) Not Within Sight from Controller. Any such motor that is not in sight from the controller location shall be protected as specified in 430.32(B). Any motor rated at 1 hp or less that is permanently installed shall be protected in accordance with 430.32(B).

(E) Wound-Rotor Secondaries. The secondary circuits of wound-rotor ac motors, including conductors, controllers, resistors, and so forth, shall be permitted to be protected against overload by the motor-overload device.

430.33 Intermittent and Similar Duty. A motor used for a condition of service that is inherently short-time, intermittent, periodic, or varying duty, as illustrated by Table 430.22(E), shall be permitted to be protected against overload by the branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protective device, provided the protective device rating or setting does not exceed that specified in Table 430.52.

Any motor application shall be considered to be for continuous duty unless the nature of the apparatus it drives is such that the motor cannot operate continuously with load under any condition of use.

430.35 Shunting During Starting Period.

(A) Nonautomatically Started. For a nonautomatically started motor, the overload protection shall be permitted to be shunted or cut out of the circuit during the starting period of the motor if the device by which the overload protection is shunted or cut out cannot be left in the starting position and if fuses or inverse time circuit breakers rated or set at not over 400 percent of the full-load current of the motor are located in the circuit so as to be operative during the starting period of the motor.

(B) Automatically Started. The motor overload protection shall not be shunted or cut out during the starting period if the motor is automatically started.

Exception: The motor overload protection shall be permitted to be shunted or cut out during the starting period on an automatically started motor where

(a) The motor starting period exceeds the time delay of available motor overload protective devices, and
(b) Listed means are provided to
(1) Sense motor rotation and to automatically prevent the shunting or cutout in the event that the motor fails to start, and
(2) Limit the time of overload protection shunting or cutout to less than the locked rotor time rating of the protected motor, and
(3) Provide for shutdown and manual restart if motor running condition is not reached.

430.36 Fuses — In Which Conductor. Where fuses are used for motor overload protection, a fuse shall be inserted in each ungrounded conductor and also in the grounded conductor if the supply system is 3-wire, 3-phase ac with one conductor grounded.

430.37 Devices Other Than Fuses — In Which Conductor. Where devices other than fuses are used for motor overload protection, Table 430.37 shall govern the minimum allowable number and location of overload units such as trip coils or relays.

430.38 Number of Conductors Opened by Overload Device. Motor overload devices, other than fuses or thermal protectors, shall simultaneously open a sufficient number of ungrounded conductors to interrupt current flow to the motor.

430.39 Motor Controller as Overload Protection. A motor controller shall also be permitted to serve as an overload device if the number of overload units complies with Table 430.37 and if these units are operative in both the starting and running position in the case of a dc motor, and in the running position in the case of an ac motor.

430.40 Overload Relays. Overload relays and other devices for motor overload protection that are not capable of opening short circuits or ground faults shall be protected by fuses or circuit breakers with ratings or settings in accordance with 430.52 or by a motor short-circuit protector in accordance with 430.52.

Exception: Where approved for group installation and marked to indicate the maximum size of fuse or inverse time circuit breaker by which they must be protected, the overload devices shall be protected in accordance with this marking.

FPN: For instantaneous trip circuit breakers or motor short-circuit protectors, see 430.52.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-299

Table 430.37 Overload Units

Kind of Motor	Supply System	Number and Location of Overload Units, Such as Trip Coils or Relays
1-phase ac or dc	2-wire, 1-phase ac or dc ungrounded	1 in either conductor
1-phase ac or dc	2-wire, 1-phase ac or dc, one conductor grounded	1 in ungrounded conductor
1-phase ac or dc	3-wire, 1-phase ac or dc, grounded neutral	1 in either ungrounded conductor
1-phase ac	Any 3-phase	1 in ungrounded conductor
2-phase ac	3-wire, 2-phase ac, ungrounded	2, one in each phase
2-phase ac	3-wire, 2-phase ac, one conductor grounded	2 in ungrounded conductors
2-phase ac	4-wire, 2-phase ac, grounded or ungrounded	2, one per phase in ungrounded conductors
2-phase ac	Grounded neutral or 5-wire, 2-phase ac, ungrounded	2, one per phase in any ungrounded phase wire
3-phase ac	Any 3-phase	3, one in each phase*

**Exception: An overload unit in each phase shall not be required where overload protection is provided by other approved means.*

430.42 Motors on General-Purpose Branch Circuits. Overload protection for motors used on general-purpose branch circuits as permitted in Article 210 shall be provided as specified in 430.42(A), (B), (C), or (D).

(A) Not Over 1 Horsepower. One or more motors without individual overload protection shall be permitted to be connected to a general-purpose branch circuit only where the installation complies with the limiting conditions specified in 430.32(B) and (D) and 430.53(A)(1) and (A)(2).

(B) Over 1 Horsepower. Motors of ratings larger than specified in 430.53(A) shall be permitted to be connected to general-purpose branch circuits only where each motor is protected by overload protection selected to protect the motor as specified in 430.32. Both the controller and the motor overload device shall be approved for group installation with the short-circuit and ground-fault protective device selected in accordance with 430.53.

(C) Cord-and-Plug Connected. Where a motor is connected to a branch circuit by means of an attachment plug and receptacle and individual overload protection is omitted as provided in 430.42(A), the rating of the attachment plug and receptacle shall not exceed 15 amperes at 125 volts or 250 volts. Where individual overload protection is required as provided in 430.42(B) for a motor or motor-operated appliance that is attached to the branch circuit through an attachment plug and receptacle, the overload device shall be an integral part of the motor or of the appliance. The rating of the attachment plug and receptacle shall determine the rating of the circuit to which the motor may be connected, as provided in Article 210.

(D) Time Delay. The branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protective device protecting a circuit to which a motor or motor-operated appliance is connected shall have sufficient time delay to permit the motor to start and accelerate its load.

430.43 Automatic Restarting. A motor overload device that can restart a motor automatically after overload tripping shall not be installed unless approved for use with the motor it protects. A motor overload device that can restart a motor automatically after overload tripping shall not be installed if automatic restarting of the motor can result in injury to persons.

430.44 Orderly Shutdown. If immediate automatic shutdown of a motor by a motor overload protective device(s) would introduce additional or increased hazard(s) to a person(s) and continued motor operation is necessary for safe shutdown of equipment or process, a motor overload sensing device(s) conforming with the provisions of Part III of this article shall be permitted to be connected to a supervised alarm instead of causing immediate interruption of the motor circuit, so that corrective action or an orderly shutdown can be initiated.

IV. Motor Branch-Circuit Short-Circuit and Ground-Fault Protection

430.51 General. Part IV specifies devices intended to protect the motor branch-circuit conductors, the motor control apparatus, and the motors against overcurrent due to short circuits or grounds. These rules add to or amend the provisions of Article 240. The devices specified in Part IV do not include the types of devices required by 210.8, 230.95, and 527.6.

Voltage, LLC
EX1012-300